

Waimakariri District Council

Agenda

Tuesday 2 July 2024

9.30am

Kaikanui Meeting Room
Ruataniwha Kaiapoi Civic Centre
176 Williams Street, Kaiapoi

Members:

Mayor Dan Gordon

Cr Neville Atkinson

Cr Al Blackie

Cr Robbie Brine

Cr Brent Cairns

Cr Tim Fulton

Cr Jason Goldsworthy

Cr Niki Mealings

Cr Philip Redmond

Cr Joan Ward

Cr Paul Williams

AGENDA CONTENTS – COUNCIL MEETING 2 July 2024		
<u>Item Number</u>	<u>Item Topic</u>	<u>Pages</u>
4.1	Confirmation of Minutes – Council meeting 4 June 2024	10 - 19
Adjourned business		
6.1	Nil	
Staff Reports		
7.1	Submission: Fast Track Approvals Bill	20 – 31
7.2	Submission: Local Government Water Services Preliminary Arrangements Bill	32 – 110
7.3	Endorsement of the draft Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan	111 – 163
7.4	Adoption of the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy	164 – 268
7.5	Programme for District Wide Parking Management Plans	269 – 275
7.6	Progressing Key Projects in advance of NZTA Funding Certainty	276 - 280
7.7	Elected Members Remuneration 2024/25	281 - 304
7.8	Representation Review Proposal	305 - 335
Health, Safety and Wellbeing		
9.1	Health, Safety and Wellbeing Report June 2024	336 - 348
Minutes for Information		
10.1	Utilities and Roading Committee meeting 28 May 2024	349 – 362
10.2	District Planning and Regulation Committee 28 May 2024	363 – 367
10.3	Community and Recreation Committee meeting 28 May 2024	368 – 376
10.4	Audit and Risk Committee meeting 11 June 2024	377 - 387
11.1	Oxford-Ohoka Community Board meeting 5 June 2024	388 – 396
11.2	Woodend-Sefton Community Board meeting 10 June 2024	397 – 404
11.3	Rangiora-Ashley Community Board meeting 12 June 2024	405 - 414

An ordinary meeting of the Waimakariri District Council will be held in the Kaikanui Room, Ruataniwha Kaiapoi Civic Centre, 176 Williams Street, **Kaiapoi**, on **Tuesday 2 July 2024** commencing at 9.30am.

Sarah Nichols
GOVERNANCE MANAGER

**Recommendations in reports are not to be construed as
Council policy until adopted by the Council.**

BUSINESS

Page No

1. **APOLOGIES**

2. **CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

Conflicts of interest (if any) to be reported for minuting.

3. **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

4. **CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES**

4.1 **Minutes of a meeting of the Waimakariri District Council held on Tuesday 4 June 2024**

10 - 19

RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Confirms**, as a true and correct record, the circulated Minutes of a meeting of the Waimakariri District Council meeting held on Tuesday 4 June 2024.

MATTERS ARISING (from Minutes)

5. **DEPUTATIONS AND PRESENTATIONS**

6. **ADJOURNED BUSINESS**

Nil.

7. **REPORTS**

7.1 **Submission: Fast Track Approvals Bill** – T Allinson (Senior Policy Analyst)

20 - 31

RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240619099692.
- (b) **Endorses** the attached submission on the Fast Track Approvals Bill. (TRIM: 240411056658).
- (c) **Circulates** the report and attached submission to the community boards for their information.

7.2 **Submission: Local Government Water Services Preliminary Arrangements Bill** – T Allinson (Senior Policy Analyst)

32 - 110

RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240619099920.
- (b) **Endorses** the attached Local Government Water Services Preliminary Arrangements Bill. (TRIM: 240610093098).
- (c) **Circulates** the report and attached submission to the community boards for their information.

7.3 **Endorsement of the draft Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan** – V Spittal (Principal Policy Analyst – Climate Change and Sustainability)

111 - 163

RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240617097809.
- (b) **Endorses** the attached draft Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan Trim 240617097781.
- (c) **Notes** that the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan will be finalised pending LTP deliberations at all councils for endorsement and approval by the Chief Executive Forum and Mayoral Forum in July and August respectively.
- (d) **Delegates** Mayor Gordon and Chief Executive Jeff Millward the authority to signoff the final Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan on the Waimakariri District Council's behalf during the processes outlined in recommendation (c) above.
- (e) **Notes** staff will bring the final plan back to Council for its information and formal endorsement in September 2024 following the Canterbury Mayoral Forum approval.

- 7.4 **Adoption of the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy** - V Spittal, (Principal Policy Analyst: Climate Change & Sustainability)

164 - 268

RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240610093474.
- (b) **Adopts** the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Biodiversity State of Environment Report, Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Our Environment – Our Future, Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Our Environment – Our Future Summary document and Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Implementation Plan.
- (c) **Accepts** the recommendations of the Natural Environment Strategy Project Control Group regarding the feedback on the Implementation Plan from the 2024 -2034 Long Term Plan consultation process as summarised in sections 5.2.2, 5.2.3 and 5.3.3 of this report.

- 7.5 **Programme for District Wide Parking Management Plans** – H Downie (Senior Advisor, Strategy and Programme) and D Young (Senior Engineering Advisor)

269 - 275

RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240612095033.
- (b) **Endorses** the following general programme for developing Parking Management Plans:
 - (i) Rangiora Town Centre Parking Management Plan – adopted within 12-18 months.
 - (ii) Kaiapoi Town Centre Parking Management Plan – adopted within 12-18 months.
 - (iii) Workshop with the Oxford Ohoka Community Board over the next few months to discuss the urgent parking issues in their ward, and to agree on a timeframe for developing an Oxford Town Centre Parking Management Plan.
- (c) Workshop with the Woodend Sefton Community Board over the next few months to discuss the urgent parking issues in their ward, and to agree on a timeframe for developing Parking Management Plans for the centres of Woodend, Pegasus and Ravenswood. **Notes** that work to investigate the potential scope of a Southbrook Development Plan will progress over the next 6 months.
- (d) **Circulates** this report to all Community Boards.

- 7.6 **Progressing Key Projects in advance of NZTA Funding Certainty** – J McBride (Roading and Transport Manager) and D Young (Senior Engineering Advisor)

276 – 280

RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240618099228.
- (b) **Endorses** the staff proceeding with design on Tram/Bradleys/McHughs Rd Roundabout from early 2024/25 onwards at an estimated cost of \$50,000 to be funded from the local share of the budget PJ 102136.000.5135 in advance of knowing whether the project has subsidy funding.

- (c) **Endorses** the staff proceeding with design on Lees Valley Bypass Bridge replacement from early 2024/25 onwards at an estimated cost of \$25,000 to be funded from the local share of the budget PJ 101780.000.5133 in advance of knowing whether the project has subsidy funding.
- (d) **Endorses** the staff proceeding with design on Fernside/Todds Intersection improvements from early 2024/25 onwards at an estimated cost of \$25,000 to be funded from the local share of the budget PJ 102135.000.5135 in advance of knowing whether the project has subsidy funding.
- (e) **Notes** that certainty on NZTA subsidy funding will be known in October 2024.
- (f) **Notes** that if the design does not proceed within the recommended timeframe, that the projects will be delayed by at least a year, and that there will likely be additional costs associated with the delay.
- (g) **Notes** that if subsidy is provided, the design costs will also be subsidised, and the staff will continue on the tendering and construction of each project.
- (h) **Notes** that if subsidy is not provided, the design costs of approx. 50% (or \$50,000 in total) will not be subsidised, and in that case staff will provide a report to the Council to recommend a way forward.

7.7 **Elected Member Remuneration 2024/25** – S Nichols (Governance Manager)

281 - 304

RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240420062991.
- (b) **Notes** the remuneration is set by the Remuneration Authority for the Waimakariri Mayor, Councillors and Community Board members from 1 July 2024 to 30 June 2025 as follows:

	1 July 2024 to 30 June 2025
Mayor	\$152,271
Deputy Mayor	\$71,940
Councillor (with portfolio and chairing responsibilities)	\$55,983
Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board Chair	\$19,402
Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board	\$9,701
Oxford-Ohoka Community Board Chair	\$18,278
Oxford-Ohoka Community Board	\$9,139
Rangiora-Ashley Community Board Chair	\$25,027
Rangiora-Ashley Community Board	\$12,513
Woodend-Sefton Community Board Chair	\$16,030
Woodend-Sefton Community Board	\$8,015

- (c) **Notes** there is sufficient Governance budget to cover the 3.7% increase in remuneration cost.
- (d) **Approves** the Elected Member Expenses Policy to 30 June 2025 (Trim 210811131910-V4).
- (e) **Circulates** a copy of this report and the approved Expenses Policy to all Community Boards for their reference.

- 7.8 **Representation Review Proposal** – S Nichols (Governance Manager) on behalf of the Representation Review Working Party

305 - 335

RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240608092544.
- (b) **Approve** that a Representation Review does not occur during 2024, ahead of the 2025 Local Body Elections.
- (c) **Approve** a Representation Review be undertaken during 2026/27.
- (d) **Approve** that the Representation Review Working Party be disbanded.
- (e) **Note** the new Council will appoint a Representation Review Working Party in early 2026.
- (f) **Note** a copy of the Council report be circulated to all Community Boards for information.

8. **CORRESPONDENCE**

9. **HEALTH, SAFETY AND WELLBEING**

- 9.1 **Health, Safety and Wellbeing Report June 2024** - J Millward (Chief Executive)

336 - 348

RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council

- (a) **Receives** Report No 240618099222
- (b) **Notes** that there were no notifiable incidents this month. The organisation is, so far as is reasonably practicable, compliant with the duties of a person conducting a business or undertaking (PCBU) as required by the Health and Safety at work Act 2015.
- (c) **Circulates** this report to the Community Boards for their information.

10. **COMMITTEE MINUTES FOR INFORMATION**

- 10.1 **Minutes of a meeting of the Utilities and Roading Committee of 28 May 2024**

349 - 362

- 10.2 **Minutes of a meeting of the District Planning and Regulation Committee of 28 May 2024**

363 - 367

- 10.3 **Minutes of a meeting of the Community and Recreation Committee of 28 May 2024**

368 - 376

- 10.4 **Minutes of a meeting of the Audit and Risk Committee of 11 June 2024**

377 - 387

RECOMMENDATION

THAT Items 10.1 – 10.4 be received for information.

11. **COMMUNITY BOARD MINUTES FOR INFORMATION**

- 11.1 Minutes of the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board meeting of 5 June 2024 388 - 396
- 11.2 Minutes of the Woodend-Sefton Community Board meeting of 10 June 2024 397 - 404
- 11.3 Minutes of the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board meeting of 12 June 2024 405 - 414
- 11.4
RECOMMENDATION

THAT Items 11.1 to 11.3 be received for information.

12. **COUNCIL PORTFOLIO UPDATES**

- 12.1 **Iwi Relationships** – Mayor Dan Gordon
- 12.2 **Greater Christchurch Partnership Update** – Mayor Dan Gordon
- 12.3 **Government Reforms** – Mayor Dan Gordon
- 12.4 **Canterbury Water Management Strategy** – Councillor Tim Fulton
- 12.5 **Climate Change and Sustainability** – Councillor Niki Mealings
- 12.6 **International Relationships** – Deputy Mayor Neville Atkinson
- 12.7 **Property and Housing** – Deputy Mayor Neville Atkinson

13. **QUESTIONS**

(under Standing Orders)

14. **URGENT GENERAL BUSINESS**

(under Standing Orders)

15. **MATTERS TO BE CONSIDERED WITH THE PUBLIC EXCLUDED**

Section 48, Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987.

In accordance with section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 and the particular interest or interests protected by section 6 or section 7 of that Act (or sections 6, 7 or 9 of the Official Information Act 1982, as the case may be), it is moved:

1. That the public is excluded from the following parts of the proceedings of this meeting.

The general subject of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution are as follows:

Item No.	Subject	Reason for excluding the public	Grounds for excluding the public-
15.1	Confirmation of Public Excluded Minutes of Council meeting of 4 June 2024	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	To protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons (s7(2)(a) and to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations) LGOIMA Section7(2)(i).
REPORTS			
15.2	Twinning Relationship Visit to Belgium November 2024	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	The report, contents and minutes remaining public excluded for the reasons of protecting privacy of elected members under LGOIMA Section 7(2)(a) and (f)(ii), however a media statement <i>may</i> be made at the appropriate time to advise of the Mayor and

Item No.	Subject	Reason for excluding the public	Grounds for excluding the public-
			Council representatives attending key commemorative events in Belgium
15.3	Appointment of Trustees for the Te Kōhaka o Tūhaitara Trust	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	The report and recommendations in this report be made publicly available, but that the discussions and minutes remain public excluded under LGOIMA Section 7(2)(a) to protect the privacy of natural persons.
15.4	Partial Purchase of property	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	The report, attachments, discussion, and minutes remain public excluded for reasons of protecting the privacy of natural persons and enabling the local authority to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial) negotiations and maintain legal professional privilege as per LGOIMA Section 7 (2)(a), and (i).

CLOSED MEETING

Refer to Public Excluded Agenda (separate document)

OPEN MEETING

17. NEXT MEETING

The next ordinary monthly meeting of the Council is scheduled for **Tuesday 6 August 2024**, commencing at 1pm, to be held in the Council Chamber, Rangiora Service Centre, 215 High Street, Rangiora.

MINUTES OF A MEETING OF THE WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL HELD IN THE COUNCIL CHAMBER, RANGIORA SERVICE CENTRE, 215 HIGH STREET, RANGIORA, ON TUESDAY 4 JUNE 2024 WHICH COMMENCED AT 1PM.

PRESENT

Mayor D Gordon (Chairperson), Councillors A Blackie, R Brine, B Cairns, T Fulton, J Goldsworthy, P Redmond, P Williams, and J Ward.

IN ATTENDANCE

J Millward (Chief Executive), C Brown (General Manager Community and Recreation), G Cleary (General Manager Utilities and Roding), R Hawthorne (Property Manager), C Fahey (Water and Wastewater Asset Manager), T Allinson (Senior Policy Analyst), V Thompson (Senior Advisor Business and Centres), G MacLeod (Community Greenspace Manager), G Steele (Property Acquisitions and Disposals Manager), A Childs (Property Acquisitions and Disposals Officer), C Taylor-Claude (Parks Officer), and A Smith (Governance Coordinator).

1. APOLOGIES

Moved Mayor Gordon Seconded Councillor Goldsworthy

THAT apologies for absence be received and sustained from Deputy Mayor Atkinson and Councillor Mealings due to their commitments as Commissioners at the District Plan Review Hearing.

CARRIED

2. CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

No conflicts of interest recorded.

3. ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Rangiora Volunteer Fire Brigade 150th Anniversary Celebration

Mayor Gordon acknowledged the celebrations for the 150th anniversary of the Rangiora Volunteer Fire Brigade held over Kings Birthday weekend. The celebrations included a dinner held on Saturday night, which the Mayor spoke at, and the fire station was open to the public on Sunday, with a display of fire engines and other emergency vehicles over the ages, along with demonstrations by the firefighters. There was a great response to this open day which was well attended by the community. Mayor Gordon extended congratulations to the Fire Brigade on reaching this milestone and acknowledged the significant role that the fire brigade played in the community, responding not just to fire callouts but to all emergencies.

Kings Birthday Honours

Kings Service Medal (KSM)

Mr Bernard (Bernie) POWER, OStJ for services to the community.

Mr Bernie Power had made a significant community contribution to the Waimakariri district for more than 60 years. Mayor Gordon took the opportunity to also acknowledge Bernie's wife, Jenny for her supporting role over this time.

Mr Power first joined St John as a Cadet in 1956 as part of the Youth Programme. He had served with St John since then, both as a volunteer and from 1989 to 2010 as an operational paramedic. In 2011 he was elected to the Rangiora Area Committee and joined the Hato Hone St John North Canterbury Fellowship. Since 2020 he had volunteered at the St John Opportunity Shop in Rangiora. B Power served for six years as Rangiora RSA Vice President and 12 years as President between 1994 and 2016. He was instrumental in the redevelopment of the RSA Club buildings between 2016 and 2019 and had been active in the fundraising for the provision of mobility aids and other services for members.

B Power first joined the McAlpines Pipe Band in 1962, becoming Drum Corporal, Drum Sergeant, and then Drum Major. Mr Power served as Vice President of the band for more than 25 years.

Companion of the New Zealand Order of Merit (CNZM)

Mrs Arihia BENNETT, MNZM, for services to Māori, governance, and the community.

Mrs Arihia Bennett (Ngāi Tahu, Ngāti Porou, Ngāpuhi) was the first woman and the longest serving Chief Executive Officer of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu from 2012 to 2024.

Under Mrs Bennett's leadership, Ngāi Tahu worked with the government and Christchurch City Council to assist with the 2011 Canterbury earthquakes and the 2019 Christchurch terrorist attack. She oversaw the growth of iwi finances and assets, which amounted to more than \$1.9 billion and included more than \$600 million in properties. She had been involved with Ngāi Tahu connecting with learning institutions in the United States of America, supporting iwi to work with green energy including hydrogen. She was CEO of He Oranga Pounamu from 2011 to 2012, the iwi mandated organisation for health and social services in the South Island. She was a member of the Pūhara Mana Tangata Māori advisory panel to the Ombudsman's Office and had been a member of the New Zealand-China Council. She was a member of the Global Women's Network and the Tuahiwi Māori Women's Welfare League. In 2021 she was appointed as Chair of the Ministerial Advisory Group to the Royal Commission of Inquiry into the 2019 Christchurch terrorist attack. Mrs Bennett had served on the Boards of Barnardos New Zealand and the Christchurch Women's Refuge (now Aviva).

Mrs Elizabeth CUNNINGHAM, JP, for services to governance.

Although Mrs Cunningham did not live in the Waimakariri district, the Council had an association with her through Environment Canterbury, when she was previously appointed as a Commissioner. In more recent years, the association had been through the Civil Defence and Emergency Management Group.

Mrs Cunningham (Ngāi Tahu, Ngāti Irakehu, Ngāti Mutunga ki Wharekauri) had a career spanning more than 50 years, focusing on the intergenerational health and wellbeing of whānau.

Mrs Cunningham served as President of the Māori Women's Welfare League Rāpaki branch from 2009 to 2022, having been a member since 1978 and chaired Te Waipounamu Māori Women's Welfare League steering committee. She was the first Māori elected to the Canterbury Area Health Board from 1991 to 1993, the first Māori elected as Canterbury Councillor for the Environment from 2004 to 2007 and chaired the Māori Advisory Committee for Environment Canterbury. In 2016 she was appointed a Commissioner for Environment Canterbury and led its climate change policy, one of the first in New Zealand. She had been the elected representative of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu since 2006, supporting the economic and cultural investments of her iwi at a national level. She was Chair of Kawawhakaruru at Ara Institute's School of Nursing/Midwifery from 2000 to 2012, having oversight of the programme and training. She was the Canterbury Earthquake Recovery Authority Governor from 2011 to 2016. She chaired Te Awheawhe Rū Whenua, a subcommittee established by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, which responded to the needs of the community. Mrs Cunningham had been a regional member of the Civil Defence and Emergency Management Group since 2020.

Councillor Tim Fulton acknowledged the recent passing of Andrew Davidson, formerly Manager Director of McAlpines Mitre 10. Mr Davidson was very involved as a supporter of Canterbury Country Cricket. Mayor Gordon added the significant contributions that McAlpines had made in supporting the local community over many years. Members stood to observe a moments silence.

4. CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES

4.1 Minutes of a meeting of the Waimakariri District Council held on Tuesday 7 May 2024

Moved: Councillor Redmond Seconded: Councillor Fulton

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Confirms**, as a true and correct record, the circulated Minutes of the Waimakariri District Council meeting held on Tuesday 7 May 2024.

CARRIED

4.2 **Minutes of a meeting of the Waimakariri District Council for the hearing of submissions to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan held on Wednesday 8 May 2024 commencing at 9am in Kaiapoi.**

Moved: Councillor Cairns

Seconded: Councillor Goldsworthy

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Confirms**, as a true and correct record, the circulated Minutes of the Waimakariri District Council meeting for the hearing of submissions to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan held on Wednesday 8 May 2024 in Kaiapoi.

CARRIED

4.3 **Minutes of a meeting of the Waimakariri District Council for the hearing of submissions to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan held on Wednesday 8 May 2024 commencing at 2.30pm in Oxford.**

Moved: Councillor Cairns

Seconded: Councillor Goldsworthy

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Confirms**, as a true and correct record, the circulated Minutes of the Waimakariri District Council meeting for the hearing of submissions to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan held on Wednesday 8 May 2024 in Oxford.

CARRIED

4.4 **Minutes of a meeting of the Waimakariri District Council for the hearing of submissions to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan held on Thursday 9 May 2024 in Rangiora.**

Moved: Councillor Cairns

Seconded: Councillor Goldsworthy

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Confirms**, as a true and correct record, the circulated Minutes of the Waimakariri District Council meeting for the hearing of submissions to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan held on Thursday 9 May 2024 in Rangiora.

CARRIED

4.5 **Minutes of a meeting of the Waimakariri District Council for the hearing of submissions to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan held on Friday 10 May 2024 in Rangiora.**

Moved: Councillor Cairns

Seconded: Councillor Goldsworthy

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Confirms**, as a true and correct record, the circulated Minutes of the Waimakariri District Council meeting for the hearing of submissions to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan held on Friday 10 May 2024 in Rangiora.

CARRIED

MATTERS ARISING (from Minutes)

There were no matters arising.

5. DEPUTATIONS AND PRESENTATIONS

There were no deputations or presentations.

6. **ADJOURNED BUSINESS**

There was no adjourned business.

7. **REPORTS**

7.1 **Submission Environment Canterbury Long Term Plan** – T Allinson (Senior Policy Analyst)

This report presented the Council's submission to Environment Canterbury's (ECan) Long Term Plan. To meet the ECan timeframes the submission had already been lodged and was not able to be formally received by the Council prior to the submission closing date. The submission was circulated to the Mayor and Councillors for their review prior to being finalised. T Allinson spoke to the report which was taken as read. It was noted the initial proposed ECan rate increase of 24% was now down to 17.9%.

Mayor Gordon acknowledged the work that had gone into the preparation of the submission.

Moved: Councillor Ward

Seconded: Councillor Fulton

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240416059490.
- (b) **Receives** the attached submission on Environment Canterbury's Long-Term Plan. (TRIM: 240327048995).
- (c) **Circulates** the report and attached submission to the community boards for their information.

CARRIED

Thanks were extended to T Allinson for the preparation of this submission.

7.2 **46 Main North Road, Kaiapoi – Public and Iwi Feedback – Reserve Classification** – A Childs (Acquisitions and Disposals Officer), C Taylor-Claude (Parks Officer)

A Childs presented the report which provided an update on the reserve classification for 46 Main North Road, Kaiapoi under the Reserves Act 1977 as a Local Purpose Amenity Linkage Reserve and provided the Council with the public and Iwi feedback received. Public notification had now been completed, which was published in the North Canterbury news in February 2024. There had been no submissions or objections received from the public in response to the notification. A cultural advice report had also been received which advised that there was no objection from the Rūnanga either. The report sought the approval of the Council for this Reserve classification.

Councillor Blackie noted that this land was originally obtained for drainage purposes and acknowledged the concerns of landowners in the area for any flooding in high rainfall events. It was confirmed that if the land was re-classified as a Local Purpose Amenity Linkage Reserve, there would still be the opportunity for a swale or other drainage infrastructure to be included on this land.

Following a question from Councillor Redmond, A Child advised that the change in classification would not prevent the land being leased out, until the Council had decided on the appropriate use for it.

Moved: Councillor Blackie

Seconded: Councillor Williams

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240502069340.
- (b) **Notes** Council has previously approved the proposal for the classification of 46 Main North Road as a Local Purpose Amenity Linkage Reserve under the Reserves Act 1977.

- (c) **Notes** the feedback received from Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga and that no submissions or objections were received from the public following the public notification.
- (d) **Approves** the classification of 46 Main North Road, Kaiapoi as a Local Purpose Amenity Linkage Reserve under section 16(1) of the Reserves Act 1977
- (e) **Delegates** to the Chief Executive and Property Manager authority to complete and execute any documentation required in conjunction with the Reserve Classification in line with the above Council approval.
- (f) **Circulates** this report to the Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board.

CARRIED

Councillor Williams supported the motion as the land retained the ability to be used for drainage if required while providing an improved entrance into Kaiapoi.

129 Johns Road, Mini Bus Trust Lease – G MacLeod (Community Greenspace Manager), G Steele (Property Acquisitions and Disposals Manager)

G MacLeod advised that the Mini-Bus Trust was currently located at Blake Street however had been seeking an alternative location which included a building to lease which it could operate from. This was a community service which operated through funding from Environment Canterbury, enabling people to get to hospital or other medical appointments and other transport needs. The Mini-Bus Trust fleet had doubled from six to 12 buses in the last few years which had resulted in the Trust seeking a larger site to operate from.

The land at 129 Johns Road was originally acquired for roading purposes with the possibility of some land being available for housing in the future. The lease arrangement would allow for land to still be available in the future.

Mayor Gordon suggested an additional recommendation (p) be included, which stated that the use of any residual land would need to be determined.

Councillor Cairns asked if the Trust would be required to pay development contributions. J Millward confirmed that development contributions had already been paid by the developer of the area. Regarding the landscaping, it was advised that the Greenspace team would work with the Trust to achieve the required planting.

Councillor Redmond enquired about the Marsh Road site that the Trust had previously used. G MacLeod advised that the required changes and setback to meet a resource consent for this site would have made it unsuitable for the Mini-Bus Trust and they would have considerable potential cost if pursued.

Moved: Mayor Gordon

Seconded: Councillor Ward

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. RES-08 / TRIM 240509073975.
- (b) **Approves** staff issuing a lease of 30 years (in total) to the North Canterbury Mini Bus Trust for approximately up to 1735m² of land located at 129 Johns Road, Rangiora. This will include two terms for rights of renewal with standard conditions as well as the following.
- (c) **Approves** an annual peppercorn rental charge to be payable to Council.
- (d) **Notes** that any development on the site is to be in accordance with relevant resource and building consent conditions.
- (e) **Notes** that the current design will need to be amended to have one road access only, at present it has a one-way system in and out.

- (f) **Notes** that the cost of building and development of the lease area sits with the North Canterbury Mini Bus Trust.
- (g) **Notes** that the North Canterbury Mini Bus Trust will be responsible for maintenance within the lease area, ensuring that it has relevant insurance for its assets and that it pays rates as an outgoing for the lease area.
- (h) **Notes** that the land at 129 Johns Road, outside of the lease area is available for Council to consider other development opportunities. This may or may not include housing.
- (i) **Notes** that this land was procured for use as a road. As such the granting of lease to the North Canterbury Mini Bus Trust will require an internal transfer of funds from the reserves account to the roading account for this portion of the land.
- (j) **Approves** allocation of \$1,190,000 plus GST (if any) in the reserves account to be used for the purpose of obtaining 129 Johns Road property.
- (k) **Notes** the anticipated impact of this would be a decrease in the roading account of \$3.22 per property and an increase in the recreation account of \$3.47 per property. The difference in the rate is due to fewer properties being charged under the recreation account.
- (l) **Notes** the sites current market value is \$1,190,000 plus GST (if any) as assessed in February by a registered valuer.
- (m) **Notes** the great service that the Mini Bus Trust provides for our community and recognises that this supports many who would otherwise not be able to access necessary services.
- (n) **Notes** that this development is in an area with residential and school so there is a level of amenity expectation within the area. The Greenspace Unit will work with the MBT to ensure there are quality edge effects and landscaping in place.
- (o) **Notes** that if Council decides not to use the land for the MBT, there is a moral obligation to once again, offer the land to the previous owner.
- (p) **Notes** that the Property Portfolio Working Group consider the options for use of the balance of the land and a report then be brought back to the Council.

CARRIED

Mayor Gordon acknowledged the work that the members of the Trust had undertaken to date to acquire a site and acknowledged the presence today of Trust member Craig Sargison. The Trust vehicles were currently parked outdoors which was not an ideal situation. The Mini-Bus Trust had some funding for this project, however, the funding could be lost if it was not used in a timely manner. Staff had looked at other options apart from the Marsh Road site and determined that the site at 129 Johns Road would be the best location. Not all of the land would be required by the Trust, which is why the new recommendation (p) was approved. The service that the Trust provided was a well-used and highly valued service by the community.

Councillor Ward also acknowledged that the Trust supported the community with the service they provide and encouraged members to support this recommendation.

8. MATTERS REFERRED FROM COMMITTEES OR COMMUNITY BOARDS

Nil.

9. **HEALTH, SAFETY AND WELLBEING**

9.1 **Health, Safety and Wellbeing Report May 2024** - J Millward (Chief Executive)

The report was taken as read and there were no questions from members.

Moved: Councillor Goldsworthy Seconded: Councillor Cairns

THAT the Council

- (a) **Receives** report no. 240520081012.
- (b) **Notes** that there were no notifiable incidents this month. The organisation is, so far as is reasonably practicable, compliant with the duties of a person conducting a business or undertaking (PCBU) as required by the Health and Safety at work Act 2015.
- (c) **Circulates** this report to the Community Boards for their information.

CARRIED

10. **COMMITTEE MINUTES FOR INFORMATION**

10.1 **Minutes of a meeting of the Audit and Risk Committee of 14 May 2024**

Moved: Councillor Ward Seconded: Councillor Brine

- (a) **THAT** Item 10.1 be received for information.

CARRIED

11. **COMMUNITY BOARD MINUTES FOR INFORMATION**

- 11.1 **Minutes of the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board meeting of 8 May 2024**
- 11.2 **Minutes of the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board meeting of 8 May 2024**
- 11.3 **Minutes of the Woodend-Sefton Community Board meeting of 13 May 2024**
- 11.4 **Minutes of the Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board meeting of 20 May 2024**

Moved: Councillor Williams Seconded: Councillor Redmond

- (a) **THAT** Items 11.1 to 11.4 be received for information.

CARRIED

12. **COUNCIL PORTFOLIO UPDATES**

12.1 **Iwi Relationships** – Mayor Dan Gordon

The Mayor and Chief Executive had recently held meetings with local Iwi which had been beneficial, and the relationship was progressing well.

12.2 **Greater Christchurch Partnership (GCP) Update** – Mayor Dan Gordon

No formal meeting had been held since the last Council meeting. A new GCP quarterly meeting schedule was now in place which would maximise both staff and elected member's time.

12.3 **Government Reforms** – Mayor Dan Gordon

The first reading of the second Water Services Bill which was introduced through the budget occurred last week. Mayor Gordon would be in support of the Council making a submission on the matter, once more of the detail was known.

Regarding the Maori Wards, Mayor Gordon confirmed that the Council would not be signing the letter from Local Government New Zealand (LGNZ) as the information was based on feedback from only a few Councils. It was also noted that the local Rūnanga Ngai Tuahuriri did not support the Māori Ward Bill as it was felt that it was not the right priority for LGNZ to be focused on.

Mayor Gordon commented on the Regional Council's joint approach to seeking support for government funding for building resilience with heightened stop banks so as to respond to significant weather events. This initiative had received a favourable response, however no details were known yet on what benefit this may bring to this district.

12.4 Canterbury Water Management Strategy – Councillor Tim Fulton

Councillor Fulton spoke on the allocation of the Action Plan funding, with a total spend of \$66,000 for the year. He believed there was a good balance struck with the projects that had been supported by this funding, with drainage and wetland recovery. The Action Plan funds were allocated as follows:

- Bittern Inanga Rushland, Lees Rd, Kaiapoi - \$15,000
- Hunters Stream, Cust \$5,285
- Ketchum Cottage, Fernside \$7,210
- O'Kair Lagoon, Lees Rd, Kaiapoi \$15,000
- Pohio Wetland, Kaiapoi \$11,700
- Riparian Enhancement Project, Whiterock Mains \$6,000
- Sefton Saltwater Catchment Group \$2,805
- Waimakariri Biodiversity Working Group \$3,000
- Total Spend \$66,000

The Action Plan funds were now fully allocated for this financial year. The other projects considered were; Aerial Mapping, Black Maps Ltd, Oxford Dark Sky Project – Oxford Dark Sky Group and Tuhaitara Wetland to Sea Corridor.

Councillor Fulton referred to the recent media communications on nitrate contamination in private water supplies, as tested by Greenpeace. The methodology of the testing had been questioned and had caused concern for private property owners. This testing had indicated levels of up to 20mg of nitrate per litre of water in some private wells. Mayor Gordon added that the Greenpeace water testing had been completely misleading and the Council's water testing had been called into question. Mayor Gordon emphasised that the Council public water supplies were regularly tested and met the standards and posed no risk.

Councillor Fulton was pleased to see ECan's final rating position following its Long Term Plan consultation and he believed they had struck a good balance.

Mayor Gordon referred to the future of Zone Committees, which had been discussed at a recent workshop of the Mayoral Forum. It was pointed out that "not one size fits all" in relation to Zone Committees, and there had been no decision made at this stage.

12.5 Climate Change and Sustainability – Councillor Niki Mealings

Councillor Mealings was not present. Mayor Gordon noted, as Chair of the Canterbury Climate Change Working Group, he would be attending a meeting of this group, scheduled to take place the following day.

12.6 International Relationships – Deputy Mayor Neville Atkinson

Deputy Mayor Atkinson was not present.

12.7 Property and Housing – Deputy Mayor Neville Atkinson

Deputy Mayor Atkinson was not present.

13. QUESTIONS

(under Standing Orders)

There were no questions.

14 URGENT GENERAL BUSINESS

(under Standing Orders)

There was no urgent general business.

15. **MATTERS TO BE CONSIDERED WITH THE PUBLIC EXCLUDED**

Section 48, Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987.

In accordance with section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 and the particular interest or interests protected by section 6 or section 7 of that Act (or sections 6, 7 or 9 of the Official Information Act 1982, as the case may be), it is moved:

Moved: Mayor Gordon

Seconded: Councillor Cairns.

That the public is excluded from the following parts of the proceedings of this meeting.

The general subject of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution are as follows:

Item No.	Subject	Reason for excluding the public	Grounds for excluding the public-
15.1	Confirmation of Public Excluded Minutes of Council meeting of 7 May 2024	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	To protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons (s7(2)(a) and to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations) LGOIMA Section7(2)(i).
15.2	Minutes for information of Public Excluded portion of the Audit and Risk Committee meeting of 14 May 2024	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	To protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons (s 7(2)(a) and to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations) (s 7(2)(i)).
REPORTS			
15.3	Contract 24/08 Northeast Rangiora Water Supply Main Tender Evaluation and Contract Award	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	The recommendations in this report be made publicly available but that the contents remain public excluded as there is good reason to withhold in accordance with Section 7(h) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act; "enable any local authority holding the information to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities". In accordance with the Conditions of Tendering, all tenderers will be advised of the name and price of the successful tenderer, and the range and number of tenders received. This information will be made available to the public if requested.
15.4	Acquisition of Easements – Rangiora properties	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	The report, attachments, discussion, and minutes remain public excluded for reasons of protecting the privacy of natural persons and enabling the local authority to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial) negotiations and maintain legal professional privilege as per LGOIMA Section 7 (2)(a), (g) and (i). Once the various negotiations and transactions are concluded, the recommendations included in the report may be released.
15.5	Pegasus Community Centre Sale and Purchase Agreement	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	The report, discussion and minutes remain public excluded for reasons of commercial sensitivities and negotiations under LGOIMA section 7(2)(i) however the resolutions can be publicly released following execution of the agreement with Templeton Project Limited
15.6	South MUBA Project Update	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	The report, attachments, discussion, and minutes remain public excluded for reasons of protecting the privacy of natural persons and enabling the local authority to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial) and maintain legal professional privilege as per LGOIMA Section 7 (2)(a), (g) and (i)

CARRIED

The meeting adjourned briefly at 1.38pm and reconvened in public excluded at 1.44pm.

CLOSED MEETING

Refer to Public Excluded minutes.

RESOLUTION TO RESUME IN OPEN MEETING

Moved: Councillor Fulton

Seconded: Councillor Cairns

THAT open meeting resumes and the business discussed with the public excluded remains public excluded or as resolved in individual reports.

CARRIED

The public excluded portion of the meeting commenced at 1.44pm and concluded at 2.28pm.

OPEN MEETING

16. NEXT MEETING

The next ordinary meeting of the Council is scheduled for Tuesday 2 July 2024, commencing at 9am to be held in the Council Chamber, Rangiora Service Centre, 215 High Street, Rangiora.

There being no further business, the meeting concluded at 2.30pm.

CONFIRMED

Chairperson
Mayor Dan Gordon

Date

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL

REPORT FOR INFORMATION

FILE NO and TRIM NO: EXT-39 / 240619099692

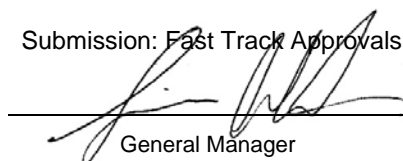
REPORT TO: COUNCIL

DATE OF MEETING: 2 July 2024

AUTHOR(S): Témi Allinson
Senior Policy Analyst

SUBJECT: Submission: Fast Track Approvals Bill

ENDORSED BY:
(for Reports to Council,
Committees or Boards)


General Manager


Chief Executive

1. SUMMARY

- 1.1 The purpose of this report is to provide Council with the formal opportunity to receive a submission that was submitted to meet Parliament's Environment Committee timeframes but was not able to be received at a formal Council meeting prior to that submission date.
- 1.2 The draft submission was circulated via email to Councillors and the Mayor for their review prior to being finalised by staff.
- 1.3 The submission was also considered by the Management Team prior to being finalised and submitted.
- 1.4 Council was provided an opportunity to speak to the select committee on its submission on Friday 14 June. The Mayor and CE represented the Council at the hearing.

Attachments:

- i. Document 240411056658 – WDC Submission on Fast Track Approvals Bill 2024

2. RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240619099692.
- (b) **Endorses** the attached submission on the Fast Track Approvals Bill. (TRIM: 240411056658).
- (c) **Circulates** the report and attached submission to the community boards for their information.

3. BACKGROUND

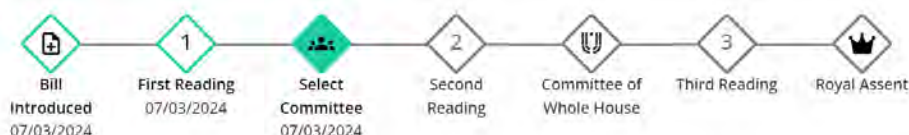
- 3.1. The Government has introduced legislation into Parliament to help with accelerating the process of gaining consent for infrastructure projects and other projects of significant regional or national benefits.
- 3.2. The Bill's purpose is "to provide a fast-track decision-making process that facilitates the delivery of infrastructure and development projects with significant regional or national benefits".

- 3.3. The premise is that the consenting process of these sort of projects takes too long, costs too much and fails to adequately consider their economic and social value; and therefore, needs to be simplified. The submission period for this bill closed on Friday April 19
- 3.4. The Bill delivers on the Government's 100-day plan commitment and was introduced to Parliament under urgency.
- 3.5. It consolidates into one, the multiple consenting and permissions processes that would apply under a range of legislation that are typically required for large and / or complex projects.
- 3.6. A series of workshops were held with Council to provide an opportunity to consider the key proposals of the draft LTP and provide staff with guidance on Council's position on the proposals.
- 3.7. In its submission, Council was supportive of the need for resource management reform. It acknowledged that the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) is now over 30 years old and, procedurally, has become increasingly complex and costly as the number of planning instruments and information requirements to be considered in preparing plans and processing resource consent applications, has grown.
- 3.8. Council however expressed concern that the Bill, in its current form, may not deliver on the Government's specified objectives of cutting through bureaucracy and fast-tracking decision-making process that will facilitate the delivery of regionally and nationally significant infrastructure and development projects.
- 3.9. We encourage the Government to reconsider its approach and perhaps slow down its pace of developing this piece of legislation to allow the opportunity for a comprehensive consideration of not just the Bill but also the list of eligible projects that are yet to be fully identified.
- 3.10. The full details of Council's submission are available in the document that accompanies this report [Trim: 240411056658].

Result of Submissions

- 3.11. The Select Committee is holding hearings on the Bill. Council was provided an opportunity to speak to its submission on Friday 14 June. The Mayor and CE represented the Council at the hearing.
- 3.12. The Select Committee process will run till 7 September 2024, when a report will be presented to Parliament and a second reading held.

Progress of the Bill



4. ISSUES AND OPTIONS

- 4.1 Issues and options in relation to the topic and the subject of the submissions have been canvassed as part of preparing the submissions.
- 4.2 There are no anticipated issues with this report. The Council has two options: it may receive the report and the submissions, or request staff to withdraw the submission.

Implications for Community Wellbeing

There are no implications on community wellbeing by the issues and options that are the subject matter of this report.

- 4.3 The Management Team has reviewed this report and support the recommendations.

5. COMMUNITY VIEWS

5.1. Mana whenua

Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri hapū are not likely to be affected by Council's submission.

5.2. Groups and Organisations

There are groups and organisations likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

5.3. Wider Community

The wider community is likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report. The likely impacts will emerge as the provisions of the Bill are finalised and made operational as legislation. Council will need to consider these carefully as they unfold.

6. OTHER IMPLICATIONS AND RISK MANAGEMENT

6.1. Financial Implications

There are no financial implications of the decisions sought by this report.

6.2. Sustainability and Climate Change Impacts

The Fast Track Approvals Bill proposes streamlining the process of consenting large scale infrastructure projects. In Council's submission, we have noted that there is a need for the decision making process to take into consideration the environmental and climatic impacts of the project alongside any economic benefits.

6.3 Risk Management

There are no risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report.

6.3 Health and Safety

There are no health and safety risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report.

7. CONTEXT

7.1. Consistency with Policy

This matter is not a matter of significance in terms of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

7.2. Authorising Legislation

Local Government Act 2002

7.3. Consistency with Community Outcomes

All four of Council's community outcomes are relevant to the actions arising from recommendations in this report.

- A place where everyone can have a sense of belonging.
- A place where our people are enabled to thrive and give creative expression to their identity and heritage.

- A place that values and restores our environment.
- A place that is supported by a resilient and innovative economy.

7.4. Authorising Delegations

No additional delegations are requested as a result of this report.

19 April 2024

Committee Secretariat
Environment Committee
Parliament Buildings
Wellington 6021
Aotearoa New Zealand
en@parliament.govt.nz

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL SUBMISSION ON THE FAST-TRACK APPROVALS BILL 2024

1. Introduction

- 1.1 The Waimakariri District Council (the Council) thanks the Environment Committee for the opportunity to provide a submission on the Fast-track Approvals Bill (the Bill).
- 1.2 We note it was first read by the 54th Parliament on 7 March 2024 and is open for submission until 19 April 2024. This submission provides some background about the Waimakariri District and outlines the Council's position on the Bill with our reasons, and amendments requested.
- 1.3 The Council is supportive of the need for resource management systems reform. The Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) is now over 30 years old. Procedurally it has become increasingly complex and costly as the number of planning instruments and information requirements to be considered in preparing plans and processing resource consent applications, has grown.
- 1.4 However, we are concerned that this Bill, in its current form, may not deliver the Government's specified objectives of cutting through bureaucracy and fast-tracking decision-making process that will facilitate the delivery of regionally and nationally significant infrastructure and development projects.
- 1.5 We encourage the Government to reconsider its approach and perhaps slow down its pace of developing this piece of legislation to allow the opportunity for a comprehensive consideration of not just the Bill but also the list of projects in Schedule 2A.
- 1.6 At a summary level, our recommendations to the Select Committee are:
 - a. In principle, we support the Bill with some reservations as highlighted in this submission.
 - b. The purpose of the Bill be amended and expanded to include provisions around safeguarding the environment, and the recognising of local knowledge, experience and priorities.
 - c. Projects that are explicitly prohibited by the RMA and District Plans be made ineligible for consideration, or if they are made eligible, there should be a framework for environmental safeguards.

- 1.7 With this in mind the Council seeks to make the following general points of submission. Detailed feedback on the Bill and its provisions are set out in the appendix document that accompanies this letter.

2. Background

- 2.1 Waimakariri District is located in the Canterbury Region, north of the Waimakariri River. The district lies within the takiwā of Ngāi Tūāhuriri, a hapū of Ngāi Tahu. It extends from Pegasus Bay in the east to the Puketeraki Ranges in the west, sharing boundaries with Christchurch City to the south, Selwyn District to the south and west, and Hurunui District to the north.
- 2.2 The Waimakariri District is geographically diverse, ranging from provincial townships such as Rangiora and Kaiapoi, through to the remote high country farming area of Lees Valley. Eighty percent of the population is located in the east of the district and approximately 60 percent of residents live in the four main urban areas of Rangiora, Kaiapoi, Woodend/Pegasus and Oxford. The remainder live in smaller settlements or the district's rural area, including approximately 6000 on rural-residential or rural 'lifestyle' blocks.
- 2.3 The district's population increased from 33,000 to 62,800 in the years 1996 - 2020 and is estimated now in 2024 to be just over to 71,000. This makes Waimakariri District the fourth largest territorial local authority of Te Wai Pounamu/ South Island, with a population larger than Invercargill City, Nelson and the Queenstown-Lakes District.
- 2.4 Geographically, socio-culturally, and economically the Waimakariri District has a strong agricultural base and rural outlook. People and visitors alike identify with and are attracted to a 'country lifestyle'. However, the district's proximity to Christchurch City means it has a significant and growing urban and 'peri-urban' population.
- 2.5 As a territorial local authority, the Council is the administering body for its locality. It has under statute responsibilities for diverse functions alongside providing a wide range of services that directly impact on the lives and safety of its residents.
- 2.6 This includes developing and managing the District Plan under the RMA. The District Plan sets rules for sustainably managing how people use, subdivide and develop land, what and where they can build and what kind of activities they can undertake. The Plan also controls any adverse effects an activity could have on the neighbourhood and protects the uniqueness of our district by looking after our heritage, cultural values, outstanding landscapes and coastal environment.

3 Summary of Position and Recommendations

- 3.1 The Council supports a review of the RMA. We support actions to make the planning process more streamlined; and to make resource consent and planning processes less costly and time-consuming.
- 3.2 We agree that there is merit in streamlining the multiple consenting and permissions processes that would apply under a range of legislation that are typically required for large and / or complex projects into one.

- 3.3 However, we think there is a risk that expedient decision-making could be prioritised at the expense of vital environmental considerations. This risk is particularly cogent given that the purpose and provisions of the Bill will take primacy over other legislation - like the RMA, and by extension over the environmental bottom lines approach that underpins RMA decision making.
- 3.4 We believe that a complete repeal and rewrite of the purpose and principles of the fast-track approvals process may not be the most efficient option. We submit the Government's objectives may be better achieved by amending the existing fast-track process under the RMA, or at least retaining its purpose and amending it to better deliver expected outcomes.
- 3.5 Council supports the requirement for projects to comply with Treaty settlements and other obligations before being referred to the expert panel. We recommend that a similar compliance assessment be undertaken in respect of potentially relevant environmental outcomes, including consistency with existing statutory provisions.
- 3.6 We think it is appropriate that the joint Ministers are aided in their decision making by an expert panel who will consider application to the FTA process and make recommendation to the Ministers. However, we are concerned about the skills and expertise that panel members will possess and their process of selection.
- 3.7 At present, any parties (including local authorities) invited by the joint Ministers to provide comments on a fast-track application must do so within 10 working days. This time frame is very short and limits Council's ability to consult with external stakeholders or seek professional advice in its comments.
- 3.8 We support the expert panel including a representative from the relevant territorial authority when a matter is being considered from that authority's area. Applying local district knowledge would be advantageous to the decision making of ministers, and reflect local knowledge, priorities and aspirations.
- 3.9 We suggest that power is highly concentrated with Ministers who can reject panel recommendations and choose to proceed down a different path. It also appears that the Minister for the Environment and the Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment appear to have no regulatory function despite them bearing responsibility for the long-term safety and health of New Zealand's environment. We would suggest that consideration be given to adding at least the Minister for the Environment to the joint Ministerial panel.
- 3.10 The eligibility criteria are very broad, and therefore a large number of projects may be eligible for referral. Furthermore, the list of eligible projects that are to be listed in Schedule 2A, and therefore able to proceed straight to panel consideration without needing referral, has not been made available for public scrutiny as part of this public consultation phase.
- 3.11 From what we gather projects will be assessed against how consistent they are with the purpose of the Bill, i.e., whether they provide significant regional or national benefits; and activities that are prohibited under the RMA are specifically made eligible. These activities often have significant adverse environmental or human health effects. We therefore recommend, at a minimum, the development and adoption of clear environmental limits to manage cumulative effects that may arise. It would be appropriate for consideration be

given to any unintended social, cultural and economic effects that may arise from such projects.

3.11 We would have valued more time to consider in more detail the proposed FTA to ensure the purpose and provisions of the Bill adequately meet the expectations of our community. What we submit is the best we could do within the timeframe allowed.

3.12 As per 1.6, our recommendations to the Select Committee are:

- a) In principle, we support the Bill with some reservations as highlighted in this submission.
- b) The purpose of the Bill be amended and expanded to include provisions around safeguarding the environment, and the recognising of local knowledge, experience and priorities.
- c) Projects that are explicitly prohibited by the RMA and District Plans be made ineligible for consideration, or if they are made eligible, there should be a framework for environmental safeguards.

Our contact for service and questions is Syliva Docherty – Senior Policy Analyst (03 266 9173 or syliva.docherty@wmk.govt.nz).

The Council would like to speak in support of its submission.

Yours faithfully



Dan Gordon
Mayor
Waimakariri District Council



Jeff Millward
Chief Executive
Waimakariri District Council

APPENDIX: DETAILED SUBMISSION

1.0 Overview of the Bill

- 1.1 As noted above, Council is supportive of the need for resource management systems reform. We commend the Government for their commitment to a comprehensive reform process and look forward to supporting the transition process as it evolves. However, we are concerned that the provisions of this Bill are far reaching and require a more deliberative and collaborative process than has been allowed for thus far.
- 1.2 We support the principle of replacing multiple planning processes with a single, integrated approach to managing consents and permissions that would be required for large and / or complex projects of regional or national significance. However, we do not agree that this should occur in a process that reduces RMA and other legislative considerations to a distant second. We consider that a more streamlined and truly speedy fast-tracking process would result from a process that gives an appropriate level of consideration to other matters beyond the purpose of the Bill and thereby limits the risk of litigation or perverse unintended consequences.
- 1.3 We encourage the Government to reconsider its approach and perhaps slow down its pace of developing this piece of legislation. We agree that there is a need for a decision-making process that facilitates the delivery of infrastructure and development projects with significant regional or national benefits.
- 1.4 As the Bill is currently worded, there is a clear hierarchy of criteria, where its development-focused purpose is dominant. This means environmental safeguards in the purpose and principles of the RMA, national direction, and council plans/policy statements are second order considerations. This creates the risk of undermining the purpose and principles of the RMA and yielding perverse outcomes.
- 1.5 It is Council's position that slowing down the process of passing this legislation will allow time for a robust consideration of the proposed measures and a thorough analysis of any unintended consequences. Furthermore, slowing down the development process of the Bill, will allow time for the list of Schedule 2A projects to be completed and made available for public consideration as well.

2.0 Project Eligibility

- 2.1 The Bill provides for projects listed under Schedule 2A to bypass the criteria for referred projects and go straight to the expert panel for consideration. There is however no guidance available on the criteria that will inform how these projects are chosen and the list of eligible projects has not been made available for scrutiny as part of the Bill's consultation.
- 2.2 Fast tracked projects can involve activities which are prohibited under the legislation like the RMA. Examples in Canterbury could include the discharge of effluent and hazardous substances on land near water and drinking water, excessive nitrogen on farmland and damming the Ashley Rakahuri River. We recommend that the Bill be amended to limit the ability to over-ride prohibited activity status; or at a minimum require stringent safeguards to limit the risk of perverse or environmentally adverse outcomes.
- 2.3 Furthermore, referred projects have to meet "nationally or regionally significant benefits" criteria which are currently not clearly defined and therefore raise the risk of misuse. We note that the Bill lists sectors in which projects may be considered significant, but there is

very little detail on the criteria against which these projects will be assessed. The legislation should provide a clear and unambiguous definition of what is considered nationally and regionally significant. This will also provide safeguards to ensure that the Bill does not result in outcomes that contravene the Bill of Rights Act or international climate change agreements.

3.0 Decision-making Process

- 3.1 We support the requirement that the expert panel must include one person nominated by Council and one person nominated by iwi. However, there is no requirement for any of the panel members to have knowledge, skills, and expertise relevant to environmental management or pertinent legislation like the RMA or the Conservation Act. We are also concerned the requirement for panel convenors to consult with Ministers when appointing panel members may limit the independence that would be expected of the expert panel.
- 3.2 Since the purpose of the Bill is to streamline and accelerate the approvals process for large and / or complex projects of significant benefit, we consider the extent of Ministerial involvement required through this process may end up serving as a hindrance to the desired speed. The scale, complexity and potentially large number of applications that may be lodged will generate administrative complexity and the process of funnelling them through for Ministerial approvals, may ultimately serve to be a bottleneck.
- 3.3 Good governance requires genuine consideration of the roles of governance and management, and that the provisions of the Bill as it is currently worded raises the risk of direct political involvement in an approval process that should otherwise be an evidential one. We agree that Government's role should be setting broad based national planning policy and legislation, but less so in assessing and determining individual development approvals.
- 3.4 All projects, either listed or referred, are required to be assessed by expert panels who then make recommendations to joint Ministers on whether projects should be declined or approved, and what conditions should be applied. Ministers in turn reserve the right to accept or decline the panel's recommendations. Council recommends that decision-making should be by the expert panel. However, if the position remains that Ministers get the final say on declining or approving projects, we recommend that there should be clear guidance on what matters of discretion must be considered if they choose to go against the panel's recommendation.

4.0 Localism and Public Participation

- 4.1 Local governance or localism - being decision-making at the level closest to the community affected, is recognised internationally as fundamental to delivering effective democracy (Hartwich, 2013). Ārewa ake te Kaupapa – Raising the Platform, Review into the Future for Local Government Interim Report (2021, p.8) states that, "local authorities play a critical role in the country's system of democracy, providing for people's voices to be heard in the leadership of their communities and the delivery of local services and assets." However, the proposed Bill promotes increased centralisation of decision-making and by-passes many of the key tenets of localism.
- 4.2 WDC champions the importance of localism and local knowledge in infrastructure planning and regulation. New Zealand is geographically diverse, and our regulatory history is full of examples of the difficulties of a 'one size fits all' approach to regulation and the adoption of generic rules that are not universally appropriate. More recent

examples of difficulties with centralised regulation include the suitability of national environmental standards for air, plantation forestry and freshwater as they apply in some areas; and the appropriateness of Medium Density Residential Standards (MDRS) in Tier 1 and Tier 2 local authorities under the Resource Management (Housing Supply) Amendment Act 2021. We consider the provisions of this Bill are in a similar vein as some of these regulatory approaches.

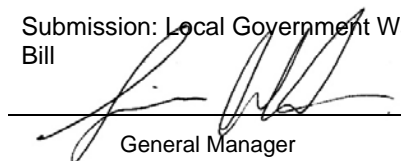
- 4.3 We are however pleased to note that the Government has challenged some of these provisions and has pledged to introduce legislation to address the others. We are also heartened by the Government's localism driven approach to its Local Water Done Well programme and urge that a similar ethos be applied to this legislation.
- 4.4 We note that the Bill is creating a process of decision-making which is centralised, with top-down control by Government. This approach of centralisation is apparent in the powers given to the joint Ministers including:
- a. referring applications
 - b. determining referral applications from the panel
 - c. making substantive decisions on fast-track applications
 - d. selection of panel conveners and panel members
 - e. dismissing panel conveners
 - f. choosing to accept or reject the panel's recommendation.
- 4.5 We note that the Bill will remove local decision making for projects likely to have the most impact on the local community and environment. As a Council, we would encourage a greater level of local decision making and advocate for a localism-based approach. We support the expert panel including a representative from the relevant territorial authority when a matter is being considered from that authority's area. Applying local district knowledge would be advantageous to the decision making of ministers, and reflect local knowledge, priorities and aspirations.
- 4.6 We encourage greater opportunities for public participation in planning and resource consent decision-making. The Bill provides reduced opportunities for public participation by:
- a. Not allowing public or limited notification of applications.
 - b. Not requiring hearings to be held, although it does not forbid them.
 - c. Not allowing parties to be able to comment on any new information provided by applicants.
 - d. Limiting appeal rights to points of law only.
- 4.7 Public participation in local authority decision-making is a key facet of democracy and a requirement under the Local Government Act 2002. There is the risk that the provisions of the Bill will constrain the public's ability to meaningfully participate in a process that potentially limits the enjoyment of their private property rights – a position that this Government has made clear that it enshrines. We therefore recommend that the Bill be amended to reconsider the opportunities for public involvement.
- 4.8 We also request that the right to appeal restrictions be lifted and opportunity be granted for appeals on social, economic and environmental grounds for all parties.
- 4.9 The 10 working days timeframes by which Councils must provide comments is very short, particularly as this is coupled with the fact that extensions cannot be sought and there is no assurance that late comments could be considered. This greatly limits our ability to comment on applications in an informed way which in turn raises the risk of conditions

needing to be amended afterwards, resulting in variation applications. Truncated timeframes can impact the quality of outcomes (for all parties) and decision making.

- 4.10 As a Council we have firsthand experience of this scenario arising as part of the COVID-19 Fast-track approvals process and would be keen to avoid a repeat. We request an increase in the timeframes for providing comments; and for the expert panel to have scope to suspend timeframes when further information is required or when parties are having to respond to complex applications.

5.0 Environment

- 5.1 The Ministers of Infrastructure, Transport and Regional Development are the three joint Ministers with final decision-making authority. The makeup of the joint Ministers' portfolios suggests a strong emphasis on economic development with limited focus on environmental and climate matters.
- 5.2 We note that the Minister for the Environment and the Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment appear to have no regulatory role in this Bill despite them bearing responsibility for the long-term safety and health of New Zealand's environment. We suggest that the Minister for Environment be included in the joint Ministers, as this will hopefully go a long way towards assuaging concerns that have been raised about the risk of damage to the environment.
- 5.3 Ministers can, but are not obliged to, decline an application if there are significant adverse effects. We are concerned that this is a high threshold and implies that moderate adverse effects are acceptable. There is also no requirement to consider cumulative effects of projects, therefore, some areas may experience increased environmental effects as a combination of projects add to them.
- 5.4 Council notes that the Bill does not appear to require any assessments of projects in line with the provisions of any international agreements that New Zealand is party to. We recommend that a requirement be inserted for projects under consideration to be assessed against international agreements for climate change and the environment.

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL**REPORT FOR INFORMATION****FILE NO and TRIM NO:** EXT-39 / 240619099920**REPORT TO:** COUNCIL**DATE OF MEETING:** 2 July 2024**AUTHOR(S):** Témi Allinson
Senior Policy Analyst**SUBJECT:** Submission: Local Government Water Services Preliminary Arrangements Bill**ENDORSED BY:**
(for Reports to Council,
Committees or Boards)
General Manager
Chief Executive**1. SUMMARY**

- 1.1 The purpose of this report is to provide Council with the formal opportunity to receive a submission that was submitted to meet Parliament's Finance and Expenditure Committee timeframes but was not able to be received at a formal Council meeting prior to that submission date.
- 1.2 The draft submission was circulated via email to Councillors and the Mayor for their review prior to being finalised by staff.
- 1.3 The submission was also considered by the Management Team prior to being finalised and submitted.
- 1.4 The Bill was first read by Parliament on 30 May 2024 and was open for submission until 13 June 2024. Council was provided an opportunity to speak to the select committee on its submission on Monday 24 June. The Mayor and CE represented the Council at the hearing.

Attachments:

- i. Document 240610093098 – WDC Submission on Local Government Water Services Preliminary Arrangements Bill 2024.
- ii. Document 240619099928 – Local Government Water Services Preliminary Arrangements Bill 2024.

2. RECOMMENDATION**THAT** the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240619099920.
- (b) **Endorses** the attached Local Government Water Services Preliminary Arrangements Bill. (TRIM: 240610093098).
- (c) **Circulates** the report and attached submission to the community boards for their information.

3. **BACKGROUND**

- 3.1. The Coalition Government did not support the previous government's Three Waters Reform but acknowledges that water services delivery must be improved urgently. As an alternative to the previous government's approach to reform, the Government's 100-Point Economic Plan and National Party's Local Water Done Well (LWDW) proposes an alternative three-stage reform process.
- 3.2. The Government's position is that, under the current settings, council ownership and delivery of water services is financially unsustainable and not meeting minimum quality standards for communities. Its analysis has identified 5 key root causes and indicates that there is a deficit of at least \$120 billion needed to improve New Zealand's water services.
- 3.3. There is therefore a need for locally led and financially sustainable solutions; that along with greater Government oversight and support, will afford councils the flexibility and discretion to determine the optimal structure, delivery method, and funding and financing arrangements for their water services.
- 3.4. The three stages to implementing LWDW are:
 - 3.4.1. Water Services Act Repeal Act 2024 (Bill One) which repealed the Water Services Entities Act 2022 in February 2024 to end the previous government's 10-entity model.
 - 3.4.2. Local Government Water Services (Transitional Provision) Bill (Bill Two), which is the topic of this submission and will set out the framework and initial operating environment for the replacement regime. This omnibus bill makes relevant amendments to the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA) and Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009 (LGACA).
 - 3.4.3. The Local Government Water Services Bill (Bill Three), which will provide the settings for economic regulation and is expected to be ready by December 2024.
- 3.5. Government has introduced legislation into Parliament to bring about the enactment of Bill Two. Essentially, the Bill provides for the following:
 - 3.5.1. Establish foundational information disclosure requirements to support the design and implementation of a new economic regulatory regime.
 - 3.5.2. Require councils to prepare water service delivery plans to be submitted within 12 months of the Bill's enactment that will set out a council's approach for delivering their water services in ways that are financially sustainable and meet regulatory compliance and service standards.
 - 3.5.3. Remove barriers and streamline requirements for establishing council-controlled organisations (CCOs) under the LGA to make it easier for councils to shift the delivery of water services into more financially sustainable organisational structures; and
 - 3.5.4. Explore options for the financial separation of Watercare from Auckland Council.
- 3.6. In its submission, Council expressed support for the review of the water services delivery sector in general, and the provisions of the Bill in particular, without some minor recommendations for amendments.
- 3.7. Council recommended that:

- 3.7.1. Water service delivery plans that will be developed should be of a similar length, of at least 30 years, as is currently required for infrastructure strategies under the LGA rather than the ten years proposed in the Bill.
- 3.7.2. The definition of water supply network provided in the Bill be clarified to make explicit that it covers infrastructure and processes that are used to provide drinking water supply and firefighting water supplies only where the supply is part of a drinking water supply.
- 3.8. The full details of Council's submission are available in the document that accompanies this report [Trim: 240610093098].

Result of Submissions

- 3.9. The Select Committee is holding hearings on the Bill. Council was provided an opportunity to speak to its submission on Monday 24 June. The Mayor and CE represented the Council at the hearing.

4. ISSUES AND OPTIONS

- 4.1 Issues and options in relation to the topic and the subject of the submissions have been canvassed as part of preparing the submissions.
- 4.2 There are no anticipated issues with this report. The Council has two options: it may receive the report and the submissions, or request staff to withdraw the submission.

Implications for Community Wellbeing

There are no implications on community wellbeing by the issues and options that are the subject matter of this report.

- 4.3 The Management Team has reviewed this report and support the recommendations.

5. COMMUNITY VIEWS

5.1. Mana whenua

Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri hapū are not likely to be affected by Council's submission.

5.2. Groups and Organisations

There are groups and organisations likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

5.3. Wider Community

The wider community is likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report. The likely impacts will emerge as the provisions of the Bill are finalised and made operational as legislation. Council will need to consider these carefully as they unfold.

6. OTHER IMPLICATIONS AND RISK MANAGEMENT

6.1. Financial Implications

There are no financial implications of the decisions sought by this report.

6.2. Sustainability and Climate Change Impacts

There are no anticipated sustainability or climate change impacts arising from the topic of this report.

6.3 Risk Management

There are no risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report.

6.3 **Health and Safety**

There are no health and safety risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report.

7. **CONTEXT**

7.1. **Consistency with Policy**

This matter is not a matter of significance in terms of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

7.2. **Authorising Legislation**

Local Government Act 2002

7.3. **Consistency with Community Outcomes**

All four of Council's community outcomes are relevant to the actions arising from recommendations in this report.

- A place that values and restores our environment.
- A place that is supported by a resilient and innovative economy.

7.4. **Authorising Delegations**

No additional delegations are requested as a result of this report.

13 June 2024

Committee Secretariat
Finance and Expenditure Committee
Parliament Buildings
Wellington 6021
Aotearoa New Zealand

fe@parliament.govt.nz

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL SUBMISSION ON THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT (WATER SERVICES PRELIMINARY ARRANGEMENTS) BILL 2024

1. Introduction

- 1.1 The Waimakariri District Council (the Council) thanks the Finance and Expenditure Committee for the opportunity to provide a submission on the Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Bill (the Bill).
- 1.2 We note it was first read by the 54th Parliament on 30 May 2024 and is open for submission until 13 June 2024. This submission provides some background about the Waimakariri District and outlines the Council's position on the Bill with our reasons, and amendments requested.
- 1.3 Council supports the Bill. We are heartened by the Government's approach and are confident that it will help deliver improved waters services delivery to the benefit of our people and communities.
- 1.4 WDC is a member of 'Communities 4 Local Democracy' (C4LD), a collaboration of 30 territorial authorities across New Zealand which opposed the previous Government's Three Water Reform and developed an alternative proposal to improve the delivery of three waters services.
- 1.5 We wish to speak to the Select Committee in support of our submission and request that the Select Committee travels outside of Wellington to hear submissions, including to Christchurch.

2. Background

- 2.1 Waimakariri District is located in the Canterbury Region, north of the Waimakariri River. The district lies within the takiwā of Ngāi Tūāhuriri, a hapū of Ngāi Tahu. It extends from Pegasus Bay in the east to the Puketeraki Ranges in the west, sharing boundaries with Christchurch City to the south, Selwyn District to the south and west, and Hurunui District to the north.

- 2.2 The Waimakariri District is geographically diverse, ranging from provincial townships such as Rangiora and Kaiapoi, through to the remote high country farming area of Lees Valley. Eighty percent of the population is located in the east of the district and approximately 60 percent of residents live in the four main urban areas of Rangiora, Kaiapoi, Woodend/Pegasus and Oxford. The remainder live in smaller settlements or the district's rural area, including approximately 6000 on rural-residential or rural 'lifestyle' blocks.
- 2.3 The district's population increased from 33,000 to 62,800 in the years 1996 - 2020 and is estimated now to be close to 70,000. This makes Waimakariri District one of the larger territorial local authorities of Te Wai Pounamu/ South Island, with a population larger than Invercargill City, Nelson and the Queenstown-Lakes District.
- 2.4 Geographically, socio-culturally, and economically the Waimakariri District has a strong agricultural base and rural outlook. People and visitors alike identify with and are attracted to a 'country lifestyle'. However, the district's proximity to Christchurch City means it has a significant and growing urban and 'peri-urban' population.
- 2.5 As a territorial local authority, the Council is the administering body for its locality. It has under statute responsibilities for diverse functions alongside providing a wide range of services that directly impact on the lives and safety of its residents.
- 2.6 This includes water services delivery. On behalf of its community, the Council manages:
- 11 drinking water schemes connecting 52 000 residents.
 - two wastewater treatment and disposal schemes connecting 45 000 residents.
 - 12 land drainage systems, seven rural and five urban that, in total, cover 10% of the District's land area but serve 90% of the population (52 000 residents).

3 Summary of Position and Recommendations

- 3.1 The Council supports a review of the water services delivery sector. We support actions to make them more robust and better able to provide critical infrastructure in a safe and timely manner.
- 3.2 We acknowledge that the Bill is part of a package of legislation and a precursor to the Local Government Water Services Bill that will provide economic regulation settings and greater clarity about how the water delivery sector will operate. This Bill is relatively straightforward, and Council supports it.

4 Service Delivery Plans

- 4.1 The Bill requires territorial authorities to submit comprehensive water services delivery plans (plans) within 12 months of the Bill's enactment. These plans are expected to provide detailed information on the current state of councils' water service arrangements as well as a strategy for achieving the delivery of financially sustainable service delivery.
- 4.2 The Bill provides the opportunity for the appointment of an individual facilitator (or panel of facilitators and/or an individual water specialist (or panel), where required, to support

councils with their plan development. We welcome this opportunity for knowledgeable external support to steward councils through the process.

- 4.3 Clause 13 of the Bill requires a water services delivery plan to cover a period of not less than 10 consecutive financial years, starting with the 2024–25 financial year.
- 4.4 Council's position is that this approach to water infrastructure management may be too piecemeal, and the time span covered too short to allow for a truly rigorous and comprehensive planning. Rather, we recommend that this time period be extended to at least 30 financial years as is currently required for council's infrastructure strategy under the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA).
- 4.5 Water services infrastructure are arguably the most significant of council owned assets, and at a minimum should be held to an equal level of rigour infrastructure planning as other council owned infrastructure assets.
- 4.6 Council is also concerned about the definition of water supply network. The definition included in the Bill covers both firefighting water supplies and drinking water supplies, while the Water Services Act 2021 only covers drinking water supplies. The Fire and Emergency Act 2017 sets out that firefighting water supplies includes "*reticulated water supply, waterworks or fixed bulk water supply systems; and any reservoir, dam, water race or tank water supply systems*".
- 4.7 This broader definition of water supply network under the Bill captures other infrastructure such as water race systems and potentially other water bodies not related to water services (e.g.: irrigation dams).
- 4.8 We understand that it is not intended to require infrastructure such as water races or irrigation dams to be covered by a water services delivery plan or joint arrangement in relation to water services. To make this clear we suggest that the definition of water supply network be changed to cover infrastructure and processes that are used to provide drinking water supply and firefighting water supplies only where the supply is part of a drinking water supply.

5 Conclusion

- 5.1 WDC thanks the Finance and Expenditure Committee for the opportunity to comment on the Bill. Council supports the Bill and Government's wider approach to water reform.
- 5.2 In conclusion, our recommendations to the select committee are:
 - a. Service delivery plans should be of a similar length, of at least 30 years, as is currently required for infrastructure strategies under the LGA.
 - b. That the definition of water supply network be changed to cover infrastructure and processes that are used to provide drinking water supply and firefighting water supplies only where the supply is part of a drinking water supply.

Our contact for service and questions is Tēmi Allinson – Senior Policy Analyst (027 337 8116 or temi.allinson@wmk.govt.nz).

The Council would like to speak in support of its submission.

Yours faithfully



Dan Gordon
Mayor
Waimakariri District Council



Jeff Millward
Chief Executive
Waimakariri District Council

Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Bill

Government Bill

Explanatory note

General policy statement

This Bill establishes preliminary arrangements for local government water services delivery. It is an omnibus Bill that amends other Acts and is introduced in accordance with Standing Order 267(1)(a) as the amendments deal with an interrelated topic that can be regarded as implementing a single broad policy. The single broad policy for this Bill is to lay the foundation for a new framework of water services management and financially sustainable delivery models that meet regulatory standards, including a new water services delivery arrangement for Auckland. Councils will be able to use the provisions to start planning future water services delivery and undertake steps to establish, join, or amend council-controlled organisations from the day after Royal assent.

The Bill contains stand-alone provisions and also amends—

- the Local Government Act 2002; and
- the Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009; and
- the Local Government (Rating) Act 2002; and
- the Receiverships Act 1993; and
- the Civil Defence and Emergency Management Act 2002.

Introduction

New Zealand's long-standing water infrastructure challenges require locally led and financially sustainable solutions. The Water Services Acts Repeal Act 2024 (the **Repeal Act**) put an end to the proposed 10 water services entities and confirmed that councils will continue to own and be responsible for water services. This Bill requires councils to provide transparent information about the current state of water services and to set out proposals to achieve financially sustainable water services that meet

regulatory standards. With greater oversight and support from the Government, councils will have the flexibility and discretion to determine the optimal structure, delivery method, and funding and financing arrangements for their water services.

A further Bill, to be introduced in December 2024, will set out a comprehensive range of options, tools and models that will enable councils to exercise those choices, contingent on meeting criteria for financial sustainability.

Relationship to other proposed legislation

There are 3 legislative components to achieving the new framework for water services delivery. The Repeal Act reversed the previous approach to reforming water services delivery. This Bill is the second component and sets out the preliminary arrangements to put water services infrastructure on the path to long-term financial sustainability.

Further legislation will provide for the long-term replacement regime, including—

- long-term requirements for financial sustainability:
- establishing new classes of council-controlled water organisations and service delivery models:
- accountability, planning, and reporting regimes for water services:
- providing for comprehensive economic regulation (being developed in conjunction with the Minister of Commerce and Consumer Affairs):
- amendments to the regulatory settings for Taumata Arowai—the Water Services Regulator:
- establishing a regulatory backstop power:
- refinements to water services delivery system settings:
- detailed changes to the Local Government Act 2002 and other legislation to strengthen the delivery of water services.

Water services delivery plans

The Bill requires territorial authorities to submit water services delivery plans (**plans**) within 12 months of the Bill's enactment.

The plans will provide detailed information on the current state of councils' water services arrangements for water supply (including drinking water), wastewater, and stormwater and set out a strategy for how they will achieve the delivery of financially sustainable water services and meet regulatory quality standards. The information on the current state of water services will lay the foundation for information disclosure as part of a future comprehensive economic regulation regime.

Territorial authorities may combine to prepare a joint plan to reflect joint arrangements. A joint plan must explain how water supply, wastewater, and stormwater services will be provided throughout the districts included in the joint plan. There is flexibility whether to include some or all stormwater services in a joint arrangement

to enable territorial authorities to make the right decisions for their local circumstances.

The plans must be provided to the Secretary for Local Government within 12 months of the Bill's enactment for consideration as to whether they comply with the requirements set out in the Bill. Extensions will be available based on criteria in the Bill, including extra time to consult on joint arrangements or finalise negotiations, and subject to any reasonable conditions.

Additional information disclosure

Foundational information disclosure will be provided through the plans to lay the groundwork for comprehensive economic regulation. The Bill provides for additional information disclosure for territorial authorities and council-controlled organisations providing water services where such disclosure promotes the long-term benefit of consumers and supports efficiency, innovation, and investment.

The additional information disclosure requirements will be applied to territorial authorities or water services council-controlled organisations by Order in Council made on the recommendation of the Minister of Local Government and the Minister of Commerce and Consumer Affairs. Determinations made by the Commerce Commission will outline the content of the additional information disclosure.

Alternative consultation and decision-making process for water services council-controlled organisations

The Bill sets out optional alternative consultation and decision-making requirements for territorial authorities to use if they wish to when establishing, joining, or amending a water services council-controlled organisation. Territorial authorities have the flexibility to use any or all of the alternative requirements instead of the existing processes in the Local Government Act 2002. If they do not use the alternative requirements in this Bill, the relevant requirements in the Local Government Act 2002 will continue to apply.

Under the alternative arrangements, territorial authorities may—

- identify 2 options for delivering water services (the status quo and the proposed new arrangement) in place of the requirement to identify all reasonably practicable options:
- consult only once and are not required to consult additionally on an amendment to the long-term plan resulting from a decision relating to water services council-controlled organisations:
- conditionally approve a long-term plan amendment subject to corresponding agreement from the other territorial authorities that are parties to a joint water services council-controlled organisation:
- consider in their decision making the impact of a joint water services council-controlled organisation on communities in the area covered, as well as in the territorial authority's district.

A joint committee between territorial authorities wanting to work together can be set up to undertake 1 or more of the process steps.

Councils will be temporarily exempted from the cost-effectiveness review laid out in section 17A of the Local Government Act 2002 that relates to a decision to establish, join, or amend a water services council-controlled organisation.

New financially sustainable model for Watercare

The Bill enables Auckland Council to implement its preferred model for water services delivery. Watercare Services Limited (**Watercare**) is a registered company and 100% owned by Auckland Council. It provides water supply and wastewater services in Auckland. Auckland Council's preferred model envisages greater financial independence for Watercare by—

- shifting the legislative obligation to provide water supply and wastewater services from Auckland Council to Watercare;
- prohibiting Auckland Council from providing financial support to Watercare in any situation or under any conditions;
- enabling the Minister of Local Government to appoint a Crown review team, Crown monitor, or Crown manager to Watercare if a significant problem exists;
- introducing interim economic regulation under the oversight of a Crown monitor until further legislation establishes a long-term economic regulatory framework;
- enabling the Crown to reimburse Watercare for expenses incurred during an emergency.

The provisions enabling Auckland Council's preferred model for water services delivery will commence on a date set by Order in Council made by the Minister of Local Government or, at latest, 1 July 2025. The provisions relating to interim economic regulation will commence on the day after Royal assent.

Auckland Council's water services delivery plan will only need to cover stormwater services.

Secondary legislation

The Bill contains provision for delegated decision-making powers through secondary legislation that—

- enable the Secretary for Local Government to make rules for additional matters to be included in water services delivery plans;
- subject councils to enhanced information disclosure requirements for their water services in addition to the information provided in water services delivery plans. This will be given effect to by an Order in Council;
- enable the Commerce Commission to make determinations to set out the additional information that a council must disclose;

- enable the Watercare Crown monitor to make a charter that imposes obligations on Watercare as part of interim economic regulation.

Departmental disclosure statement

The Department of Internal Affairs is required to prepare a disclosure statement to assist with the scrutiny of this Bill. The disclosure statement provides access to information about the policy development of the Bill and identifies any significant or unusual legislative features of the Bill.

A copy of the statement can be found at <http://legislation.govt.nz/disclosure.aspx?type=bill&subtype=government&year=2024&no=52>

Regulatory impact statement

The Department of Internal Affairs produced a regulatory impact statement on 14 March 2024 to help inform the main policy decisions taken by the Government relating to the contents of this Bill.

A copy of this regulatory impact statement can be found at—

- <https://www.dia.govt.nz/Resource-material-Regulatory-Impact-Statements-Index>
- <https://treasury.govt.nz/publications/informationreleases/ris>

Clause by clause analysis

Clause 1 is the Title clause.

Clause 2 provides that the majority of the Bill comes into force on the day after Royal assent. However, specified clauses come into force on a date set by Order in Council or 1 July 2025, whichever is earlier.

Part 1

Preliminary provisions

Clause 3 sets out the purpose of the Bill. The purpose is to require territorial authorities to provide information relating to their delivery of water services, to provide consultation and decision-making processes for territorial authorities to establish, join, or amend council-controlled organisations that deliver water services, and to provide for Watercare Services Limited to provide water services in Auckland in a financially sustainable manner.

Clause 4 sets out an overview of the Bill as follows:

- *Part 1* includes the preliminary provisions:
- *Part 2* provides for territorial authorities to prepare and submit water services delivery plans, sets out ministerial powers in relation to those plans, and requires territorial authorities to provide additional foundational information:

- *Part 3* sets out alternative and additional consultation and decision-making requirements for territorial authorities when they are establishing, joining, or amending a water services council-controlled organisation:
- *Part 4* provides for the appointment of a Crown monitor to make a Watercare charter, to ensure the separation of Watercare Services Limited and Auckland Council. The Crown monitor will monitor and report on Watercare Services Limited.

Clause 5 defines terms used in the Bill.

Clause 6 provides for transitional savings, and related provisions, as set out in *Schedule 1*.

Clause 7 provides that the Bill, when enacted, will bind the Crown.

Part 2

Water services delivery plans and foundational information disclosure requirements

Subpart 1—Water services delivery plans

Water services delivery plan: obligation and contents

Clause 8 requires each territorial authority to prepare a water services delivery plan, setting out the current state of the authority's water services, and demonstrating a commitment to delivering water services in the future.

Clause 9 provides that, in certain circumstances, 2 or more territorial authorities may combine to deliver water services across the authorities' combined area.

Clause 10 provides that a water services delivery plan must relate to all water services.

Clause 11 lists the information that a water services delivery plan must contain.

Clause 12 lists additional information that must be contained in a joint water services delivery plan.

Clause 13 requires a water services delivery plan to cover a period of not less than 10 consecutive financial years, starting with the 2024–25 financial year. A plan must provide more detail for the first 3 years covered by the plan than for the following 7 years.

Clause 14 provides that the Secretary for Local Government (the **Secretary**) may make rules relating to water services delivery plans.

Clause 15 requires a territorial authority to adopt its water services delivery plan by resolution.

Submission of water services delivery plan

Clause 16 requires a water services delivery plan to be submitted to the Secretary within 1 year of the Bill being enacted or by a later date specified by the Minister under *clause 17*.

Clause 17 provides that the Minister may, on application from a territorial authority, grant an extension to the deadline for submitting a water services delivery plan.

Acceptance of water services delivery plan

Clause 18 requires the Secretary to consider each water services delivery plan that is submitted, and to accept it if satisfied that the plan complies with the requirements set out in this Bill.

Clause 19 provides that after the Secretary accepts a water services delivery plan, the applicant must publish the plan, and the Secretary must provide a copy to the Commerce Commission and Taumata Arowai.

Subpart 2—Ministerial powers in relation to water services delivery plans

Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans

Clause 20 authorises the Minister to appoint a Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans, and sets out the grounds on which the Minister may make such an appointment.

Clause 21 requires the Minister to give notice of appointing a Crown facilitator, and sets out what information must be included in the notice.

Clause 22 sets out the role of a Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans.

Crown water services specialist

Clause 23 authorises the Minister to appoint a Crown water services specialist, and sets out the grounds on which the Minister may make such an appointment.

Clause 24 requires the Minister to give notice of appointing a Crown water services specialist, and sets out what information must be included in the notice.

Clause 25 sets out the role of a Crown water services specialist.

Clause 26 provides that any direction that a Crown water services specialist has given ceases to have effect when their appointment expires.

General provisions

Clause 27 requires a territorial authority or group of territorial authorities to co-operate with a Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans or a Crown water services specialist (a **ministerial appointee**).

Clause 28 provides that the Minister's powers under this subpart are in addition to, not in place of, the Minister's powers under Part 10 of the Local Government Act 2002 (the **LGA2002**).

Clauses 29 and 30 relate to a ministerial appointee's entitlement to remuneration and expenses.

Clause 31 specifies that a ministerial appointee is protected from liability for their acts or omissions done in good faith.

Subpart 3—Foundational information: additional disclosure requirements

Clause 32 sets out the purpose of *subpart 3*.

Clause 33 provides that *subpart 3* applies to an entity (a **specified entity**) that is named in an Order in Council made by the Governor-General on the recommendation of the Minister and the Minister of Commerce and Consumer Affairs. Before making a recommendation, those Ministers must consider advice from the Secretary and the Commerce Commission.

Clause 34 defines the term **specified entity**.

Determinations

Clause 35 authorises the Commerce Commission to make a determination setting out the information that a specified entity must make publicly available and disclose to the Commerce Commission.

Clause 36 provides that a specified entity that is covered by a determination made under *clause 35* must make the required information publicly available and provide a copy of the information to the Commission.

Clause 37 lists what a determination made under *clause 35* must include, what the Commission may have regard to when making a determination, and what types of information a specified entity may be required to provide.

Clause 38 provides that a determination may, in certain circumstances, require a specified entity to provide additional information that includes information in relation to goods and services that are not incidental to, or related to, delivering water services.

Clause 39 authorises a specified entity to charge the public to provide information that a determination requires the entity to provide.

Clause 40 provides that the Commerce Commission has additional monitoring and investigation powers to enable it to carry out its functions and exercise its powers under *Part 2* of the Bill.

Sharing of information

Clause 41 authorises the Commerce Commission and the department to share information with each other for the purposes of the Bill. It also limits the purposes for which such shared information may be used.

Pecuniary penalty orders

Clause 42 authorises the High Court to order a person to pay a pecuniary penalty in the listed circumstances related to disclosing information under this subpart.

Clause 43 sets the maximum pecuniary penalty at \$500,000 for an individual or \$5 million in any other case. It also lists matters that the court must have regard to, when determining the amount of a pecuniary penalty.

Orders about information disclosure

Clause 44 provides that the High Court may order a specified entity to comply with an obligation relating to disclosing information under *subpart 3 of Part 2*.

Offence

Clause 45 provides that it is an offence to intentionally contravene a requirement relating to an obligation to disclose information, or to fail to comply with an order under *clause 44*. The maximum fine for the offence is \$200,000 for an individual, or \$1,000,000 in all other cases.

Miscellaneous provisions

Clause 46 lists certain provisions in the Commerce Act 1986 that apply for the purposes of *subpart 3 of Part 3*.

Amendment to Local Government Act 2002

Clause 47 provides that *clause 48* amends the LGA2002.

Clause 48 replaces section 255(2) of the LGA2002 so it provides that the Minister may also exercise powers under Part 10 of the LGA2002 in relation to territorial authorities or joint arrangements under the Bill.

Part 3

Establishing water services council-controlled organisations

Preliminary provisions

Clause 49 sets out the purpose of *Part 3* of the Bill, which is to provide alternative provisions and greater flexibility in relation to a territorial authority using a council-controlled organisation (a CCO) under the LGA2002 to deliver water services.

Alternative requirements

Clause 50 specifies that territorial authorities may rely on any of the alternative requirements set out in *clauses 51 to 54* in place of the corresponding obligations that would otherwise apply in the LGA2002. However, all other obligations in that Act continue to apply.

Clause 51 provides that a territorial authority is only required to identify and assess the listed 2 options, rather than all reasonably practicable options as required under section 77(1)(a) and (b) of the LGA2002.

Clause 52 provides that a territorial authority is only required to consult once before deciding whether to establish or join a CCO. However, an authority may decide to consult further, in which case it must have regard to the listed matters. This clause applies in place of the obligation to consult set out in section 56(1) of the LGA2002.

Clause 53 provides that if a territorial authority is required to amend its long-term plan for the purposes of establishing, joining, or amending a CCO, it is not required to consult in certain circumstances. This clause applies in place of the obligation to consult in 93(5) of the LGA2002.

Clause 54 sets out the information that a territorial authority must make publicly available when consulting in relation to establishing, joining, or amending a CCO. This clause applies in place of the information requirements set out in section 82A(2) of the LGA2002.

Additional powers and exemption

Clause 55 provides that if a territorial authority is deciding whether to establish, join, or amend a CCO, it may consider additional listed factors. This clause applies despite sections 12(4) and 14(1)(g) of the LGA2002.

Clause 56 provides that 2 or more territorial authorities may use joint committees to perform 1 or more of the listed tasks.

Clause 57 authorises a territorial authority to conditionally approve amending its long-term plan if required for the purpose of establishing, joining, or amending a joint CCO with another territorial authority.

Clause 58 provides a temporary exemption from the obligation in section 17A of the LGA2002 to do a cost-effectiveness review in relation to a CCO in certain circumstances.

Clause 59 repeals *clauses 58 and 59* 5 years after the Bill is enacted.

Part 4

Watercare Services Limited

Crown monitor

Clause 60 provides that the Minister may appoint a Crown monitor to Watercare. A Crown monitor must be a government department, a Crown entity, or a company named in Schedule 4A of the Public Finance Act 1989.

Clause 61 requires the Minister to appoint the Crown monitor by providing notice to Watercare and to the Crown monitor.

Clause 62 sets out the role of the Crown monitor, which includes making a charter for Watercare and monitoring and reporting on Watercare's performance.

Watercare charter

Clause 63 provides that the Crown monitor must prepare and make a Watercare charter. This clause also specifies that a charter must be made in 2 separate parts and lists what must be included in each part. A charter is secondary legislation.

Part 1 of Watercare charter

Clause 64 sets out the details of what must be contained in Part 1 of a Watercare charter: minimum service quality standards, financial performance objectives, and a customer compensation scheme.

Clause 65 requires Watercare to submit a draft business plan to the Crown monitor, and sets out the details of what must be contained in that plan. Watercare must submit the business plan within 4 months after the Crown monitor makes Part 1 of the Watercare charter.

Clause 66 requires that each business plan that Watercare submits to the Crown monitor must cover a period of at least 10 consecutive financial years, with more detail provided in respect of the first 3 years than for the rest of the period.

Clause 67 provides that when it receives a business plan from Watercare, the Crown monitor must review the plan and provide comments to Watercare, and may require Watercare to provide additional information. Watercare must then submit a finalised business plan that addresses the comments received and includes any requested additional information.

Part 2 of Watercare charter

Clause 68 sets out the details of a price-quality path that must be contained in Part 2 of a Watercare charter.

Effect of Watercare charter

Clause 69 provides that when the Crown monitor makes Part 2 of the charter, the charter is binding on Watercare. If there are any inconsistencies between the charter and Auckland Council's long-term plan, the charter prevails. When the charter applies, an agreement for services between Watercare and a customer must include information relating to the customer compensation scheme required by the charter.

Information disclosure

Clause 70 provides that the Crown monitor may require Watercare to provide any information the Crown monitor requires to perform its role. The Crown monitor may also require Watercare to certify that any information provided is true and accurate.

Crown monitor to monitor and report on performance

Clause 71 requires the Crown monitor to monitor Watercare's performance under the charter.

Clause 72 requires the Crown monitor to report annually on Watercare's performance against specified components of the charter. The Crown monitor must provide the report to Auckland Council, the Minister, and the Minister of Commerce and Consumer Affairs.

Clause 73 requires the Crown monitor to report quarterly on its own performance to the Minister.

Crown monitor's expenses

Clause 74 provides that Watercare must reimburse the Crown for the Crown monitor's expenses incurred in monitoring Watercare.

Commerce Commission's functions and powers

Clause 75 provides the Commerce Commission with its functions and powers for the purposes of this Bill.

Enforcement

Clause 76 provides that the High Court may, if satisfied that Watercare contravened the charter (or attempted to contravene the charter), make various orders including an injunction or an order to pay a pecuniary penalty.

Clause 77 provides that the maximum pecuniary penalty payable under *clause 76* is \$10,000,000 in respect of each act or omission. It also lists matters that the court must consider when determining the amount of a pecuniary penalty.

Clause 78 provides that the High Court may, if satisfied that Watercare has failed to provide required information or submit a business plan under *clause 65*, make various orders including an order to pay a pecuniary penalty.

Clause 79 provides that the maximum pecuniary penalty payable under *clause 78* is \$300,000 in respect of each act or omission.

Clause 80 provides that the High Court may, in addition to a pecuniary penalty, impose a further penalty for each day of a continuing breach. The further penalty is \$500,000 each day for a breach under *clause 76*, or \$50,000 each day for a breach under *clause 78*.

Clause 81 provides for a right of appeal to the Court of Appeal in relation to proceedings under *clause 76*, on a question of law.

Related amendments to LGA2002

Clause 82 provides that *clauses 83 to 91* amend the LGA2002.

Clauses 83 and 84 amend sections 121 and 122, to provide that the Crown is not liable for, or guarantee, any debts or liabilities of Watercare.

Clause 85 amends section 124 by inserting definitions of Auckland and Watercare for the purposes of Part 7 of the LGA2002.

Clause 86 amends section 127, which provides a duty to ensure that communities have access to drinking water in certain circumstances. The amendment extends the duty to Watercare.

Clause 87 amends section 130, which places an obligation to provide water services on local government organisations. The amendment provides that the obligation only applies to Auckland Council in relation to stormwater services.

Clause 88 inserts *new section 130A*, which extends the obligation in section 130 to Watercare in relation to water supply and wastewater services.

Clauses 89, 90, and 91 amend sections 253, 254, and 255 to provide that the Ministers power's under Part 10 of the LGA2002 in relation to local authorities also extend to Watercare.

Related amendments to Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009

Clause 92 provides that *clauses 93 to 99* amend the Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009.

Clause 93 amends section 4 by amending the definition of Auckland water organisation so that it means Watercare.

Clause 94 inserts *new section 56A* and cross-headings. *New section 56A* provides for the financial separation between Auckland Council and Watercare.

Clause 95 inserts *new sections 57A and 57B*. *New section 57A* requires Watercare to repay any debt to Auckland Council within a period of 5 years. *New section 57B* provides that *new sections 57A and 57B* are repealed after 5 years.

Clause 96 amends section 58 to reflect the financial separation between Auckland Council and Watercare.

Clause 97 inserts *new section 60A*, which relates to the situation if a receiver is appointed in respect of a loan granted to Watercare.

Clause 98 amends section 92 to reflect the financial separation between Auckland Council and Watercare.

Consequential amendments

Clause 99 and Schedule 2 set out the consequential amendments the Bill makes to primary and secondary legislation in relation to Watercare.

Hon Simeon Brown

Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Bill

Government Bill

Contents

	Page
1 Title	5
2 Commencement	6
Part 1	
Preliminary provisions	
3 Purpose	6
4 Overview	6
5 Interpretation	7
6 Transitional, savings, and related provisions	9
7 Act binds the Crown	9
Part 2	
Water services delivery plans and foundational information disclosure requirements	
Subpart 1—Water services delivery plans	
<i>Water services delivery plan: preparation and contents</i>	
8 Territorial authority must prepare water services delivery plan	10
9 Territorial authorities may enter into arrangement to submit joint plan	10
10 Water services to be covered by water services delivery plan	11
11 Contents of water services delivery plan	11
12 Additional requirements for joint water service delivery plans	12
13 Period covered by water services delivery plan	13
14 Secretary may make rules in relation to water services delivery plans	14

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

15	Process to prepare and adopt water services delivery plan	14
	<i>Submission of water services delivery plan</i>	
16	Plan must be submitted to Secretary for acceptance	15
17	Minister may grant extension to deadline for submitting water services delivery plan	15
	<i>Acceptance of water services delivery plan</i>	
18	Secretary accepts water services delivery plan	16
19	Publication of accepted water services delivery plan	17
	Subpart 2—Ministerial powers in relation to water services delivery plans	
	<i>Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans</i>	
20	Minister may appoint Crown facilitator	17
21	How Crown facilitator appointed	18
22	Role of Crown facilitator	18
	<i>Crown water services specialist</i>	
23	Minister may appoint Crown water services specialist	19
24	How Crown water services specialist is appointed	20
25	Role of Crown water services specialist	21
26	Decisions and directions of Crown water services specialist	21
	<i>General provisions</i>	
27	Obligation to co-operate	21
28	Minister retains powers under Part 10 of LGA2002	22
29	Remuneration and expenses of ministerial appointee	22
30	Recovery of expenses and remuneration from local authority	22
31	Protection from liability	23
	Subpart 3—Foundational information disclosure requirements	
32	Purpose of this subpart	23
33	Application of this subpart	23
34	Meaning of specified entity	24
	<i>Determinations</i>	
35	Commission may make determination	24
36	Effect of determination	25
37	Contents of determination	25
38	Determination may require specified entity to provide additional information	27
39	Charge for providing copies to public	28
40	Additional monitoring and investigation powers based on subpart 8 of Part 4 of Commerce Act 1986	28

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

	<i>Sharing of information</i>	
41	Sharing of information and documents between Commission and department	28
	<i>Pecuniary penalty orders</i>	
42	When High Court may make pecuniary penalty order	29
43	Maximum amount of pecuniary penalty	30
	<i>Orders about information disclosure</i>	
44	Order requiring information disclosure requirement to be complied with	30
	<i>Offence</i>	
45	Offence relating to requirement to disclose information	30
	<i>Miscellaneous provisions</i>	
46	Application of Part 7 of Commerce Act 1986 (Miscellaneous provisions)	31
	<i>Amendment to Local Government Act 2002</i>	
47	Amendment to Local Government Act 2002	31
48	Section 255 amended (Application of this Part)	31
	Part 3	
	Establishing water services council-controlled organisations	
	<i>Preliminary provisions</i>	
49	Purpose of this Part	32
	<i>Alternative requirements</i>	
50	Alternatives to requirements in Local Government Act 2002	32
51	Alternative requirement: decision making	32
52	Alternative requirement: consultation	33
53	Alternative requirement: consultation on amendment to long-term plan	34
54	Alternative requirement: information requirements for consultation	34
	<i>Additional powers and exemption</i>	
55	Ability to consider joint service area	35
56	Joint committees	35
57	Ability to conditionally approve amending long-term plan	36
58	Exemption from cost-effectiveness review	36
59	Repeal of section 58	36
	Part 4	
	Watercare Services Limited	
	<i>Crown monitor</i>	
60	Minister may appoint Crown monitor	36

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

61	How Crown monitor appointed	36
62	Role of Crown monitor	37
	<i>Watercare charter</i>	
63	Watercare charter	37
	<i>Part 1 of Watercare charter</i>	
64	Content of Part 1 of Watercare charter	38
65	Watercare must submit business plan to Crown monitor	39
66	Period covered by business plan submitted to Crown monitor	39
67	Process for finalising business plan	40
	<i>Part 2 of Watercare charter</i>	
68	Content of Part 2 of Watercare charter	40
	<i>Effect of Watercare charter</i>	
69	Effect of charter	41
	<i>Information disclosure</i>	
70	Crown monitor may require information disclosure	42
	<i>Crown monitor to monitor and report on performance</i>	
71	Crown monitor must monitor Watercare's performance	43
72	Crown monitor must make annual report	43
73	Crown monitor must make quarterly reports to Minister	43
	<i>Crown monitor's expenses</i>	
74	Crown monitor's expenses are recoverable from Watercare	44
	<i>Commerce Commission's functions and powers</i>	
75	Commerce Commission's functions and powers	44
	<i>Enforcement</i>	
76	High Court may impose orders	44
77	Maximum amount of pecuniary penalty	45
78	Order to disclose information	46
79	Maximum amount of pecuniary penalty	46
80	Further penalty for continuing breach	46
81	Appeal	46
	<i>Related amendments to LGA2002</i>	
82	Principal Act	47
83	Section 121 amended (The Crown not liable for debts)	47
84	Section 122 amended (Disclosure document and loan documents to contain statement that the Crown does not guarantee financial products or loan)	47
85	Section 124 amended (Interpretation)	47
86	Section 127 amended (Duty to ensure communities have access to drinking water if existing suppliers facing significant problems)	47

Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Bill		cl 1
87	Section 130 amended (Obligation to maintain water services)	47
88	New section 130A inserted (Obligation to maintain water services: Watercare)	48
	130A Obligation to maintain water services: Watercare	48
89	Section 253 amended (Outline of Part)	48
90	Section 254 amended (How this Part works)	48
91	Section 255 amended (Application of this Part)	48
	<i>Related amendments to Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009</i>	
92	Principal Act	49
93	Section 4 amended (Interpretation)	49
94	New section 56A and cross-headings inserted	49
	<i>Auckland Council</i>	
	56A Limits on Auckland Council	49
	<i>Auckland water organisations</i>	
95	New sections 57A and 57B inserted	51
	57A Auckland water organisation must repay debt to Auckland Council	51
	57B Repeal of section 57A	52
96	Section 58 amended (Auckland water organisation must give effect to LTP and act consistently with other specified plans and strategies of Council)	52
97	New section 60A inserted (Charges as security)	52
	60A Charges as security	52
98	Section 92 amended (Substantive council-controlled organisations must give effect to LTP and act consistently with other specified plans and strategies of Council)	53
	<i>Consequential amendments</i>	
99	Consequential amendments relating to Watercare Services Limited	53
	Schedule 1	54
	Transitional, savings, and related provisions	
	Schedule 2	55
	Consequential amendments relating to Watercare Services Limited	

The Parliament of New Zealand enacts as follows:

1 Title

This Act is the Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Act **2024**.

2 Commencement

- (1) This Act comes into force on the day after Royal assent.
- (2) However, **sections 82 to 99 and Schedule 2** come into force on a date or dates set by Order in Council made on the recommendation of the Minister.
- (3) Any provision of this Act that has not come into force by **1 July 2025** comes into force then. 5
- (4) An Order in Council made under this section is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Part 1 Preliminary provisions

10

3 Purpose

- (1) The purpose of this Act is to establish a framework for local government to manage and deliver water services.
- (2) This Act delivers that purpose by—
 - (a) requiring territorial authorities to prepare water services delivery plans; and 15
 - (b) providing for the Minister to assist or intervene if territorial authorities find it difficult to prepare a water services delivery plan; and
 - (c) requiring territorial authorities to provide other specified foundational information in relation to delivering water services, for the purpose of supporting economic regulation; and 20
 - (d) providing specific consultation and decision-making processes that territorial authorities may use to establish, join, or amend council-controlled organisations that will deliver water services; and
 - (e) providing a financially sustainable model for Watercare to be financially separate from Auckland Council and an interim economic regulation regime for Watercare that is administered by a Crown monitor. 25

4 Overview

- (1) This Part provides for preliminary matters, including the purpose of this Act and the definitions of terms and expressions used in this Act. 30
- (2) **Part 2** has the following subparts:
 - (a) **subpart 1**, which requires territorial authorities to prepare and submit water services delivery plans:
 - (b) **subpart 2**, which relates to Ministerial powers in relation to water services delivery plans: 35
 - (c) **subpart 3**, which sets out a framework for specified territorial authorities to disclose additional foundational information for the purposes of

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 1 cl 5

economic regulation, and also includes provisions relating to information sharing and enforcement.

- (3) **Part 3** sets out consultation and decision-making processes that territorial authorities may use when establishing, joining, or amending a water services council-controlled organisation. 5
- (4) **Part 4** sets out specific requirements for Watercare to be financially separate from Auckland Council, including the requirement for the Minister to appoint a Crown monitor and the requirement to have a Watercare charter.

5 Interpretation

In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires,— 10

amend, in relation to a council-controlled organisation, means to amend—

- (a) the constitution of the organisation; or
- (b) any other rules or documents that constitute the organisation or govern its activities

Commission means the Commerce Commission established by section 8 of the Commerce Act 1986 15

council-controlled organisation has the meaning set out in section 6(1) of the Local Government Act 2002

Crown facilitator means a Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans appointed under **section 20** 20

Crown water services specialist means a Crown water services specialist appointed under **section 23**

department means the department, departmental agency, or interdepartmental venture (as named in Part 1, 2, or 4 of Schedule 2 of the Public Service Act 2020) that, with the authority of the Prime Minister, is responsible for the administration of this Act 25

drinking water supply has the meaning set out in section 9 of the Water Services Act 2021

financial year means a period of 12 months ending on 30 June

financially sustainable means, in relation to a territorial authority's delivery of water services, that— 30

- (a) the revenue applied to the authority's delivery of those water services is sufficient to ensure the authority's long-term investment in delivering water services; and
- (b) the authority is financially able to meet all regulatory standards and requirements for the authority's delivery of those water services 35

firefighting water supplies has the meaning set out in section 6 of the Fire and Emergency New Zealand Act 2017

government department means a department listed in Part 1 of Schedule 2 of the Public Service Act 2020

joint arrangement means an arrangement between 2 or more territorial authorities to deliver water services (*see* **section 9**)

joint service area means,— 5

- (a) in relation to a joint arrangement, the combined districts of the territorial authorities that are a party to the joint arrangement; or
- (b) in relation to a joint WSCCO, the combined districts of the territorial authorities that control the joint WSCCO

joint water services council-controlled organisation or **joint WSCCO** 10
means a water services council-controlled organisation—

- (a) controlled by 2 or more territorial authorities; or
- (b) in which 2 or more territorial authorities are shareholders

joint water services delivery plan or **joint plan** means a water services delivery plan relating to 2 or more territorial authorities 15

LGA2002 means the Local Government Act 2002

long-term plan has the meaning set out in section 5(1) of the LGA2002

Minister means the Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of a warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is responsible for the administration of this Act 20

ministerial appointee means—

- (a) a Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans appointed under **section 20**; or
- (b) a Crown water services specialist appointed under **section 23**

Secretary means the Secretary for Local Government 25

stormwater network means the infrastructure and processes that—

- (a) are used to collect, treat, drain, reuse, or discharge stormwater in an urban area; and
- (b) are owned by, or operated by, for, or on behalf of a territorial authority, a council-controlled organisation, or a subsidiary of a council-controlled organisation 30

Taumata Arowai means Taumata Arowai—the Water Services Regulator established by section 8 of the Taumata Arowai—the Water Services Regulator Act 2020

territorial authority has the meaning set out in section 5(1) of the LGA2002 35

urban development has the meaning set out in section 10 of the Urban Development Act 2020

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 1 cl 7

wastewater network means the infrastructure and processes that—

- (a) are used to collect, store, transmit through reticulation, treat, or discharge wastewater; and
- (b) are owned by, or operated by, for, or on behalf of a territorial authority, a council-controlled organisation, or a subsidiary of a council-controlled organisation 5

water services means services in relation to a territorial authority's—

- (a) water supply network:
- (b) stormwater network:
- (c) wastewater network 10

water services council-controlled organisation or **WSCCO**—

- (a) means a council-controlled organisation that—
 - (i) delivers water services; or
 - (ii) provides goods or services that are incidental and related to, or consequential on, delivering water services; and 15
- (b) includes a joint water services council-controlled organisation; but
- (c) does not include a council-controlled organisation that provides goods or services other than those listed in **paragraph (a)**

water services delivery plan—

- (a) means a water services delivery plan prepared under **subpart 1 of Part 2**; and 20
- (b) includes a joint water services delivery plan

water supply network means the infrastructure and processes that—

- (a) are used to provide firefighting water supplies or drinking water supply; and 25
- (b) are owned by, or operated by, for, or on behalf of a territorial authority, a council-controlled organisation, or a subsidiary of a council-controlled organisation

Watercare means Watercare Services Limited and includes any subsidiary of Watercare Services Limited. 30

6 Transitional, savings, and related provisions

The transitional, savings, and related provisions (if any) set out in **Schedule 1** have effect according to their terms.

7 Act binds the Crown

This Act binds the Crown. 35

Part 2

Water services delivery plans and foundational information disclosure requirements

Subpart 1—Water services delivery plans

Water services delivery plan: preparation and contents 5

8 Territorial authority must prepare water services delivery plan

- (1) Each territorial authority must prepare a water services delivery plan that—
- (a) identifies the current state of the authority’s water services; and
 - (b) demonstrates publicly its commitment to deliver water services in a way that—
 - (i) ensures that the territorial authority will meet all relevant regulatory quality standards for its stormwater network, wastewater network, and water supply network; and
 - (ii) is financially sustainable for the territorial authority; and
 - (iii) ensures that the territorial authority will meet all drinking water quality standards; and
 - (iv) supports the territorial authority’s housing growth and urban development, as specified in the territorial authority’s long-term plan.
- (2) **Subsection (1)** is subject to **section 9(3)**.

9 Territorial authorities may enter into arrangement to submit joint plan

- (1) A territorial authority may, in the circumstances described in **subsection (2)**, enter into an arrangement with 1 or more other territorial authorities for the purpose of submitting a joint water services delivery plan in relation to delivering the water services in the joint service area covered by that arrangement.
- (2) For the purposes of **subsection (1)**, the circumstances are that the territorial authorities anticipate or propose delivering water services through a joint arrangement, as set out in a joint water services delivery plan.
- (3) If 2 or more territorial authorities enter into an arrangement to submit a joint plan, the territorial authorities are required to prepare only 1 water services delivery plan in respect of the joint service area.
- (4) A joint arrangement must relate to the delivery of—
- (a) all water services for all of the territorial authorities; or
 - (b) all water services except for some or all services relating to all of the territorial authorities’ stormwater networks; or

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 2 cl 11

- (c) all water services for some of the territorial authorities, and all water services except for some or all services relating to stormwater networks for the other territorial authorities.

Example

Territorial authorities A, B, and C join together to form a joint arrangement. The joint arrangement relates to the delivery of all water services for territorial authorities A and B, but territorial authority C joins the joint arrangement in relation to water services other than those services relating to its stormwater network. Territorial authority C will deliver its services related to stormwater networks independently, rather than through the joint arrangement.

Alternatively, territorial authority C may join the joint arrangement in relation to water services other than some of its services relating to its stormwater network, and choose to deliver the remaining stormwater services independently.

10 Water services to be covered by water services delivery plan

- (1) A water services delivery plan must relate to all water services.

- (2) To avoid doubt, if a joint arrangement relates to the delivery of all water services except some or all of those relating to 1 or more of the authorities' stormwater networks, the joint plan must relate to the delivery of all water services in the joint service area.

Example

Territorial authorities A, B, and C join together to form a joint arrangement. The joint arrangement relates to the delivery of all water services for territorial authorities A and B, but territorial authority C joins the joint arrangement in relation to water services other than those services relating to its stormwater network. The joint plan must contain the required information in relation to all water services for all 3 territorial authorities, including information about territorial authority C's delivery of services relating to its stormwater network.

11 Contents of water services delivery plan

- (1) A territorial authority's water services delivery plan must contain the following information in relation to the water services delivered in the authority's district:

- (a) a description of the current state of the water services network:
- (b) a description of the current levels of water services provided:
- (c) a description of—
 - (i) the areas in the district that receive water services (including a description of any areas in the district that do not receive water services); and
 - (ii) the water services infrastructure associated with providing for population growth and development capacity:
- (d) whether and to what extent water services comply with regulatory requirements:

- (e) details of the capital and operational expenditure required—
 - (i) to deliver the water services; and
 - (ii) to ensure that water services comply with regulatory requirements:
- (f) financial projections for delivering water services over the period covered by the plan, including— 5
 - (i) the operating costs and revenue required to deliver water services; and
 - (ii) projected capital expenditure on water infrastructure; and
 - (iii) projected borrowing to deliver water services: 10
- (g) an assessment of the current condition, lifespan, and value of the water services network:
- (h) a description of the asset management approach being used, including capital, maintenance, and operational programmes for delivering water services: 15
- (i) a description of any issues, constraints, and risks that impact on delivering water services:
- (j) the anticipated or proposed model or arrangements for delivering water services (including whether the territorial authority is likely to enter into a joint arrangement under **section 9** or will continue to deliver water services in its district alone): 20
- (k) an explanation of how the revenue from, and delivery of, water services will be separated from the territorial authority's other functions and activities:
- (l) a summary of any consultation undertaken as part of developing the information required to be included in the plan under **paragraphs (j) and (k)**: 25
- (m) an explanation of what the authority proposes to do to ensure that the delivery of water services will be financially sustainable by 30 June 2028: 30
- (n) any other information prescribed in rules made by the Secretary under **section 14**.
- (2) A water services delivery plan must also comply with any requirements prescribed in rules made by the Secretary under **section 14**.
- 12 Additional requirements for joint water service delivery plans** 35
- (1) A joint water services delivery plan must contain the following:
 - (a) information that clearly identifies each territorial authority that is proposed to be a party to the joint arrangement:
 - (b) information as to whether the joint arrangement will deliver—

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 2 cl 13

-
- (i) all water services for all of the territorial authorities that are parties to the joint arrangement; or
 - (ii) all water services except for services in relation to all of the territorial authorities' stormwater networks; or
 - (iii) all water services for some of the territorial authorities, and all water services except for services in relation to stormwater networks for the other territorial authorities: 5
 - (c) all of the information listed in **section 11**:
 - (d) information on the likely form of the joint arrangement, including whether it is anticipated it will involve water services being delivered by— 10
 - (i) a joint WSCCO; or
 - (ii) a joint local government arrangement or joint arrangement under section 137 of the LGA2002; or
 - (iii) another organisation or arrangement that the territorial authorities are considering. 15
 - (2) A joint water services delivery plan may also contain the following information to the extent that the information is available when the plan is submitted to the Secretary under **section 16**:
 - (a) an indicative implementation plan and timeline for the delivery of water services under the joint plan: 20
 - (b) further information about the joint arrangement, including the ownership structure, the governance structure, and the control and financial rights of each territorial authority in the joint arrangement.
 - (3) For the purposes of **subsection (1)(c)**, a joint plan must contain the information required under **section 11** in relation to— 25
 - (a) each territorial authority that is a party to the joint arrangement; and
 - (b) all water services delivered in the joint service area (including services relating to each territorial authority's stormwater network).
 - (4) **Subsection (1)(c)** applies to a territorial authority's delivery of water services relating to its stormwater network even if the delivery of those services is not part of the joint arrangement. 30
- 13 Period covered by water services delivery plan**
- (1) A water services delivery plan must cover a period of not less than 10 consecutive financial years, starting with the 2024–25 financial year. 35
 - (2) A water services delivery plan must provide the required information—
 - (a) in detail in relation to each of the first 3 financial years covered by the plan; and

- (b) in outline in relation to each of the subsequent financial years covered by the plan.
- 14 Secretary may make rules in relation to water services delivery plans**
- (1) The Secretary may make rules for 1 or more of the following purposes relating to water services delivery plans: 5
- (a) specifying additional information that must be included in a plan:
- (b) specifying the manner and form in which information must be included in a plan.
- (2) Without limiting **subsection (1)(a)**, a rule made under **subsection (1)(a)** may require the inclusion of information that— 10
- (a) improves accountability to a territorial authority's community:
- (b) provides a basis for regulating the delivery of water services:
- (c) relates to 1 or more of the following:
- (i) financial matters (including, for example, revenues, equity levels, debt arrangements, and expenses): 15
- (ii) the assets involved in delivering water services (including, for example, asset management plans and asset replacement policies):
- (iii) financial and non-financial performance measures:
- (iv) the relevant performance measures and statistics relating to water quality: 20
- (v) pricing practices, assumptions, policies and methodologies used in delivering water services.
- (3) Before making a rule, the Secretary must consult each person or organisation that the Secretary considers to hold views that are representative of the views held, or that may be held, in the local government sector. 25
- (4) A rule is not invalid only because the consultation required under **subsection (3)** occurred before this Act came into force.
- (5) Rules made under this section are secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).
- 15 Process to prepare and adopt water services delivery plan** 30
- (1) A territorial authority must adopt a water services delivery plan by resolution.
- (2) Except as provided in **Part 3** of this Act, a territorial authority must comply with subpart 1 of Part 6 of the LGA2002 (Planning and decision-making) when preparing, adopting, or amending a water services delivery plan.
- (3) This Act does not require a territorial authority to consult in relation to a water services delivery plan, but another enactment (for example, the LGA2002) may require a territorial authority to consult. 35

*Submission of water services delivery plan***16 Plan must be submitted to Secretary for acceptance**

- (1) A territorial authority or a joint arrangement (as the case may be) must submit its water services delivery plan to the Secretary—
 - (a) no later than 1 year after the date on which this Act comes into force; or 5
 - (b) on or before a later date specified by the Minister under **section 17**.
- (2) Each water services delivery plan that is submitted to the Secretary for acceptance must include a certification that—
 - (a) the plan complies with this Act; and
 - (b) the information contained in the plan is true and accurate. 10
- (3) The certification must be made,—
 - (a) in the case of a joint water services delivery plan, by the chief executive of each authority to which the plan relates, in respect of the information provided by that authority; and
 - (b) in any other case, by the chief executive of the territorial authority to which the plan relates. 15

17 Minister may grant extension to deadline for submitting water services delivery plan

- (1) A territorial authority or a joint arrangement (the **applicant**) may apply to the Minister for an extension to the deadline for submitting its water services delivery plan. 20
- (2) An application for an extension must—
 - (a) be in writing; and
 - (b) specify the length of the extension that the applicant is seeking; and
 - (c) include sufficient information to enable the Minister to decide whether to grant the extension; and 25
 - (d) be made no later than 1 month before the last date for submitting a plan under **section 16(1)(a)**.
- (3) The Minister may grant an extension only if the Minister is satisfied that—
 - (a) an application for the extension is made in accordance with **subsection (2)**; and 30
 - (b) the applicant requires the extension for 1 or more of the following reasons:
 - (i) the applicant anticipates forming or joining a joint arrangement, and requires the extension to consult its communities in relation to the plan: 35

- (ii) the applicant anticipates forming or joining a joint arrangement, and requires the extension to conclude the negotiations relating to forming or joining the joint arrangement:
 - (iii) the applicant is late preparing its water services delivery plan as a result of having attempted, unsuccessfully, to form or join a joint arrangement: 5
 - (iv) any other reason that the Minister considers justifies granting the exemption.
- (4) **Subsection (3)** is subject to **subsection (5)**.
- (5) The Minister may grant an extension despite not having received an application for an extension if satisfied that exceptional circumstances justify granting the extension. 10
- (6) If the Minister grants an extension, the Minister must respond to the applicant, notifying it of the length of the extension and specifying the date by which the water services delivery plan must be submitted to the Secretary. 15
- (7) The Minister may grant an extension subject to any conditions that the Minister thinks reasonable in the circumstances.

Acceptance of water services delivery plan

18 Secretary accepts water services delivery plan

- (1) The Secretary must— 20
 - (a) consider each water services delivery plan submitted under **section 16**; and
 - (b) accept a water services delivery plan only if satisfied that the plan complies with this Act.
- (2) In deciding whether to accept a water services delivery plan, the Secretary may consult 1 or more of the following: 25
 - (a) a government department:
 - (b) the Commission:
 - (c) Taumata Arowai:
 - (d) Crown Infrastructure Partners Limited. 30
- (3) If the Secretary is not satisfied that a plan complies with the requirements in this Act, the Secretary must—
 - (a) advise the territorial authority or joint arrangement why the Secretary is not satisfied with the plan and require the territorial authority or joint arrangement to amend the plan (which may be by including additional information) and resubmit it to the Secretary by a specified date; or 35
 - (b) decide not to accept the plan.

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 2 cl 20

- (4) A territorial authority or joint arrangement must comply with a requirement to amend and resubmit a plan by the date specified.
- (5) After deciding whether to accept a water services delivery plan, the Secretary must notify the territorial authority or joint arrangement—
- (a) whether the Secretary has accepted the plan; and 5
 - (b) if the Secretary has decided not to accept the plan, the reason for that decision.
- 19 Publication of accepted water services delivery plan**
- If the Secretary notifies a territorial authority or joint arrangement that its water services delivery plan has been accepted,— 10
- (a) the territorial authority or joint arrangement must, as soon as reasonably practicable, publish the water services delivery plan,—
 - (i) in the case of a plan relating to 1 territorial authority, on the territorial authority's internet site; or
 - (ii) in the case of a joint plan, on the internet site of each territorial authority to which the plan relates; and 15
 - (b) the Secretary must, at the same time as the Secretary notifies having accepted the plan, provide a copy of the plan to—
 - (i) the Commission; and
 - (ii) Taumata Arowai. 20

Subpart 2—Ministerial powers in relation to water services delivery plans

Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans

- 20 Minister may appoint Crown facilitator**
- (1) The Minister may, in the circumstances set out in **subsection (2)**, appoint a Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans to— 25
- (a) a territorial authority; or
 - (b) a group of 2 or more territorial authorities that is proposing to submit a joint water services delivery plan.
- (2) The Minister may appoint a Crown facilitator if— 30
- (a) the territorial authority or the group of territorial authorities requests, in writing to the Minister, that the Minister do so and the Minister decides to grant that request; or
 - (b) the Minister believes, on reasonable grounds, that it would be beneficial to appoint a Crown facilitator because— 35

- (i) the territorial authority or the group is otherwise unlikely to submit its plan to the Secretary in accordance with this subpart; or
 - (ii) in the case of a group of territorial authorities, the group is having difficulty agreeing on the terms of a joint plan.
- (3) The Minister may appoint either 1 person or a panel of 2 or more persons to be a Crown facilitator. 5
- (4) If the Minister appoints a panel to be a Crown facilitator, the Minister must appoint 1 member as the chairperson.
- 21 How Crown facilitator appointed**
- (1) The Minister appoints a Crown facilitator by— 10
 - (a) providing notice in writing to the person appointed to be the Crown facilitator or, if the Minister appoints a panel, to each member of the panel; and
 - (b) providing notice in writing to the territorial authority or, in the case of an appointment to a group of territorial authorities, to each authority that is a member of the group; and 15
 - (c) giving notice of the appointment in the *Gazette*.
- (2) A notice under **subsection (1)** must include the following information:
 - (a) the terms of reference of the Crown facilitator, including—
 - (i) an outline of the role the Crown facilitator has been appointed to undertake; and 20
 - (ii) the extent of the Crown facilitator's authority:
 - (b) the name of the Crown facilitator or, if the Crown facilitator is a panel, the name of each member of the panel:
 - (c) the start and end dates of the Crown facilitator's appointment: 25
 - (d) if the Crown facilitator is a panel, the name of the chairperson of the panel:
 - (e) the name of each territorial authority to which the Crown facilitator has been appointed.
- (3) The Minister must notify any change in the membership of a Crown facilitator in writing to each territorial authority to which the Crown facilitator is appointed. 30
- 22 Role of Crown facilitator**
- (1) A Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans may be appointed to do 1 or more of the following: 35
 - (a) assist the relevant territorial authority or group of territorial authorities to prepare a water services delivery plan:

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 2 cl 23

- (b) advise the relevant territorial authority or group of territorial authorities how to prepare a water services delivery plan:
- (c) assist the relevant territorial authority or group of territorial authorities to amend a draft water services delivery plan after being advised to do so by the Secretary (*see* **section 18(3)(a)**): 5
- (d) direct the relevant territorial authority or group of territorial authorities how to do 1 or both of the following:
 - (i) prepare a water services delivery plan:
 - (ii) if the Secretary has required a water services delivery plan to be amended (*see* **section 18(3)(a)**), amend a water services delivery plan: 10
- (e) assist 2 or more territorial authorities to agree on the terms of a joint arrangement, including, for example, by co-ordinating the negotiation process or by determining the terms of the joint arrangement:
- (f) assist a territorial authority or group of territorial authorities to comply with the requirements in this Act: 15
- (g) anything else specified in the Crown facilitator's terms of reference.
- (2) However, a Crown facilitator may be appointed to determine the terms of a joint arrangement in accordance with **subsection (1)(e)** only if the relevant territorial authorities agree to the Crown facilitator having that role. 20
- (3) As part of performing its role, a Crown facilitator may also recommend to the Minister that the Minister should take further action, for example, by—
 - (a) appointing a Crown water services specialist; or
 - (b) taking further action under Part 10 of the LGA2002.

Crown water services specialist 25

23 Minister may appoint Crown water services specialist

- (1) The Minister may, in the circumstances set out in **subsection (2)**, appoint a Crown water services specialist to—
 - (a) a territorial authority; or
 - (b) a group of 2 or more territorial authorities that is proposing to form a joint arrangement. 30
- (2) The Minister may appoint a Crown water services specialist if—
 - (a) the territorial authority or the group of territorial authorities requests, in writing to the Minister, that the Minister do so and the Minister decides to grant that request; or 35
 - (b) the territorial authority or the group has failed to submit its water services delivery plan to the Secretary in accordance with **section 16**; or
 - (c) the territorial authority or the group—

- (i) has submitted a water services delivery plan to the Secretary; but
 - (ii) despite the Secretary requiring the plan to be amended (*see* **section 18(3)(a)**), the plan does not comply with **subpart 1**; or
- (d) a Crown facilitator for water services delivery plans appointed to the territorial authority or the group of territorial authorities has recommended that the Minister should make such an appointment, and the Minister agrees to do so. 5
- (3) The Minister may appoint 1 person or a panel of 2 or more persons to be a Crown water services specialist.
- (4) If the Minister appoints a panel to be a Crown water services specialist, the Minister must appoint 1 member as the chairperson. 10
- 24 How Crown water services specialist is appointed**
- (1) The Minister appoints a Crown water services specialist by—
 - (a) providing notice in writing to the person appointed to be the Crown water services specialist or, if the Minister appoints a panel, to each member of the panel; and 15
 - (b) providing in writing to the territorial authority or, in the case of an appointment to a group of territorial authorities, to each authority that is a member of the group; and
 - (c) giving notice of the appointment in the *Gazette*. 20
- (2) A notice under **subsection (1)** must include the following information:
 - (a) the terms of reference of the Crown water services specialist, including—
 - (i) an outline of the role the Crown water services specialist has been appointed to undertake; and 25
 - (ii) the extent of the Crown water services specialist's authority:
 - (b) the name of the Crown water services specialist or, if the Crown water services specialist is a panel, the name of each member of the panel:
 - (c) the start and end dates of the Crown water services specialist's appointment: 30
 - (d) if the Crown water services specialist is a panel, the name of the chairperson of the panel:
 - (e) the name of each territorial authority to which the Crown water services specialist has been appointed.
- (3) The Minister must notify any change in the membership of a Crown water services specialist— 35
 - (a) in writing to each territorial authority to which the Crown water services specialist is appointed; and

- (b) by notice in the *Gazette*.

25 Role of Crown water services specialist

- (1) A Crown water services specialist may be appointed to do 1 or more of the following:
- (a) prepare a water services delivery plan for the territorial authority or the group of territorial authorities: 5
 - (b) direct the territorial authority or the group of territorial authorities to adopt a specified water services delivery plan (which may be a plan that the specialist has prepared):
 - (c) direct the territorial authority or the group of territorial authorities to submit a specified water services delivery plan to the Secretary under **section 16**: 10
 - (d) anything else specified in the specialist's terms of reference.
- (2) As part of performing its role, a Crown water services specialist may also recommend to the Minister that the Minister should take further action, for example, taking further action under Part 10 of the LGA2002. 15

26 Decisions and directions of Crown water services specialist

- (1) This section applies to a territorial authority after the expiry of the term of a Crown water services specialist appointed to the territorial authority.
- (2) A direction given to the territorial authority by the Crown water services specialist ceases to have effect despite **section 27(c)**. 20
- (3) Despite **subsection (2)**, any decision made by the territorial authority giving effect to a direction continues in force unless and until the territorial authority revokes or amends the decision.
- (4) A territorial authority that revokes or amends a decision under **subsection (3)** must, as soon as reasonably practicable, notify the Secretary for Local Government that the authority has done so. 25

Compare: 2002 No 84 s 258ZA(1)–(3)

General provisions

27 Obligation to co-operate 30

A territorial authority or a group of territorial authorities to which a ministerial appointee has been appointed must, as soon as reasonably practicable,—

- (a) co-operate with the ministerial appointee; and
- (b) comply with any reasonable request from the ministerial appointee to provide any relevant information that the territorial authority or the group of territorial authorities holds; and 35

- (c) comply with any reasonable direction issued by the ministerial appointee.

28 Minister retains powers under Part 10 of LGA2002

- (1) The Minister's powers under this subpart are in addition to, not in place of, the Minister's powers under Part 10 (Powers of Minister to act in relation to local authorities) of the LGA2002. 5
- (2) For the purpose of applying Part 10 of the LGA2002 in relation to a matter that arises under this Act, the definition of **problem** in section 256 of the LGA2002 must be read as including a failure by a territorial authority or group of territorial authorities to do 1 or more of the following: 10
- (a) submit a water services delivery plan to the Secretary within the time frame specified in **section 16(1)**;
 - (b) have a water services delivery plan accepted by the Secretary within a reasonable period after submitting it for acceptance;
 - (c) give effect to proposals or undertakings specified in an accepted water services delivery plan relating to the future delivery of water services: 15
 - (d) comply with **section 27** of this Act.
- (3) In **subsection (2)(c)**, an **accepted water services delivery plan** means a plan that—
- (a) relates to the territorial authority or group of territorial authorities; and 20
 - (b) has been accepted by the Secretary under **section 18**.

29 Remuneration and expenses of ministerial appointee

- (1) A ministerial appointee is entitled—
- (a) to receive remuneration for services as a Crown facilitator or as a Crown water services specialist (as applicable) as determined by the Minister in accordance with the fees framework; and 25
 - (b) to be reimbursed for actual and reasonable travelling and other expenses incurred in carrying out their office as a Crown facilitator or as a Crown water services specialist in accordance with the fees framework.
- (2) In this section, **fees framework** means the framework determined by the Government from time to time for the classification and remuneration of statutory and other bodies in which the Crown has an interest. 30

Compare: 2002 No 84 s 258V

30 Recovery of expenses and remuneration from local authority

- (1) A territorial authority owes as a debt to the Crown any remuneration and expenses that the Crown incurs for the appointment of a ministerial appointee to the territorial authority (whether individually or as a group of territorial 35

authorities), including the payment of remuneration and expenses to the ministerial appointee.

- (2) The Crown may recover remuneration and expenses under **subsection (1)** as a debt to the Crown.

Compare: 2002 No 84 s 258W(1), (3)

5

31 Protection from liability

- (1) A ministerial appointee is not liable for any act done or omitted to be done by them in good faith in the performance or intended performance of their functions, responsibilities, and duties, or the exercise of their powers, as a ministerial appointee.

10

- (2) **Subsection (1)** applies, without limitation, to acts done or omitted to be done when directing a territorial authority or a group of territorial authorities.

Compare: 2002 No 84 s 258Y

Subpart 3—Foundational information disclosure requirements

32 Purpose of this subpart

15

- (1) The purpose of this subpart is to promote the long-term benefit of consumers of water services provided by territorial authorities.

- (2) This subpart achieves that purpose by promoting outcomes that are consistent with outcomes produced in competitive markets such that territorial authorities—

20

- (a) have incentives to—

(i) innovate and to invest in water services, including in replacement, upgraded, and new assets; and

(ii) improve efficiency in providing water services; and

(iii) provide water services at a quality that reflects consumer demands; and

25

- (b) share with consumers the benefits of efficiency gains in supplying water services, including through lower prices; and

- (c) are limited in their ability to extract excessive profits.

33 Application of this subpart

30

- (1) This subpart applies to 1 or more of the following entities that have been specified by the Governor-General by Order in Council made on the recommendation of the Minister and the Minister of Commerce and Consumer Affairs:

- (a) a territorial authority that delivers water services:

- (b) a council-controlled organisation that delivers water services:

35

- (c) a subsidiary of a council-controlled organisation that delivers water services.

- (2) Before making a recommendation under **subsection (1)**, the Minister and the Minister of Commerce and Consumer Affairs must—
- (a) consider advice from the Secretary and the Commission; and
 - (b) having considered that advice, believe that the entity to be specified in the Order in Council holds information that, if disclosed, would enable an interested person to assess whether the purpose of this subpart is being met. 5
- (3) An Order in Council made under this section must include the following information:
- (a) the name of the entity: 10
 - (b) the water services to which a determination made under **section 35** may apply.
- (4) An Order in Council made under this section is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).
- 34 Meaning of specified entity** 15
- In this subpart, **specified entity** means an entity that is specified in an Order in Council made under **section 33**.

Determinations

- 35 Commission may make determination**
- (1) The Commission may make a determination setting out the information that a specified entity must make publicly available and must disclose to the Commission (*see* **section 36**). 20
 - (2) The Commission must consult interested parties before making a determination.
 - (3) A determination may relate to all specified entities or to 1 or more specified entities. 25
 - (4) It is not necessary for a single determination to address all matters relating to all water services and different parts of any determination may come into effect at different times.
 - (5) A determination may require a specified entity to comply with the requirements set out in any other determination that has been made under this section. 30
 - (6) The Commission may amend a determination in a material way only after the Commission has consulted interested parties, but may amend a determination in a non-material way without prior consultation.
 - (7) As soon as practicable after making or amending a determination, the Commission must give to each specified entity to whom the determination relates notice of the determination or the amendment (as applicable) and where it is available. 35

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 2 cl 37

- (8) A determination made under this section is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements).

Compare: 2023 No 54 s 15

36 Effect of determination

- (1) A specified entity to which a determination made under **section 35** applies must— 5
- (a) publicly disclose information in accordance with the requirements set out in the determination; and
 - (b) supply to the Commission a copy of all information disclosed in accordance with the determination within 5 working days after the specified entity first makes the information available to the public. 10
- (2) The Commission—
- (a) may monitor and analyse all information disclosed in accordance with this subpart; and
 - (b) must, as soon as practicable after any information is publicly disclosed, publish (on an internet site operated by or on behalf of the Commission) a summary and an analysis of that information for the purpose of promoting greater understanding of the performance of individual specified entities, their relative performance, and changes in their performance over time. 15 20
- (3) The Commission may, as part of a summary and an analysis, include an analysis of how effective the information disclosure requirements imposed on specified entities are in promoting the purpose in **section 32**.
- (4) In complying with **subsection (2)(b)**, the Commission must ensure that satisfactory provision exists to protect the confidentiality of any information that may reasonably be regarded as confidential or commercially sensitive. 25

Compare: 2023 No 54 s 34

37 Contents of determination

- (1) A determination made under **section 35** must specify the following:
- (a) the specified entity to which it applies: 30
 - (b) the water services to which it applies:
 - (c) any time frames that must be complied with or that apply:
 - (d) the information that the specified entity must disclose:
 - (e) the manner in which the information must be disclosed:
 - (f) the form of disclosure: 35
 - (g) when, and for how long, the specified entity must disclose the information:

- (h) any other methodologies that the specified entity must apply in preparing or compiling the information.
- (2) In making a determination under **section 35**, the Commission may have regard to the scale, complexity, and risk profile of each specified entity (or class of specified entity) to which the determination will apply (for example, by requiring more or less information to be disclosed). 5
- (3) A determination may require a specified entity to disclose information that includes, without limitation, 1 or more of the following:
 - (a) financial statements (including projected financial statements):
 - (b) asset values and valuation reports: 10
 - (c) prices, terms and conditions relating to prices, and pricing methodologies:
 - (d) contracts:
 - (e) transactions with related parties:
 - (f) financial and non-financial performance measures: 15
 - (g) plans and forecasts, including (without limitation) plans and forecasts about demand, investments, prices, revenues, quality and service levels, capacity and spare capacity, and efficiency improvements:
 - (h) asset management plans:
 - (i) quality performance measures and statistics: 20
 - (j) assumptions, policies, and methodologies used or applied in the delivery of water services:
 - (k) consolidated information that includes information about goods or services that are not incidental to, or related to, water services, in which case **section 38** applies: 25
 - (l) information about the financing of territorial authorities and water services council-controlled organisations that includes information about goods or services that are not incidental to, or related to, water services, in which case **section 38** applies.
- (4) In addition, a determination may require a specified entity to disclose information about how the entity is supporting and enabling planning processes, growth, and housing and urban development and, in particular, the entity's level of responsiveness in relation to those issues. 30
- (5) A determination may do 1 or more of the following:
 - (a) require disclosed information, or information from which disclosed information is derived (in whole or in part), to be verified by statutory declaration: 35
 - (b) require independent audits of disclosed information:

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 2 cl 38

- (c) require the retention of data on which disclosed information is based, and associated documentation:
- (d) provide for transitional provisions:
- (e) impose any other requirements that the Commission considers necessary or desirable to promote the purpose of this subpart. 5

Compare: 2023 No 54 s 35

38 Determination may require specified entity to provide additional information

- (1) The purpose of this section is to enable the Commission to monitor—
 - (a) compliance with requirements to disclose information under this subpart in relation to delivering water services; and 10
 - (b) the ongoing capability of a specified entity to raise finance with respect to its delivery of water services by assessing the specified entity's overall financial position.
- (2) A determination made under **section 35** may require a specified entity to disclose information referred to in **subsection (3)** only to the extent required to enable the Commission to monitor 1 or both of the matters referred to in **subsection (1)**. 15
- (3) If a specified entity provides goods or services that are not incidental to or related to delivering water services (**other goods or services**), a determination may require the entity to disclose— 20
 - (a) consolidated financial statements, and any other information referred to in **section 37**, for all businesses (including those related to the supply of other goods or services) undertaken by that entity; and
 - (b) consolidated financial statements, and any other information referred to in **section 37**, for the supply of all other goods or services in aggregate; and 25
 - (c) reconciliation of information provided under **paragraphs (a) and (b)** with information disclosed in accordance with information disclosure requirements applying to delivering water services; and 30
 - (d) information about the financing of—
 - (i) all businesses (including those related to the supply of other goods or services) undertaken by that entity; and
 - (ii) the supply of all goods and services (including other goods or services) provided by that entity. 35

Compare: 2023 No 54 s 36

39 Charge for providing copies to public

- (1) A specified entity that is required, by a determination made under **section 35**, to provide copies of statements and information to the public on request may charge for providing those copies.
- (2) The charge must be no more than is reasonably required to recover the costs of providing those copies. 5

Compare: 1986 No 5 s 53E; 2023 No 54 s 37

40 Additional monitoring and investigation powers based on subpart 8 of Part 4 of Commerce Act 1986

- (1) For the purpose of carrying out its functions and exercising its powers under this Part, the Commission may do any of the following: 10
 - (a) consult any person the Commission considers may assist it:
 - (b) investigate any of the following:
 - (i) how effectively and efficiently a specified entity is delivering water services: 15
 - (ii) how any conditions relating to the quality of water services may be, or are being, fulfilled:
 - (c) examine, consider, or investigate any activity, cost, revenue, transfer, asset valuation, circumstance, or event that is occurring or that has occurred during the previous 7 years. 20
- (2) The Commission's powers under **subsection (1)** are in addition to its powers under the rest of this Act and under section 98 of the Commerce Act 1986.

Compare: 2023 No 54 s 138(1)

Sharing of information

41 Sharing of information and documents between Commission and department 25

- (1) The Commission and the department may share information with each other if the provider of the information believes that sharing the information is for either of the following purposes:
 - (a) understanding a territorial authority's intention and commitment to deliver water services in a way that is consistent with the purpose of a water services delivery plan (*see section 8*); or 30
 - (b) ensuring that sufficient information is available to interested persons to assess whether the purpose of this subpart is being met.
- (2) Any information received by the department or the Commission under this Act may only be used in connection with,— 35
 - (a) in the case of the department, the performance or exercise of its functions, duties, or powers under this Act; or

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 2 cl 42

- (b) in the case of the Commission, the performance or exercise of its functions, duties, or powers under this Act or under the Commerce Act 1986.
- (3) The department or the Commission may share information under this section whether or not a request has been made.
- (4) The department and the Commission must ensure that appropriate protections are or will be in place to maintain the confidentiality of information shared under this section. 5
- (5) The department and the Commission may share commercially sensitive information under this section.
- (6) This section applies despite anything to the contrary in any contract, deed, or document. 10
- (7) The department or the Commission may share the information subject to any conditions they think are appropriate.

Pecuniary penalty orders

- 42 When High Court may make pecuniary penalty order** 15
- (1) The High Court may, on the application of the Commission, order a person to pay to the Crown a pecuniary penalty if the court is satisfied that the person has—
 - (a) contravened an obligation to disclose information under this subpart; or
 - (b) contravened an obligation to disclose information in the form or within the time required; or 20
 - (c) disclosed information under this subpart that is false or misleading; or
 - (d) attempted to contravene an obligation to disclose information under this subpart; or
 - (e) been involved in a contravention of an obligation to disclose information under this subpart. 25
 - (2) In **subsection (1)(e)**, a person has been **involved in a contravention** if the person—
 - (a) has aided, abetted, counselled, or procured the contravention; or
 - (b) has induced the contravention, or attempted to induce it, whether by threats or promises or otherwise; or 30
 - (c) has been in any way, directly or indirectly, knowingly concerned in, or party to, the contravention; or
 - (d) has conspired with others to effect the contravention.
 - (3) Proceedings under this section may be commenced at any time within 3 years after the contravention occurred. 35

Compare: 2023 No 54 ss 83(1), 126

43 Maximum amount of pecuniary penalty

- (1) The maximum amount of a pecuniary penalty imposed under **section 42** is, in respect of each act or omission,—
 - (a) \$500,000, in the case of an individual; or
 - (b) \$5 million, in any other case. 5
 - (2) In determining the amount of pecuniary penalty, the court must have regard to all relevant matters, including—
 - (a) the nature and extent of the contravention; and
 - (b) the circumstances in which the contravention took place (including whether the contravention was intentional, inadvertent, or caused by negligence); and 10
 - (c) whether the person has previously been found by the court in proceedings under this subpart to have engaged in similar conduct.
 - (3) A person may not be liable to more than 1 pecuniary penalty in respect of the same conduct. 15
- Compare: 2023 No 54 s 84(1)

Orders about information disclosure

44 Order requiring information disclosure requirement to be complied with

- (1) The High Court may, on application by the Commission, order a specified entity to comply with an obligation that applies to the entity to disclose information under this subpart. 20
 - (2) An order under this section must specify the date by which, or period within which, the specified entity must comply with the requirement.
- Compare: 2023 No 54 s 92

Offence 25

45 Offence relating to requirement to disclose information

- (1) A person commits an offence if—
 - (a) the person, knowing that water services are subject to an obligation to disclose information under this subpart, intentionally contravenes any requirement in relation to that obligation; or 30
 - (b) the person is subject to an order under **section 44** and fails to comply with the order by the date, or within the period, specified.
 - (2) A person who commits an offence under **subsection (1)** is liable on conviction to a fine not exceeding \$200,000, in the case of an individual, or \$1 million, in any other case. 35
- Compare: 2023 No 54 s 98

*Miscellaneous provisions***46 Application of Part 7 of Commerce Act 1986 (Miscellaneous provisions)**

For the purposes of this subpart, the following provisions of the Commerce Act 1986 apply with any necessary modifications:

Powers relating to evidence 5

- (a) section 98 (Commission may require person to supply information or documents or give evidence):
- (b) section 98A (power to search) as if the reference to regulation under Part 4 of the Commerce Act 1986 were a reference to secondary legislation made under this Act: 10
- (c) section 98G (Commission may exercise powers notwithstanding other proceedings):
- (d) section 99 (powers of Commission to take evidence):

Offences and administrative provisions

- (e) section 100 (powers of Commission to prohibit disclosure of information, documents, and evidence): 15
- (f) section 100A (Commission may state case for opinion of High Court):
- (g) section 103 (offences):
- (h) section 104 (determinations of Commission):
- (i) section 106 (proceedings privileged): 20
- (j) section 106A (judicial notice):
- (k) section 109 (Commission may prescribe forms).

*Amendment to Local Government Act 2002***47 Amendment to Local Government Act 2002**

Section 48 amends the Local Government Act 2002. 25

48 Section 255 amended (Application of this Part)

Replace section 255(2) with:

- (2) Despite subsection (1), the Minister may exercise the powers in this Part in relation to—
 - (a) a local board, and, for that purpose, this Part applies, with any necessary modifications, as if a local board were a local authority; or 30
 - (b) a territorial authority, a group of territorial authorities, or a joint arrangement for the purposes of the Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Act **2024**, and, for those purposes, this Part applies, with any necessary modifications, as if the territorial authority, 35

- the group of territorial authorities, or the joint arrangement were a local authority.
- (3) In **subsection (2)**, **joint arrangement** has the same meaning as in **section 5** of the Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Act **2024**.

5

Part 3

Establishing water services council-controlled organisations

Preliminary provisions

49 Purpose of this Part

The purpose of this Part is—

10

- (a) to set out alternative consultation and decision-making requirements that territorial authorities can use (in place of certain consultation and decision-making requirements set out in the LGA2002) when establishing, joining, or amending a water services council-controlled organisation (the **alternative requirements**) (*see sections 50 to 54*); and
- (b) to give territorial authorities greater flexibility in relation to WSCCOs by setting out additional powers to, or exemptions from, specific provisions in the LGA2002 (*see sections 55 to 58*).

15

Alternative requirements

50 Alternatives to requirements in Local Government Act 2002

20

- (1) If a territorial authority complies with an alternative requirement specified in **sections 51 to 54**, it need not comply with the corresponding requirement in the LGA2002.
- (2) However, except as specified in this Part, all other relevant requirements in the LGA2002 continue to apply. For example, the requirements in sections 77(1)(c), 81, and 82(2) of the LGA2002 continue to apply to a territorial authority whether or not it complies with the alternative requirements.
- (3) A territorial authority may decide to rely on none, any, or all of the alternative requirements set out in **sections 51 to 54**.
- (4) A territorial authority that does not rely on an alternative requirement must comply with the corresponding requirement in the LGA2002.
- (5) Section 76 of the LGA2002 does not apply to the extent that a territorial authority complies with an alternative requirement.

25

30

51 Alternative requirement: decision making

- (1) This section applies if a territorial authority is deciding whether or not to establish, join, or amend a water services council-controlled organisation.

35

-
- (2) In the course of that decision-making process, the territorial authority—
- (a) must identify both of the following 2 options for delivering water services:
 - (i) remaining with the existing approach for delivering water services; and 5
 - (ii) joining, forming, or amending (as the case may be) the WSCCO; but
 - (b) may identify additional options for delivering water services; and
 - (c) must assess the advantages and disadvantages of all options identified.
- (3) For the purpose of **section 50(1)**, the corresponding requirement for this section is in section 77(1)(a) and (b) of the LGA2002. 10
- 52 Alternative requirement: consultation**
- (1) This section applies if a territorial authority is deciding whether or not to establish or join a water services council-controlled organisation.
- (2) Before the territorial authority decides whether or not to establish or join the WSCCO, the territorial authority is only required to undertake consultation once. 15
- (3) Despite **subsection (2)**, a territorial authority may decide to undertake further consultation before making the decision.
- (4) When deciding whether to undertake further consultation, a territorial authority must have regard to— 20
- (a) the requirement in section 78(1) of the LGA2002; and
 - (b) the extent to which the authority already knows the views and preferences of persons likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in, the decision; and 25
 - (c) the nature and significance of the decision, including its likely impact from the perspective of the persons who will or may be affected by, or have an interest in, the decision.
- (5) This section applies despite anything to the contrary in the authority's significance and engagement policy adopted under section 76AA of the LGA2002. 30
- (6) A territorial authority that defers adopting its 2024–2034 long-term plan under clause 48 of Schedule 1AA of the LGA2002 may, to satisfy the requirement to consult on the decision under this section, combine—
- (a) the consultation under this section; and
 - (b) the authority's consultation on its 2025–2034 long-term plan. 35
- (7) For the purpose of **section 50(1)**, the corresponding requirement for this section is in section 56(1) of the LGA2002.

53 Alternative requirement: consultation on amendment to long-term plan

- (1) If a territorial authority is required to amend its long-term plan for the purpose of establishing, joining, or amending a WSCCO, the authority is not required to consult on the amendment if the authority—
 - (a) has already consulted its community in relation to the proposal to establish, join, or amend (as the case may be) a WSCCO; and 5
 - (b) is satisfied that its community has a good understanding of the implications of the proposal; and
 - (c) is satisfied that it understands its community's views on the proposal.
- (2) This section applies despite anything to the contrary in the authority's significance and engagement policy adopted under section 76AA of the LGA2002. 10
- (3) For the purpose of **section 50(1)**, the corresponding requirements for this section are in sections 93(5) and 97(2)(b) of the LGA2002.

54 Alternative requirement: information requirements for consultation

- (1) When a territorial authority consults about whether or not to establish, join, or amend a WSCCO, the authority must make the following information publicly available: 15
 - (a) the proposal, an explanation of the proposal, and the reasons for the proposal:
 - (b) an analysis of the reasonably practicable options (including the proposal), which must,— 20
 - (i) if the authority relies on the alternative requirement in **section 51(2)**, be at least the options identified under **section 51(2)(a) and (b)**; or
 - (ii) in all other cases, be the options identified under section 77(1) of the LGA2002: 25
 - (c) the likely consequences of proceeding with the proposal on the authority's rates, debt, and levels of service:
 - (d) the likely consequences of not proceeding with the proposal on the authority's rates, debt, and levels of service: 30
 - (e) if the proposal involves establishing, joining, or amending a joint WSCCO, the implications for communities throughout the joint service area of the joint WSCCO:
 - (f) if the proposal involves transferring ownership or control of a strategic asset to the WSCCO, a description of any accountability or monitoring arrangements the authority will use to assess the performance of the WSCCO in regard to the asset: 35
 - (g) any other relevant implications of the proposal that the authority considers will be of interest to the public.

- (2) For the purpose of **section 50(1)**, the corresponding requirement for this section is in section 82A(2) of the LGA2002.
- (3) In this section, **strategic asset** has the meaning set out in section 5(1) of the LGA2002.

Additional powers and exemption

5

55 Ability to consider joint service area

When deciding whether or not to establish, join, or amend a joint WSCCO, a territorial authority may, despite sections 12(4) and 14(1)(g) of the LGA2002, also consider—

- (a) the impact of the joint WSCCO on the communities in the joint service area (as well as the impact on the authority's district); and 10
- (b) the views of people in communities in the joint service area (as well as the views of people in the authority's communities); and
- (c) the views of the other territorial authorities who are parties to the joint WSCCO. 15

56 Joint committees

- (1) Two or more territorial authorities that are considering whether or not to establish or amend a joint WSCCO may use a joint committee appointed under clause 30(1)(b) of Schedule 7 of the LGA2002 to perform 1 or more of the following tasks: 20
 - (a) identify and assess the options under **section 51(2)** of this Act or section 77(1) of the LGA2002:
 - (b) recommend a proposal to the territorial authorities for the purposes of consultation:
 - (c) if the territorial authorities have authorised the joint committee to do so, undertake consultation on behalf of the territorial authorities: 25
 - (d) following all required consultation, recommend a decision to the territorial authorities.
- (2) This section applies in addition to, and without limiting, any provision in Schedule 7 of the LGA2002 that relates to joint committees. 30
- (3) For the purposes of a joint committee performing any of the tasks listed in **subsection (1)**, a reference in Part 6 of the LGA2002 (planning, decision-making, and accountability) to a local authority may be read as a reference to the joint committee.
- (4) If 3 or more territorial authorities are considering whether or not to establish or amend a joint WSCCO, some (but not all) of the territorial authorities may use a joint committee to perform the tasks listed in **subsection (1)**. 35

- 57 Ability to conditionally approve amending long-term plan**
- (1) This section applies if, for the purpose of establishing, joining, or amending a joint WSCCO, a territorial authority is required to—
- (a) amend its long-term plan; or
 - (b) provide for the joint WSCCO when adopting its long-term plan. 5
- (2) The authority may approve the amendment or the adoption conditional on the other territorial authorities that are to be parties to the joint WSCCO—
- (a) approving corresponding amendments to their long-term plans; or
 - (b) adopting their long-term plans with corresponding provisions.
- 58 Exemption from cost-effectiveness review** 10
- (1) This section applies if a territorial authority—
- (a) is deciding whether or not to establish, join, or amend a WSCCO; or
 - (b) has established, joined, or amended a WSCCO.
- (2) The authority is not required to undertake a review under section 17A of the LGA2002 in relation to the WSCCO. 15
- 59 Repeal of section 58**
- Section 58** and this section are repealed on the date that is 5 years after this Act comes into force.

Part 4

Watercare Services Limited 20

Crown monitor

- 60 Minister may appoint Crown monitor**
- (1) The Minister may appoint one of the following to be a Crown monitor to Watercare:
- (a) an individual; or 25
 - (b) a Crown entity; or
 - (c) a company named in Schedule 4A of the Public Finance Act 1989.
- (2) In this section, **Crown entity** has the meaning set out in section 7(1) of the Crown Entities Act 2004.
- 61 How Crown monitor appointed** 30
- (1) The Minister must appoint a Crown monitor by providing notice in writing to—
- (a) the Crown monitor; and
 - (b) Watercare.

- (2) The notice must include the following information:
 - (a) the name of the Crown monitor; and
 - (b) the date on which the Crown monitor's appointment starts.
- (3) The Minister may, by notice in writing to Watercare and the Crown monitor,—
 - (a) change the terms of the Crown monitor's appointment; or 5
 - (b) end the Crown monitor's appointment.
- (4) The department must, as soon as practicable after the Minister appoints a Crown monitor, changes the terms of an appointment, or ends an appointment, give public notification of the Minister having done so—
 - (a) on an internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the department; and 10
 - (b) in a format that is readily accessible.

62 Role of Crown monitor

- (1) The role of the Crown monitor is to—
 - (a) prepare a charter for Watercare (*see* **section 63**); and
 - (b) review, and provide comments on, Watercare's business plan (*see* **section 67**); and 15
 - (c) monitor, and report on, Watercare's performance against the charter (*see* **sections 71 and 72**); and
 - (d) take action to address any failure by Watercare to comply with the charter (*see* **sections 76 to 81**). 20
- (2) The Crown monitor may specify—
 - (a) the form and content of the business plan that Watercare must submit under **section 65**;
 - (b) the order in which Watercare must submit each component of a business plan. 25

Watercare charter

63 Watercare charter

- (1) A Crown monitor must prepare and make a Watercare charter.
- (2) A charter must comprise the following 2 parts:
 - (a) Part 1 of the charter must contain (*see* **section 64**)— 30
 - (i) minimum service quality standards for Watercare (which may include the time frame during which Watercare must meet the standards); and
 - (ii) financial performance objectives for Watercare; and
 - (iii) a customer compensation scheme for Watercare: 35
 - (b) Part 2 of the charter must—

- (i) contain a price-quality path for Watercare (*see* **section 68**); and
 - (ii) specify the time period during which the charter applies (which must start no earlier than the day after the date on which the Crown monitor makes Part 2 of the charter).
- (3) The Crown monitor must make— 5
 - (a) the 2 parts of the charter separately; and
 - (b) Part 2 of the charter after it has made Part 1 of the charter.
- (4) Before making each part of a Watercare charter, the Crown monitor must consult the following: 10
 - (a) Watercare:
 - (b) Auckland Council:
 - (c) Taumata Arowai:
 - (d) the Commerce Commission.
- (5) A charter made under this section is secondary legislation (*see* Part 3 of the Legislation Act 2019 for publication requirements). 15

Part 1 of Watercare charter

64 Content of Part 1 of Watercare charter

Minimum service quality standards

- (1) Minimum service quality standards contained in Part 1 of a Watercare charter may relate to 1 or more of the following: 20
 - (a) services provided by Watercare to consumers:
 - (b) the performance of Watercare's water supply network:
 - (c) the performance of Watercare's wastewater network:
 - (d) the delivery of Watercare's capital investment.

Financial performance objectives 25

- (2) Financial performance objectives contained in Part 1 of a Watercare charter may include 1 or more of the following:
 - (a) the maximum amount of revenue that Watercare may earn on water supply services and wastewater services:
 - (b) the approach that Watercare must use to recover the cost of its infrastructure through infrastructure growth charges: 30
 - (c) efficiency targets that Watercare must achieve:
 - (d) the minimum credit rating that Watercare must maintain.

Customer compensation scheme

- (3) A customer compensation scheme contained in Part 1 of a Watercare charter must specify the compensation that Watercare must pay to a customer if Water- 35

care fails to meet a minimum service quality standard set out in the charter relating to that customer.

65 Watercare must submit business plan to Crown monitor

- (1) Watercare must submit a draft business plan to the Crown monitor.
- (2) Watercare must submit the draft business plan no later than 4 months after the date on which the Crown monitor makes Part 1 of the Watercare charter. 5
- (3) A business plan must, for the period during which it applies, include—
 - (a) the sources of, and Watercare’s intended approach to, funding, revenue, and pricing; and
 - (b) Watercare’s water infrastructure growth charging policy; and 10
 - (c) Watercare’s intended approach to pricing its services and charging customers; and
 - (d) Watercare’s financial strategy for each financial year covered by the plan; and
 - (e) Watercare’s intended efficiency improvements for operating and capital expenditure; and 15
 - (f) Watercare’s investment priorities for its infrastructure assets; and
 - (g) how Watercare will—
 - (i) operate, maintain, and renew its infrastructure assets; and
 - (ii) provide new infrastructure assets; and 20
 - (h) information about how the plan helps to achieve Watercare’s proposed activities and intentions (as set out in its statement of intent).
- (4) Watercare must ensure that—
 - (a) the business plan that it submits complies with any requirements specified by the Crown monitor as to the form and content of the plan; and 25
 - (b) it provides each component of the plan to the Crown monitor in any order specified by the Crown monitor.

66 Period covered by business plan submitted to Crown monitor

- (1) A business plan that Watercare submits under **section 65** must cover a period of at least 10 consecutive financial years. 30
- (2) The Crown monitor may require that a business plan includes the required information—
 - (a) in detail in relation to each of the first 3 financial years covered by the plan; and
 - (b) in outline in relation to each of the subsequent financial years covered by the plan. 35

67 Process for finalising business plan

- (1) After receiving a draft business plan under **section 65**, the Crown monitor—
 - (a) must review the plan; and
 - (b) may require Watercare to provide additional information relating to the plan; and 5
 - (c) may provide written comments on the plan to Watercare; and
 - (d) must specify a time frame for Watercare to submit a final version of the plan.
- (2) Watercare must submit a final version of the business plan after—
 - (a) providing any additional information requested by the Crown monitor; 10
and
 - (b) giving effect to any comments made by the Crown monitor.
- (3) Watercare must submit the final version of the business plan within the time frame specified by the Crown monitor.

Part 2 of Watercare charter 15

68 Content of Part 2 of Watercare charter

- (1) A price-quality path for Watercare contained in Part 2 of a Watercare charter (a **price-quality path**) must include the information required by the Crown monitor, which may be 1 or more of the following:
 - (a) the period to which it applies (which must not be more than 5 years): 20
 - (b) the minimum or maximum price or prices that Watercare may charge:
 - (c) the minimum or maximum revenue that Watercare may recover:
 - (d) the minimum service quality standards, performance targets, or financial performance objectives that Watercare must meet.
- (2) A price-quality path may include incentives for Watercare to maintain or improve its services. 25
- (3) For the purposes of **subsection (2)**, the incentives may include (without limitation) any of the following:
 - (a) penalties by way of a reduction in Watercare's maximum prices or revenues based on whether, or by what amount, Watercare fails to meet the minimum service quality standards, performance targets, or financial performance objectives specified in Part 1 of the Watercare charter: 30
 - (b) rewards by way of an increase in Watercare's maximum prices or revenue based on whether, or by what amount, Watercare meets or exceeds the minimum service quality standards, performance targets, or financial performance objectives specified in Part 1 of the Watercare charter. 35

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 4 cl 69

-
- (4) A price-quality path may include any of the following performance requirements:
- (a) requirements to adopt a particular approach to risk management:
 - (b) requirements in relation to the condition of assets and remaining asset life: 5
 - (c) requirements to make particular types of investment:
 - (d) requirements to provide information about any investments planned for a particular period:
 - (e) requirements to consult the Crown monitor about certain kinds of investments and investment decisions: 10
 - (f) requirements to adopt asset management policies and practices:
 - (g) requirements to ring-fence minimum amounts of revenue for investment purposes:
 - (h) reporting requirements, including—
 - (i) to whom reports must be made; and 15
 - (ii) the timing of reports; and
 - (iii) special reporting requirements in asset management plans, if Watercare fails to meet minimum service quality standards or performance targets; and
 - (iv) any other matters relating to reporting, including requirements for additional information: 20
 - (i) requirements that any disclosed information, or any information from which disclosed information is derived, be verified by statutory declaration or certified (in the form specified by the Crown monitor) as true and accurate: 25
 - (j) requirements to undertake cost-benefit analysis before Watercare begins any specified projects:
 - (k) requirements relating to consultation and engagement with consumers:
 - (l) requirements based on comparative benchmarking of efficiency.
- (5) A requirement to ring-fence revenue (as referred to in **subsection (4)(g)**) may include a requirement not to spend the relevant funds without the approval of the Crown monitor. 30

Effect of Watercare charter

69 Effect of charter

- (1) After the Crown monitor makes Part 2 of the Watercare charter, the charter is binding on Watercare during the time period to which it applies. 35

- (2) If there is any inconsistency between obligations in the charter and obligations in Auckland Council's long-term plan, the obligations in the charter prevail.
- (3) Each agreement for services entered into between Watercare and a customer of Watercare during the time period to which the charter applies must include any information relating to a customer compensation scheme that the charter requires. 5

Information disclosure

70 Crown monitor may require information disclosure

- (1) The Crown monitor may, by notice in writing, require Watercare to provide any information the Crown monitor considers may enable the Crown monitor to perform or exercise its duties, functions, or powers under this Act. 10
- (2) Information that the Crown monitor may require Watercare to disclose may include (without limitation) 1 or more of the following:
 - (a) financial statements (including projected financial statements):
 - (b) asset values and valuation reports: 15
 - (c) prices, terms and conditions relating to prices, and pricing methodologies:
 - (d) contracts:
 - (e) transactions with related parties:
 - (f) financial and non-financial performance measures: 20
 - (g) plans and forecasts, including (without limitation) plans and forecasts about demand, investments, prices, revenues, quality and service levels, capacity and spare capacity, and efficiency improvements:
 - (h) asset management plans:
 - (i) quality performance measures and statistics: 25
 - (j) assumptions, policies, and methodologies used or applied in relation to relevant information, including in relation to the information listed in **paragraphs (a) to (i)**.
- (3) For the purpose of monitoring whether Watercare is complying with a price-quality path in Part 2 of the Watercare charter, the Crown monitor may, by notice in writing to Watercare, require it to provide 1 or more of the following: 30
 - (a) a written statement advising whether Watercare is complying with the price-quality path:
 - (b) a written report analysing the written statement under **paragraph (a)**, signed by— 35
 - (i) an auditor; or
 - (ii) a suitably qualified and experienced independent expert:

- (c) sufficient information for the Crown monitor to be satisfied that Watercare is complying with the price-quality path.
- (4) As part of requiring Watercare to disclose information under this section, the Crown monitor may require Watercare to provide a certificate confirming that the information it provides is true and accurate. 5
- (5) A certificate must be—
 - (a) in the form specified by the Crown monitor; and
 - (b) signed by at least 1 director of Watercare.

Crown monitor to monitor and report on performance

71 Crown monitor must monitor Watercare's performance 10

- (1) The Crown monitor must monitor Watercare's performance under the charter.
- (2) For the purposes of **subsection (1)**, the Crown monitor is entitled to attend any meeting of the board of Watercare.

72 Crown monitor must make annual report

- (1) No later than 30 November in each year, the Crown monitor must report on Watercare's performance in the previous financial year against the following (contained in the Watercare charter): 15
 - (a) minimum service quality standards or performance targets:
 - (b) financial performance objectives:
 - (c) the price-quality path. 20
- (2) The Crown monitor must—
 - (a) provide the report to—
 - (i) Auckland Council; and
 - (ii) the Minister; and
 - (iii) the Minister of Commerce and Consumer Affairs; and 25
 - (b) as soon as reasonably practicable after complying with **paragraph (a)**, make the report available to the public on an internet site maintained by, or on behalf of, the Crown monitor in a format that is readily accessible.

73 Crown monitor must make quarterly reports to Minister

- (1) The Crown monitor must provide a quarterly report to the Minister. 30
- (2) A quarterly report must report on the Crown monitor's performance or exercise of its functions, duties, or powers under this Act.

*Crown monitor's expenses***74 Crown monitor's expenses are recoverable from Watercare**

- (1) The Crown monitor's expenses in relation to monitoring Watercare must be reimbursed—
 - (a) by Watercare to the Crown monitor; and 5
 - (b) on any terms and conditions set by the Minister.
 - (2) The terms and conditions may, for example, do 1 or more of the following:
 - (a) specify, or specify classes, descriptions, or kinds of, all or any of the expenses: 10
 - (b) impose a cap on classes of expenses or total expenses:
 - (c) specify a time period in which classes of, or total, expenses are incurred, for the purposes of calculating a cap.
 - (3) The duty to reimburse the expenses is not the Crown lending money for the purposes of the Public Finance Act 1989. 15
- Compare: 2022 No 77 Schedule 1 cl 35

*Commerce Commission's functions and powers***75 Commerce Commission's functions and powers**

- (1) For the purposes of this Act, the Commission may review Parts 1 and 2 of a draft Watercare charter and provide comments to the Crown monitor.
- (2) The purpose of the Commission's review and provision of comments is to help to optimise— 20
 - (a) the charter; and
 - (b) the application of the charter to Watercare; and
 - (c) decisions made by the Crown monitor in relation to the charter.
- (3) As part of its function and powers under this Act, the Commission may engage with any party it considers practicable (for example, Taumata Arowai). 25
- (4) If the Minister appoints the Commission to be the Crown monitor,—
 - (a) the Commission has the functions, powers, and duties required to perform that role; but
 - (b) **section 63(4)(d)** and this section do not apply. 30

*Enforcement***76 High Court may impose orders**

- (1) The High Court may, on application by the Crown monitor, make 1 or more of the orders listed in **subsection (2)** if the court is satisfied that Watercare—
 - (a) has contravened the Watercare charter; or 35

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 4 cl 77

-
- (b) has attempted to contravene the Watercare charter.
- (2) The orders are as follows:
- (a) an order requiring Watercare to comply with the charter:
 - (b) an injunction restraining Watercare from contravening the charter:
 - (c) an order requiring Watercare to pay to the Crown a pecuniary penalty: 5
 - (d) any other order that the court considers appropriate in the circumstances, including an order directing Watercare to pay to the Crown the costs of the proceedings.
- (3) In this section, **contravening the charter** includes—
- (a) failing to comply with the requirements in a price-quality path, whether by charging a price for services that is higher than the maximum price permitted, or by receiving more revenue than is permitted, or in any other way: 10
 - (b) failing to comply with the requirements in any minimum service quality standards or performance targets, or in any financial performance objectives: 15
 - (c) failing to comply with the requirements relating to a customer compensation scheme.
- (4) Proceedings under this section are not able to be commenced later than 3 years after the contravention occurred. 20
- 77 Maximum amount of pecuniary penalty**
- (1) The maximum amount of a pecuniary penalty imposed under **section 76** is \$10,000,000 in respect of each act or omission.
- (2) In determining the amount of pecuniary penalty, the court must have regard to all relevant matters, including— 25
- (a) the nature and extent of the contravention; and
 - (b) the nature and extent of any loss or damage suffered by any person as a result of the contravention; and
 - (c) the circumstances in which the contravention took place (including whether the contravention was intentional, inadvertent, or caused by negligence); and 30
 - (d) whether the court, in proceedings under this Act or any other legislation, has previously found Watercare to have engaged in any similar conduct.
- (3) Watercare may not be liable to more than 1 pecuniary penalty in respect of the same conduct. 35

78 Order to disclose information

- (1) The High Court may, on application by the Crown monitor, make 1 or more of the orders listed in **subsection (2)** if the court is satisfied that Watercare has failed—
 - (a) to comply with a notice under **section 70** requiring Watercare to disclose information; or 5
 - (b) to comply with the requirement to submit a business plan in accordance with **section 65**; or
 - (c) to address the Crown monitor's comments on a draft business plan, as required under **section 67(2)(b)**. 10
- (2) The orders are as follows:
 - (a) an order directing Watercare to comply with the relevant obligation:
 - (b) an order requiring Watercare to pay to the Crown a pecuniary penalty:
 - (c) any other order that the court considers appropriate in the circumstances, including an order directing Watercare to pay to the Crown the costs of the proceedings. 15

79 Maximum amount of pecuniary penalty

- (1) The maximum amount of a pecuniary penalty imposed under **section 78** is \$300,000 in respect of each act or omission.
- (2) Watercare may not be liable to more than 1 pecuniary penalty in respect of the same conduct. 20

80 Further penalty for continuing breach

- (1) For a continuing breach, the High Court may impose, for each day or part of a day during which the breach continues, a further penalty in addition to a pecuniary penalty imposed under **section 76 or 78**. 25
- (2) The further penalty under **subsection (1)** is—
 - (a) \$500,000 for a breach referred to in **section 76**; and
 - (b) \$50,000 for a breach referred to in **section 78**.
- (3) A further penalty under **subsection (1)** may be imposed only in respect of the period that— 30
 - (a) begins on the day on which the pecuniary penalty was imposed under **section 76 or 78** (as applicable); and
 - (b) ends on the day on which the breach is remedied.

81 Appeal

- (1) A party to proceedings under **section 76** who is dissatisfied with an order or a decision of the High Court under that section may, with the leave of the Court 35

of Appeal, appeal to that court on a question of law against the order or decision.

- (2) In determining an appeal under this section, the Court of Appeal may exercise any power of the High Court in respect of proceedings under **section 76**.
- (3) An appeal must be made by giving notice of appeal— 5
 - (a) not later than 20 working days after the date on which the order was made or notice of the decision was communicated to the appellant; or
 - (b) within any further time that the Court of Appeal allows.

Related amendments to LGA2002

- 82 Principal Act** 10
Sections 83 to 91 amend the Local Government Act 2002.
- 83 Section 121 amended (The Crown not liable for debts)**
Replace section 121(1) with:
 - (1) The Crown is not liable to contribute to the payment of any debts or liabilities of— 15
 - (a) any local authority; or
 - (b) Watercare Services Limited.
- 84 Section 122 amended (Disclosure document and loan documents to contain statement that the Crown does not guarantee financial products or loan)**
In section 122(1) and (3), after “local authority”, insert “or Watercare Services Limited”. 20
- 85 Section 124 amended (Interpretation)**
In section 124, insert in their appropriate alphabetical order:

Auckland has the meaning set out in section 4(1) of the Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009 25

Watercare means Watercare Services Limited, and includes any subsidiary of Watercare Services Limited
- 86 Section 127 amended (Duty to ensure communities have access to drinking water if existing suppliers facing significant problems)**
After section 127(3)(a), insert: 30
 - (aa) a **territorial authority** (despite the definition of that term in section 5(1)) includes Watercare:
- 87 Section 130 amended (Obligation to maintain water services)**
 - (1) In the heading to section 130, after “**water services**”, insert “: **general**”.

- (2) After section 130(4), insert:
- (5) In this section, **local government organisation** has the meaning given in section 124, except it—
- (a) includes Auckland Council only in relation to its provision of storm-water services in Auckland; and
 - (b) excludes Watercare.
- 88 New section 130A inserted (Obligation to maintain water services: Watercare)**
- After section 130, insert:
- 130A Obligation to maintain water services: Watercare**
- (1) Watercare must continue to provide water services in Auckland and maintain its capacity to meet its obligations under this subpart.
 - (2) In order to fulfil the obligations under this subpart, Watercare must—
 - (a) not use assets of its water services as security for any purpose:
 - (b) not divest its ownership or other interest in a water service:
 - (c) not lose control of, sell, or otherwise dispose of the significant infrastructure necessary for providing water services in Auckland, unless, in doing so, it retains its capacity to meet its obligations:
 - (d) not, in relation to a property to which it supplies water,—
 - (i) restrict the water supply unless section 193 applies; or
 - (ii) stop the water supply unless section 25 of the Water Services Act 2021 applies.
 - (3) This section does not override sections 131 to 137.
 - (4) In this section, **water services** means water supply and wastewater services.
- 89 Section 253 amended (Outline of Part)**
- In section 253(a) and (b), after “local authorities”, insert “or Watercare”.
- 90 Section 254 amended (How this Part works)**
- (1) Replace section 254(2) with:
 - (2) Subpart 1 provides the Minister with a range of options in relation to a local authority or Watercare if they have a problem. The options are available only in relation to the local authority or Watercare itself, and not to any entity that the local authority or Watercare may control or have an interest in.
 - (2) In section 254(4) and (5), after “local authority”, insert “or Watercare”.
- 91 Section 255 amended (Application of this Part)**
- After section 255(2), insert:

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 4 cl 94

- (3) Despite subsection (1), the Minister may exercise the powers in section 257 to 258E in relation to Watercare and, for that purpose, sections 256 to 258E, 258N to 258Q, and 258S to 258ZA apply as if Watercare were a local authority.

Related amendments to Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009

- 92 Principal Act** 5
- Sections 93 to 98** amend the Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009.
- 93 Section 4 amended (Interpretation)**
- In section 4(1), replace the definition of **Auckland water organisation** with:
- Auckland water organisation** means Watercare Services Limited, and includes any subsidiary of Watercare Services Limited 10
- 94 New section 56A and cross-headings inserted**
- After the Part 5 heading, insert:
- Auckland Council*
- 56A Limits on Auckland Council** 15
- (1) The Auckland Council—
- (a) has no right, title, or interest (legal or equitable) in the assets, security, debts, or liabilities of an Auckland water organisation; and
 - (b) must not receive any equity return, directly or indirectly, from an Auckland water organisation; and 20
 - (c) must not give an Auckland water organisation any financial support or capital; and
 - (d) must not lend money or provide credit to an Auckland water organisation; and
 - (e) must not give any person any guarantee, indemnity, or security in relation to the performance of any obligation by an Auckland water organisation; and 25
 - (f) must not direct an Auckland water organisation in relation to any borrowing of any sort by that organisation.
- (2) In this section,— 30
- borrowing—**
- (a) means the incurring by any means of debt to raise money; and
 - (b) includes the incurring of debt— 35
 - (i) under any contract or arrangement for hire purchase, deferred payment, instalment payment, sale and lease-back or buy-back, finan-

	cial lease, loan, overdraft, or other arrangement for obtaining debt finance; or	
	(ii) by the drawing, acceptance, making, endorsement, issue, or sale of bills of exchange, promissory notes, and other negotiable instruments and debt securities; or	5
	(iii) by the use, for any purpose, of funds received or invested by the Auckland water organisation for any other purpose if the Auckland water organisation has resolved to repay, with or without interest, the funds used; or	
	(iv) under any contract for services; but	10
(c)	does not include debt incurred in connection with the hire purchase of goods, the deferred purchase of goods or services, or the giving of credit for the purchase of goods or services if—	
	(i) the period for which the indebtedness is outstanding is less than 91 days and the indebtedness is not incurred again promptly after payment; or	15
	(ii) the goods or services are obtained in the ordinary course of the Auckland water organisation's performance of its lawful responsibilities, on terms and conditions available generally to parties of equivalent creditworthiness, for amounts not exceeding in aggregate an amount—	20
	(A) determined by resolution of the Auckland water organisation as not being so significant as to require specific authorisation; or	
	(B) recorded for the purposes of this subsubparagraph in the then current borrowing management policy of the Auckland water organisation; and	25
(d)	does not include a contract for services that is entered into—	
	(i) in the ordinary course of the Auckland Council's or an Auckland water organisation's performance of its lawful responsibilities; and	30
	(ii) on terms and conditions generally available to other parties of equivalent creditworthiness	
	capital includes uncalled capital	
	equity return means—	35
	(a) profits of an Auckland water organisation; or	
	(b) distributions from an Auckland water organisation; or	
	(c) any benefit derived, directly or indirectly, from an Auckland water organisation that represents, is calculated by reference to, or is determined by—	40

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 4 cl 95

- (i) a share in or proportion of an Auckland water organisation's capital; or
- (ii) an Auckland water organisation's surplus or residual economic value (after satisfying prior contractual claims); or
- (iii) an Auckland water organisation's profitability or any other indicator of its success

give financial support or capital does not include to enter into any contract for services to sell or supply goods or services on credit—

- (a) in the ordinary course of the Auckland Council's, or an Auckland water organisation's, performance of its lawful responsibilities; and
- (b) on terms and conditions generally available to other parties of equivalent creditworthiness

lend money or provide credit—

- (a) includes, without limiting the generality of that expression,—
 - (i) to defer payment for any goods or services supplied or works constructed for any person, organisation, or government; and
 - (ii) to enter into hire purchase agreements or agreements that are of the same or a substantially similar nature; and
 - (iii) to enter into finance lease arrangements or arrangements that are of the same or a substantially similar nature; and
 - (iv) to subscribe for any debt securities or uncalled capital; but
- (b) does not include to enter into any contract for services to sell or supply goods or services on credit—
 - (i) in the ordinary course of the Auckland Council's, or an Auckland water organisation's, performance of its lawful responsibilities; and
 - (ii) on terms and conditions generally available to other parties of equivalent creditworthiness

security has the meaning set out in section 6(1) of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013.

Compare: 2022 No 77 s 171

Auckland water organisations

95 New sections 57A and 57B inserted

After section 57, insert:

- 57A Auckland water organisation must repay debt to Auckland Council**
- (1) If, on the date on which this section comes into force, an Auckland water organisation owes a debt to the Auckland Council in respect of water services

Part 4 cl 96		Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Bill
	infrastructure, the Auckland water organisation must repay that debt, including any interest payable.	
(2)	An Auckland water organisation must repay a debt under subsection (1) despite anything in section 56A .	
(3)	The repayment—	5
	(a) may be made by instalments; but	
	(b) must be paid in full no later than the close of the day that is 5 years after this section comes into force.	
57B	Repeal of section 57A	
	This section and section 57A are repealed on the date that is 5 years after this section comes into force.	10
96	Section 58 amended (Auckland water organisation must give effect to LTP and act consistently with other specified plans and strategies of Council)	
	After section 58(3), insert:	
(4)	This section is subject to—	15
	(a) section 69(2) (effect of charter) of the Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Act 2024 ; and	
	(b) section 56A (limits on Auckland Council) of this Act.	
97	New section 60A inserted (Charges as security)	
	After section 60, insert:	20
60A	Charges as security	
(1)	This section applies if—	
	(a) an Auckland water organisation has granted a security interest over a charge or charging regime revenue as security for a loan or the performance of any obligations under an incidental arrangement; and	25
	(b) a receiver has been appointed under section 40A or 40B of the Receiverships Act 1993 in respect of that loan or arrangement; and	
	(c) the Crown monitor has been informed of the appointment.	
(2)	The receiver may, without further authority than this section, assess and collect in each financial year a charge under this section to recover sufficient funds to meet—	30
	(a) the payment of the Auckland water organisation's commitments in respect of the loan or incidental arrangement during that year; and	
	(b) the reasonable costs of administering, assessing, and collecting the charge.	35

**Local Government (Water Services Preliminary
Arrangements) Bill**

Part 4 cl 99

- | | | |
|-----|--|----|
| (3) | However, a receiver may not create, or receive, any interest or security in water services infrastructure. | |
| (4) | A charge under this section must be assessed as a uniform charge in the dollar on the water services charges of a property— | |
| (a) | in Auckland; or | 5 |
| (b) | if the Auckland water organisation resolved that, at the time when the loan was being raised or the incidental arrangement was being entered into, it was for the benefit of only a specified area, that area. | |
| (5) | A charge under this section over any 1 or more of the assets of an Auckland water organisation is subject to section 40D(5) and (6) of the Receiverships Act 1993. | 10 |
| (6) | In this section, Crown monitor means a Crown monitor appointed under section 60 of the Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Act 2024 . | |
| 98 | Section 92 amended (Substantive council-controlled organisations must give effect to LTP and act consistently with other specified plans and strategies of Council) | 15 |
| | After section 92(2), insert: | |
| (3) | This section is subject to— | |
| (a) | section 69(2) (effect of charter) of the Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Act 2024 ; and | 20 |
| (b) | section 56A (limits on Auckland Council) of this Act. | |

Consequential amendments

- | | | |
|----|---|----|
| 99 | Consequential amendments relating to Watercare Services Limited
Amend the legislation specified in Schedule 2 as set out in that schedule. | 25 |
|----|---|----|

Schedule 1 **Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Bill**

Schedule 1
Transitional, savings, and related provisions

s 6

Part 1
Provisions relating to this Act as enacted

5

There are no transitional, savings, or related provisions in this Act as enacted.

Schedule 2

Consequential amendments relating to Watercare Services Limited

s 99

Part 1

Amendments to primary legislation

5

Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002 (2002 No 33)

In section 115A, after “local authority”, insert “or Watercare Services Limited” in each place.

Local Government (Rating) Act 2002 (2002 No 6)

After section 19(2), insert:

10

- (3) **Subsection (1)** does not apply to Auckland Council.
- (4) In **subsection (3)**, **Auckland Council** means the local authority established by section 6(1) of the Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009.

Receiverships Act 1993 (1993 No 122)

In the cross-heading above section 40A, after “*authorities*”, insert “*and Watercare*”.

15

Before section 40A, insert:

40AAA Meaning of Watercare

In sections 40A to 40E, **Watercare** means Watercare Services Limited.

In section 40A, after “local authority”, insert “or Watercare”.

Replace section 40B with:

20

40B Power of court to appoint receiver

- (1) Subject to sections 40D and 40E and this section, the High Court may,—
 - (a) on the application of any creditor of a local authority, appoint a receiver of any asset of the local authority or appoint a receiver for the purposes of section 115 of the Local Government Act 2002: 25
 - (b) on the application of any creditor of Watercare, appoint a receiver of any asset of Watercare or appoint a receiver for the purposes of **section 60A** of the Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009.
- (2) An appointment under **subsection (1)** must be for the period, and with the rights, powers, and duties, and on any terms and conditions, including as to security and remuneration, that the court considers appropriate in all the circumstances. 30
- (3) When considering, in accordance with **subsection (2)**, the terms and conditions upon which a receiver can be appointed by a court in relation to a local authority, the court must— 35

Schedule 2 **Local Government (Water Services Preliminary Arrangements) Bill**

Receiverships Act 1993 (1993 No 122)—continued

- (a) take account of the interests of both the secured and non-secured creditors of the local authority, as against—
 - (i) the interests of the local authority itself; and
 - (ii) the requirement of the local authority to provide those services that are essential for the maintenance of public health and safety; 5
 - and
 - (iii) the interests of the ratepayers with property within the area of the local authority; and
 - (iv) the interests of the general public living within the area of the local authority; and 10
- (b) take account of the interests of secured creditors as against the interests of non-secured creditors of the local authority.
- (4) When considering, in accordance with **subsection (2)**, the terms and conditions upon which a receiver can be appointed by a court in relation to Watercare, the court must— 15
 - (a) take account of the interests of both the secured and non-secured creditors of Watercare, as against—
 - (i) the interests of Watercare itself; and
 - (ii) the requirement of Watercare to provide those services that are essential for the maintenance of public health and safety; and 20
 - (iii) the interests of consumers with property in Auckland; and
 - (iv) the interests of the general public living in Auckland; and
 - (b) take account of the interests of secured creditors as against the interests of non-secured creditors of Watercare.
- (5) In this section, **Auckland** has the same meaning as in section 4(1) of the Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009. 25

In section 40D(1), after “local authority”, insert “or Watercare” in each place.

In section 40D(3), after “local authority”, insert “or Watercare”.

In section 40D(4), after “local authority’s”, insert “or Watercare’s”.

Replace section 40D(5) with: 30

- (5) Subject to subsection (6), **subsection (5A)** applies to any land that is vested in a local authority or Watercare and is—
 - (a) a reserve under the Reserves Act 1977; or
 - (b) land over which the local authority or Watercare has no power of disposition; or 35
 - (c) land in respect of which the local authority’s or Watercare’s power of disposition is conditional.

Receiverships Act 1993 (1993 No 122)—continued

(5A) The power of disposition that a receiver of that local authority or Watercare has in respect of the land is limited to a power of disposition by way of lease or licence for a term or terms not exceeding in the aggregate 9 years.

In section 40D(6), after “local authority”, insert “or Watercare”.

In section 40E(1), (2), and (3)(a), after “local authority”, insert “or Watercare”. 5

Part 2**Amendments to secondary legislation****National Civil Defence Emergency Management Plan Order 2015 (LI 2015/140)**

In the Schedule, heading to Part 10, after “local authorities”, insert “and Watercare Services Limited”. 10

In the Schedule, clause 159(1) and (4), after “local authorities”, insert “and Watercare Services Limited”.

In the Schedule, clause 160, after “local authorities”, insert “or Watercare Services Limited”.

In the Schedule, after clause 161(7), insert: 15

(8) In this clause, **local authority** has the meaning given in clause 2(2) but also includes Watercare Services Limited.

In the Schedule, heading to clause 162, after “local authorities”, insert “and Watercare Services Limited”.

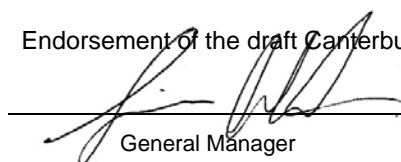
In the Schedule, clause 162, delete “by local authorities to”. 20

In the Schedule, clause 162(a), before “care”, insert “by local authorities to”.

In the Schedule, clause 162(b) and (c), before “take”, insert “by local authorities and Watercare Services Limited to”.

In the Schedule, heading to clause 163, after “local authorities”, insert “and Watercare Services Limited”. 25

In the Schedule, clause 163(1), after “local authorities”, insert “or Watercare Services Limited”.

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL**REPORT FOR DECISION****FILE NO and TRIM NO:** POL-07-02/240617097809**REPORT TO:** Council**DATE OF MEETING:** 2 July 2024**AUTHOR(S):** Veronica Spittal, Principal Policy Analyst – Climate Change and Sustainability**SUBJECT:** Endorsement of the draft Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan**ENDORSED BY:**
(for Reports to Council,
Committees or Boards)


General Manager



Chief Executive
1. SUMMARY

- 1.1. The purpose of this report is to seek Council's endorsement of the draft Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan (CCPP) and any feedback from Council on the plan's narrative and design.

Attachment

- i. Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan (240617097781)

2. RECOMMENDATION**THAT** the Council

- (b) **Receives** Report No. 240617097809.
- (c) **Endorses** the attached draft Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan Trim 240617097781.
- (d) **Notes** that the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan will be finalised pending LTP deliberations at all councils for endorsement and approval by the Chief Executive Forum and Mayoral Forum in July and August respectively.
- (e) **Delegates** Mayor Gordon and Chief Executive Jeff Millward the authority to signoff the final Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan on the Waimakariri District Council's behalf during the processes outlined in recommendation (c) above.
- (f) **Notes** staff will bring the final plan back to Council for its information and formal endorsement in September 2024 following the Canterbury Mayoral Forum approval.

3. BACKGROUND

- 3.1. All Canterbury councils acknowledge climate change as a significant and long-term challenge and that we all share a role in driving solutions and adapting. After the completion of the Canterbury Climate Change Risk Assessment, led by the Climate Change Working Group in late 2021, there was consensus amongst the group and the Canterbury Mayoral Forum to investigate options for collaborating on climate action planning in the region.
- 3.2. After discussions with each Canterbury council, in November 2022 the Canterbury Mayoral Forum endorsed a scope and approach for regional collaboration on climate action planning, as proposed by the Canterbury Climate Change Working Group, including the

development of a partnership plan based on internationally recognised best practice (C40 Climate Action Planning framework).

- 3.3. The Canterbury Mayoral Forum also agreed to the formation of a councillor reference group to support and provide governance-level input into the CCPP's development. The Canterbury Climate Action Planning Reference Group includes elected members from Canterbury councils and is chaired by Mayor Dan Gordon and supported by the convenor of the Canterbury Climate Change Working Group (Dr Tim Davie, Environment Canterbury). Membership also includes the chair of the Canterbury Policy Forum (Hamish Dobbie – Chief Executive Hurunui District Council). Councillor Niki Mealings is our Council's representative on the reference group. At the 5 June 2024 Reference Group meeting secretariat staff were requested to review the group's terms of reference, including extending the term of the group, to enable it to have oversight of the implementation of the CCPP.
- 3.4. The Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan aims to outline the collaborative effort of Canterbury councils towards mitigating and adapting to the effects of climate change on Canterbury's communities and ecosystems. This includes:
 - responding proactively to known risks from climate change hazards
 - decreasing climate change risks through reducing greenhouse gas emissions
 - enhancing communities' resilience and capacity to respond well to climate change impacts.
- 3.5. Benefits of the CCPP include the following:
 - **Regional leadership and community focus**
Climate change will have significant physical, economic, and socio-cultural impacts on our communities. Partnering on climate action allows for joint leadership to address these issues and collectively improve the four well-beings for Canterbury communities.
 - **A united voice and enhanced influence**
A united voice carries greater weight in advocating for the region's needs to central government. By presenting a unified front, we can help shape legislation and policy, and secure climate action funding and finance that aligns with our shared climate objectives.
 - **Leveraging collective resources, sharing knowledge and expertise**
Together, we possess a wealth of expertise, resources, and knowledge. By pooling our strengths, we can learn from each other and achieve far more than any one council could alone. From shared research and funding opportunities to coordinated projects, collaboration amplifies our regional impact.
 - **Maximising efficiency**
Through reducing duplication of efforts and streamlining processes, collaboration allows us to achieve greater efficiencies in implementing climate initiatives across Canterbury. With coordinated efforts, we can achieve results faster and more effectively, delivering tangible benefits to our communities.
 - **Fostering innovation**
Collaboration sparks creativity and innovation. By sharing ideas and best practices, we can inspire new approaches to tackling climate challenges. Through collaborative research and pilot projects, we can experiment with cutting-edge solutions and pioneer new, sustainable ways of doing things.

- **Building resilience**

Climate change does not stop at district or regional borders. By collaborating across councils and looking beyond to our neighbouring regions, we can develop comprehensive resilience strategies that protect all our communities from the impacts of extreme weather events, sea-level rise, and other climate-related risks.

4. ISSUES AND OPTIONS

- 4.1. Updates on the development of the CCPP have been provided to a Council briefing on 8 August 2023 (seeking feedback on the strategic framework), Council meeting on 5 September 2023 (seeking endorsement of the strategic framework) and a briefing on 30 April 2024 (seeking feedback on draft actions). Feedback provided by the Council on both the strategic framework and actions was accepted by the Working and Reference Groups and has been incorporated into the final draft plan.
- 4.2. The purpose of this report is to obtain any feedback from Council on the draft Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan's narrative and design and seek general endorsement of the draft Plan.
- 4.3. The attached draft plan was considered at a Reference Group meeting on 5 June 2024 which endorsed the plan and delegated minor amendments to the Chair of the Reference Group. The group also agreed to increase the use of Te Reo Māori on all plan headings, reword action 6 relating to supporting Papatipu Rūnanga and to daylight the climate action planning work being done by rūnanga in Canterbury. Not all these changes have been incorporated into the attached draft plan yet, although action 6 has been amended.
- 4.4. The Council could choose not to endorse the draft plan at this stage, but this would not be consistent with the iterative approach that has been used throughout the development of the document as outlined in paragraph 4.1 or consistent with the decision made by the Council's representatives on the Reference Group as outlined in paragraph 4.3.
- 4.5. Although Councils are at different stages in strategy development and have differing levels of individual resource availability to implement action, all councils have contributed to the identification and development of collaborative climate actions. These actions are intended to complement, not duplicate, climate efforts of individual councils. The CCPP actions will enable councils to advance their own climate change knowledge and understanding, and gain momentum with local climate action.
- 4.6. The Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan will be finalised, pending LTP deliberations at all councils, for endorsement and approval by the Chief Executive Forum and Mayoral Forum in July and August respectively and the plan is to be launched to the general public mid-October 2024 (date to be confirmed).
- 4.7. The successful implementation of the CCPP actions will require sustained contributions and collaboration between all councils, appropriate resourcing in terms of budget and staff time, and continued political backing. The actions in the plan will be led by Hurunui, Ashburton, Waimakariri, Christchurch City Council, Environment Canterbury and the CMF secretariat. Staff at other councils not leading key actions have also indicated actions they can support implement.

Implications for Community Wellbeing

There are implications for community wellbeing in the subject matter of this report. The socio-economic impacts of climate change are increasingly being felt and these are expected to 'escalate with every increment of warming' (MfE briefing to incoming

government). The wellbeing of some Aotearoa New Zealander's has already been significantly impacted by recent climate-related events and the more vulnerable populations can be the most at risk.

5. **COMMUNITY VIEWS**

5.1. **Mana whenua**

Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri hapū is likely to be affected by or have an interest in the subject matter of this report. For most Rūnanga, climate change is a key issue with multiple risks to biodiversity, water, infrastructure services, energy, prosperity, physical health, equity, sense of community, historic heritage, knowledge, and self-governance.

Tangata whenua representation was not able to be achieved on the Climate Change Working Group. Council continues to engage with mana whenua on opportunities for collaboration and partnership on climate change, sustainability and natural environment matters, and acknowledges the significant work being undertaken by Ngāi Tahu in this space.

5.2. **Groups and Organisations**

There are groups and organisations likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report, particularly environmentally focussed, business, and primary producer groups.

5.3. **Wider Community**

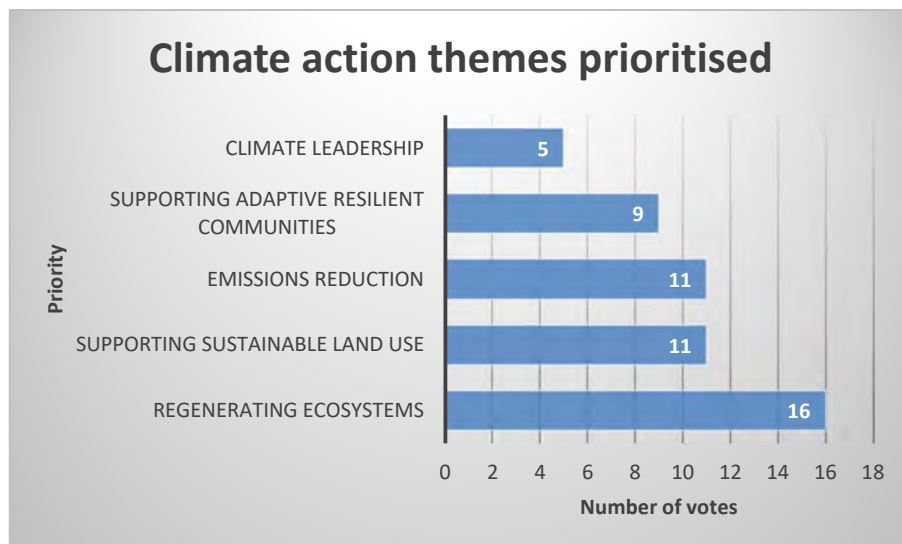
The wider community is likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report. Raymond Horan advised at the 'Embedding Climate Change into the LTP' webinar on 26 May 2023 that climate change could be the biggest driver of local government costs over the longer term, and this will concern many residents. Most respondents (75%) to the 2022 Customer Satisfaction Survey thought it was important for Council to be involved with responding to climate change and only 19% did not.

Environment Canterbury undertook a 'Lets Pick a Pathway' in person summit in each district between October and December 2023. Key climate change actions identified by participants in the Waimakariri District included reducing greenhouse gas emissions through active transport, renewable energy, and more sustainable land use, while supporting adaptive and resilient communities through better leadership, planning, water management and empowering local action.

Key barriers to climate action in Waimakariri were considered to be misunderstanding, apathy, a lack of transport options, insufficient resources and unclear regulations. Clear communication, bipartisan agreement and stronger regulations were identified as key ways to overcome barriers.

Waimakariri residents stated that fair climate action required a collaborative and inclusive approach, with shared responsibility and targeted support for those most vulnerable and the CCPP aims to deliver this.

At the Rangiora A & P show people were also able to place a token on the climate action theme they thought should be prioritised and the results of this informal poll is shown below. The key CCPP action the Council has undertaken to co-lead with Selwyn District Council (facilitation of a regional blue-green network) reflects the top priority below.



6. **OTHER IMPLICATIONS AND RISK MANAGEMENT**

6.1. **Financial Implications**

There are financial implications relating to the decisions sought by this report. The agreed approach for implementing the CCPP was to incorporate climate actions into councils' long-term plans to recognise local government processes and ensure actions were funded.

A cost-sharing formula was endorsed by the Chief Executives Forum and Mayoral Forum at the end of 2023 as per the table below that recognised the financial constraints local government was facing and the CCWG is now awaiting confirmation of this funding through each Council's LTP deliberations. If the full budget isn't achieved, the implementation overview will need to be revised with actions phased out over a longer period of time.

	CMF contribution ratios (%)	Y1 LTP	Y2 LTP	Y3 LTP	Total Y1-Y3 LTP
Environment Canterbury	20.5	38,950	151,700	110,700	301,350
Christchurch	20.5	38,950	151,700	110,700	301,350
Selwyn	10.7	20,330	79,180	57,780	157,290
Waimakariri	10.7	20,330	79,180	57,780	157,290
Ashburton	9.8	18,620	72,520	52,920	144,060
Timaru	9.8	18,620	72,520	52,920	144,060
Hurunui	5.2	9,880	38,480	28,080	76,440
Waimate	3.9	7,410	28,860	21,060	57,330
Waitaki	3.9	7,410	28,860	21,060	57,330
Kaikōura	2.5	4,750	18,500	13,500	36,750
Mackenzie	2.5	4,750	18,500	13,500	36,750
TOTAL estimated costs for collective action	100	190,000	711,140	518,940	1,420,080

A budget for this project as per the table above has been included in the 2024 Long Term Plan.

All Councils, particularly those leading actions, will also be contributing 'in kind' through the allocation of staff resources to implementing the projects.

There is also a cost associated with not taking action. Studies by Deloitte and others highlight an impending 'turning point' where the increased costs of taking decisive action sooner rather than later begin to outweigh the short-term gains from deferring a response.

6.2. **Sustainability and Climate Change Impacts**

The recommendations in this report do have sustainability and/or climate change impacts as outlined throughout.

6.3 **Risk Management**

There are risks arising from the subject matter of this report. While the Mayoral Forum cannot bind member Councils to decisions that have not been made by them, a lack of support for the CCPP could negatively impact Council's reputation. This is because conversations have been had with councils from the beginning of the project to determine their needs and options for regional collaboration on climate action planning have been based on those discussions. Throughout the process CCWG members have acted as representatives for their councils to ensure the necessary input and support is obtained as the plan is created.

6.4 **Health and Safety**

There are health and safety risks arising from the subject matter of this report. The World Health Organisation considers climate change to be the single biggest health threat facing humanity today.

7. **CONTEXT**

7.1. **Consistency with Policy**

This matter is not a matter of significance in terms of the Council's current Significance and Engagement Policy.

Council's involvement with the CCPP is consistent with the purpose of the Council's Climate Change Policy "to ensure the Waimakariri District Council is well prepared to proactively lead, in partnership with communities, organisations and businesses within and outside of the District, a response to climate change challenges that is appropriate, timely, cost-effective and equitable".

It is also consistent with Objective 4 of the Policy "to work collaboratively with the community and other organisations to adaptively plan for, and increase resilience to, climate change effects on the District's social, cultural, environmental and economic wellbeing."

7.2. **Authorising Legislation**

The Local Government Act 2002 requires territorial authorities to take climate change into account through section 3 (d) which "provides for local authorities to play a broad role in promoting the social, economic, environmental, and cultural well-being of their communities, taking a sustainable development approach". Section 10 (1) (b) requires Council to take into account the well-being of future generations.

Council is also required to have particular regard to the effects of climate change under Section 7 (i) of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). This function primarily relates to land use planning.

7.3. **Consistency with Community Outcomes**

The following Council's community outcomes are relevant to the actions arising from recommendations in this report.

Social

Council commits to promoting health and wellbeing and minimising the risk of social harm to its communities.

Environmental

Our district is resilient and able to quickly respond to and recover from natural disasters and the effects of climate change.

Our district transitions towards a reduced carbon and waste district.

Economic

Infrastructure and services are sustainable, resilient, and affordable.

Our district readily adapts to innovation and emerging technologies that support its transition to a circular economy.

Council has also identified the following as a key strategic priority for the next three years.

Protect and enhance the resilience of our natural and built environment

Respond to the challenges posed by climate change by building resilient infrastructure, managing adaptation, and minimising council's carbon emissions.

7.4. **Authorising Delegations**

The Council has the discretion to receive/not receive this report.



It's time, Canterbury! Kua tae te wā, Waitaha

***The Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan
Te Mahere Huringa Āhuarangi o Waitaha***

Local government climate actions for Canterbury 2024-2030.

**It's time,
Canterbury**
Our climate change
conversation

CANTERBURY
Mayoral Forum

DRAFT



It's time, Canterbury – Let's act now for a liveable prosperous future

***Kua tae te wā, Waitaha - Me whakarite
ināianeī kia ora rawa te apōpō!***

Foreword from the Chair of the Canterbury Climate Action Planning Reference Group – Mayor Dan Gordon and Chair of Mayoral Forum – Mayor Nigel Bowen

Climate change is one of the most pressing challenges of our time, and it affects us all. To tackle climate change and its impacts effectively, we know we must work together. By joining forces and taking bold, collective climate action here in Waitaha/Canterbury, we unlock a multitude of benefits for our communities and can even transform risks into opportunities.

All 11 councils in Canterbury have worked together to develop this plan – the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan – which sets out how we intend to work together and with others to support our transition to a thriving, climate-resilient, low-emissions region. Every council in Canterbury is already involved with climate action in their city, district, or region. The Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan doesn't detract from that work. Instead, this plan joins the dots, enabling us to align our work programmes, create efficiencies, and provide regional solutions to shared problems.

In drafting this plan, we've sought to get the best 'bang for buck' for Canterbury residents while accelerating the scale and pace of climate action for current and future generations. The 10 climate actions in this plan are the key first steps in our journey towards a sustainable future. It's time to work together, Canterbury.



Mayor Dan Gordon
*Chair, Canterbury Climate
Action Planning Reference Group*



Mayor Nigel Bowen
*Chair, Canterbury
Mayoral Forum*

Supplied by: Mackenzie District Council

DRAFT

Guiding whakataukī of Ngāi Tahu:

*Mō tātou, ā, mō kā uri ā muri ake nei
– for us and our children after us*

DRAFT

Karakia

*Ko ngā maunga, ko Te
Tiritiri o Te Moana*

Ko Aoraki te Kaihautū

*Ko ngā awa, ngā awa huka
e rere ana ki te moana*

*Ko te whenua, Ngā Pākihi
Whakatekateka o Waitaha
Tihei mauri ora!*

*The mountains are the
Southern Alps,*

watched over by Aoraki;

*The rivers are the snow-fed
rivers whose waters flow out
to the ocean;*

*The land of the Canterbury
Plains is where people walk
proudly.*

*Listen up – our life force
is alive!*

Contents

Acknowledgments8

Executive Summary.....9

Strategic Framework.....10

Canterbury. Our region, our home.12

Mayoral Forum Plan for Canterbury 2023-2025.....12

The Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan.....13

The benefits of regional collaboration on climate action.....13

Our changing climate.....14

Greenhouse gas emissions14

Targets.....15

Climate risks in Canterbury16

What matters most - Climate change in Canterbury.....18

Working together for climate action in Canterbury20

How we produced this plan24

What we’ve heard from engagement with communities and key stakeholders.....25

Urgency assessment25

Strategic framework for regional climate action planning.....26

Vision of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan.....26

Principles.....26

Strategic outcomes and objectives27

Regional climate actions.....28

Action 1: Understanding climate risks and improving resilience30

Action 2: Emissions reduction31

Action 3: Adaptation planning.....32

Action 4: Nature-based solutions33

Action 5: Climate change education and advocacy.....34

Action 6: Supporting papatipu rūnanga35

Action 7: Integrating climate change considerations into council processes36

Action 8: Identify and leverage co-funding and financing opportunities.37

Action 9: Monitoring and evaluation38

Action 10: Implementation39

Costs of climate action.....41

Bibliography41

Implementing the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan42



DRAFT

DRAFT

Acknowledgments

The Canterbury Mayoral Forum would like to thank all those who contributed to the many discussions and workshops in the development of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan, including past and present members of the:

Canterbury Climate Change Working Group:

Tim Davie (Convener, Environment Canterbury), Isla Hepburn (Climate Partnership Plan Project Lead, Environment Canterbury), Jesse Burgess, Fiona Shanahun (Environment Canterbury), Richard Mabon (Ashburton District Council), Tony Moore, Carey Graydon, Jessica Allison-Batt, (Christchurch City Council), James Smyth, Nicola Kirby (Hurunui District Council), Murray Dickson, Wendy Thompson (Mackenzie District Council), Keith Tallentire, Amit Chauhan (Selwyn District Council), Rhys Taylor, Stephen Doran (Timaru District Council), Veronica Spittal, Sylvia Docherty (Waimakariri District Council), Andrew Oliver, Jonts McKerrow (Waimate District Council), Chelsea Clyde (Waitaki District Council).

Canterbury Climate Action Reference Group:

Mayor Dan Gordon (Chair, Waimakariri District Council), Councillor Craig Pauling (Environment Canterbury), Councillor Kevin Heays (Kaikōura District Council), Councillor Liz McMillan (Ashburton District Council), Councillor Sara Templeton (Christchurch City Council), Councillor David Hislop (Hurunui District Council), Councillor Murray Cox (Mackenzie District Council), Councillor Sophie McInnes (Selwyn District Council), Councillor Elizabeth Mundt (Selwyn District Council), Councillor Michelle Pye (Timaru District Council), Councillor Niki Mealings (Waimakariri District Council), Councillor John Begg (Waimate District Council), Councillor Jim Hopkins (Waitaki District Council), Hamish Dobbie (Chair Canterbury Policy Forum, Chief Executive Hurunui District Council).

Canterbury Climate Change Working Group and Reference Group Secretariat:

Alina Toppler, Sarah Hancock, Carmin Beck (Environment Canterbury).

Environment Canterbury Climate Change and Community Resilience Team:

Morag Butler, Bridget Lange, Kate Williman, Victoria Clare, AnaCapri Mauro.

Te Mana Ora:

Cassie Welch, Rosa Verkasalo, Hebe Gibson, Chantal Lauzon.

It's Time, Canterbury:

Project team and Communications Sub-group

Any key stakeholders or people generous with their time developing and reviewing the document.

Lead Authors:

Isla Hepburn and Alina Toppler, Environment Canterbury Climate Change and Community Resilience Team.



Executive summary

Councils in Canterbury have joined forces to deliver bold climate actions in Canterbury/Waitaha.

All 11 councils in Canterbury have worked together to develop the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan which sets out how we intend to work together and with others to support our transition to a thriving, climate-resilient, low-emissions region.

The Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan sets out our vision of a thriving, climate resilient, low-emissions Canterbury. These are the 6 key outcomes and objectives we are seeking through delivery of our 10 primary actions and supporting sub-actions. We have developed eight principles which underpin the development and implementation of this plan. These are the values by which we will approach collective climate action in Canterbury.

In June 2024, Councils agreed to fund regional collective climate actions through their Long-Term Plans 2024-34 and a total of \$1.47 million has been confirmed for the first 3 years. Further funding beyond the initial three years will be sought through future annual and long-term plan reviews, and by identifying and taking advantage of co-funding opportunities with key stakeholders.



DRAFT

Strategic Framework

Vision Our collective purpose and guiding star for climate action in Canterbury

A thriving, climate resilient, low-emissions Canterbury

Principles The values by which we will approach climate action in Canterbury

Treaty based

Equitable

Solutions focused

Informed

Collaborative

Intergenerational

Inclusive

Bold

Outcomes The desired future state for Canterbury in a changing climate



A healthy environment

Our healthy environment enables our communities to thrive.



An equitable and inclusive transition

Our communities are empowered through an equitable and inclusive transition to a low-emissions and climate resilient future.



Prosperity

Our environmental, cultural, economic, and social wellbeing is improved by identifying and taking early opportunities to mitigate and adapt to climate change.



Adapted and resilient communities

Our communities are resilient and have the necessary infrastructure, knowledge, and tools they need to adapt to climate change.



Emissions reduction

Greenhouse gas emissions reductions are achieved in line with our national and international commitments at a minimum.



Climate action leadership

Canterbury is a leader in climate change mitigation, adaptation, and inclusive climate action planning promoting the four wellbeings.

Objectives What we want to achieve through regional joint climate action

Objective one

To work with science, nature and Mātauranga Māori to reduce climate vulnerability and improve resilience.

Objective two

To enable transformational action in an inclusive and equitable way.

Objective three

To maximise co-benefits and identify opportunities for co-funding and financing climate actions.

Objective four

To inform and empower communities to be prepared, improve their resilience and adapt to climate change.

Objective five

To collaborate with communities to use available solutions and encourage behaviour change to achieve a smart, innovative, low-emissions future.

Objective six

To ensure climate change is prioritised in all local government decision making processes in Canterbury.

Regional climate actions

- 1** **Understanding climate risks and improving resilience**

Understand climate hazards and risks in Canterbury to support evidence-based decision making and improve regional resilience.
- 2** **Emissions reduction**

Work together across the region to build equitable, inclusive pathways, targets, and key actions to support New Zealand's commitments towards global greenhouse gas emission reduction.
- 3** **Adaptation planning**

Support best practise approaches for local adaptation planning with communities.
- 4** **Nature-based solutions**

Facilitate the development of a Canterbury blue-green network to increase natural capital, indigenous biodiversity and offer nature-based solutions to climate change effects.
- 5** **Climate change education and advocacy to support communities**

Support community understanding about the local impacts of climate change and promote individual and collective climate action.
- 6** **Supporting Papatipu Rūnanga**

Support Papatipu Rūnanga with climate action and provide opportunity for their involvement with Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan projects.
- 7** **Integrating climate change considerations into council processes**

Work collaboratively to build local government capability and enhance its capacity to adapt in a changing climate.
- Climate funding and financing**

Identify and leverage co-funding and financing opportunities for climate adaptation and resilience.
- Monitoring and evaluation**

Monitor and report on progress towards achieving the actions and outcomes of the Partnership Plan.
- 10** **Implementation**

Assemble an implementation team to ensure the successful delivery and implementation of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan.

Canterbury Waitaha

Our region, our home

Situated on the eastern coast of New Zealand's Te Waipounamu South Island, the Canterbury region is renowned for its stunning landscapes, diverse ecosystems, strong economy, and vibrant communities.

From the snowcapped peaks of Kā Tiritiri o Te Moana, the Southern Alps, to Kā Pakihi Whakatekateka o Waitaha, the Canterbury Plains, the region boasts a rich tapestry of natural history and cultural heritage. Canterbury is unique – it is New Zealand's largest region in area and its coastline is long and diverse, stretching from north of Kaikōura to the Waitaki River; there are more than 4,700 lakes and tarns, and over 78,000 km of rivers and streams. Most of Canterbury's 599,694 residents¹ live near or on the coast. The population of Canterbury is projected to grow at the same rate of growth as Aotearoa New Zealand's total population, on average, 0.8% per year between 2018 and 2048.

Ngāi Tahu is the iwi of Waitaha, Canterbury. There are 10 papatipu rūnanga in Canterbury who have kaitiaki status as mana whenua over land and water within their takiwā.

Canterbury is already experiencing the effects of climate change. In recent years, we've seen droughts, floods, fires, changing rainfall patterns, extreme weather events and coastal erosion impacting our region. These events are happening with greater frequency and intensity. Our long coastline is also changing with slower onset changes such as sea level rise.

We know that Canterbury's climate will become warmer, wetter, windier and wilder.

¹ 2018 Census data about Canterbury Region retrieved from <https://www.stats.govt.nz/tools/2018-census-place-summaries/canterbury-region>.

These changes will affect us all and the things we value most: our people (he tangata), the environment (taiao) and biodiversity (rerenga rauropi), our infrastructure (ngā waihanga), our economy and prosperity (ōhanga), our wellbeing (hauora), connection to place and sense of community (whakapapa and hāpori). The wellbeing of some communities and individuals are likely to be more affected than others, particularly those who are already vulnerable because of economic, social, health and/or cultural reasons.

Rising temperatures will significantly affect our health (ora), land use, water (wai), energy (hihiri), food (kai) security, natural ecosystems, and recreation.

Canterbury councils see and deal with the impact of a changing climate first hand, including its impact on the environment, infrastructure, businesses, and people's lives. With commitment, collaboration, and planning, local government can lead and support communities in adapting to climate change, building resilience, and reducing their emissions.

Mayoral Forum Plan for Canterbury 2023-2025

The Canterbury Mayoral Forum is the primary mechanism for local government communication, co-ordination and collaboration in Canterbury. Climate change mitigation and adaptation in Canterbury is one of the three priorities under the *Canterbury Mayoral Forum Plan 2023-2025*. Although the Mayoral Forum continues to advocate for governance and decision-making to be devolved to the level of government closest to affected communities, the challenge of taking effective and sustained climate action requires us to work together more than we ever have before.

For the Mayors of Canterbury, the overarching priorities for climate change are reducing our carbon footprint, working together on climate action planning, building community resilience, and making our infrastructure as strong as it can be. Our Plan for Canterbury also highlights the importance we place on playing our part to ensure water, food, and energy security for the region.



The Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan

All Canterbury councils acknowledge that climate change is a significant, long-term challenge, and that we all share a role in adapting and driving solutions to this challenge. Canterbury councils are at different stages of strategy development and action planning and have varying resources available to implement action.

The Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan is about councils pulling together to help Canterbury thrive and prosper in a changing climate; it's our collective vision for a better future. This Plan is also a testament to councils' long-term commitment to working together to tackle climate change, serve our communities and safeguard our environment and the things we love for generations to come.

Importantly, the actions included in the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan are intended to complement, not duplicate or detract from, the climate efforts of individual councils. The Partnership Plan actions will enable councils to advance their own climate change knowledge and gain momentum with local action.

The benefits of regional collaboration on climate action

There are many benefits to taking regional climate actions. The challenge of climate change response means that we will only be successful if we strengthen our working relationships and help each other on this journey.

Regional leadership and community focus

Climate change will have significant physical, economic, and socio-cultural impacts on our communities. Partnering on climate action allows for joint leadership to address these issues and collectively improve the four wellbeing for Canterbury communities.

A united voice and enhanced influence

Our united voice carries greater weight in advocating for our region's needs to central government. By presenting a unified front, we can help shape legislation and policy and secure climate action funding and finance that aligns with our shared climate objectives.

Leveraging collective resources, sharing knowledge and expertise

Together, we possess a wealth of expertise, resources, and knowledge. By pooling our strengths, we can learn from each other and achieve far more than any one council could alone. From shared research and funding opportunities to coordinated projects, collaboration amplifies our regional impact.

Maximising efficiency

Reducing duplication of efforts and streamlining processes, collaboration allows us to achieve greater efficiency in implementing climate initiatives across Canterbury. With coordinated efforts, we can achieve results faster and more effectively, delivering tangible benefits to our communities.

Fostering innovation

Collaboration sparks creativity and innovation. By sharing ideas and best practices, we can inspire new approaches to tackling climate challenges. Through collaborative research and pilot projects, we can experiment with cutting-edge solutions and pioneer new, sustainable ways of doing things.

Building resilience

Climate change does not stop at district or regional borders. By collaborating across councils and looking beyond to our neighbouring regions, we can develop comprehensive resilience strategies that protect all our communities from the impacts of extreme weather events, sea-level rise, and other climate-related risks.

Our changing climate

Greenhouse gas emissions

For hundreds of years, human activities have released increasing amounts of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere. These gases trap heat from the sun, causing warming and resulting in a changing climate. Since the 1950s, greenhouse gas emissions have greatly accelerated and are now driving the significant levels of climate change that we are experiencing today.

There are two types of greenhouse gas emissions to consider - long-lived and short-lived gases.

Long-lived gases stay in the atmosphere over very long timescales after they have been produced. Carbon dioxide and nitrous oxide are examples of long-lived gases.

Short-lived gases remain in the atmosphere for less time than long lived gases but have a greater warming impact in the short term. Biogenic methane is an example of a short-lived gas.

Both long- and short-lived greenhouse gases need to be reduced to successfully reach New Zealand's climate change commitments.

The Canterbury Greenhouse Gas Emissions Inventory (2021) is a key tool in our climate action work that will enable us to track changes to emissions over time, assess different mitigation options, and evaluate the effect of central and local government policies on regional emissions.

The Emissions Inventory (see Figure 1) shows us that agriculture produced around a quarter of the region's long-lived greenhouse gases and most of the biogenic methane emissions, totalling around 61% of overall gross emissions. Stationary energy and transport each produced around a third of long-lived greenhouse gas emissions in Canterbury. Waste, and industrial processes and product use, each contributed relatively small amounts of greenhouse gases.

The best available scientific advice says that holding the increase in the global average temperature to well below 2°C above pre-industrial levels is necessary to limit the most severe climate change risks.

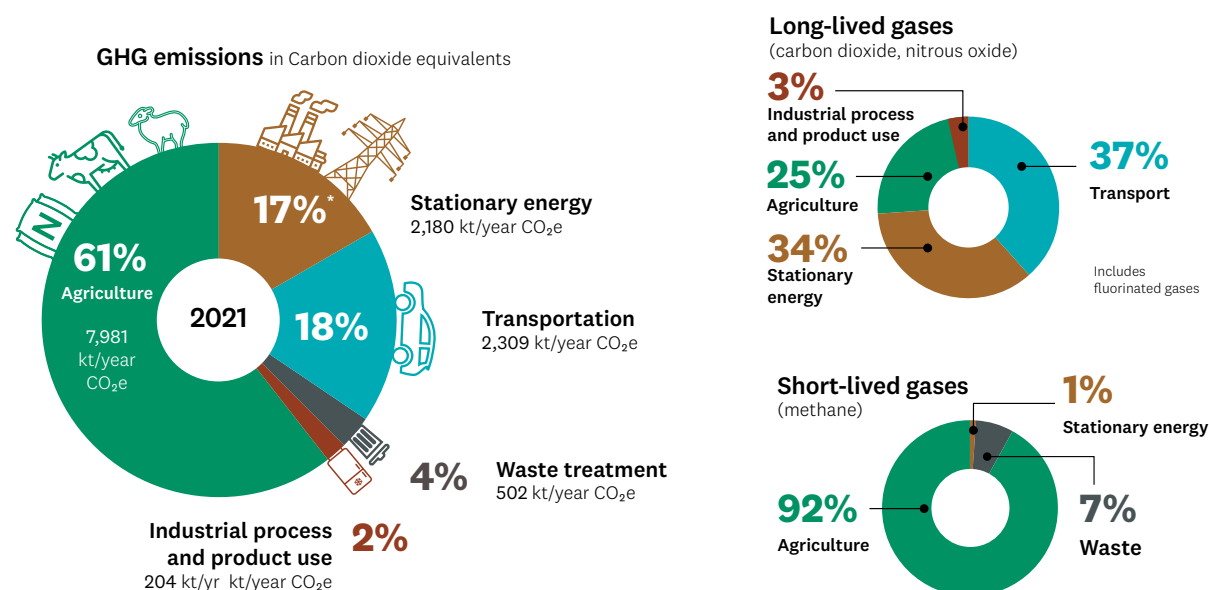


Figure 1: Canterbury's greenhouse gas emissions, 2021
(NB. Percentages have been rounded to the nearest whole number, so charts do not add to exactly 100%)

New Zealand, along with 195 other members of the United Nations, signed the Paris Agreement in 2015 to ensure that global warming is limited to well below 2 degrees Celsius above pre-industrial levels. This agreement commits signatory countries to mitigate and adapt to the effects of climate change by reducing national greenhouse gas emissions in accordance with Nationally Determined Contributions.

Canterbury has an important role to play in contributing to national and global efforts to reduce greenhouse gas emissions in the atmosphere and we're not too small to make a difference. In fact, Canterbury, blessed with sun, water and wind, is well placed for a successful clean energy transition to a low-emissions future. We can also make big gains with emissions reduction by transitioning to more sustainable transport and agricultural practices.

The best action we can take to help mitigate the effects of global warming is to reduce greenhouse gas emissions at source. In addition to this, we can also help remove carbon from the atmosphere by sequestering or storing carbon. However, even when we do reduce global emissions, some climate change effects, and their consequences, are already locked in due to the time lag between generating the emissions and the impacts being felt. This is why adaptation – taking action to prepare for and adjust to current and projected impacts of climate change – is also important.

New Zealand's emissions reduction targets and plans

Greenhouse gas emissions targets are limits that scientists and policy makers set in their plans to combat climate change. The aim is to halt the increasing emissions and their impact. Aotearoa New Zealand's first emissions reduction plan *Te hau marohi ki anamata* (2022) contains strategies, policies and actions for achieving our first emissions budget and contributing to global efforts to limit warming to 1.5 degrees Celsius above pre-industrial levels.

New Zealand has made commitments to the following international and domestic emissions targets:

Domestic targets under the Climate Change Response Act (2022)²:

- Net zero³ emissions of all greenhouse gas emissions other than biogenic methane by 2050.
- 24 to 47 per cent reduction below 2017 biogenic methane emissions by 2050, including 10 per cent reduction below 2017 biogenic methane emissions by 2030.

Aotearoa New Zealand's emissions budgets set ambitious and achievable short-term targets that will put us on track to meet these commitments, and national emissions reduction plans lay out strategies, goals and actions to meet these budgets.



² www.legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2002/0040/latest/whole.html#DLM158590

³ Net zero emissions are achieved when anthropogenic emissions of greenhouse gases to the atmosphere are balanced by anthropogenic removals over a specified period. (IPCC, www.ipcc.ch/sr15/chapter/glossary/)



Climate risks in Canterbury

Canterbury is a large region, with varied geography and environments. This means that risks and impacts of climate change will occur in different ways across Canterbury, and direct and indirect risks⁴ will increase over time. Some risks will be experienced more often and more intensely in some districts and not in others. The Canterbury Mayoral Forum published the Canterbury Climate Change Risk Assessment in early 2022, which was designed to build a shared understanding of climate change risks across the region and to help us prepare and respond effectively. Figure 2 to the right illustrates some of the key risks which will be felt around the region. In the coming decades, many climate change risks to our region are anticipated to become high or extreme. Detailed information on climate risks and impacts in Canterbury can be found on the [Canterbury Mayoral Forum website](#).

⁴ Direct risks are those where there is a direct link between a hazard and an element at risk that is exposed and vulnerable e.g. droughts leading to crop failure. Indirect risks are risks that are not directly impacted by physical changes in climate e.g. impacts on mental health, disruptions to supply chains, social wellbeing, and cohesion. (MfE, 2021)

Urban Centres

For all communities, risks from climate hazards generally include damage to infrastructure from flooding, and disruption to transport routes and supply chains. Changing climate conditions also pose a risk to supporting utilities such as landfills and power supply.

Christchurch is our biggest city. It is a major social and economic hub for the Canterbury Region. The low lying, coastal position of much of the city makes it very exposed to flooding and sea level Kaikōura rise. This poses widespread risk to Christchurch's communities and infrastructure. There is a risk that community cohesion will reduce as a result of increasing climate related damages. People's physical and mental health may also be impacted by changing markets and job availability.

Canterbury Plains

The fertile lowlands of Canterbury are highly important to agriculture. An increasing temperature poses risk of increased heat stress in stock, as well as increases in the occurrence of pests and invasive species. Increased drought potential may introduce a range of stresses, including impacting on water availability. Increased storms, wind, and flooding may increase erosion, and damage crops, pasture, stock, and infrastructure.

Figure 2: Climate risks in the Canterbury (source Tonkin & Taylor (2022) Canterbury Climate Change Risk Assessment)

Montane/ High Country

Increased temperatures, drought, and fire weather will increase erosion, and impact forestry, tourism, and unique ecosystems, contributing to biodiversity stress.

Remote communities may face increased disruption to transport routes, increasing isolation and other stressors.

Freshwater

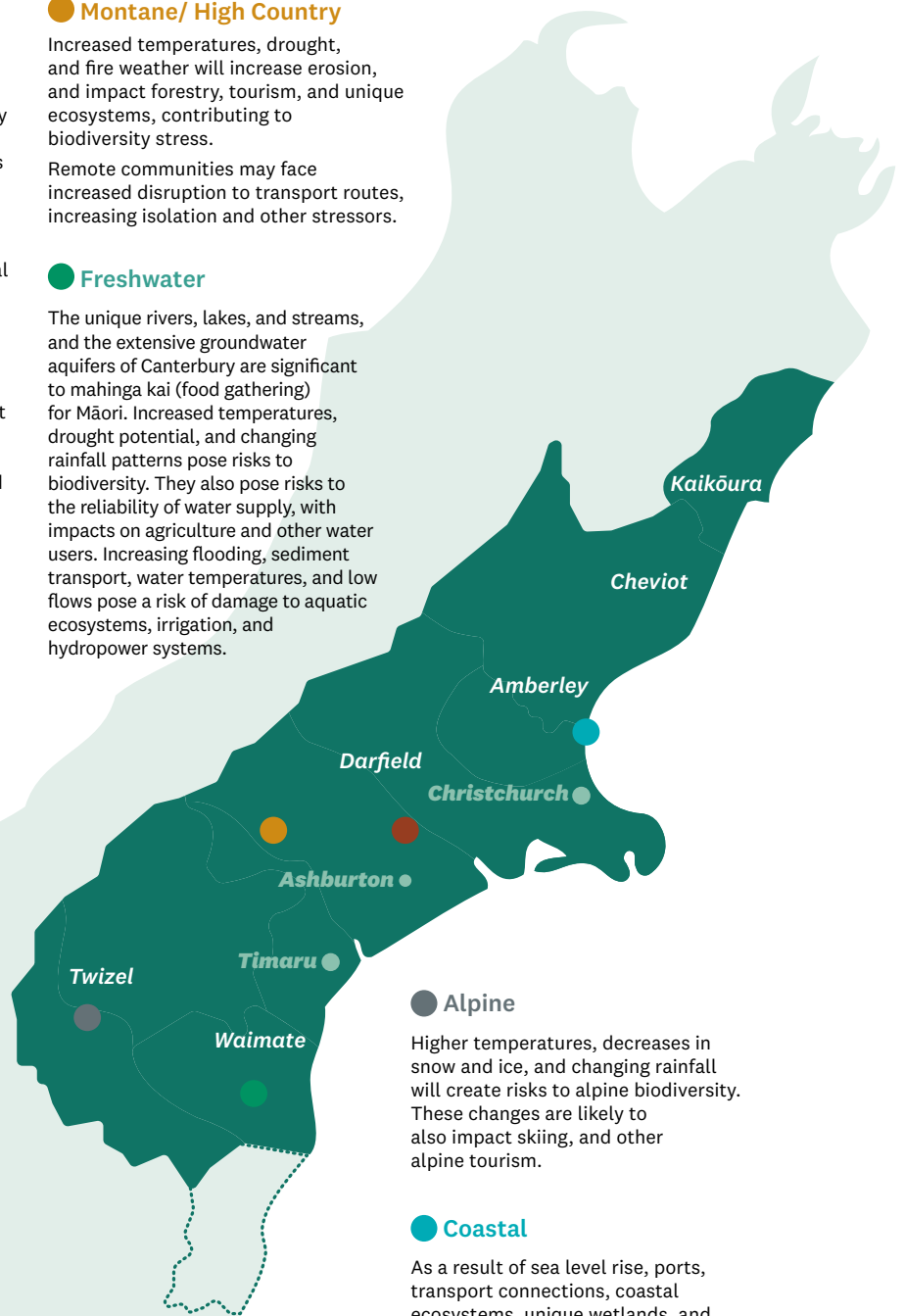
The unique rivers, lakes, and streams, and the extensive groundwater aquifers of Canterbury are significant to mahinga kai (food gathering) for Māori. Increased temperatures, drought potential, and changing rainfall patterns pose risks to biodiversity. They also pose risks to the reliability of water supply, with impacts on agriculture and other water users. Increasing flooding, sediment transport, water temperatures, and low flows pose a risk of damage to aquatic ecosystems, irrigation, and hydropower systems.

Alpine

Higher temperatures, decreases in snow and ice, and changing rainfall will create risks to alpine biodiversity. These changes are likely to also impact skiing, and other alpine tourism.

Coastal

As a result of sea level rise, ports, transport connections, coastal ecosystems, unique wetlands, and communities at the coastal fringe will be exposed to increasing risk of coastal flooding, salinity stress, and erosion. Changes in temperature and ocean chemistry will impact fisheries and marine ecosystems. This will result in increased mortality and changing population of some species, and changes in behaviour patterns such as migration routes.



DRAFT

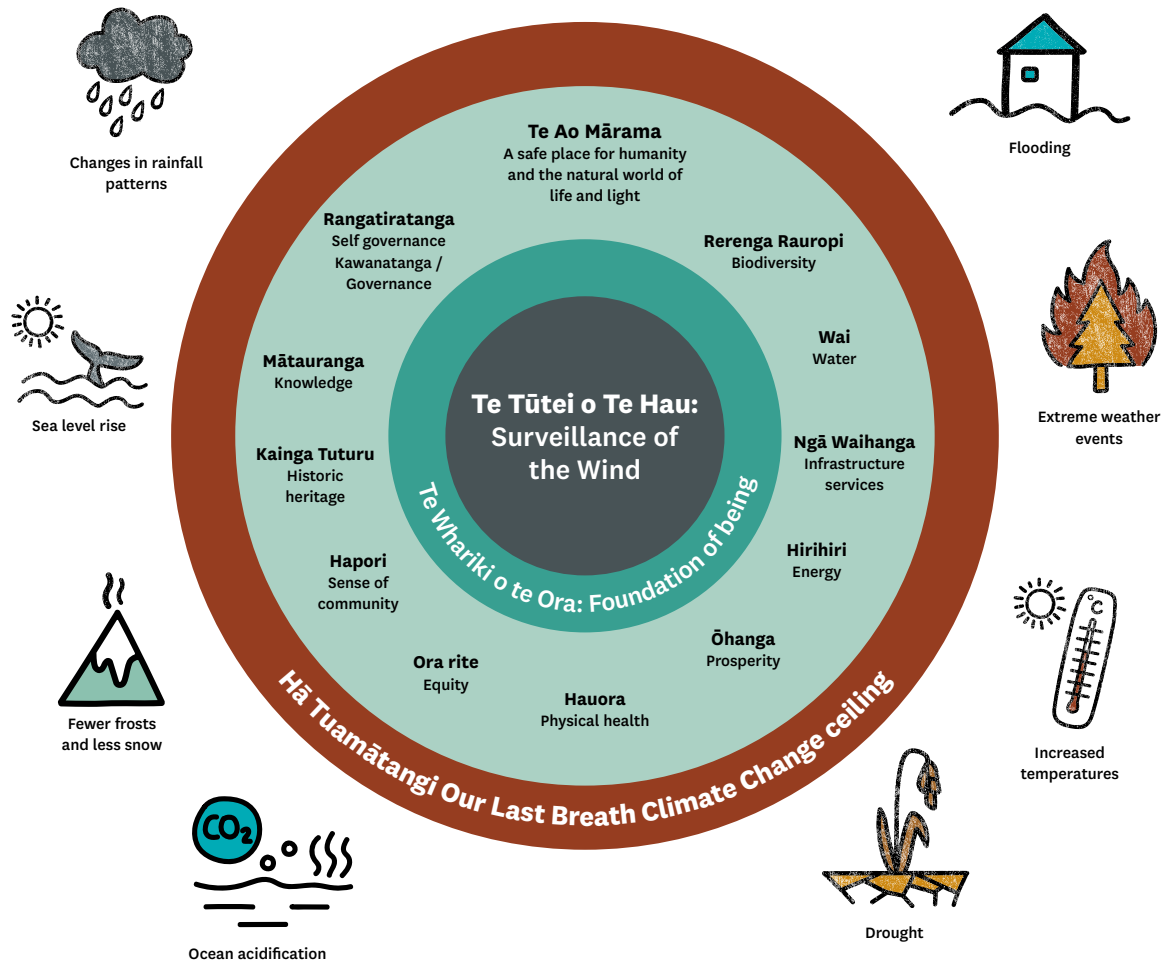
DRAFT

What matters most - Climate change in Canterbury

During the development of the Canterbury Climate Change Risk Assessment, a Rūnanga Project Steering Group was formed to help develop an integrated risk assessment framework, specific to our region.

The risk assessment centred around a framework that aligns both a Te Ao Māori worldview and the National Climate Change Risk Assessment framework. The name of the framework was gifted as 'Te Tūtei o Te Hau, Surveillance of the Wind'. In Te Ao Māori, the wind named 'Te Tūtei o Te Hau' is a guardian, an alert system, for the environment. When considering the effects of climate change, observations are collated and considered against this framework, our alert system, for understanding climate risk. The framework is presented as a series of circles, reflecting the circular nature of the world in which humans exist. At its core is the name gifted for the framework which draws on the whakapapa above.

Shown outside the rings are the key climate impacts that we face



Te Whāriki o te Ora

The dark green ring represents whakapapa, or genealogical connection, that extends from the spiritual realm to that of the human domain. It recognises that humans cannot exist without basic needs and a social foundation.

Te Ao Mārama

The light green ring represents the area in which humans can exist when we are functioning within the capacity of our ecosystems. Ngā pono (the values) identified within this circle are critical for us to understand and respond to when considering climate risk.

Hā Tuamātangi

The red ring represents the upper limit in which humans, environments and ecosystems can continue to exist. Beyond this boundary, it is no longer possible to respond to risks proactively.

This framework guided our thinking when developing collaborative climate actions in the region.

Working together for climate action in Canterbury

Councils around Canterbury have been ramping up climate action efforts in their districts. Here is a snapshot of progress across the region.



- Kaikōura District Council adopted a zero waste to landfill policy in 1998, followed by the establishment of Innovative Waste Kaikōura Ltd, which received a Ministry for the Environment Green Ribbon Award in 2002.
- A year later, in 1999, the council became part of Green Globe 21 Communities pilot project, supported by the Ministry for the Environment and the Tourism Industry Association. As part of the project, Kaikōura was officially 'benchmarked' in 2002.
- In 2001, the council developed measures to manage a local approach toward carbon neutrality.
- The council established the 'Trees for Travellers' programme in 2002, where overseas visitors, as well as locals, are playing their part to clear weeds and make way for natives in Kaikōura.
- From 2004 to 2016, the council was awarded the EarthCheck Certification (participation in the programme was discontinued after a review in 2019).
- The council undertook a review of natural hazards within the district (excluding coastal hazards) in partnership with Environment Canterbury. Flood modelling considered the effects of climate change.
- In 2009, Council developed the 'A to B Carbon Free' – Kaikōura Walking and Cycling Strategy.
- The council developed a waste management and minimisation plan in 2021 which recognises the need for modification of residents purchasing practices by influencing through community education and advocacy to central government.
- The council has developed a draft climate change policy, which is awaiting adoption following finalisation of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan.



- Hurunui District Council tracked its emissions through greenhouse gas emissions inventories from 2018 to 2023.
- The council commissioned a Coastline Hazard and Risk Assessment report in 2020. This was followed by the Coastal Conversations project in 2020 to identify coastal hazards affecting communities in the district and to understand how these hazards will change over the next 100 years.
- Three out of five communities in the Coastal Conversations project have developed Coastal Adaptation Plans (CAPs) outlining approaches for managing risk to the settlement.
- The Council's Waste Management & Minimisation Plan 2023 outlines the goals to improve efficiency in the waste network, influence and encourage waste reduction in the community, and reduce harmful health impacts.
- Work is underway on an asset and infrastructure resilience project plan and risk assessment.
- Work is currently progressing on a climate change strategy and action plan to reduce council emissions, improve resilience in the council assets and infrastructure, and to lead by example within the community.



- Waimakariri District Council adopted a Climate Change Policy in 2020.
- The Council developed the 'Waimakariri District Natural Hazards Interactive Viewer' to show results of the '2020 Jacobs Coastal Inundation Modelling' and other natural hazards. The modelling informs the proposed District Plan natural hazard rules such as avoidance of development in high hazard areas or mitigating flood impacts through establishing minimum floor levels.
- In 2020, the council adopted the Organisational Sustainability Strategy and Action Plan.
- To inform climate change planning, the council adopted the NIWA Waimakariri District Climate Change Scenario Report in 2022.
- The council's '3 Waters Infrastructure Climate Change Impact Assessment' and prioritisation of adaptation actions was completed in 2023.
- Climate change considerations are integrated with the 'Moving Forward: Waimakariri Integrated Transport Strategy 2035+', 'Waimakariri Economic Development Strategy 2024-34' and 'Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy: Our Environment Our Future 2024-2054'.
- In 2024, Council began the development of the 'Waimakariri Resilience Explorer' risk assessment spatial platform.
- Moving forward, the council's 2024-27 agreed climate resilience programme of works includes completing organisational and district risk assessments, developing a District Climate Resilience Strategy, developing organisational and district sustainability and emissions reduction plans, and working with communities to co-develop area-based climate adaptation plans.



- Christchurch was one of the first cities in New Zealand to declare a climate and ecological emergency in 2019, reflecting the importance of these issues for communities.
- In 2019, the council established the Coastal Hazards Adaptation Planning Programme to undertake planning with communities about the long-term future of coastal areas.
- The council is driving actions to reduce emissions and enhance resilience through the Climate Resilience Strategy (2021), Strengthening Communities Strategy (2022), Resilient Greater Christchurch Plan (2015) and through its urban development, transport, and waste management plans.
- In 2022, a district climate risk assessment was completed and the detailed coastal hazards assessment updated.
- Climate resilience considerations are embedded throughout key corporate processes including decision reports, Long-Term Plans, procurement, and project management.
- The council is working towards its target of being carbon neutral for its operations by 2030.



- Selwyn District Council adopted a Climate Change Policy in 2020.
- Since 2018, the council has been preparing annual organisational carbon emission reports. In 2024, Council completed a three-year work programme and an Emissions Reduction Plan.
- The council commissioned an independent climate impact assessment for council assets. The latest assessment in 2023 incorporates findings from the Canterbury Climate Change Risk Assessment.
- Through strategic partnership funding, the council supports community-based climate action projects (in particular through the Selwyn Community Fund and Selwyn Natural Environment Fund).
- Climate data was incorporated into hazard modelling to inform a review of the Selwyn District Plan, including an interactive viewer for the public to show susceptibility to flooding and/or coastal hazards.
- Climate change considerations are integrated within the overarching district strategy and associated spatial planning and economic development plans.



- Ashburton District's climate change policy was adopted in 2019 and reviewed and updated in 2022.
- Climate change considerations are integrated into Ashburton district strategies including the Open Spaces Strategy 2016-26, Surface Water Strategy 2018-28, Our Natural Place- Biodiversity Strategy 2023-43 & Economic Development Strategy - Rautaki Whanake Ohaoha 2023-33.
- In 2022, the council adopted the Ashburton Climate Resilience Plan.
- A baseline greenhouse gas inventory for the council was completed in 2023.
- Climate change considerations have been integrated into decision reports and business planning processes since 2021. This work is ongoing.
- Environmental and climate change elements are proposed to be improved in Council's community engagement policy.



- Timaru District Council began preparatory work on a Climate Change Strategy in 2022, with independently facilitated community engagement.
- A Climate Change Response Policy was adopted by Council in 2024.
- In the same year, the council added climate change dimensions to procurement- and significance policies to incorporate climate change into policy and decision making.
- On-site work with residents of Milford Huts coastal settlement commenced in 2023.
- In 2022, Council completed a carbon inventory of Council's operational activity, with technical assistance & verification from Toitū.
- Communication material for the public on Household Climate Change Adaptation and Mitigation is currently in development.



- Mackenzie District Council completed a review of climate change data and impacts for the district in 2023, followed by a greenhouse gas emissions inventory for the district and Council in early 2024.
- Engagement on climate change vulnerability in the district is underway, including workshops with community and various sectors (tourism, agriculture, infrastructure and hydro).
- With the above evidence base pieces, the council has now begun work to develop a climate change adaptation and mitigation strategy and plan for the Mackenzie District.



- Waimate District Council completed a greenhouse gas emission inventory for 2018/19.
- To oversee the development of a climate change strategy, the council appointed a part-time climate change officer in 2023.
- An online, district wide-survey was conducted to gain community interest and input into the strategy development.
- The council hosted multiple climate change information evenings in early 2024 focusing on climate science, youth, cultural, and economic perspectives.
- In 2024, seven climate action planning workshops were held to engage the community.
- The creation of a climate change engagement platform on the council's website is underway, including educational material.
- The council is closely working and collaborating with neighbouring councils, particularly Waitaki, Mackenzie, and Timaru, as well as schools.
- The council is currently finalising its second council carbon footprint assessment for 2022/23.



- The council endorsed a climate change declaration in 2019, which includes several commitments, including developing and implementing appropriate action plans that reduce greenhouse gas emissions and support climate resilience in the district.
- Waitaki District Council prepared its first organisational greenhouse gas inventory for 2018/19, with an update commencing in 2024.
- To protect Oamaru Harbour, Waitaki District Council has invested in erosion prevention measures along Oamaru Harbour's breakwater. This has seen many tonnes of rock and concrete pods being placed to prevent erosion.
- In 2023, the council adopted the Waitaki Climate Change Risk Framework.
- The council's Project Reclaim looks to remediate contaminated land sites which are in danger due to coastal erosion.
- The council's Waste Management and Minimisation Plan includes community communication and education to foster knowledge about a sustainable and low-emissions future in the district.
- In 2024, work is commencing on coastal erosion adaptation planning, including the development of a climate change strategy.



- Canterbury Regional Council established a climate change integration programme in its 2018-28 Long-Term Plan, followed by the integration of climate change into the council's decision making.
- A climate emergency was declared in 2019, followed by regular climate emergency updates to the council.
- Environment Canterbury has convened and provided secretariat support for the Canterbury Climate Change Working Group since the establishment of the Working Group in 2017. This has included leading the Canterbury Climate Change Risk Assessment, the It's time, Canterbury community awareness raising campaign, and the development of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan.
- An organisational carbon footprint assessment and decarbonisation plan were completed in 2022, followed by an organisational climate change risk assessment in 2023.
- Environment Canterbury is currently developing a Climate Action Plan and reviewing the Canterbury Regional Policy Statement.

How we produced this plan

The Climate Change Working Group, consisting of staff members from each of the 11 councils in Waitaha / Canterbury, developed our 10 key climate actions and supporting sub-actions through a robust series of workshops over 2022-2024, with input from all Canterbury councils.

The Climate Action Planning Reference Group, made up of elected representatives from each of the Canterbury councils, acted as a steering group on the plan.

The Working Group focused on identifying tangible actions for the short term, addressing key gaps in knowledge, priority risks and opportunities.

These actions are intended to gain momentum on collective climate action and to sit alongside and support existing and future climate efforts of individual councils.

Regional climate action planning was based on the international best practice C40 Climate Action Planning Framework. This framework draws on the experiences of 96 cities' climate action planning journeys and guided our approach. Although designed for cities, the framework sets out essential components of climate action planning, which we successfully adapted to suit the needs of our regional process.



Figure 3: C40 Climate Action Planning Framework

What we've heard from engagement with communities and key stakeholders

As part of Environment Canterbury's 'Our Future, Canterbury' themed engagement programme in 2023, the Canterbury Mayoral Forum asked stakeholders and communities for feedback on their climate action priorities, barriers, and perspectives on 'fair' climate action.

Via an online survey, in-person workshops in each district, and community events around the region, participants gave us a range of perspectives on climate action in their local district and in the region. There was broad agreement that councils should take climate action that would:

- regenerate ecosystems through native planting, pest control, and river restoration
- increase renewable energy
- support communities to become more resilient and adaptable
- increase public education and awareness of climate change impacts and solutions
- ensure opportunities for community engagement and empowerment
- streamline regulations and simplify consenting processes
- foster partnerships between government, businesses, non-governmental organisations, and communities
- offer financial support for individuals and businesses to take climate action.

There was broad agreement that the core values of 'fair' climate action include equity, shared responsibility, long-term planning, and science-based solutions.

We have taken stakeholder and community feedback into account during the drafting of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan.

Download the *Climate Change Community Reflections and District Summits report*.

Urgency assessment

The Mayoral Forum has historically used three sets of criteria to prioritise joint projects and actions: importance, democratic mandate, and impact.

For the purposes of this plan, we also considered the following questions when assessing urgency and prioritising actions:

- Does the action contribute to current gaps in research and monitoring?
- Does the action have a long lead time to get started?
- Is there is a risk of path dependency, i.e. if we don't act now, are we locked into a future we don't want?
- Are there action dependencies and sequencing considerations?

This process helped us develop a short list of actions, and our implementation approach (Appendix 1).

Health Impact Assessment

Climate change is already impacting the health and wellbeing of our population and these impacts will amplify over time.

Extreme weather events and rising temperatures can impact physical, mental health, and wellbeing and result in changes to the natural environment, damage to housing and infrastructure and disruption to livelihoods. Some population groups and geographic locations are more vulnerable to climate change because of their exposure, sensitivity, and capacity to prepare and adapt to climate hazards. In many cases, the people most vulnerable to climate change will be those who already experience inequitable outcomes, including Māori, people with physical and mental health needs and low-income earners.⁵

Te Mana Ora, Community and Public Health Canterbury, conducted a Health Impact Assessment of the collective actions in the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan. The assessment identified that the actions have the potential to contribute to the health and wellbeing outcomes of the region depending on how the actions are planned and implemented. The assessment emphasised that climate action should be based on evidence, including information about health and equity, and involve a collaborative approach.

In delivering these actions councils will continue to work on cross-sectorial collaboration with key stakeholders, including in the health sector, to ensure that health, wellbeing and equity are considered in the detailed implementation planning of the actions.

⁵ See the *Climate Change and Health in Waitaha Canterbury for further information about health and wellbeing impacts of climate change*.

Strategic framework for regional climate action planning

Vision of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan

A thriving, climate resilient, low-emissions Canterbury

Principles

Eight principles underpin the development and implementation of this Plan. These are the values by which we will approach collective climate action in Canterbury.

We strive to be Treaty based, Collaborative, Bold, Intergenerational, Solutions Focused, Equitable, Informed, Inclusive.

Treaty based/Whakamana i Te Tiriti means:

- Improving our understanding of what is important to our Treaty partners, how this could be impacted by climate change and climate change policy and how we can best support papatipu rūnanga with their own climate actions.

Solutions focused/Whai putanga means:

- Focusing on tangible short-medium term actions that will move us forward and enable councils to progress with transformative local actions with their communities.

Collaborative/Mahi Tahi means:

- Committing to work together, demonstrating respect, trust and open-mindedness for the long haul of the climate action journey, even when times are tough.
- Identifying and working with communities and key stakeholders who are the most impacted by, and/or have the most impact on, climate change risk to find pragmatic and local solutions.
- Working with central government agencies to advocate for solutions appropriate to Canterbury's needs.

Inclusive/Kauawhi means:

- Actively involving and considering the perspectives, needs and contributions of all partners and stakeholders in Canterbury, including marginalised and vulnerable communities in decision making processes and policy development related to climate change.

Equitable/Matatika means:

- The opportunities from climate initiatives and the burdens of climate risks are distributed justly across the region. This means taking action to identify and address both the effects of climate change and social inequity, and the systems that allow for these disparities to exist.

Informed/Whaimōhio means:

- Identifying and filling knowledge gaps and using the best available evidence, including mātauranga Māori, to make good decisions across councils' climate action planning.
- Being clear with each other and communities on what we don't know, and where there are any limitations or uncertainties with our information.
- Balancing the desire for robust evidence and increased certainty to inform decision making with the need to deliver timely impactful action, especially if high-quality evidence isn't available.

Intergenerational/Whakatipuranga means:

- Being good ancestors; working with younger generations to consider the longer-term impacts and consequences of current actions and policies to promote equitability, sustainability and opportunity for future generations.

Bold/Pākaha means:

- Matching ambition with action and investment; presenting options for collaborative action that address the size of the challenge, including where this requires tough decisions from communities and our elected members.

Outcomes

We have identified six long-term outcomes we are seeking to achieve through our collective climate action.



A healthy environment

Our healthy environment enables our communities to thrive.



An equitable and inclusive transition

Our communities are empowered through an equitable and inclusive transition to a low-emissions and climate resilient future.



Prosperity

Our environmental, cultural, economic, and social wellbeing is improved by identifying and taking early opportunities to mitigate and adapt to climate change.



Adapted and resilient communities

Our communities are resilient and have the necessary infrastructure, knowledge, and tools they need to adapt to climate change.



Emissions reduction

Greenhouse gas emissions reductions are achieved in line with our national and international commitments at a minimum.



Climate action leadership

Canterbury is a leader in climate change mitigation, adaptation, and inclusive climate action planning promoting the four wellbeings.

Objectives

Objective one

To work with science, nature and Mātauranga Māori to reduce climate vulnerability and improve resilience.

Objective two

To enable transformational action in an inclusive and equitable way.

Objective three

To maximise co-benefits and identify opportunities for co-funding and financing climate actions.

Objective four

To inform and empower communities to be prepared, improve their resilience and adapt to climate change.

Objective five

To collaborate with communities to use available solutions and encourage behaviour change to achieve a smart innovative, low-emissions future.

Objective six

To ensure climate change is prioritised in all local government decision making processes in Canterbury.

DRAFT

Regional climate actions

There are 10 key actions we will take on our collaborative climate action journey in Canterbury.

1

**Understanding
climate risks and
improving resilience**

Understand climate hazards and risks in Canterbury to support evidence-based decision making and improve regional resilience.

2

**Emissions
reduction**

Work together across the region to build equitable, inclusive pathways, targets, and key actions to support New Zealand's commitments towards global greenhouse gas emission reduction.

3

**Adaptation
planning**

Support best practise approaches for local adaptation planning with communities.

4

**Nature-based
solutions**

Facilitate the development of a Canterbury blue-green network to increase natural capital, indigenous biodiversity and offer nature-based solutions to climate change effects.

5

**Climate change
education and
advocacy to support
communities**

Support community understanding about the local impacts of climate change and promote individual and collective climate action.

6**Supporting
Papatipu Rūnanga**

Support Papatipu Rūnanga with climate action and provide opportunity for their involvement with Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan projects.

7**Integrating climate
change considerations
into council processes**

Work collaboratively to build local government capability and enhance its capacity to adapt in a changing climate.

**Climate funding
and financing**

Identify and leverage co-funding and financing opportunities for climate adaptation and resilience.

**Monitoring and
evaluation**

Monitor and report on progress towards achieving the actions and outcomes of the Partnership Plan.

10**Implementation**

Assemble an implementation team to ensure the successful delivery and implementation of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan.

Action 1: Understanding climate risks and improving resilience

Understand climate hazards and risks in Canterbury to support evidence-based decision making and improve regional resilience.

Action 1.1

Scope and develop a Canterbury-wide visualisation tool for use by councils to support climate adaptation and resilience planning.

Action 1.2

Update the Canterbury climate change risk and urgency assessment to ensure a comprehensive and up-to-date understanding of key risks and opportunities under different climate change scenarios at a regional and district level.



Why we're taking this action

Councils have statutory responsibilities to avoid or mitigate natural hazards and to have regard to the effects of climate change when making decisions. We are also responsible for civil defence and emergency management, as well as improving community resilience.

This action is about furthering our understanding of climate risks in the region so that we can improve resilience. We need to know who and what is at risk, and where, for us to prioritise resources to do something about it.

The first Canterbury Climate Change Risk Assessment gave us a foundational understanding of current and future risks. These will change over time as climate effects intensify, but so too will our sensitivity to hazards and capacity to adapt. Therefore, we need reliable and robust tools to manage data and continually improve our understanding of risks and impacts as climate change unfolds. A tool will help us use consistent and up-to-date information to assess the vulnerabilities of different communities, ecosystems and assets as well as the interdependencies between these. This will enable us to target councils' approaches to addressing potential vulnerabilities, ensuring resources are allocated efficiently.

By increasing our knowledge and understanding of climate hazards and risks we can better support communities to prepare for and adapt to climate change. We want to make this information available to our communities in a consistent, transparent, and easy to understand way.



An equitable and inclusive transition



Adapted and resilient communities



Climate action leadership

Action 2: Emissions reduction

Work together across the region to build equitable, inclusive pathways, targets, and key actions to support New Zealand's commitments towards global greenhouse gas emissions reduction.

Action 2.1

Collate data and develop models to prepare greenhouse gas emissions inventories and identify emissions reduction pathways for Canterbury to support New Zealand's national greenhouse gas commitments.

Action 2.2

Based on the emissions reduction pathways identified for Canterbury, undertake a regional transition risk and opportunities assessment, considering social, cultural, environmental, and economic impacts, to inform an equitable and inclusive transition to a low-emissions region.

Action 2.3

Work with partners, communities, and key stakeholders to build a regional low-emissions transition strategy that supports equitable, inclusive local pathways to a thriving, climate-resilient region meeting emissions reduction targets.



Why we're taking this action

At a global scale, the more we reduce our emissions, the better our ability to adapt to the impacts of climate change. Put simply, if we do not cut our greenhouse gas emissions, we will be left with fewer choices on how to adapt and react to future challenges.

Canterbury has an important role to play in supporting international and national commitments to reduce greenhouse gas emissions and transition to a low-emissions future. We have a unique emissions profile in our region. Our approach is not to blame and shame particular high-emitting sectors; instead we aim to work with partners and key stakeholders to make robust, evidence-informed decisions about how all sectors can reduce their greenhouse gas emissions in a sustainable and timely way. Our aim is to make it possible for everyone to play their part in our collective climate action endeavour.

By working with others, understanding the risks and opportunities that transition to a low-emissions future presents, we can be strategic about mitigating those risks and leveraging opportunities early to provide for a planned and equitable approach to regional greenhouse gas emissions reduction.

A comprehensive transition strategy will lay out a road map individual councils can use to work with residents to most effectively reduce emissions at a local level.



An equitable and inclusive transition



Prosperity



Emissions reduction



Climate action leadership

Action 3: Adaptation planning

Support best practice approaches for local adaptation planning with communities.

Action 3.1

Develop and implement a best practice approach for councils in Canterbury to work effectively and efficiently together with communities on adaptation planning and implementation.



Why we're taking this action

No matter how quickly we reduce emissions around the globe or in New Zealand, some level of climate change is already inevitable and we are already seeing those effects around New Zealand. Adaptation means strengthening our ability to cope with risks from natural events like floods, storms and drought.

The Government is developing an adaptation framework to strengthen how New Zealand prepares for the effects of climate change, focusing on where people live and work. The framework is expected to provide greater clarity on adaptation roles and responsibilities, including that of local government and other key players like central government and insurers.

We will continue to play a pivotal role in working with communities to understand what is happening, what matters most, what we can do about it, and how we can implement and monitor adaptation actions. It is both an absolute necessity and opportunity that we use the knowledge and tools created by some of the other partnership plan actions and all work together to figure out the most appropriate adaptation options for communities at risk across each district.

Some districts are already advancing with coastal adaptation planning, for example in Amberley Beach and Whakaraupō/Lyttelton Harbour. But there are other risks, and many other vulnerable communities who we will also need to work with. We won't need to adapt everywhere all at once, nor will we be able to, but we can start working together now to lay the foundation for long-term adaptation planning in Canterbury to ensure a consistent, coordinated and community-centric approach on the ground, avoiding duplication of effort and sharing learnings.



Adapted and resilient communities



Climate action leadership

Action 4: Nature-based solutions

Facilitate the development of a Canterbury blue-green network to increase natural capital, indigenous biodiversity and offer nature-based solutions to climate change effects.

Action 4.1

Develop a Canterbury-wide natural ecosystem climate change risk and vulnerability assessment.

Action 4.2

Develop a blue-green network plan for Canterbury and accompanying guidance to support locally led implementation.

Action 4.2a

Maximize opportunities to collaborate with key stakeholders to provide guidance on blue-green infrastructure placement and hazard resilience investment⁶.

Action 4.2b

Collaborate and align with Greater Christchurch Partnership and key stakeholders to deliver a blue-green network.

Action 4.2c

Investigate the feasibility of establishing blue-green infrastructure on council-owned land, including identifying priority locations for implementation across Canterbury.



Why we're taking this action

We already have many of the solutions we need to tackle climate change. One of the key things we can do is work with nature to address the climate and biodiversity challenges we face. Nature-based solutions are inspired by, supported by or copied from nature and we can harness these to deliver a multitude of benefits across the four wellbeings⁷.

Nature-based solutions offer a cost-effective and practical approach to both building resilience and capturing and storing carbon. A blue-green network or infrastructure - a series of spaces and corridors that follow and connect blue (e.g. water bodies) and green spaces (e.g. parks, green areas) - provides a nature-based approach to addressing climate change impacts such as flooding and urban heat islands; and reducing emissions through carbon sequestration.

In addition to reducing the effects of climate change, blue-green infrastructure offers various co-benefits. They enhance the liveability of urban and rural areas through better integration of natural and built environments and offer opportunities for place-making and enhanced identity, urban cooling, water management, recreation, landscaping, indigenous ecosystem protection and restoration and habitat creation for indigenous fauna.

⁶ For example, supporting the Nature Code MBIE Endeavour Research Proposal: Nature-based solutions to mitigate climate change-intensified natural hazards

⁷ European Commission, 2015



A healthy environment



An equitable and inclusive transition



Prosperity



Emissions reduction



Adapted and resilient communities



Climate action leadership

Action 5: Climate change education and advocacy

Support community understanding about the local impacts of climate change and promote individual and collective climate action.

Action 5.1

Continue to develop the 'It's Time, Canterbury' initiative into a comprehensive resource hub for climate education and collective action across Canterbury.

Action 5.2

Collaborate with Civil Defence Emergency Management in Canterbury to produce communications materials that integrate climate action and resilience to natural hazards.



Why we're taking this action

Everyone has a part to play in tackling climate change. We've already mentioned the key role councils play in helping communities prepare for and adapt to climate change, and we're acutely aware how important it is that we communicate with communities in a way that's appropriate to them.

These actions build on the work done to date on 'It's time, Canterbury' where councils have pooled resources, knowledge and expertise for a regional approach to climate advocacy and awareness raising. We aim to educate, empower, and engage by building the 'It's time, Canterbury' content and expanding its reach. We will support communities with accurate and up-to-date information about the urgency of climate change, empower them with the knowledge and confidence to act as agents of change, and engage them throughout the journey to a resilient low-emissions future.

Civil Defence Emergency Management has a critical role in ensuring our communities are prepared, and able to respond, to natural hazards, and in the case of climate change where these natural hazards are exacerbated over time.



An equitable and inclusive transition



Emissions reduction



Adapted and resilient communities



Climate action leadership

Action 6: Supporting Papatipu Rūnanga

Support Papatipu Rūnanga with climate action and provide opportunity for their involvement with Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan projects.

Action 6.1

Understand the climate action requirements of papatipu rūnanga across Canterbury.

Action 6.2

Support councils to work in partnership with papatipu rūnanga to integrate their requirements into local climate action planning.



Why we're taking this action

Climate change is affecting Ngāi Tahu in unique and important ways, directly threatening wellbeing of mana whenua, their historic heritage (kainga tuturu), infrastructure (ngā waihanga), ability to undertake cultural practices, and disproportionately impacting future generations. The Canterbury Climate Change Risk Assessment showed there are potential risks to Ngāi Tahu interests across all pono (values) contained within Te Tūte o Te Hau. It also indicated a risk of marginalisation of Ngāi Tahu perspectives in climate action planning.

The Ministry for the Environment has highlighted that empowering Māori is one of the five key principles in Aotearoa's emissions reduction plan and the National Adaptation Plan recognises the importance of embedding Te Tiriti o Waitangi across the climate response.

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu has developed its Climate Change Strategy Te Tāhū o te Whāriki (Anchoring the Foundations) and Action Plan (Te Kounga Paparangi). These provide direction across a spectrum Canterbury councils have identified these actions so that they can seek to better understand both the requirements of mana whenua and how councils are best placed to support their climate action planning in their takiwā. The actions also provide an open door to future involvement by papatipu rūnanga in the governance and implementation of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan.



A healthy environment



An equitable and inclusive transition



Prosperity



Emissions reduction



Adapted and resilient communities



Climate action leadership

Action 7: Integrating climate change considerations into council processes

Work collaboratively to build local government capability and enhance its capacity to adapt in a changing climate.

Action 7.1

Integrate climate change mitigation and adaptation considerations across all council business including decisions, policies, projects, procurement, and infrastructure development.



Why we're taking this action

Not only must communities adapt but councils must too so we are as effective as we can be in a changing climate.

Climate change will impact everything we do and our ability to do things well. To be effective in a changing climate and avoid maladaptation, we must embed climate resilience at our core. This will ensure that climate considerations are not treated as separate or optional but are instead integrated across all aspects of local government operations. This approach helps councils address climate-related challenges effectively by displaying climate leadership, minimising risks, seizing opportunities and helping local communities to adapt appropriately thereby promoting the four wellbeings of current and future generations.



An equitable and inclusive transition



Climate action leadership

Action 8: Climate funding and financing

Identify and leverage co-funding and financing opportunities for climate adaptation and resilience.

Action 8.1

Advocate to central government for funding to be made available to address the gap between current local government funding and what is needed for the comprehensive local government climate action that is required in the future.

Action 8.2

Explore the feasibility of a Canterbury climate commitment that inspires and unites businesses and communities to accelerate climate action.



Why we're taking this action

Climate action comes at a cost and realising the many benefits of climate action also requires some up-front investment. The wide range and scale of climate actions required by councils in the coming years will require funding and financing beyond council's existing methods.

The recently published He piki tūranga, he piki kotuku, Future for Local Government Report (2023) highlights the gap between current local government funding and what is needed for comprehensive climate action. It suggests there should be a large national fund available for the climate-related actions that need to be taken by local government.

This could represent a significant opportunity for local government around New Zealand, however, it is likely that rates will remain the main funding mechanism for councils for the foreseeable future. By working together to identify and leverage alternative funding and financing opportunities, Canterbury councils can implement climate actions and initiatives without putting further pressure on ratepayers.

It is critical that we develop effective funding and financing structures that enable local government in Canterbury to respond to the evolving challenges and opportunities posed by climate change. We need to use our united voice and work together to ensure councils have access to the right amount of capital at the right time.



A healthy environment



An equitable and inclusive transition



Prosperity



Emissions reduction



Adapted and resilient communities



Climate action leadership

Action 9: Monitoring and evaluation

Monitor and report on progress towards achieving the actions and outcomes of the Partnership Plan.

Action 9.1

Develop and implement a monitoring and evaluation plan which includes the co-development of climate-related indicators appropriate to Canterbury.



Why we're taking this action

We need to regularly monitor and evaluate the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan to ensure that actions are impactful, and our desired outcomes are being met.

The development of baseline data and climate-related indicators offers valuable data for decision-making, helping assess the region's vulnerability to various climate-related risks, and enabling policymakers to assess the effectiveness of policies and interventions.

It also assists in raising public awareness about the importance of climate action and its impacts, and enables efficient allocation of resources by governments, businesses, and communities.

The use of climate-related indicators can inform the development of effective climate policies, regulations, and incentives, and there is an opportunity to learn from the Climate Change Commission's experience in developing indicators and metrics for climate adaptation when implementing this action.



A healthy environment



An equitable and inclusive transition



Prosperity



Emissions reduction



Adapted and resilient communities



Climate action leadership

Action 10: Implementation

Assemble an implementation team to ensure the successful delivery and implementation of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan.



Why we're taking this action

To ensure the successful implementation of this plan, we need to coordinate a dedicated group of people from councils who have a key role to play in the delivery of these actions. This will allow for the continuation of a collaborative approach and reduce pressure and demands on individual councils who do not have staff capacity to manage project delivery of individual actions.

An implementation overview is included in Appendix 1.

-  A healthy environment
-  An equitable and inclusive transition
-  Prosperity
-  Emissions reduction
-  Adapted and resilient communities
-  Climate action leadership

Future funding and financing of regional climate actions

Climate action will cost us. However, the cost of inaction is likely to be far greater. Studies by Deloitte and others highlight an impending ‘turning point’ where the increased costs of taking decisive action sooner rather than later begin to outweigh the short-term gains from deferring our response.

Focusing solely on an economic analysis of climate change by 2050 (not the broader impacts across different dimensions of wellbeing), in net present value terms (estimated in 2023):

- Decisive action could add \$64billion to Aotearoa New Zealand’s GDP⁸.
- Inadequate action could take \$4.4billion off Aotearoa New Zealand’s GDP and get exponentially worse beyond 2050.

Opportunities and costs will differ across the range of business sectors specific to each region and to realise benefits arising from new opportunities will require commitment from us all. Nevertheless, it redefines the debate around climate action to one of opportunities for growth and avoided costs and losses rather than a financial burden with limited upsides.

In addition, in recent years the delivery of capital projects (including those associated with increasing resilience through certain climate adaptation measures) has experienced rapid cost escalation pressures with civil infrastructure works showing the biggest changes⁹. Decisions to forestall projects with demonstrable benefits could therefore impact their future affordability and viability.

This plan sets out a pragmatic and achievable programme of collaborative climate action for Waitaha Canterbury over the next three years, focused around collecting consistent evidence for both mitigation and adaptation, embedding climate change considerations in local government decision-making and processes, improving capability and capacity to respond effectively and monitoring results. We will, however, need to increase and accelerate our investment in on-the-ground mitigation and adaptation actions thereafter if we are to meet our climate commitments and avoid the magnitude of future costs we would otherwise bear. Investing now will help us minimise the impacts future climate-related weather events¹⁰.

Climate Partnership Plan budget

The impacts of COVID-19, high inflation, the cost-of-living crisis, and the threat of economic recession means that local government and ratepayers are faced with an increasing cost burden. These current financial pressures have been top of mind while developing the plan. Ultimately, the financial constraints and competing demands for funding at local government means funding climate actions at a local or regional level in the short term is challenging.

However, this plan offers a pragmatic financial advantage, particularly for the less resourced councils, by working together and leveraging collective funding to deliver on key projects.

In June 2024, councils agreed to fund regional collective climate actions through their Long-Term Plans 2024-34 and \$1.47 million has been confirmed for the first three years. Further funding will be necessary through future annual and long-term plan reviews for continued collaborative climate action, and by identifying and taking advantage of co-funding opportunities with key stakeholders.

⁸ Deloitte, 2023.

⁹ <https://www.infometrics.co.nz/article/2023-08-rapid-cost-escalation-makes-for-difficult-choices>

¹⁰ The Auckland Anniversary floods insurance losses provisionally exceed \$1b, over three times the total insurance losses for Auckland in 2022. The 2021 Canterbury floods had provisional insurance losses estimated at \$43.8m (Source: Insurance Council of New Zealand). The total cost of works to the end of December 2023 for flood recovery (including response) is \$20 million, with an estimated total costs expected to be \$22.2 million. \$12.5 of these costs, above the Environment Canterbury threshold of \$4.1 million, are estimated to be eligible for application to the National Emergency Management Agency for a 60% central government contribution for like-for-like asset replacement. Not all damage arising from these events will be included in these figures, for example local government typically self-insures network infrastructure.

Bibliography

C40 Climate Action Planning Guide

Deloitte. 2023. Tāmaki Makaurau Auckland’s Turning Point The Cost of Climate Inaction vs Decisive Action. Retrieved from www.industry.aucklandnz.com/sites/build_auckland/files/media-library/documents/Tamaki_Makaurau_Aucklands_Turning_Point_2023.pdf

Enviser and Emissions Impossible. 2024. Annual Greenhouse Gas Emissions in Canterbury, 2018 and 2021, prepared for Canterbury Regional Council.

KPMG. 2023. Funding and Financing for Climate Action. Report prepared for Environment Canterbury.

Local Government New Zealand. 2019. Vulnerable: The quantum of local government infrastructure exposed to sea level rise. Retrieved from www.lgnz.co.nz/policy-advocacy/key-issues-for-councils/climate-change/

Tonking & Taylor. 2022. Canterbury Climate Change Risk Assessment.

Ministry for the Environment. 2021. He kupu ārahi mō te aromatawai tūraru huringa āhuarangi ā-rohe / A guide to local climate change risk assessments. Wellington: Ministry for the Environment.

Ministry for the Environment. 2022. Aotearoa New Zealand’s first national adaptation plan. Wellington. Ministry for the Environment.

Ministry for the Environment. 2022. Te hau mārohi ki anamata Towards a productive, sustainable and inclusive economy. Wellington. Ministry for the Environment.

Ministry for the Environment. 2023. Community-led retreat and adaptation funding: Issues and options

Ministry for the Environment & Stats NZ. 2023. New Zealand’s Environmental Reporting Series: Our atmosphere and climate 2023. Retrieved from www.environment.govt.nz.

Ngāi Tahu Climate Change Strategy Te Tāhū o te Whāriki (Anchoring the Foundations) and action plan (Te Kounga Paparangi)

New Zealand Climate Change Research Institute, and NIWA. 2018. Estimating financial costs of climate change in New Zealand. Retrieved from www.treasury.govt.nz/sites/default/files/2018-08/LSF-estimating-financial-cost-of-climate-change-in-nz.pdf

Te Mana Ora. 2023. Climate Change and Health in Waitaha Canterbury: A scoping and profiling report to inform Health Impact Assessment. Ōtautahi Christchurch: Te Whatu Ora, Te Mana Ora, National Public Health Service.

Te Mana Ora. 2024. Health Lens Analysis of Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan – Impact Assessment Table

Te Tai Ōhanga The Treasury. 2023. Ngā Kōrero Āhuarangi Me Te Ōhanga: Climate Economic and Fiscal Assessment 2023. Retrieved from www.treasury.govt.nz/publications/climate-economic-fiscal-assessment/nga-korero-ahuarangi-me-te-ohanga-2023

Te Tari Taiwhenua Department of Internal Affairs. 2023. Review into the Future for Local Government. 2023. He piki tūranga, he piki kōtuku, Wellington: New Zealand.

Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan Implementation Overview

Action ID		Primary action	Sub-actions
1	Understanding climate risks and improving resilience	Understand climate hazards and risks in Canterbury to support evidence-based decision making and improve regional resilience.	1.1 Scope and develop a Canterbury-wide visualisation tool for use by councils to support climate adaptation and resilience planning.
			1.2 Update the Canterbury climate change risk and urgency assessment to ensure a comprehensive and up to date understanding of key risks and opportunities under different climate change scenarios at a district level.
2	Emissions reduction	Work together across the region to build equitable, inclusive pathways, targets, and key actions to support New Zealand's commitments towards global greenhouse gas emissions reduction.	2.1 Collate data and develop models to prepare greenhouse gas emissions inventories and identify emissions reduction pathways for Canterbury to support New Zealand's national greenhouse gas commitments.
			2.2 Based on the transition pathways identified for Canterbury, undertake a regional transition risk and opportunities assessment, including an economic impact assessment, to inform an equitable and inclusive transition to a low emissions region.
			2.3 Work with partners, communities, and key stakeholders to build a regional low emissions transition strategy that supports equitable, inclusive local pathways to a thriving, climate-resilient region meeting emissions reduction targets.
3	Adaptation planning	Support best practice approaches for local adaptation planning with communities.	3.1 Develop and implement a best practice approach for councils in Canterbury to work effectively and efficiently together with communities on adaptation planning and implementation.
4	Nature-Based Solutions	Facilitate the development of a Canterbury blue-green network to increase natural capital, indigenous biodiversity and offer nature-based solutions to climate change effects.	4.1 Develop a Canterbury-wide ecosystem climate change risk and vulnerability assessment.
			4.2 Develop a blue-green network plan for Canterbury and accompanying guidance to support locally-led implementation.
			4.3 Maximise opportunities to collaborate with key stakeholders to provide guidance on blue-green infrastructure placement and hazard resilience investment.
			4.4 Collaborate and align with Greater Christchurch Partnership and key stakeholders to deliver a blue-green network.
			4.5 Investigate the feasibility of establishing blue-green infrastructure on council-owned land, including identifying priority locations for implementation across Canterbury.
5	Climate change education and advocacy	Support community understanding about the local impacts of climate change and promote individual and collective climate action.	5.1 Continue to develop the "It's Time, Canterbury" initiative into a comprehensive resource hub for climate education and collective action across Canterbury.
			5.2 Collaborate with Civil Defence and Emergency Management in Canterbury to produce communications materials that integrate climate action and resilience to natural hazards.

The Implementation overview outlines the sequence of actions for the first three years of Long-Term Plans, prioritising urgent actions (based on an urgency assessment), action interdependencies, and available yearly budget (subject to LTP deliberations).



Y1 2024/2025	Y2 2025/2026	Y3 2026/2027		Y4 onwards	Lead Organisation	Resourcing
initiate	execute and complete	maintenance and licensing	Review CCPP		Waimakariri District Council	\$ for procurement and consultant costs, staff time
				initiate, execute, complete	Environment Canterbury	\$ for procurement and consultant costs, staff time
initiate	execute and complete				Environment Canterbury	\$ for procurement and consultant costs, staff time
	initiate and execute	complete			Environment Canterbury	\$ for procurement and consultant costs, staff time
	initiate	execute and complete			Environment Canterbury	\$ for procurement and consultant costs, staff time
initiate	execute	ongoing		ongoing	Hurunui District Council	staff time
initiate and execute	complete				Environment Canterbury	\$ for procurement and consultant costs, staff time
	initiate	execute		complete	Waimakariri & Selwyn District Council	\$ for procurement and consultant costs, staff time
initiate	execute	execute		complete	Waimakariri & Selwyn District Council	\$ for procurement and consultant costs, staff time
initiate	execute	ongoing		ongoing	Waimakariri & Selwyn District Council	staff time
	initiate	execute and complete		ongoing	Waimakariri & Selwyn District Council	\$ for procurement and consultant costs, staff time
initiate	execute	ongoing		ongoing	Environment Canterbury	staff time
	initiate, execute, complete				Environment Canterbury	staff time

DRAFT

Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan Implementation Plan

Action ID		Primary action	Sub-actions
6	Supporting Papatipu Rūnanga	Support papatipu rūnanga with climate action and provide continuing opportunities for their involvement with Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan projects.	6.1 Understand the climate action requirements of papatipu rūnanga across Canterbury.
			6.2 Support councils to work in partnership with papatipu rūnanga to integrate their requirements into local climate action planning.
7	Integrating climate change considerations in council processes	Work collaboratively to build local government capability and enhance its capacity to adapt in a changing climate.	7.1 Integrate climate change mitigation and adaptation considerations across all council business including decisions, policies, projects, procurement, and infrastructure development.
8	Climate funding and financing	Identify and leverage co-funding and financing opportunities for climate adaptation and resilience.	8.1 Advocate to central government for funding to be made available to address the gap between current local government funding and what is needed for the comprehensive local government climate action that is required in the future.
			8.2 Explore the feasibility of a Canterbury Climate Commitment that inspires and unites businesses and communities to accelerate climate action.
9	Monitoring and evaluation	Monitor and report on progress towards achieving the actions and outcomes of the Partnership Plan.	9.1 Develop and implement a monitoring and evaluation plan which includes the co-development of climate related indicators appropriate to Canterbury.
10	Implementation	Assemble an implementation team to ensure the successful delivery and implementation of the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan.	
			Proposed yearly budget (subject to LTP deliberations)

Very high urgency

High urgency

Medium urgency

Low urgency

Y1 2024/2025	Y2 2025/2026	Y3 2026/2027		Y4 onwards	Action Lead	Resourcing
initiate	ongoing	ongoing	Review CCPP	ongoing	All councils	\$ for papatipu rūnanga participation, staff time
					Canterbury Mayoral Forum Secretariat	\$ for papatipu rūnanga participation, staff time
initiate	execute, complete	ongoing		ongoing	Ashburton District Council	staff time
initiate	execute	execute		ongoing	Christchurch City Council	staff time
initiate, execute, complete					Canterbury Mayoral Forum Secretariat	staff time
initiate, execute, complete					Environment Canterbury	\$ for procurement and consultant costs, staff time
initiate, execute, complete					Environment Canterbury (with action lead organisations)	staff time
\$190,000	\$740,000	\$540,000				
Total \$ 1,470,000 NZD Through collective contributions from Canterbury councils for Year 1 - Year 3 of 2024-2034 Long Term Plans						



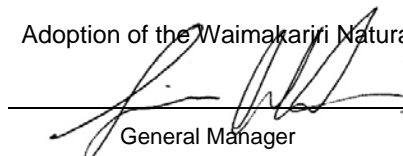
DRAFT

***Mā whero mā pango ka oti ai te mahi.
With red and black the work will be complete.***

Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan
Record Number: PUTC/8935 | Environment Canterbury Publication ID: R24/20
ISBN: 978-1-99-002797-0 (Print) | ISBN: 978-1-99-002798-7 (Web)

**It's time,
Canterbury**
Our climate change
conversation

CANTERBURY
Mayoral Forum

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL**REPORT FOR DECISION****FILE NO and TRIM NO:** RES-35-07/TRIM Number 240610093474**REPORT TO:** Council**DATE OF MEETING:** 2 July 2024**AUTHOR(S):** Veronica Spittal, Principal Policy Analyst: Climate Change & Sustainability**SUBJECT:** Adoption of the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy**ENDORSED BY:**
(for Reports to Council,
Committees or Boards)


General Manager



Chief Executive
1. SUMMARY

1.1. The purpose of this report is to seek Council approval to adopt the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy (WNES) suite of documents. These include the:

- WNES Biodiversity State of Environment Report
- WNES Our Environment – Our Future Summary document
- WNES Our Environment – Our Future Strategy document
- WNES Implementation Plan.

1.2. The 30-year strategy, aimed at protecting and enhancing the Waimakariri District's natural ecosystems, and in particular its special indigenous biodiversity, promotes environmental, cultural, social and economic wellbeing as required by the Local Government Act 2002.

Attachments:

- i. Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Biodiversity State of Environment Report: Trim 240606091607
- ii. Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Our Environment – Our Future Summary document: Trim 240606091644
- iii. Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Our Environment – Our Future: Trim 240607091999
- iv. Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Implementation Plan: Trim 240607092509.

2. RECOMMENDATION**THAT** the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240610093474.
- (b) **Adopts** the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Biodiversity State of Environment Report, Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Our Environment – Our Future, Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Our Environment – Our Future Summary document and Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Implementation Plan.
- (c) **Accepts** the recommendations of the Natural Environment Strategy Project Control Group regarding the feedback on the Implementation Plan from the 2024 -2034 Long Term Plan consultation process as summarised in sections 5.2.2, 5.2.3 and 5.3.3 of this report.

3. **BACKGROUND**

- 3.1. The purpose of the strategy is to provide direction for the Council's investment in protecting and enhancing natural ecosystems within the district through the development of a long-term vision and objectives (30 years), and a ten-year programme of works which takes steps towards achieving this vision.
- 3.2. The strategy's primary focus is about Council getting its own house in order by recognising the need to provide space for nature in its business practices and plans, and on its own land. However, the challenges faced by the district's voluntary environmental sector, as identified at an environmental forum initiated by the Council in late 2021, are also recognised in Implementation Plan actions.
- 3.3. The original impetus for this project was the recognised lack of a unifying document that holistically linked all of Council's environmental policies, practices, and plans. Identified risks included:
 - Inconsistency of approach between departments
 - Duplication of efforts, both internally and externally
 - Ineffective use of resources through lack of prioritising.

The strategy takes this one step further and seeks to embed consideration of the natural world in all of Council's business practices in the recognition that all aspects of life rely on a thriving natural environment, including our physical and mental health, economy, and culture.
- 3.4. Project governance has been overseen by a NES Project Control Group and NES Technical Advisory Group as described previously in Trim report 240215022513.

4. **ISSUES AND OPTIONS**

- 4.1. This report is recommending Council adopt the suite of Waimakariri Natural Environment documents. Council could choose not to do this or make further amendments, but the strategy has been developed via a robust engagement process and the vision and strategic direction it provides appears to have been well received. All of the comments received as part of the Long Term Plan consultation process related to the Implementation Plan (IP). This is to be reviewed in three years' time prior to the development of the 2027 Long Term Plan and therefore will come back to Council for its further consideration at that point.
- 4.2. The Implementation Plan includes 124 actions, the majority of which are already funded through existing Council budgets or Better Off Funding. Many of the actions only require staff resource to implement and IP action 1.2.1.2 provides for additional biodiversity staff to be employed.
- 4.3. Three funding options to implement the WNES were canvassed via the 2024 Long Term Plan consultation process and at the end of this process Council agreed to fund 31 actions which required additional funding. This will allow significant progress to be made on the strategy's key strategic actions.

Implications for Community Wellbeing

- 4.4. The subject matter of this report has implications for community wellbeing. Community wellbeing and the environment are intrinsically linked, for in order for people to prosper the environment must prosper. Globally, environmental degradation including the loss of indigenous biodiversity is occurring at such an extent the life-supporting capacity of ecosystems has now become threatened.
- 4.5. Nature-based solutions can be a very cost-effective way of mitigating and buffering climate impacts and healthy and diverse ecosystems can adjust more effectively to climate threats. The Chair of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) stated at the 2nd

World Ocean Summit Asia-Pacific in 2022 that *“Maintaining planetary health is essential for human and societal health and a pre-condition for climate-resilient development”*.

- 4.6. The Ministry for the Environment November 2023 ‘Briefing for Incoming Ministers - Environment, Climate Change and RMA Reform’ states that *“our natural infrastructure is an asset. It helps to regulate our climate, prevent erosion and landslides, protect our coastal environment from storm surges, improve water quality and regulate flooding while supporting cultural values, health and wellbeing, improving biodiversity and providing economic opportunities and resilience”*. The report noted that our natural infrastructure was under pressure with more than 3,200 of New Zealand’s known indigenous species being threatened or at risk of extinction partly due to loss of habitat and only 10% of wetlands remaining in 2010 compared with pre-human existence.
- 4.7. The Waimakariri District has less than 10% indigenous cover left, and this reduces to less than 0.5% in some areas. Much of what is left is contained within small and fragmented sites that are ‘acutely threatened’. Entire ecosystems can collapse below a 10% threshold, putting our indigenous flora and fauna, and the ecosystem services they provide, at significant risk. Planting new sites is expensive and they take a long time to mature. The protection and expansion of our naturally occurring, rare and special ecosystems is extremely important as it is difficult to reproduce the unique character and richness of the habitat that has been lost. We need to reclaim our unique identity by protecting what remains and recreating degraded and lost ecosystems.
- 4.8. Transforming our relationship with nature is the key to a sustainable future. The socio-economic impacts of climate change are increasingly being felt and these are expected to ‘escalate with every increment of warming’ (MfE briefing to incoming government). Wetlands and indigenous forests can play a significant role in sequestering carbon while protecting against natural hazards such as flooding and landslips.
- 4.9. New Zealand promotes itself in the world as a place of unspoiled nature and increasingly many of our overseas markets will demand proof of our protection of the environment as part of their willingness to support our products. Currently New Zealand has the highest percentage of threatened indigenous species in the world. Taking action to protect and restore biodiversity also creates nature-based jobs and supports eco-tourism. This is reflected in the Waimakariri Visitor Marketing Strategy 2020-25 which lists *‘protecting our nature, heritage and culture’* as a key objective for attracting visitors.
- 4.10. Finally, research shows that people who are more connected with nature are usually happier in life and more likely to report feeling their lives are worthwhile. Improvements to physical wellbeing and lower levels of poor mental health are also associated with connection to nature. Nature is part of our identity, providing a sense of place, creative inspiration, and opportunities to engage in cultural practices and recreation. Disconnection from this or living in degraded environments can negatively impact on physical, social and cultural wellbeing.
- 4.11. The Management Team has reviewed this report and supports the recommendations.

5. **COMMUNITY VIEWS**

5.1. **Mana whenua**

- 5.1.1. Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga representatives discussed the WNES during a joint Runanga/Council meeting on 16 February 2024 and expressed general support for the strategy due to its focus on indigenous planting and protecting natural values. Of particular importance for the Rūnanga was the protection, maintenance, and enhancement of the water resource in the area. Whilst the strategy does not directly deal to water quantity and quality to avoid duplication

with the ECan Zone Implementation Programme Addendum (ZIPA), a number of the Implementation Plan actions will help to improve water quality in the District. Specific changes requested by the Rūnanga were made to the WNES documents prior to their release for public consultation via the LTP process.

5.2. Groups and Organisations

- 5.2.1. A wide range of groups and organisations have shown an interest in the subject matter of this report. Consultation has been carried out throughout the development of the strategy documents, including early engagement with 33 environmental groups at a community forum hosted by the Council in 2021 and a two-month targeted pre-consultation process carried out between December 23 to the end of January 2024 which attracted 13 submissions. Both processes added significant value to the final documents and have been reported on previously to Council in Trim report 240215022513.
- 5.2.2. As part of the Long Term Plan consultation process, the National Public Health Service Te Waipounamu stated strong support for actions that promoted community food creation. Food Secure North Canterbury and the Kaiapoi Food Forest went further and requested specific wording changes to some Implementation Plan actions. These have been considered by the NES PCG and the PCG's recommendations have been recorded in a separate report and summarised in sections 5.2.3 and 5.3.3 of this report.
- 5.2.3. The two latter groups requested a far stronger focus on perennial edibles, mahinga kai and rōngoa plantings (traditional Māori medicinal species) for community foraging. While a minor amendment was made to action 2.1.4.1 in response to this, the NES PCG thought most of their requests could be accommodated within the existing actions as they were. Some of the specific word changes requested could be detrimental to the achievement of WNES objectives in some circumstances and ongoing dialogue between the Council Greenspace Team and these groups to consider the use of perennial edibles on a case-by-case basis, using the principle of 'right plant, right place, right purpose' should suffice. The NES PCG also considered a stronger focus on community foraging would not align particularly well with the overall WNES strategic framework as outlined in the strategy document Our Environment – Our Future 'plan on a page'. It was agreed it would be more strategically appropriate to consider the issue of food security in more depth in the refresh of the Community Development Strategy (currently underway) and the Climate Resilience Strategy planned for 2025.
- 5.2.4. Overall, the level of support expressed for the WNES has been very encouraging, with positive comments made about the comprehensive nature of the documents and the stated intention to more adequately prioritise the natural environment in Council's day to day business.

5.3. Wider Community

- 5.3.1. The wider community is likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.
- 5.3.2. Funding options for the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy was a key focus area in Council's 2024-2034 Long Term Plan Consultation Document. Public responses have been summarised in Trim report 240242034 and considered by Council during LTP deliberations.
- 5.3.3. A member of the public requested specific wording changes to Implementation Plan actions via the LTP process around educating, involving, empowering youth, and supporting student-led action which were considered by the NES PCG. Minor amendments have been made to actions 2.1.2.1 and 2.1.2.2 as a result.

- 5.3.4 Other household and individual views from across the District relevant to this report are reflected in the Council's Customer Satisfaction Surveys which show satisfaction rates with protecting/enhancing indigenous biodiversity (52% in 2019 and 57% in 2022) are generally well down on those for the provision of key Council services such as drinking water, waste facilities, library services and parks and reserves. The implementation of the WNES may help to improve satisfaction rates in future surveys. In the 2019 survey 86.8% of respondents thought it was important/very important for Council to promote/enhance biodiversity (number 10 out of the ten top ranking activities). In the 2022 survey people asked for Council to show leadership by prioritising climate change, sustainability, and environmental protection; more information, communication, and education opportunities; cleaner and upgraded waterways; and more native planting and street trees. All of these are addressed by Implementation Plan actions.

6. OTHER IMPLICATIONS AND RISK MANAGEMENT

6.1. Financial Implications

The decisions sought by this report have financial implications. Through the 2024-2034 Long term Plan deliberation process the Council has agreed to fund all WNES Implementation Plan actions over the next ten years. The \$4.1M of additional expenditure includes \$1.2m operational and \$2.9m capital expenditure.

6.2. Sustainability and Climate Change Impacts

The recommendations in this report do have sustainability and climate change impacts as commented on in sections 4.4, 4.5 and 4.7. Caring for natural resources and putting the environment at the heart of decision making is an essential part of climate change mitigation. The impacts of climate change on biodiversity are likely to be significant with many ecosystems already being adversely impacted. One of the key strategic actions in the WNES is to implement a natural environment climate change mitigation and adaptation programme. Programmes of work contributing to this include advocating for nature-based solutions, providing specialised biodiversity input to Council's climate planning, co-leading with Selwyn District Council the development of a regional blue-green network, and carrying out additional planting to sequester carbon.

6.3. Risk Management

There are risks arising from not adopting the recommendations in this report. These include the potential for increased public dissatisfaction with Council's response to continued biodiversity loss, inefficiencies arising from a lack of knowledge and/or not working in partnership or collaborating with others, and continued biodiversity degradation and loss impacting negatively on community wellbeing and mana whenua.

As noted previously, biodiversity and climate issues are intrinsically linked. Nature-based solutions such as sequestering carbon through tree planting and providing blue-green infrastructure to reduce flooding have co-benefits for both issues. The Council currently has legislative responsibilities via the NPSIB and the National Adaptation Plan (although it is acknowledged these could change) which it must meet. Failure to act could affect Council's reputation and credit rating and result in insurance and liability issues further down the track.

6.4. Health and Safety

There are health and safety risks arising from not adopting/implementing the recommendations in this report. As outlined in the 'Implications for Community Wellbeing' section of this report human health and wellbeing is reliant on a healthy environment.

7. CONTEXT

7.1. Consistency with Policy

This matter is not a matter of significance in terms of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

7.2. Authorising Legislation

Section 10 (1)(b) of the Local Government Act 2002 requires Council to promote the social, economic, environmental and cultural well-being of communities in the present and for the future. The WNES provides a clear pathway for addressing biodiversity issues that ultimately impact on these four wellbeings.

The strategy helps inform Council's response to the implementation of Te Mana O Te Taiao, Aotearoa, the New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy that was released in 2020.

The strategy also takes account of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity released in 2023 although it should be noted the incoming government has signalled its intention to review this legislation and has put the identification of new SNA's on hold for the next three years.

7.3. Consistency with Community Outcomes

The Council's community outcomes are relevant to the actions arising from recommendations in this report and include the following:

Environmental

- *People are supported to participate in improving the health and sustainability of our environment.*
- *Land use is sustainable; biodiversity is protected and restored.*
- *Our district is resilient and able to quickly respond to and recover from natural disasters and the effects of climate change.*
- *Our district transitions towards a reduced carbon and waste district.*
- *The natural and built environment in which people live is clean, healthy and safe.*
- *Our communities are able to access and enjoy natural areas and public spaces.*

Cultural

- *Public spaces express our cultural identities and help to foster an inclusive society.*

Social

- *Public spaces are diverse, respond to changing demographics and meet local needs for leisure and recreation.*

Economic

- *Infrastructure and services are sustainable, resilient, and affordable.*

7.4. Authorising Delegations

The state of the natural environment impacts everyone and identifying issues and solutions will necessitate cross-Council collaboration. For this reason, consideration of this report by full Council is appropriate.



Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Biodiversity State of the Environment Report



Contents

About this State of Environment Report.....	1	4. Underpinning Environmental and Biodiversity Concepts.....	24	5.3 National Policy Documents.....	47
Preface: Document Background		4.1 Indigenous and Local knowledge.....	24	5.3.1 National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity (NPSIB).....	47
Evidence and Data.....	2	4.2 More, Bigger, Better, Joined.....	26	5.3.2 Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy.....	48
1. Introduction.....	4	4.2.1 More.....	27	5.3.3 Implementation Plan.....	48
1.1 The Natural Environment.....	4	4.2.2 Bigger.....	28	5.3.4 National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management and National Environmental Standards	48
1.2 Ecosystem Services and Biodiversity.....	4	4.2.3 Better.....	29	5.4 Regional and District Plans.....	48
1.3 Aotearoa New Zealand's Natural Environment.....	6	4.2.4 Joined.....	30	References.....	50
2. The Natural Environment of Our District....	7	4.3 Nature Based Solutions.....	31	Appendix A.....	68
2.1 Overview.....	7	4.4 The Need for Urban Wild.....	33	Glossary.....	68
2.1.1 Mana Whenua.....	7	4.4.1 Creation of Living Cities.....	33		
2.1.2 Recent Environment History.....	8	4.4.2 Connecting People and Nature.....	34		
2.2 Natural Environment.....	8	4.5 Collaboration and Partnerships.....	34		
2.2.1 Geology, Soils and Land Use.....	9	4.6 Effect Management Hierarchy.....	37		
2.2.2 Climate.....	10	5. Legislation and Policy.....	40		
2.2.3 Ecological Districts.....	12	5.1 International Agreements.....	40		
2.3 Species.....	15	5.2 National Legislation.....	42		
3. Pressures and Threats.....	18	5.2.1 Resource Management Act 1991 and the reform.....	42		
3.1 Direct Habitat Loss.....	18	5.2.2 Environmental Legislation.....	45		
3.2 Habitat Degradation.....	19				
3.3 Invasive Species.....	20				
3.4 Climate Change.....	21				
3.5 Societal Pressures and Changes.....	22				

About this State of Environment Report

This state of environment report is intended to inform the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy (WNES). The strategy is the Council's local response to the degradation of important natural ecosystems and species being reported across the world, including within our District.

Current global biodiversity loss is so great it is called the 'sixth extinction'. The biodiversity crisis and the climate crisis are acknowledged to be closely linked, and healthy and diverse ecosystems can adjust more effectively to climate threats. The contribution nature-based solutions can make to buffering climate impacts by sequestering carbon and protecting built-up areas is also reflected in the strategy.

All aspects of life in Aotearoa New Zealand rely on a thriving natural environment including our physical and mental health, economy and culture. This strategy seeks to restore our connection to the natural world we are a part of so that we feel inspired to better protect it. We need to prioritise the protection and restoration of the natural environment not only for the ecosystems benefits it provides us and those who follow, but also for its own intrinsic worth. A world without dolphins, kiwi, tuatara and Kauri trees seems unimaginable but could become a possibility.

The strategy takes into account strategic directions outlined in the Local Government Act 2002 (4 wellbeings), National Adaptation Plan, National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity,

Aotearoa Biodiversity Strategy and others. It also complements the work of other organisations such as Environment Canterbury's Zone Implementation Plan Addendum (ZIPA), Forest and Bird's 'Make Every Wetland Count' campaign, QEII Trust and the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust.

The strategy currently consists of three documents plus a summary document which should be read in conjunction with one another.

Background documents



This Biodiversity SOE report describes the current state of indigenous biodiversity within the District and the challenges and opportunities foreseen over the next 30 years. It also provides an overview of biodiversity concepts and relevant legislation.

A review of Council reserve provision also informs the strategy. This will form part of a Reserves SOE report that identifies opportunities, in collaboration with local residents, for increasing natural values in reserves and streetscapes.

Strategy

Provides a high-level strategic framework to guide Council's work in protecting and restoring the natural environment over the next 30 years.

Roles range from developing plans and carrying out the work, to supporting the efforts of others, educating people about the issues and opportunities, and advocating for change, both at a national and local level.

Action plan

Contains specific costed actions to be included in the Council's Long Term Plan for implementation between 2024 and 2034.



Preface: Document Background Evidence and Data

This document has been compiled using a combination of qualitative and quantitative scientific research and survey data. Knowledge has also been gathered from literature pertaining to local and indigenous knowledge, societal, media and regulatory documents.

Knowledge from Scientific Research

Scientific research generates knowledge through systemic empiricism (structured and organised learnings from observations). The collection and evaluation of data produces conclusions from research which can be replicated. Good scientific research is peer-reviewed by other scientists working in the same field of expertise to ensure that methodologies, results, analysis and conclusions are ethically and scientifically correct and without conflict of interest. In this manner, scientific research produces conclusions based on tested reasoning (Trussell, Brandt, & Knapp, 1981) and evidence rather than ritual and personal opinion which may be subject to issues such as over-generalisation, selective observation, premature closure (jumping to conclusions), the halo effect (cognitive bias) and false consensus

(the tendency to see our own beliefs, opinions, behaviours as typical) (Neuman, 2011).

When reporting on scientific research, the aim should be to present findings which have been generated following good practice and to use them without bias. To ensure this, reporting considerations have been taken into account,

such as ensuring the science is not outdated, only partly reported or used in a manner not necessarily appropriate for the desired topic. The table below denotes some considerations for assessing the standard of a piece of research and whether it can be used to oppose or support a particular concept.

Good practice for identifying sound scientific research and principals to consider when reporting studies.

Good Research/Study	Reporting Considerations
Novel, aims to provide further insight	Current – up-to-date research or foundational to current works
Based on relevant, empirical data	Context – type of study suitable for required use
Robust study design and methodology	Source – published by a reputable outlet journal
Ethical and transparent	Transparency – disclose any conflicts of interest
Proper data analysis and observations	Inclusivity – report all findings to remove selective observations and premature closure
Peer-reviewed by subject experts	Robust – ensure the research constitutes good practice
Externally validated	
Undertaken by qualified practitioners	
No conflict of interest	

Knowledge from local, indigenous or societal sources

Indigenous knowledge has been described as “the understandings, skills and philosophies developed by societies with long histories of interaction with their natural surroundings” (UNESCO, 2021). In Aotearoa New Zealand, Kaupapa Māori research and mātauranga is rich, being preserved by tohunga (specialists) and passed down through whakapapa (genealogy), waiata (song), haka (dance), whakatauki (proverbs), pūrākau (legends), kōrero tuku iho (stories), and whakairo (carvings) (Hudson et al., 2020). A strength of this type of knowing is that it holds information that has been captured through practical means and retained and added to over centuries (Durie, 2005). An example of this knowledge is that of rongoā, Māori herbal medicine, now beginning to be recognised by pakeha for its wealth of insight and introduced into the mainstream healthcare system (Gray, 2012).

Similarly, communities in Aotearoa New Zealand also hold local knowledge, particularly those who are stewards of the land such as land managers in a range of industries and organisations. Observations about weather patterns, biodiversity trends, and soil conditions are examples of some local knowledge which can be gathered.

The benefits of local and indigenous knowledge are the longevity and depth of insight of the observations. The use of this type of knowledge encourages respect and appreciation of different cultural experiences in addition to providing valuable information.

Societal, current affairs or popular knowledge has been taken from media sources. The media platforms can often work as an intermediary between the scientists and politicians and the public. When this is done well, high-level, complicated ideas and theories can be disseminated to the public in effective and

accessible ways (Atkinson, 2016). Gaining information from the media does have limitations. The mass media are generally commercial, having to make a profit to continue business and this financially motivated pressure can tend to lead media outlets to “perpetuate the cultural myths or create hype” (Neuman, 2011). For this reason, this form of knowledge has been cited as such and supplemented with other forms of knowledge.

Knowledge from Legislation, Reports and Policies

Finally, reports, policy documents and legislative statutes have been referred to throughout the document where appropriate. These are all referenced and can be found via the links provided in the references section. However, as noted in section 5 of this document, many of the regulatory instruments are currently undergoing alterations from central government and will be updated as these changes are adopted.



1. Introduction

1.1 The Natural Environment

The natural environment has been defined as the physical, chemical and biological assets of the environment (Nienhuis, 2009). In Aotearoa New Zealand, it has been further defined as a term that encompasses the living environment (te taiao), which includes all living organisms and the ecological processes that sustain them. By this definition, people are a key part of nature" (Department of Conservation, 2020). It is essential for all aspects of life from a genetic to organism and ecosystem level which includes our growing communities.

The natural environment is dynamic, complex and interconnected. It essentially consists of all biotic (living, biological, indigenous or exotic) and abiotic elements (non-living such as water, nutrients) which interact at various scales of magnitude (Table 1). The diversity captured within the living element of the natural environment (biodiversity) requires, influences and sustains the abiotic elements.

In ecological terms, an individual is the product of genetic diversity which can live in populations of the same species. These populations may have genetic variations to other populations of the same species (intraspecific genetic variation). It is this variation that can assist a species to adapt to their environment.

Genetic Diversity	Organism Diversity	Ecological Diversity
↑ Populations	Individuals	Populations
Individual's chromosomes	Populations	Habitats
Genes	Subspecies	
Nucleotides	Species	Ecosystems
	Genera	Landscapes
	Families	Bioregions
	Phyla	Biomes
	Kingdoms	Biogeographical realms
	↓	↓

Table 1. Elements of the natural environment (adapted from Heywood & Baste, 1995). The arrows depict the direction of magnitude of size and complexity. Although each category is presented separately, they are interconnected with populations being found within each category.

Habitats are the biological and abiotic environments required for a species to survive (Pearson, 2008). An ecosystem is a functioning unit comprising all species, both above and below ground, interacting with each other and the physical environment within an area (Lyle, 2008). A landscape comprises a matrix of habitat patches and ecosystems which inform the

boundaries of larger scale associations such as bioregions, biomes and biogeographical realms (Pearson, 2008).

The natural environment comprises a structure of ecological units (genes, individuals, communities etc) which interact and perform functions to direct and influence ecological processes. Ecological processes have been defined as:

"...all the physical processes and the plant and animal activities which influence the state of ecosystems and contribute to the maintenance of their integrity and genetic diversity, and thereby their evolutionary potential" (Ricklefs et al., 1984).

Examples of processes include primary productivity, energy and trophic/food chain flows, biogeochemical cycles such as climatic and hydrological processes, interactions and movements of organisms and disturbance regimes. Bennett et al., (2009) consider the protection of these processes to be pivotal to the maintenance of resilient ecosystems providing important services which humans depend upon.

1.2 Ecosystem Services and Biodiversity

A functioning natural environment provides the goods and services required to sustain life on earth. However, a key driver in the loss and

degradation of the natural environment is the lack of value assigned by market forces (Brown et al., 2015). It has been stated that in the current economic system, there is no accounting for nature which leads to an assumption that the natural environment has no value, thereby driving exploitation (von Hase and ten Kate, 2017).

To remedy the lack of value placed on the natural environment "ecosystems services" were promoted in the early 2000's to describe the benefits, goods and services obtained directly and indirectly from ecosystems. These services are vast and include those which are essential not only to the economy through production means but also those affording a hospitable environment in which communities of different organisms, including humans, can thrive (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005). Ecosystem services can be divided into four areas:

- **provisioning** which includes the supply of consumables such as food, timber, biochemicals such as medicines;
- **regulating** relating to services such as climate, air quality and water regulation as well as pest and disease control;
- **supporting** indicating photosynthesis, soil formation and nutrient cycling which are the foundation of life and support our primary industries; and
- **cultural services** which provide a sense of place and meaning, spirituality, recreation, mental and physical health and aesthetic values.

Researchers have begun measuring and managing ecosystems based on their functioning and

service provision and in recent years, one overall measure has been used, "the ability of ecosystems to simultaneously provide multiple functions and services" (Manning et al., 2018). This has been named "ecosystem multifunctionality" and allows for the consideration of many functions and services together to scope for cross-effects and trade-offs.

Biodiversity has a central role in the functioning, stability and health of our ecosystems and ecosystem services although the precise mechanisms continue to be studied (Albrecht et al., 2021; Martin et al., 2019; van der Plas, 2019; Xu et al., 2021). Whilst the term biodiversity may have been overused in recent years to explain the range of organisms residing on the planet, the wider definition is that of the "diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems" (Pascual et al., 2021). This definition draws on the fact that biodiversity encompasses all life on earth without prescribing a value or protection hierarchy. Instead, it allows for the pluralistic meaning of biodiversity which reflects our societal structure with different communities deriving various meanings. It also moves away from the notion that only certain ecosystems or species should be considered important enough to be protected and conserved rather than the full suite of life, a major challenge for biodiversity conservation theory and practice (Walker et al., 2021).

This pluralistic definition was not thoroughly integrated into the concept of ecosystem services. The concept was primarily developed by ecologists and economists overlooking the additions that could be made from other disciplines, stakeholders

and worldviews such as social sciences and local, particularly indigenous, communities (Diaz et al., 2018). The Intergovernmental Science-Policy Platform on Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services (IPBES) broadened the concept of ecosystem services to include all Nature's Contributions to People, whether conceived to be positive or negative. This revised concept captured the impacts of nature which either enhance or are detrimental to human life quality making it an inclusive approach which is context specific (Pascual et al., 2017). There are three overarching categories of Nature's Contributions to People:

- **Material Contributions** – similar to the provisioning ecosystem services, mainly consumables;
- **Non-material Contributions** – similar to cultural ecosystem services, the aspects of life which effect subjective or psychological life;
- **Regulating Contributions** – similar to the supporting and regulating ecosystem services, the aspects of nature which alter conditions to influence life on earth or generate the material and non-material contributions.

Both ecosystem services and Nature's Contributions to People concepts portray the important message that the natural environment is pivotal to human life on earth in numerous ways, but this relationship is mutually dependent (Diaz et al., 2019). This interconnectedness is integrated in indigenous knowledge for the natural environment and named mātauranga Māori in Aotearoa New Zealand (Wehi et al., 2019). Whilst the natural environment directly

impacts the health of communities and the balanced functioning of ecosystems, the priorities and actions of our human communities affect global change and the direction of health for our natural environment and for ourselves (Cardinale *et al.*, 2012; Figure 1).

Biodiversity and Ecosystem Functioning

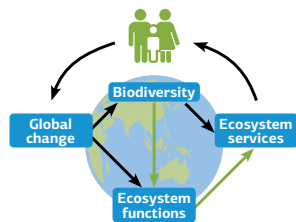


Figure 1. The flow of influence from biodiversity and ecosystems to humanity who can exact global change which in turn affects biodiversity and ecosystems. Humanity is a vital component in the cycle, directing the health of our natural environment from which we receive many contributions (Cardinale *et al.*, 2012).

1.3 Aotearoa New Zealand's Natural Environment

Aotearoa New Zealand is a global biodiversity hotspot, with high values placed on the importance of biological conservation (Kier *et al.*, 2009; Mittermeier *et al.*, 2005). Indigenous vascular flora and fauna are

highly specialised with endemism of approximately 85% for plants, 72% birds, 81% invertebrates, 88% freshwater fish and 100% for reptiles, frogs and bats (Lee and Lee, 2015; Wardle 1991). It is thought that this high level of speciation occurred due to a number of factors including lengthy isolation, geological and climatic fluctuations, and co-evolution, with flightless birds and lizards in place of mammals elsewhere (Cooper and Millener 1993; Lee *et al.*, 2001; McGlone *et al.*, 2001; Waters and Craw 2006). These endemic species have a higher risk of extinction than indigenous species due complex reasons including their limited geographical range and specialised nature of the occupied niche, low number of populations, small or possible declining population size, low fecundity and the requirements for stable environmental conditions (Isik, 2011).

Indigenous vegetation cover has been used as a proxy for indigenous biodiversity in Aotearoa New Zealand and many protected natural areas have been created to conserve the biological heritage. These areas amount to approximately 30% of the total land mass and are mostly in mountainous, wet, steep or cool environments. Land outside of this has gained limited protection leading to impoverished indigenous areas in the drier, flatter, warmer environments and a loss of the ability to safeguard the full complement of biodiversity (Cieraad *et al.*, 2015; Holdaway *et al.*, 2012). This is exemplified on the Canterbury Plains where indigenous habitats are highly fragmented and, in some areas, less than 0.1% remains (Environment Canterbury 2008; Harding *et al.*, 2009; Meurk *et al.*, 1995; Winterbourn *et al.*, 2008).

A report by the Environmental Research Institute noted that indigenous vegetation cover of 10% is critical and figures below this can result in a rapid increase of biodiversity loss due to reduced spatial extent, reduced resource availability and severe fragmentation (Clarkson, 2022). Loss of the unique biodiversity in Aotearoa New Zealand is rapidly occurring within all ecosystem types leading to discussions around the sixth mass extinction episode with species receiving conservation efforts continuing to experience population declines (Dinica, 2022; Hare *et al.*, 2019). Loss of biodiversity leads to altered ecosystem structure, processes, functioning and altered ecosystem services humans derive from them (Dick *et al.*, 2012). In addition to the critical need to preserve the natural environment and biodiversity for health and economic reasons, Aotearoa New Zealand is a signatory to the Convention on Biological Diversity committing the country to halting the decline in biodiversity (Convention on Biological Diversity, 2023).



2. The Natural Environment of Our District

2.1 Overview

The Waimakariri District is found within the central-east of the South Island, encompassing the northern Canterbury Plains. The District comprises 225,500ha with the Waimakariri braided river to the south and the Ashley/Rakahuri braided river system in the north. To the east lies the Pacific Ocean and the District is adjacent to the foothills of Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/Southern Alps to the north-west. Prior to human settlement the braided rivers would have meandered across the plains and the area between them would be periodically inundated comprising scattered wetlands, rivers and streams (Environment Canterbury, 2018).

2.1.1 Mana Whenua

The Waimakariri District is part of the takiwā of Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga. The information below is taken from the Mahaanui Iwi Management Plan and documents produced by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013; Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 2024).

"The Waimakariri rises in the snows of the Southern Alps and its waters never fail. Like other snow fed rivers its flow tends to be greater in warm weather when the snows are melting [creating freshes]... Thus the natural tendency of the river is a periodic flushing out of its channels, which wind among braided shingle beds a kilometre wide when the level is low" (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

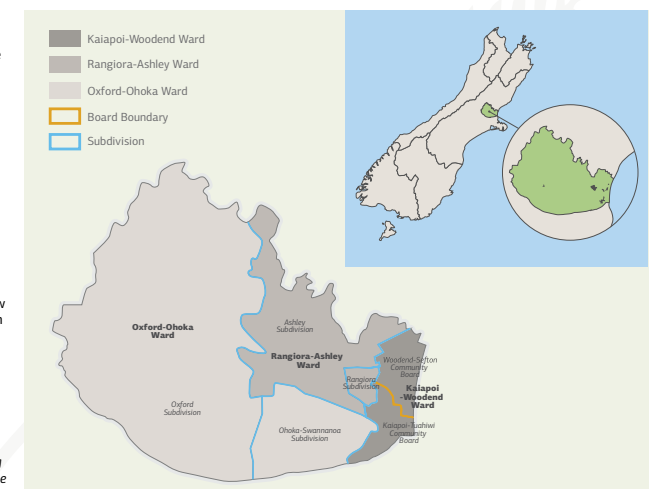


Figure 2. The Waimakariri District location and Ward boundaries (Waimakariri District Council, 2021)

"Tuhiwi is the home of Ngāi Tūhūriri and has played a vital role in Ngāi Tahu history. The takiwā (district) of Te Ngāi Tūhūriri Rūnanga centres on Tuhiwi and extends from the Hurunui to the Hakatere river and inland to the Main Divide. Nearby the famous Kaiapoi Pā was established by the first Ngāi Tahu ancestors when they settled Te Wai Pounamu. Kaiapoi Pā was the major capital, trading centre and point from which further penetration of the South Island occurred so the area is a genealogical centre for all Ngāi Tahu whānui (descendants). Kaiapoi Pā was established by Mōki's elder brother Tūrākautahi who was the second son of Tūhūriri, hence "Ngāi Tūhūriri" is the name of the hapū of this area" (Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 2024).

"The name Waimakariri refers to the cold (makariri) mountain fed waters of this braided river. The river was part of a larger network of ara tawhito linking the east coast of Te Waipounamu to the mahinga kai resources of the high country and the pounamu resources of Te Tai Poutini. The Waimakariri and its tributary the Ruataniwha (Cam River) were two of three waterways (the other being the Rakahuri) that continued to sustain Ngāi Tahu even after the land purchases in Canterbury"...

"Before European settlement began in the 1850s, the lower reaches of the Waimakariri and Rakahuri (Ashley) connected with a maze of waterways and wetlands fed by underground springs of the purest artesian water, which nourished a wealth of mahinga kai rich in birdlife, eels, fish and natural vegetation. For this reason, when Crown Commissioner Kemp arrived in 1848 to purchase Canterbury, the Ngāi Tūhūriri negotiators proposed to retain the 100,000 ha between the Waimakariri and Rakahuri, leaving the

territory south of the Waimakariri for the Europeans. This arrangement was denied to them. Instead, their four hundred people were confined to a 1,000 ha reserve at Tuhiwi, with a promise that they would retain their mahinga kai, while the rest of the 100,000 ha they had asked for was allocated to (at first) a dozen or so settlers"...

"The cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional significance of the Waimakariri landscape to Ngāi Tahu history and identity is acknowledged in the NTCSA 1998 [Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act, 1998]. Moana Rua (Lake Pearson) is a Statutory Acknowledgement site. Kura Tawhiti is a Statutory Acknowledgement site and a Tōpuni. The traditional place names Maungatere (Mount Grey) and Kapara Te Hau (Lake Grassmere) are recognised under the Act's dual place names provisions" (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

2.1.2 Recent Environment History

From the 1850s, modification of the waterways began to drain the area for farming and settlement purposes. This reduced the wetland areas and mahinga kai sites and the containment of rivers commenced to alleviate flooding. Presently, the main settlement areas in the District are Rangiora, Kaiapoi, Pegasus, Woodend and Oxford comprising 62% of the population (Figure 2). There are a number of smaller townships scattered throughout but mainly in the east of the District, much of which is reclaimed swamp. The population of the District is one of the fastest growing in New Zealand and anticipated to increase to 102,100 by 2043 with

an estimated increase of 16,200 (186.2%) for people 65 years and over between 2013-2043 (Waimakariri District Council, 2023).

During the 2018 census, the District recorded an employment rate of approx. 70% with 30% not in the workforce and less than 3% unemployed (Stats NZ, 2023). Despite the "red-zoning" of 20% of houses in the Kaiapoi area following the 2010-2011 Canterbury earthquakes, much of the population growth occurred after 2011 with increased building and resettlement around Rangiora, Kaiapoi and Pegasus. Some growth may also have occurred due to the conversion of land to dairy farming and the need for housing for farm workers (Sparrow, 2016). The most common occupations for those living within the District in 2018 were construction, manufacturing, retail, professional services, education and training, healthcare and agriculture, forestry and fisheries (Waimakariri District Council, 2021).

2.2 Natural Environment

The Waimakariri District has a wide and varied natural environment, spanning a range of altitudes, species and community compositions,



landforms and environmental conditions including terrestrial, coastal, montane and aquatic habitats. Of prominence are the two braided river systems, the Waimakariri and Ashley/Rakahuri. These ecosystems are globally rare and important for many endangered species (Grey et al., 2006). The Waimakariri River, in particular, has great importance for irrigation of the plains and replenishing freshwater aquifers.

2.2.1 Geology, Soils and Land Use

The District ranges in topography from sea-level to the highest point of Chest Peak at 1936m. Glacial - hydrological movements and climate have substantially influenced the landscape. Following the last ice-age, glaciers began to retreat and melt water channels deposited sediment trapped in the glacier to create the alluvial fans or outwash plains and moraines along with other features such as valleys, kettle holes and truncated spurs (Babe et al., n.d.).

The alluvial deposits of the outwash plains have developed a range of soils which support various ecosystems and land uses. The soils in the east and north plains along with the foothills and Lees Valley are relatively fertile and were the focus of agricultural production until the Waimakariri Irrigation Scheme allowed water from the river to irrigate the stony-silt, thin Lismore soils of the lower plains. Figure 3 illustrates the location of the most versatile soils in the District under the Land Use Capability classification (LUC). This classification details the most versatile soils on an eight point scale gradient with 1 being the most

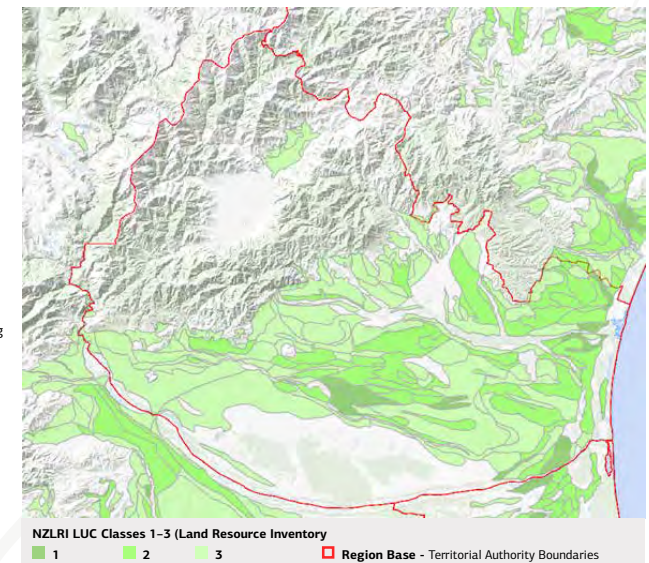


Figure 3. Location of "highly productive land" as assessed through the Land Use Capability classification within the Waimakariri District showing classes 1-3 with 1 being the most versatile.

versatile soil and 8 being the least. The National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land classifies LUC 1-3 as “highly productive land”. Whilst soil is an important ecosystem regardless of its versatility and productiveness, this classification details the use of soil for production and other purposes (Table 2).

The dominant land use cover in the District is highly producing exotic grassland with at least 40% used for sheep and beef farming and a further 16% used for the dairy sector (Environment Canterbury, 2018; Figure 4). However, there is a trend for a decrease in the amount of farmland across the Canterbury region and a decrease in the amount of land used for dairy production (Stats NZ, 2021). The decrease of land cover under farm use could signal the intensification of land as export income has increased in addition to the increased demand for lifestyle blocks and housing on the outskirts of towns.

2.2.2 Climate

The climate of area is as diverse as the landscape and is broadly classified as *Temperate oceanic Climate* (Broadbent *et al.*, 2022). There are large temperature and rainfall variations with rainfall decreasing with proximity to the coast and temperatures increasing (Figure 5, Macara *et al.*, 2016). NIWA separated the Canterbury region into five zones with regards to climate change with four being relevant to the Waimakariri district (Macara *et al.*, 2020):

- The **plains**, comprising 50% of the District, and characterised by low rainfall, a large annual temperature variation and prevailing winds from

Table 2. Land Use Capability classification of land suitability for various uses. There are increasing limitations and decreasing versatility of use from classes 1 through to 8.

LUC Class	Arable Cropping	Pastoral Grazing	Production forestry	General
1	High	High	High	Multiple land use
2				
3				
4	Low			
5	Unsuitable			Pastoral or forestry land
6				
7		Low	Low	
8		Unsuitable	Unsuitable	Conservation land

north-east and south-west. North-west winds are not frequent but are also important due to their drying capacity, exacerbating soil moisture deficits in an already relatively dry area.

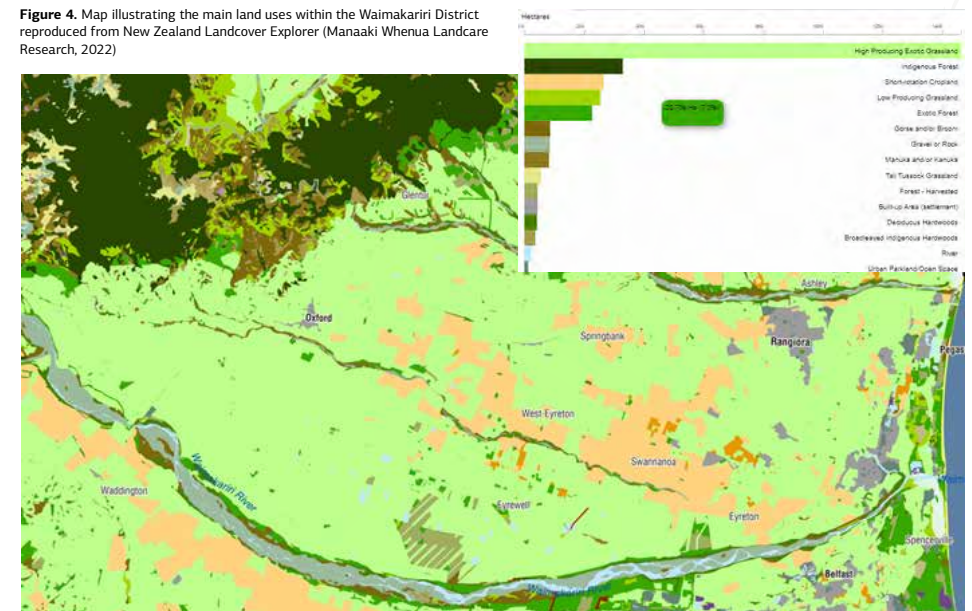
- The **eastern foothills** of the Ashley and Oxford areas, with cooler, wetter weather and north-west winds.
- The **high country** with north-west winds, abundant rainfall and winter snow.
- **Inland sheltered valleys** with low rainfall and large annual and diurnal temperature ranges comprising the Lees Valley.

The mean air temperature fluctuates from around 14-18°C in summer to 4-8°C in winter. These figures do not capture the range of temperatures in the district which can be found at the different altitudes, or the microclimates caused by topographical and atmospheric conditions such as frost basins. The plains tend to receive the most



Photo Credit: Tony Bridge

Figure 4. Map illustrating the main land uses within the Waimakariri District reproduced from New Zealand Landcover Explorer (Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research, 2022)



sunlight hours and some areas, such as Rangiora, can receive strong but not persistent winds in spring and autumn (Macara *et al.*, 2020).

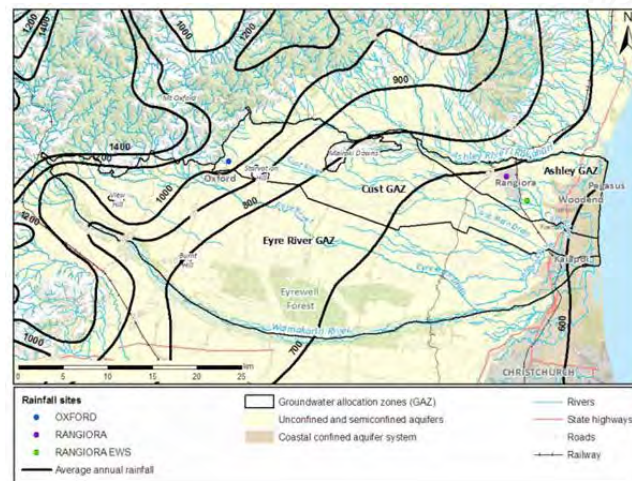
2.2.3 Ecological Districts

The District was divided into five areas based on the interconnected characteristics of topography, geology, climate, soils and the residing flora and fauna (McEwan, 1987). Namely, these areas are the Ashley, High Plains, Low Plains, Oxford and Torlesse ecological districts (Figure 6). Each area is unique and holds a wealth of taonga/treasures including diverse species of fauna and flora many of which are listed as threatened (Table 3). This broad definition of ecological area hides a wealth of ecotones, transitions between one ecological district to the next, and whilst each classification has a distinct character, there are inevitable anomalies.

Canterbury Plains: High and Low Plains

The plains cover over 50% of the District, mainly in the south and east and would have comprised of terraces from the braided river networks encompassing a transitional ecosystem from the dry and easily leached braided riverbeds to the deeper, more nutrient rich soils sustaining forest species and ecosystems. Historically, the area would have comprised hardy, low growing flora such as *raoulia* (*Raoulia* spp.), within the shifting braided river bed. As the substrate became more stable, a mosaic low growing herbs and tussock grasses would have given rise to almost savannah-like vegetation in the drier areas, hardy shrubs and dry woodland, kānuka shrub and podocarp forest with areas of wetland

Figure 5. Depiction of approx. annual rainfall for the District (taken from Dodson *et al.*, 2012).



in the eastern areas where the soils were less porous. Although limited in distribution, there are highly significant areas of calcareous cliffs, scarps and tors present on the plains. These areas are naturally uncommon and contain adapted

plant species, of which almost 50% are listed as threatened or data deficient (Rogers, Courtney & Heenan, 2018). These areas are highly vulnerable to habitat loss through quarrying activities, herbivory and weed encroachment.

Currently, the area represents a highly modified environment in which indigenous vegetation has been severely spatially reduced mainly due to conversion of land for production and settlement (Environment Canterbury 2008). The amount of indigenous land cover remaining in some areas is less than 0.1% being categorised as "acutely threatened" (Walker *et al.*, 2006; Winterbourn *et al.*, 2008) and the existing remnants are small and fragmented, often containing non-regenerating populations (Meurk 2008; Meurk *et al.*, 1995). These habitats contain a large proportion of indigenous and threatened species that are under-represented within the Aotearoa New Zealand protected areas network (Head and Given 2001; Holdaway *et al.*, 2012; Walker *et al.*, 2006).

Canterbury Foothills: Ashley and Oxford

A large proportion of the foothills are mapped as National land of significance by the Department of Conservation and protected as such (Davis *et al.*, 2016; ECan, 2016). This includes the Mt. Oxford, the Ashley Forest and Mt. Thomas Conservation Area containing beech forest habitat supporting rare and threatened species and some sub-alpine shrubland. Both the Ashley and Oxford ecological districts are well provisioned with the majority of the area containing at least 30% indigenous land cover and there are large tracts of land which are connected. There are also podocarp forest remnants at foothills-plains interface such as the Coopers Creek/View Hill area, and associated wetlands, including Tawera mudfish/kōwaro population.

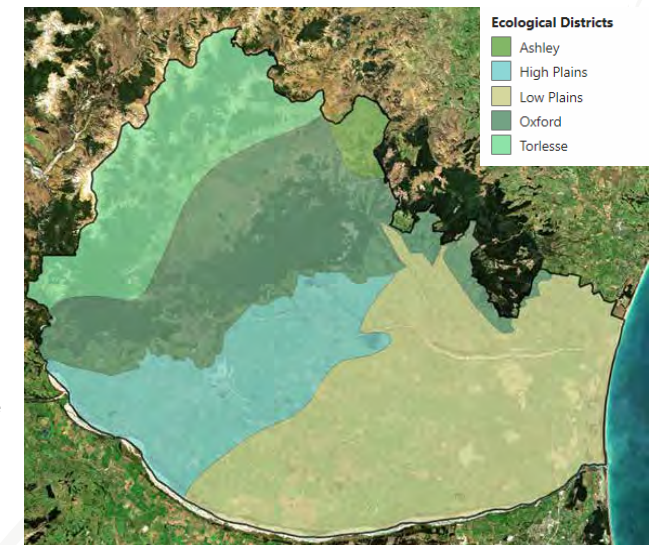


Figure 6. A map of the District showing the ecological districts as described by McEwan (1987).

Table 3. Ecological District Information

Threat status categories: V = Vulnerable, E = endangered, CE = Critically endangered

Ecological District	Area in District (ha)	Indigenous Vegetation Remaining	Indigenous Vegetation Protected	Naturally Uncommon Ecosystem Type	Example of Important Species in the Ecological District
Low Plains	88,367	<10%	<5%	Braided Rivers (E), Dune Slacks (E), Active sand dunes (E), Coastal lagoons (E).	Geckos and skinks, plants, black-fronted tern/tarapirohe (<i>Chlidonias albostratus</i>), Canterbury Plains boulder copper butterfly (<i>Lycena</i> sp).
High Plains	38,593	<10%	<5%	Basic cliffs, scarps, and tors (V) of Burnthill	Waipara gentian (<i>Gentianella calcis</i> subsp. <i>waipara</i>), freshwater crayfish/kūra (<i>Paranephrops zealandicus</i>), long-fin eels/tuna kuwharurūwharu (<i>Anguilla dieffenbachii</i>).
Ashley	3,775	>30%	>20%	Lake Margins (V)	New Zealand Falcon (<i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i>), Kea (<i>Nestor notabilis</i>).
Oxford	55,058	>30%	<25%	Calcareous cliffs, scarps, and tors (V) of View Hill and Okuku.	New Zealand Falcon, Canterbury mudfish (<i>Neochanna burrowsius</i>), Kea.
Torlesse	35,918	>30%	>20%	Inland outwash gravels (CE)	Speargrass (<i>Aciphylla subflabellata</i>), giant weta (<i>Deinacrida connectans</i>), Kea.
Oxford/Torlesse – Lees Valley	21,578	<10%	ND	Ephemeral wetlands (CE)	New Zealand Pipit (<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i>), geckos and skinks.

The foothills also contain the Lees Valley intermontane basin at approximately 400m above sea level. It has a similar climate to the lowland areas but has lost more than 90% of its indigenous land cover (ECan, 2008). However, in addition to terrestrial dry shrubland, the Lees Valley also comprises important wetland, riparian and swamp wetland, such as Richon Wetland, a 6ha sedgeland area containing the sedge *Carex tenuiculmis* classified as At Risk – Declining and nationally critically threatened Canterbury pink broom (*Carmichaelia tortulosa*) (QEII National Trust, 2008).

Puketeraki: Torlesse High Country

The Torlesse ecological district is a montane area with a cool climate and snow on mountain

tops for approximately three months of the year. The Puketeraki Conservation Area is classified as land of National Significance containing beech, tussockland and subalpine habitats. The area receives moderate rainfall 1,000-24,000mm per year, which supports the tussocklands in the valleys, the scattered beech forest and scrub but also the sub-alpine, alpine and fell-field vegetation. Although this area is modified, it is important for birds such as kea (*Nestor notabilis*) and falcon/kārearea (*Falco novaeseelandiae*) and many wetland birds associated with the rivers. The area is also known to have giant weta (*Deinacrida connectans*). The headwaters for the Ashley and Okuku River are found within this area.

Freshwater and Coastal

The Waimakariri District has meandering rivers that are spring fed, rainwater fed or fed by snow melt (Figure 7). These features provide habitat and shelter for a number of rare and endangered species of invertebrates, birds, lizards and indigenous fish. They also have cultural significance as water "connects Ngāi Tahu to the landscape and the cultural traditions of the tūpunas" such as the provision of mahinga kai, the sacred habitats and sites and their function as ara tawhito, access routes to the West Coast/Te Tai Poutini (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013). Furthermore, the wetlands and water features of the District provide numerous opportunities for recreational activities such as

white-water kayaking, fishing, dragon boating, mana-waka paddling, and power boating to name a few (Waimakariri Water Zone Committee, 2018).

The Waimakariri Zone Implementation Programme divided the District into four catchment areas including the Waimakariri River, the Ashley/Rakahuri River, the lowland streams and coastal lagoons and the Eyre and Cust Rivers (Waimakariri Zone Committee, n.d.). These latter rivers have their headwaters in the Puketeraki Ranges and the Oxford foothills and originally flowed into the Ohoka-Rangiora swamp before being drained in the 1930s through river engineering techniques. These rivers are prized for their spawning trout and recreational benefits and contribute to the Waimakariri/Ashley plain groundwater.

The Waimakariri and the Ashley/Rakahuri braided rivers have been listed as a naturally uncommon ecosystems and given the national designation of "endangered", providing habitat to specialised fauna and flora such as endangered birds (Holdaway *et al.*, 2012; Wiser *et al.*, 2013). These rivers have also been recognised as nationally significant, along with the lowland streams and coastal wetlands including the Ashley/Rakahuri estuary, the Okuku River, the Cam/Ruataniwha River, Kaiapoi River, Tūtaepatu Lagoon, the Pines Beach Wetland, areas of swampland around Loburn (Boffa Miskell, 2010; Davis *et al.*, 2016).

The coastal resource in the east comprises dune systems, coastal freshwater and brackish networks of wetlands, streams and lagoons, including the 49ha spring fed Tūtapatu Lagoon.

Figure 7. Map of main waterways and settlements within the District (Sparrow and Taylor, 2019).

The Ashley/Rakahuri Estuary to the north of the District contains areas of salt marsh, which are rare in Canterbury (ECan, 2008).

2.3 Species

The District is home to a number of nationally threatened species across many habitats and ecosystems (Table 4). The braided river systems

are notable for supporting indigenous species renowned as taonga by local iwi including an abundance of rare birds such as banded dotterels (*Charadrius bicinctus*), black fronted terns (*Chlidonias albostratus*) and godwits (*Limosa lapponica*) following their migration from Alaska: and over 90 species of birds have been recorded at the Ashley/Rakahuri River – Saltwater Creek

Estuary alone. This site, along with the wider Pegasus Bay wetlands, is designated "Important Bird Areas" by Birdlife International and is recognised by the International Union for the Conservation of Nature (IUCN) as a wetland of "international significance".

In addition, the many streams, springs and wetlands across the district are home to many bird species including the nationally critical Australasian Bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*). This diversity is in part due to the fact that the braided rivers and spring-fed watercourses contain good quality communities of aquatic macro-invertebrates and aquatic flora (Scarsbrook et al., 2007).

The wetlands and watercourses of the District also provide habitat for culturally important aquatic species such as long and shortfin eels (*Anguilla australis*), koura, īnanga and lamprey with the nationally critical Canterbury mudfish having populations in the Oxford area.

The beech forests in the north and west of the District support rare mistletoe species and plants, along with a range of fungal species, birds and invertebrates. The drylands also support a wealth of rare and threatened plant species including those we may think of as common such as matagouri and kānuka. These habitats also support a range of invertebrates and lizard species (Plate 1).

It is important to note that although the District supports many threatened species, species which do not have a national threat classification should not be overlooked. The diminished nature of

the District's indigenous habitat means that all species are important and are imperative for the structure and functioning of ecosystems which also support the rare flora and fauna.

Plate 1. Jewelled gecko camouflaged in foliage.



Table 4. An example of some of the rare and threatened species present in the Waimakariri District.

Species	Threat Category	Conservation Status	Habitat
Birds			
Australasian bittern <i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i>	Threatened	Nationally critical	Vegetated wetlands
New Zealand Falcon <i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i>	Threatened	Nationally endangered	Predominantly foothills
Black-fronted tern <i>Chlidonias albostratus</i>	Threatened	Nationally endangered	Braided riverbeds
White-fronted terns <i>Sterna striata aucklandoma</i>	Threatened	Nationally vulnerable	Rivers and coast
Wrybill <i>Anarhynchus frontalis</i>	Threatened	Nationally increasing	Braided rivers
Arthropods			
Robust Grasshopper <i>Brachaspis robustus</i>	Threatened	Nationally endangered	Braided rivers
Crayfish/kōura <i>Paraneophraps zealandicus</i>	At risk	Declining	Wetlands
Sand Scarab <i>Pericoptus frontalis</i>	At risk	Naturally uncommon	Beaches, braided rivers

Table 4 continued.

Species	Threat Category	Conservation Status	Habitat
Lizards			
Jewelled gecko <i>Naultinus gemmeus</i>	At risk	Declining	Drylands and shrublands
Canterbury grass skink <i>Oligosoma aff. polychroma Clade 4</i>	At risk	Declining	Drylands and shrublands
Waitaha/Canterbury gecko <i>Woodworthia cf. brunnea</i>	At risk	Declining	Rocky dryland, shrublands
Fish			
Canterbury mudfish <i>Neochanna burrowsius</i>	Threatened	Nationally critical	Wetlands
Lamprey <i>Geotria australis</i>	Threatened	Nationally vulnerable	Wetlands
Longfin eel <i>Anguilla dieffenbachii</i>	At risk	Declining	Wetlands
Īnanga <i>Galaxias maculatus</i>	At risk	Declining	Wetlands
Plants			
Dryland button daisy <i>Leptinella filiformis</i>	Threatened	Nationally critical	Drylands
Canterbury Plains Tree Daisy <i>Olearia adenocarpa</i>	Threatened	Nationally critical	Drylands, braided rivers
Armstrong's whipcord <i>Veronica armstrongii</i>	Threatened	Nationally endangered	Drylands
Everlasting Daisy <i>Helicrysium dimorphum</i>	Threatened	Nationally endangered	Dry scrubland
Kānuka <i>Kunzea serotina</i>	Threatened	Nationally vulnerable	Forest and shrubland
Waipara gentian <i>(Gentianella calcei subsp. waipara)</i>	Threatened	Nationally critical	Limestone areas
Matagouri <i>Discaria toumatou</i>	At risk	Declining	Drylands



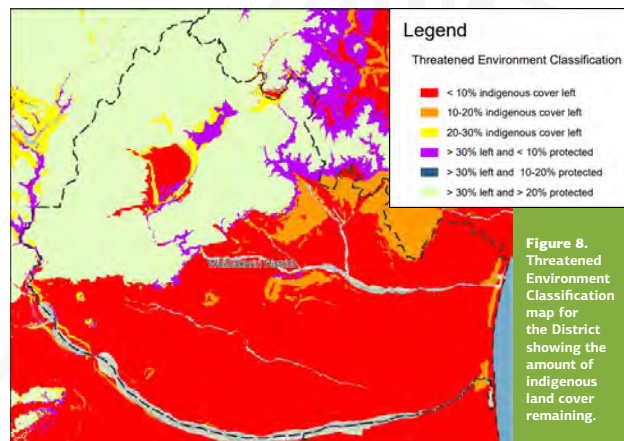
3. Pressures and Threats

Globally the world is experiencing a loss of biodiversity which is being named the sixth extinction (Ceballos *et al.*, 2010).

Species are being lost at a greater magnitude than seen previously and at "a rate thousands of times higher than the background rate". This loss is progressing quickly, significantly destructive and cumulative in the effect on ecosystems, their functioning and services impacting human health and society in many ways (Rodríguez-Rodríguez & Martínez-Vega, 2022; Atkins & Macpherson, 2022). To exacerbate the situation, in Aotearoa New Zealand there are the high levels of endemism which puts species at a higher risk of extinction, as discussed in the introduction. In 2019, a report written by the Ministry for the Environment and Stats NZ, identified nine main issues facing New Zealand's natural environment (MfE & StatsNZ, 2019). These can be summarised into five categories: direct habitat loss, habitat degradation, invasive species, climate change and societal pressures and change.

3.1 Direct Habitat Loss

Much of the District has less than 10% indigenous vegetation remaining (Figure 8). The loss of habitat and ecosystems and their ecological linkages have been executed through direct removal and/or destruction to enable activities such as urban



development, agricultural practices, mineral extraction (Ausseil *et al.*, 2011). In recent years, exotic plantation forest, often using invasive species (Bellingham *et al.*, 2023), has been the main driver for indigenous forest loss (Ewers *et al.*, 2006).

Direct habitat loss and fragmentation has been indicated as the primary threat to global biodiversity (Fraser *et al.*, 2015; Groom *et al.*, 2006; Weidong *et al.*, 2002). Although the primary effect of habitat loss is the reduced spatial area and fragmentation, there are independent and interdependent consequences such as patch area, edge effects, isolation, fragment shape and landscape matrix influences (Ewers & Didham, 2006; Didham *et al.*, 2012).

The species-area curve is a fundamental concept in ecology which notes that increased spatial area correlates to increased species richness (Lawton, 1999). Primarily the increase in species with increasing area is attributed to the environmental heterogeneity (the variance afforded in the ecosystem). This diversity leads to more niches, habitats and resources, increased shelter opportunities and an increase for speciation incidents (the evolution of species creating novel and distinct species) (Stein *et al.*, 2014). Therefore, should an area become reduced in size, the opposite of these effects will be true leading to fewer species. Biodiversity, the variety of biological components in an ecosystem (genes, species, functional traits), increases the ecosystem functioning and the capacity for ecosystem services. Therefore, habitat loss directly impacts biodiversity which affects the amount and quality of ecosystem services (Felipec-Lucia *et al.*, 2020).

The resulting isolation and fragmentation of the ecosystem has a bearing on genetic and evolutionary principals and how resilient it is partly due to the lack of flow of genes, species, interactions and ecosystem services through the wider landscape matrix (Fraser *et al.*, 2015). There is some evidence that fragmentation may lead to positive impacts such as introduced pollinators associated with cropping systems also providing that function within indigenous, fragmented remnants. However, the impacts of fragmentation are often slow and can result in extinctions (Forbes *et al.*, 2020) requiring mitigation and management of habitat loss and fragmentation to help to sustain ecosystems and their services (Mitchell *et al.*, 2015). Furthermore, Haddad *et al.* (2015) stated that the effects of fragmentation have not been fully acknowledged with detrimental and surprising effects continuing for decades. They warn that the ability to "sustain biodiversity and ecosystem services will hinge upon the total amount and quality of habitat left in fragments, their degree of connectivity, and how they are affected by other human-induced perturbations such as climate change and invasive species".

The concept of patch area is connected to the habitat loss responses of edge effects and fragment shape. The edge effect is the influence of one ecosystem on another at their boundaries. Smaller and irregular shaped patches have larger edge effects due to the increased area (Figure 9). These effects can be positive, negative or neutral (Fraser *et al.*, 2015). For example, in remnant areas of indigenous vegetation edge effects were detected over 50m into the vegetation patch altering the abiotic and biotic

structure, composition and function of the ecosystem (Dollery, 2017; Didham *et al.*, 2015). In these situations, this also led to a decrease in native species and an increase in exotic, often invasive, species.

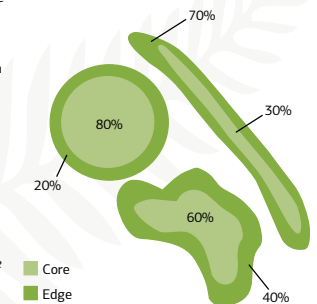


Figure 9. An example of the consequences of edge effects on the core ecosystem areas of different size and shape (taken from Taormina, 2019).

3.2 Habitat Degradation

Habitat degradation is defined as "the gradual deterioration of habitat quality" which can be difficult to identify due to the slow transformation of the ecosystem and the extended life cycles of some species (Fischer & Lindenmayer, 2007). This is particularly evident in the kākūka shrublands south

of the Waimakariri District. The kākū trees remain but cannot reproduce due to habitat degradation altering the soil chemistry and enabling competitive exotic species to outcompete seedlings (Dollery *et al.*, 2022; Meurk *et al.*, 1995). For these reasons, some have argued that degradation is more serious than habitat loss (Doak, 1995).

Degradation can occur from altered abiotic conditions such as soil chemistry and thermal regimes, or from biotic changes such as invasions from exotic species. A range of activities can be drivers for degradation such as agricultural and forestry practices (fertiliser use, grazing, logging), urban pressure (wastewater treatment, polluted runoff), horticultural processes (use of pesticides and herbicides), climate change and invasive pest and weed species. The main forms of degradation acknowledged for Aotearoa New Zealand were from farming activities and urban areas and particularly their effect on our waterways with nutrients, sediment and pathogens being reported (MfE & Stats NZ, 2019). However, these inputs can also alter our terrestrial systems, changing the chemistry and structure of ecosystems, markedly the soil ecosystem, leading to invasions of exotic species and habitats which are unsuitable for the indigenous species which once resided there (Dollery, 2017; Didham *et al.*, 2015).

Degraded habitats directly impact the use of natural environment for humans. Pollution in waterways can impact the quality for recreational activities such as swimming and fishing (Davies-Colley, 2013; Monaghan *et al.*, 2008; Morrison *et al.*, 2009). Furthermore, whilst certain human activities

such as agriculture and urban development can have an effect on the degradation of the natural environment, the reverse is also true. The continued degradation of the soil ecosystem has an impact on multiple ecosystem services utilised by the production sector which require increased inputs to mitigate (Hu *et al.*, 2023). For example, degradation due to soil compaction and associated impacts on soil structure such as loss of aggregation has been estimated to cost NZ\$75–611m annually for dairy farms in Aotearoa New Zealand (Foote *et al.*, 2015).

3.3 Invasive Species

There has been much debate, discussion and research into the effects of invasive species in recent years in Aotearoa New Zealand and globally, mammals have been noted as one of the driving changes in habitat degradation, modification and species extinctions (Mack *et al.*, 2000; Parkes, 2017). In Aotearoa New Zealand, the only mammals known pre-human settlement were bats. There are now 31 species with 23 of those being listed as invasive and responsible for the loss of 40% of bird species (Cowan and Tyndale-Biscoe, 1997; Duncan and Blackburn, 2004). However, other species of invasive animals such as wasps (*Vespula* spp.) are also having a significant impact on native species and ecosystem functioning (Clout, 2001).

In addition to fauna, there are significant plant invasive species. Invasion of areas by pine trees has been shown to degrade the soil fungi community (Sapsford, 2022). Plant-fungi relationships are important for over 90% of plants

on earth (Brundrett, 2004). Therefore, a loss of soil fungal diversity drives the loss of above ground biodiversity (Hooper *et al.*, 2000). Exacerbating the issue is the persistence of exotic seed in soil banks and seed rain which aids reinvasion for exotic species that can further degrade natural areas (Overdyck & Clarkson, 2012).

In Canterbury, 52 species of plants and animals are listed within the Canterbury Pest Management Plan. Not all of these species are currently found within the District and work is being undertaken to contain the distribution. Presently, only 16 species are recorded on iNaturalist although this does not indicate other pest species are not present and remain undetected (Table 5, Figure 9). In addition to those species named as pests, there are also "Organisms of Interest" which are monitored for their future impact on biodiversity and could be controlled as pests should it be necessary. Examples are species such as hedgehogs (*Erinaceus europaeus*), Himalayan balsam (*Impatiens glandulifera*) and hawthorn (*Crataegus monogyna*). Mustelids and possums are controlled under the National Pest Management Strategy for Bovine Tuberculosis.

Both faunal and floral pests can have detrimental effects on the natural environment and the native ecosystems within Aotearoa New Zealand. Invasive species are listed as drivers for over 50% of extinct species but are the sole driver in 20% of cases (Duenas, 2021). The eradication or containment of pest species is complex as a reduction in one species may result in competitive release for another. This was seen in the beech forests around

Table 5. Pest species listed on the Canterbury Pest Management Plan and indicated to be found within the Waimakariri District on iNaturalist.

Common Name	Latin Name	Known Location
Banana Passionfruit	<i>Passiflora tripartita</i> , <i>P. pinnatistipula</i>	Rangiora, Oxford
Boneseed	<i>Chrysanthemoides monilifera</i>	Waikuku Beach
Broom	<i>Cytisus scoparius</i> , <i>Genista monspessulana</i> , <i>Cytisus multiflorus</i>	District-wide
Pine species and wilding conifers	<i>Pinus contorta</i> , <i>P. nigra</i> , <i>P. uncinata</i> , <i>P. mugi</i> , <i>P. Sylvestris</i>	Hill country
Darwin's barberry	<i>Berberis darwinii</i>	Kaiapoi
Feral rabbit	<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>	District-wide
Gorse	<i>Ulex europaeus</i>	District-wide
Curly waterweed	<i>Lagarosiphon major</i>	Lowland streams
European larch	<i>Larix decidua</i>	Hill country
Old Man's Beard	<i>Clematis vitalba</i>	District-wide
Possum	<i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>	District-wide
Purple loosestrife	<i>Lythrum salicaria</i>	Rangiora
Common cordgrass	<i>Sporobolus anglicus</i>	Kaiapoi
Common thyme	<i>Thymus vulgaris</i>	Oxford
Wild Russell Lupin	<i>Lupinus polyphyllus</i>	Hill country and Waimakariri Riverbank
Woolly nightshade	<i>Solanum mauritanium</i>	Waimakariri Riverbank

Examples of pest species within the Waimakariri District including gorse (left), old man's beard (centre) and curly waterweed (right).



Nelson where stoat trapping saw an increase in the rat population (Whittau *et al.*, 2023).

Invasive species also have the means to degrade ecosystems by being vectors for disease and changing the ecosystem functioning with effects on conditions such as trophic levels, energy input, substrate chemistry, available light (Dollery *et al.*, 2022; Garvey *et al.*, 2022; Krull *et al.*, 2015; Standish *et al.*, 2001).

In addition to the impact on biodiversity and ecosystem services, invasive species can also harm the agricultural and horticultural sectors. For example, rodents and possums directly eating or destroying crops and the spread of bovine tuberculosis from possums and mustelids (Livingstone *et al.*, 2015; Russell *et al.*, 2015). In fact, Nimmo-Bell (2021) estimated that pest species caused NZ\$2.4b worth of damage in 2020. Whilst impacts to the productive natural environment can reduce the GDP for the country, there are also fears that the invasions could harm the image of the country as "clean and green" leading to reduced tourism and marketing opportunities (Owens, 2017).

3.4 Climate Change

The predicted impact of climate change upon the natural environment and biodiversity is complicated with the magnitude currently uncertain. The National Institute of Water & Atmospheric Research (NIWA) modelled climate using the data from International Panel on Climate Change data stated in their fifth and sixth reports to explore projections for 2090 (Broadbent *et al.*, 2022;

Macara *et al.*, 2020; IPCC, 2014). The projections were based on various scenarios referred to as representative concentration pathways (RCPs):

- RCP8.5 – business as usual with increasing CO₂, CH₄ and N₂O emissions leading to a mean temperature increase of 2°C in 2050 and 3.7°C by 2100;
- RCP6.0 – stabilisation with slightly increasing CO₂, CH₄ and N₂O emissions leading to a mean temperature increase of 1.3°C in 2050 and 2.2°C by 2100;
- RCP4.5 – stabilisation with no increasing CO₂, CH₄ and N₂O emissions leading to a mean temperature increase of 1.4°C in 2050 and 1.8°C by 2100;
- RCP2.6 – mitigation with reductions in CO₂, CH₄ and N₂O emissions leading to a mean temperature increase of 1°C in 2050 and 1°C by 2100.

Although uncertain, it is thought that by 2100 Canterbury will see a rise in sea level change of approximately 0.8m and a rise in temperature of between 1.5-3.5°C. There will be increased wildfires, droughts and extreme weather events. Rainfall patterns will change, and wind intensity will change with more hot days and a decrease in frost days and snow days. The impacts are thought to be two-fold; direct impacts such as the damage caused by heat stress, and indirect which are those that impact changes in the environment and cause harm such as landslides.

These climate changes will inevitably influence the natural environment, human communities and biodiversity leading to habitat loss and degradation but also alterations in disease patterns and pest

interactions (Alley and Gantrell, 2019). Effects are stated to be already occurring with heat waves, droughts and increased rainfall affecting different parts of the country (Corlett, 2021; Harrington & Frame, 2022). In 2023, the West Coast experienced an exceptionally warm marine environment which could lead to lower productivity in the oceans and warm land surfaces (Morton, 2023). Also in 2023, sporadic rainfall events and storms wreaked havoc across the North Island causing loss of lives, property and infrastructure and isolating communities, leaving them with limited food, energy and communication resources (McLure, 2023). These events prompted the Aotearoa New Zealand Minister for Climate Change to express anger and sadness at the lost decades of action working to slow climate change (McLure & Graham-McLay, 2023).

Elevated temperatures may negatively affect the growth of organisms. Increased nutrients due to altered flows and elevated temperatures in the freshwater environment could lead to algal blooms in lakes and rivers impacting biodiversity, human health, and recreation values of the natural environment (Keegan *et al.*, 2021). The impacts for the coastal environments include ocean acidification which will have significant changes with regard to food web structures and productivity and sea level rise and flooding degrading the coastal environments (Willis *et al.*, 2007).

In urban areas, there may be a negative impact on the growth of plants, particularly trees, exacerbating the heating of urban areas due to the 'urban heat island effect', (the phenomenon whereby urban areas are warmer than surrounding areas due to the

lack of natural vegetation, heat absorbing materials and associated human activities) (Esperon-Rodriguez *et al.*, 2022; Fryd *et al.*, 2012; Hunt & Waykiss, 2011; McCarthy *et al.*, 2010; Ministry for the Environment, 2022). The increased temperatures in urban areas could impact significantly on the health of communities (Heaviside *et al.*, 2017; Shahmohamadi, *et al.*, 2011; Ministry for the Environment, 2022).

3.5 Societal Pressures and Changes

The global human population is increasing and estimated to reach 9 billion by 2050, placing increasing demands on the natural environment for space and resources (Foresight, 2011). However, the demographics, perceptions and values of the increased population is unknown. In 2005, the fact that people were spending less time outdoors which was changing their worldview and causing many physical and mental health issues was highlighted and termed, 'nature deficit disorder' (Louv, 2005). In addition to the health effects, there is some evidence that nature deficit disorder may lead to a diminished understanding of the natural world (Ecological intelligence) and a decline in stewardship (Divya & Naachimuthu, 2020; Whitburn *et al.*, 2020). An often quoted and similar concept in Aotearoa New Zealand is the 'extinction of experience' whereby nature and particularly indigenous biodiversity is superseded by exotic species and the built environment which become the norm (Meur *et al.*, 2016).

In addition, Craig *et al.*, (2000) contend that the perception of Aotearoa New Zealand's public conservation land as 'free to enter' infers that it has no economic value. If nature in protected areas

has no value, it can be implied that there is little value to nature in the remaining 70% of land which is not protected. Therefore, due to this devaluation, it seems logical to replace indigenous species with exotic and financially rewarding species potentially at the detriment to the natural environment.

Despite these viewpoints, worldwide there are millions of people who support environmental conservation groups such as the Worldwide Fund for Nature or local groups such as the Royal Society for the Protection of Birds (UK) and Forest and Bird (NZ) (Rands *et al.*, 2010). In Aotearoa New Zealand, there are over 600 community groups involved in ecological restoration and a number of these are represented in the District such as the Ashley-Rakahuri Rivercare Group, the Silverstream Volunteers and the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust (Hulme, 2020). The perception of the natural environment by the public can have both positive and negative implications for conservation and local support is important to sustain conservation projects, therefore the monitoring of perceptions is pertinent (Bennett, 2019; Niemiec, 2022).

Support for conservation of the natural environment has been found to be linked to the perceptions of 'good governance' and 'social impacts' (Bennett, 2019) and fluctuations in the economic climate can have a bearing on the how the natural environment is perceived, prioritised and managed. Sandbrook *et al.*, (2022) contend that the type of recovery chosen by governments following the Covid-19 pandemic will have dramatic influence on the trajectory of biodiversity and the natural environment.

Societal pressures can also lead to changes in regulation and policy, impacting support and funding either negatively or positively. Currently, much of the protection around the natural environment involves rules and penalties that require intensive enforcement which can be lacking due to resource limitation. However, another suggested method is to positively incentivise diligent landowners for their sustainable use of land (Norton *et al.*, 2020). Furthermore, there is a long overdue acknowledgement of indigenous and local knowledge

and in Aotearoa New Zealand mātauranga Māori is gaining increased recognition for its importance, particularly for matters concerning the natural environment (Harmsworth, 2020).

Considering all of these points, there are calls for a multidisciplinary approach to conservation and the natural environment acknowledging the 'complex intertwinement between the sanitary, social, economic, political, ecological and ideological dimensions of the current crisis' (Prieur, 2020).



4. Underpinning Environmental and Biodiversity Concepts

Considering all the threats to the natural environment and biodiversity conservation, an integrated approach across landscapes, disciplines, policy and interested organisations and communities is required (Maseyk *et al.*, 2019).

To achieve this, there are several concepts and working examples that have been influential in the creation of the Natural Environment Strategy and these are outlined below.

4.1 Indigenous and Local knowledge

The content of Section 4.1 is derived from writings from Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga found within the Mahaanui Iwi Management Plan, documents produced by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and related academic texts. The Council welcomes ongoing input from Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga

regarding the further development of the Natural Environment Strategy documents.

Internationally, indigenous and local knowledge and worldviews are crucial for environmental conservation offering diverse perspectives grounded in theories of interconnectedness between people and the environment (Nemogá *et al.*, 2022; Timoti *et al.*, 2017).

In Aotearoa New Zealand, indigenous Māori have an "intricate, holistic and interconnected relationship with the natural world and its

resources, with a rich knowledge base – mātauranga Māori – developed over thousands of years and dating back to life in Polynesia and trans-Pacific migrations" (Harmsworth & Awatere, 2013). Māori culture is based on connection to



Our natural environment – whenua, waters, coasts, oceans flora and fauna – and how we engage with it, is crucial to our identity, our sense of unique culture and our ongoing ability to keep our tikanga and mahinga kai practices alive. It includes our commemoration of the places our tūpuna moved through in Te Waipounamu, and the particular mahinga kai resources and practices we used to maintain our ahi kā anchoring our whakapapa to the landscape. Wherever we are in the world, these things give us our tūrangawaewae. They form our home and give us a place to return and mihi to and provide us with what we need to be sustained as Ngāi Tahu" (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

the land and a belief that humans are part of nature and what affects part, affects the whole (Te Ahukaramū Charles Royal, 2005). As such, te

reo Māori encompasses a number of words and underpinning knowledge regarding environmental concepts (Box 1).

The concepts and practices of indigenous peoples with regard to environmental management have been described as synergistic with adaptive

Box 1. Te Reo Māori language and concepts for the natural world.

The Mahaanui Iwi Management Plan defined some of the language and concepts central to the natural world for the local rūnanga (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013). These include:

- **Whakapapa** – Whakapapa (genealogy) is the central pillar of Ngāi Tahu's framework for managing resources, setting out and effectively explaining the relationships between the various elements of the world around us, including human beings.
- **Kaitiakitanga** – fundamental to the relationship of Ngāi Tahu and the environment. The responsibility of kaitiakitanga is twofold: first, there is the ultimate aim of protecting mauri and, second, there is the duty to pass the environment to future generations in a state which is as good as, or better than, the current state. To Ngāi Tahu, kaitiakitanga is not a passive custodianship, nor is it simply the exercise of traditional property rights, but entails an active exercise of responsibility in a manner beneficial to the resource.
- **Mana whenua** – the right to exercise authority over a particular area, its resources and its people. Manawhenua is passed on by way of whakapapa and is protected and secured through the on-going exercise of one's rights to resources in a manner consistent with tikanga. Inevitably, with mana comes responsibility. Ki uta ki tai – from the mountains to the sea, the whole landscape.
- **Manaakitanga** – the custom of being aware of and caring for the needs of your guests. In turn, the mana of the tāngata whenua is both upheld and enhanced. The loss of the ability of tāngata whenua to provide for guests in this way can also be seen as a loss of mana.
- **Wāhi tapu** – places of particular significance that have been imbued with an element of sacredness or restriction (tapu) following a certain event or circumstance. Wāhi tapu sites are treated according to tikanga and kawa that seek to ensure that the tapu nature of those sites is respected. Of all wāhi tapu, urupā are considered to be the most significant.
- **Wāhi taonga** – "places treasured" due to their high intrinsic values and critical role they have in maintaining a balanced and robust ecosystem (e.g. spawning grounds for fish, nesting areas for birds and freshwater springs). They are prized because of their capacity to shape and sustain the quality of life experience and provide for the needs of present and future generations, and as places that connect and bind current generations to their ancestral land and practices.
- **Mauri** – Mauri is often described as the 'life force' or 'life principle' of any given place or being. It can also be understood as a measure or an expression of the health and vitality of that place or being. The notion embodies the Ngāi Tahu understanding that there are both physical and metaphysical elements to life, and that both are essential to overall well-being. It also associates the human condition with the state of the world around it. Mauri, therefore, is central to kaitiakitanga; that is, the processes and practices of active protection and responsibility by Manawhenua for the natural and physical resources of the takiwā.
- **Mahinga Kai** – The Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 describes mahinga kai as "the customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered." Mahinga kai are central to Ngāi Tahu's culture, identity and relationship with landscapes and waterways of Te Waipounamu.
- **Ki Uta Ki Tai** – reflects the holistic nature of traditional resource management, particularly the interdependent nature and function of the various elements of the environment within a catchment.



management due to the systematic learnings encountered through feedbacks (Berkes *et al.*, 2000). However, historically, Māori concepts and input have been devoid in policy and planning instruments (Erueti *et al.*, 2023).

Fortunately, Māori concepts and ideologies have gained increased recognition in recent years with greater inclusion in governance (Joseph & Benton, 2021). McAllister *et al.*, (2023) listed some of the recent inclusions of Māori-led or collaborative work to improve environmental conservation outcomes, stating that “the Treaty settlement era has seen a resurgence and reconnection between the environment and people, which has resulted in cultural concepts, including kaitiakitanga, being incorporated in policy ... and research”. For example, tikanga (Māori beliefs, values and concepts) was integrated into the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) and the concepts of Te Mana o te Wai and Te Mana o te Taiao were integrated into national policy, although when the presence of these was reviewed in the RMA it was suggested the concept be strengthened in legislation (Randerson *et al.*, 2020). The need to design legislation and policy from the perspective of mana whenua and begin engagement at the initiation of decision making was also highlighted.

The Natural Environment Strategy is heavily influenced by the legislation and policies which are emerging from central government. The National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity, the Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy and its Implementation Plan all state that co-leadership and decision making, as far

as is accepted by mana whenua, is required (Department of Conservation, 2020; MfE, 2022; Resource Management Act, 1991). Alongside the positive move to fully embrace indigenous culture, is a call to also integrate local knowledge by creating and maintaining relationships with people who have had a long-standing relationships with the natural environment, such as farmers, naturalists and community residents (Saunders *et al.*, 2021). To enable a resilient natural environment, all sectors of the community have a part to play and those driving initiatives need to be flexible and integrate worldviews, knowledge and different approaches.

Aside from the vast knowledge, governance and stewardship indigenous and local knowledge can convey to environmental conservation, it also provides opportunities to redress some of the inequities and increase the overall wellbeing of communities in Aotearoa New Zealand. By reintroducing the suppressed elements of indigenous and local knowledge, traditions and culture into Aotearoa New Zealand society, communities can regain an attachment to identity and improve mental and physical wellbeing (Million, 2013; Wells *et al.*, 2006)

4.2 More, Bigger, Better, Joined

As discussed previously, biodiversity is a main driver in the maintenance of ecosystem functioning and processes, including the ecosystem services attained by humans (section 1.3). To protect these services, biodiversity is a key component to be protected, managed and enhanced.

In 2010, to understand and stymie the loss of biodiversity, promote ecosystem processes and functioning and create a healthy environment for all, the UK government instructed an independent review written by an esteemed group of experts headed by Sir John Lawton. The report titled “Making space for nature” was significant for UK nature conservation and highlighted the need for natural areas with biodiverse complexity

to be “more, bigger, better, joined” (Lawton *et al.*, 2010, Figure 10). The review continues to influence policy nearly 25 years on due to the evidence-based quality of the research (Lawton *et al.*, 2020). At the core was the theory of metapopulation dynamics, the concept evaluating species movements, ecology and persistence through space and time, particularly in fragmented landscapes (Hanski, 1998). Qualifying the theory, Gonzalez *et al.*, (1998) carried out experiments and found that fewer, smaller, isolated patches of habitat lead to a reduction, and sometimes extinction, of species.

At a similar time, Aotearoa New Zealand scientists were also concluding that ecological corridors for birds from mountains to the sea were important (Meurk & Hall, 2006). This research was the basis for the Te Ara Kakariki organisation in the Selwyn District which today offers advice, assistance, and funding to landowners in order to create “greendots”, corridors of native plantings which indigenous species can use to navigate the landscape (Te Ara Kakariki, 2023). Below is a description of the ecological and scientific reasoning underpinning “more, bigger, better, joined” in a local context.

4.2.1 More

Aotearoa New Zealand has lost vast amounts of indigenous vegetation since the arrival of humans through degradation or removal and the Waimakariri District now has less than 10% cover in the majority of the land area (Ewers *et al.*, 2006). However, research has shown that there is

a threshold of 10% vegetation cover, under which there is a rapid decline in species diversity and increased fragmentation (Clarkson *et al.*, 2018). This figure is extrapolated from global research ranging from a persistence threshold of 10-20% and species-specific research which identifies that some species, such as some birds and migratory species, may persist in environments with greater inter-patch distance provided they are not isolated, whilst other species, such as certain insect species, require remnants to be located in close proximity (Boscolo & Paul Metzger, 2011; Tischendorf *et al.*, 2005). Having more habitat patches allows for the inter-patch distance to be reduced.

Aside from supporting biodiverse ecosystems, more habitat patches within an area can substantially increase the dispersal of a range of species and enhance the regenerative capacity of the natural environment. Essentially, more habitat patches, reduces the effects of fragmentation, particularly for migratory species (Bender *et al.*, 1998). For flora, this can lead to the dispersal of propagules transported from one habitat patch to another resulting in the regeneration of plant species in the surrounding area (Meurk & Hall, 2006). This has been observed in the surrounds of Riccarton Bush, Christchurch, whereby seeds of plants such as Kahikatea (*Dacrydium dacrydioides*) have been dispersed into neighbouring properties (Doody *et al.*, 2010). Therefore, the process of restoration becomes passive whereby functioning ecosystems begin to restore and regenerate the landscape through natural mechanisms. This style of restoration can

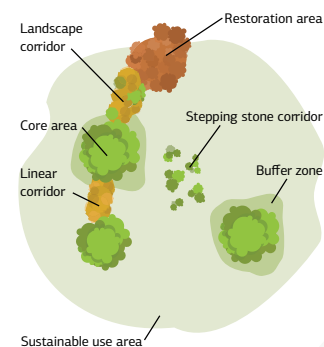


Figure 10. Diagrammatic representation of the “More, Bigger, Better, Joined” theory (adapted from Lawton *et al.*, 2012).

also lead to better plant performance. It has been shown that where plants are grown from seed in situ they tend to have higher survival rates (Dollery, 2017).

In Aotearoa New Zealand, there are substantial opportunities for urban areas to contribute to the protection and restoration of habitat patches (Clarkson 2018). Plants in gardens and urban areas can provide food for humans and fauna, particularly for frugivorous and seed eating bird species which can disperse the seed into the wider habitat (Meurk & Hall, 2006). This can be beneficial for increasing pollinator abundance and addressing food scarcity issues. However, the plant species in question is important as it may also promote weed issues, such as the spread of cherry trees in recent times (Meurk et al., 2019; Williams et al., 2008).

Climate Change

Although the "more" theory is focused on biodiversity, providing more habitat patches also assists with the urban heat island effect and cooling of the District in times of elevated temperatures, particularly those associated with climate change. A study from China found that increased greenspaces in urban areas was the key determinant lowering land surface temperatures. However, the density of these patches and the edge effects also had an influence and could combine to be an effective mechanism to reducing the urban heat island effect (Maimaitiyming et al., 2014).

It is known that the urban heat island effect can be mitigated by tree cover (Chaston et al., 2022).

Christchurch City Council has adopted this theory in the "Urban Forest Plan", ensuring the city has at least 20% forest cover to help mitigate climate change effects (Christchurch City Council, 2003). However, there is also benefit in having green areas which comprise non-trees (vegetation under 3.5m). Urban areas are filled with low albedo materials (dark in colour and subject to increased heat absorption and retention) whereas green spaces are high albedo capacity and allow for cooling (Alexandri & Jones 2006). This includes green spaces, green roofs and green walls which do not often contain trees but have great benefit for reducing heat in urban areas, potentially providing biodiverse habitats and progressing sustainable building practices (Cristiano et al., 2021; Razzaghamanesh, et al., 2016; Salata et al., 2015; Williams et al., 2014).

Productive Landscapes

It is apparent that by having more biodiverse habitat patches, the ecosystem services of an area will be increased. These services affect human health on a broad scale but can also increase the benefits and value of productive landscapes. Introducing more biodiverse areas into productive land can increase pollination services, predation for pests, soil physical and chemical health, water and air pollution mitigation and human health (Tschamtko et al., 2015). An example of harnessing the ecosystem services to increase productivity is the "Greening Waipara" project. The project encouraged a range of plants in between the rows of vineyard grapes to promote functional agricultural biodiversity

harbouring predators for pest species rather than using expensive pesticides Barnes et al., 2008).

4.2.2 Bigger

As discussed in section 3.1, patch size and edge-effect are important for the conservation of certain species, the functioning of ecosystems and the maintenance of ecosystem services/Nature's Contributions to People. Essentially, the bigger the patch, the more heterogeneity in habitat and niche availability for a biodiverse species composition leading to increased functioning of processes (Hill & Curran, 2003; Lawrence, 2005; Lawton et al., 2010). Smaller patches of habitat are less resilient to changes such as natural disturbance and climate change and therefore extinctions and loss of ecosystem services are expected. Larger patch sizes can integrate sufficient buffers to protect the inner core habitats (Norton et al., 2018).

Most greenspaces owned by the Waimakariri District Council are small. An overview of these greenspace areas can be found in the Natural Environment Strategy: Reserves State of Environment Report. It highlights that most of the largest greenspaces in the District are recreation/sports fields which have limited ecological integrity and are highly managed limiting the amount of ecosystem services/Nature's Contributions to People derived from them. In the whole District there are only 16 natural areas amounting to a land coverage of 215.5ha with 51ha of that land represented by the Silverstream Reserve in Clarkville and 85ha represented by a land purchase in 2023 which is as yet

undeveloped. The rest are small, ranging from 0.03ha to 20.3ha, and in many of these reserves there are large areas maintained as mown, exotic grass cover such as those found in Matawī Park, Kaiapoi Lakes and Hegan Reserve.

Lawns involve substantial inputs of time and resources to maintain and present limited benefits to the natural environment aside from providing a manicured space for recreation, helping to mitigate the urban heat island effect and water management through increasing the infiltration of an area (Ignatieva et al., 2020; Watson et al., 2020). This latter effect can be marginal in some areas since many lawn areas comprise degraded soils due to compaction and loss of soil structure (Sills & Carrow, 1983). The reduced physical size and occurrence may also be influencing the loss of nature experiences for communities and decreasing the respect for biodiversity (Lin et al., 2018).

It is important to have a range of habitat sizes which are connected. Increasing the size will increase connections between habitats making them more resilient, supporting the ecological integrity that is required to gain ecosystem services/Nature's Contributions to People from them and maintaining visibility and connection to the natural world (Lawton et al., 2010).

4.2.3 Better

Lawton et al., (2010) stated that the quality of habitat patches could be improved through better management practices and the protection afforded to them. Protection afforded to ecosystems through various methods is "critical



to conserving and sustaining native biodiversity" (Norton et al., 2018). It is especially vital that remnant areas of indigenous habitat are identified to enable protection mechanisms and seek compensation should the protection not be carried out. An example of protection failing to safeguard environments within the Waimakariri District was the case of a kānuka stand which was protected as a QEII covenant and a Significant Natural Area in the local District Plan, being removed by the landowner to further the agricultural productivity of the area (Young, 2014).

However, some researchers have pointed to the fact that the protectionist view of nature conservation could be harming the natural environment. Craig et al., (2000) remark that the natural environment within protected areas in Aotearoa New Zealand are seen to be free resources with little economic value which consequently leads to the idea that land outside of protection has no value. The knock-on effect is a

reduced value for land outside of protected areas which is then replaced with economically viable, and mainly exotic, species. This is also reflected in the laws of Aotearoa New Zealand with the RMA being an "effects based" piece of legislation and rather reactionary towards effects of activities rather than taking a holistic and sustainable approach to environmental resources (Craig, 2004).

Therefore, whilst protection against harm for the natural environment is important, it does not safeguard or secure the sustainability or quality of ecosystems and should be viewed as the beginning of the conservation effort (Norton, 1988). In Aotearoa New Zealand, it has been highlighted that approximately 70% of the land and most of the sea is managed unsustainably with the remaining 30% of land held as reserves primarily protected for conservation purposes but which still experiences major threats (Craig et al., 2000). The effects of habitat deterioration due to adjacent

landuse, pests species invasions, climatic changes and fragmentation must be managed to enable the sustainability of the natural environment.

Supporting innovative use and management approaches can support the health and resilience of the natural environment. Examples include the urban wild approach (see section 4.4 of this report), forest technological innovations, landscape analysis using Geographical Information Systems, the "smarter targeting of erosion control" research and regenerative agriculture (Manaaki Whenua - Landcare Research, 2023a; Picuno *et al.*, 2015; Raihan & Tuspekova, 2023).

The regenerative agriculture approach was described by Rodale (1983) as "one that, at increasing levels of productivity, increases our land and soil biological production base. It has a high level of built-in economic and biological stability. It has minimal to no impact on the environment beyond the farm or field boundaries". It can include techniques such as no-tillage, cover crops and green manures to ensure organic matter within soils is maintained, reduction in pesticide and herbicide use and enhancement of the microbiology of the soil which has been shown to have a positive relationship to the nutrients in food stuff grown (Bergess *et al.*, 2019; McGuire, 2018; Merfield, 2019). These practices produce a positive feedback loop by helping to mitigate climate change (due to continually covered soil surfaces, sequestration of carbon into soils) and increase biodiversity which in turn provide further ecosystem services which promote the health and productivity of the land (Bargaz *et al.*, 2018).

The Halo Effect

An ecosystem which is functioning and comprises a diverse suite of species, habitats and resources, can extend its influence into areas outside of the prescribed boundaries, known as the "halo effect" (Brudvig *et al.*, 2009, Figure 11). This has been observed in the Waikato where control of predators allowed for the spillover of tui (*Prothemadera novaeseelandiae*) from within the Maungatautari Ecosanctuary to over 20km outside. This phenomenon has also been detected from the Zealandia Ecosanctuary in Wellington with previously rare birds entering the city, such as kākā (*Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis*), tieke (saddleback - *Philesturnus rufusater*) and toutouwai (North Island robin - *Petroica longipes*) (Miskelly, 2018). In Christchurch, similar

mechanisms have been occurring with plants being dispersed outside the fenced boundaries of the Riccarton Bush and found in neighbouring gardens and parks (Doody *et al.*, 2010).

4.2.4 Joined

The Lawton report outlined the necessity of ecological connectivity through landscapes to sustain species survival and ecosystem sustainability. The basis for linked habitats is found in theories of island biogeography and metapopulations (MacArthur and Wilson, 1968; Diamond & May, 1976; Hanski, 1998) that together define the dynamic relationships between species arrivals, extinctions and isolation. In recent years, this theory of ecological connectivity has become a fundamental concept in landscape design (Hilty,

Lidicker Jr., & Merenlender, 2006). Corridors provide for the movement of organisms, gametes, nutrients and energy in addition to offering habitat, a means for dispersal, home range movement and long-distance range shifts, particularly in response to climate change (Fischer *et al.*, 2009; Hilty *et al.*, 2019). Corridors can be continuous, such as riparian corridors and shelterbelts, or discontinuous such as stepping stones and migratory stopovers.

Research suggests that connectivity and the arrangement of ecological restoration sites be developed at a regional scale with links to urban centres and other depleted environments (Clarkson *et al.*, 2018). Ecological networks allowing species to move through developed landscapes (for example, urban or agricultural) allow for greater species persistence in the wider environment (Noss & Cooperrider, 1994). Noss & Cooperrider (1994) developed six rules for the maintenance of biodiversity which encompass the "More, Bigger, Better, Joined" theory. These are:

1. Large reserves are better than small reserves.
2. A single large reserve is better than a group of small ones of equivalent total area.
3. Reserves close together are better than reserves far apart.
4. Round reserves are better than long, thin ones.
5. Reserves clustered compactly are better than reserves in a line.
6. Reserves connected by corridors are better than unconnected reserves.

The second rule was controversial, and much debate led to the agreement that both size and duplication of sites were important. The inclusion of the final rule regarding corridors was also questioned. Corridors may provide habitat linkages for pests and disease which could harm biodiversity in certain areas and continuous corridors may be costly when resources could be directed towards increasing the size of remnant vegetation stands (Radford *et al.*, 2004). Morse (2022) noted that corridors could be more beneficial for some species than others. There have now been numerous studies indicating the advantages of linking habitats with a shift in focus from corridors to connectivity (Beier & Noss, 1998; Soulé & Terborgh, 1999).

Connectivity can increase the halo effects of biodiverse areas when the species found within ecosanctuaries have sufficient habitat and resources outside of the protected boundaries to disperse into surrounding areas (Brudvig *et al.*, 2009). This has been observed in Christchurch where increasing connectivity and inter-patch distance improved the ranges of kereru and paradise shelduck (Nguyen *et al.*, 2021). This theory and research are the basis behind the organisation, Te Ara Kakariki, plantings of "green dots". The organisation helps facilitate restoration patches of linked habitat to enable movement of species across the Selwyn District and enhance the wildlife populations, particularly of those species which disperse seeds (Te Ara Kakariki, 2023). The reverse of this effect can also be true as the resources outside of the biodiverse areas

supplement provisions for species found within (MacLeod *et al.*, 2012).

4.3 Nature Based Solutions

As a society, we face many changes in the coming years. Issues of water and food security, human health, disaster risk and climate change all pose significant threats for human populations and the natural world (Cohen-Shacham *et al.*, 2016, Figure 12). Nature-based solutions represent the ways that we can work with the natural world to enhance their working and produce nature-



Figure 12. Diagrammatic illustration of nature-based solutions (taken from Cohen-Shacham *et al.*, 2016).

Figure 11. Diagrammatic example of the halo effect (adapted from AMSI, 2023).

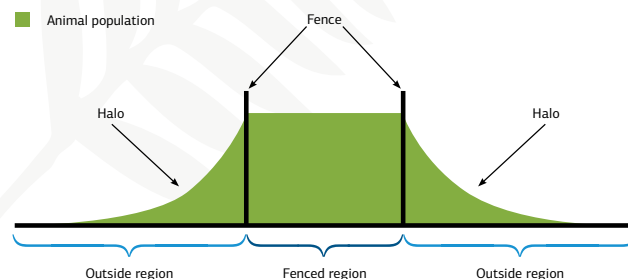


Table 6. Examples of nature-based solutions in New Zealand.

NbS Approach	Case-study	Reference
Ecosystem restoration	Restoration of forests and natural ecosystems to enhance carbon sequestration and mitigate climate change.	Ausseil <i>et al.</i> , 2013
Issue specific ecosystem related approaches	Addressing sea-level rise using managed retreat and restoration of salt marsh.	Orchard & Scheil, 2021
Infrastructure related approaches	Benefit of vegetation, including food forests and pocket parks, (green infrastructure) in urban areas to reduce the heat island effect and assist food scarcity issues.	Tapper <i>et al.</i> , 1981
Ecosystem-based management approaches	Integrating green areas in cities, in combination with grey water systems, to assist with pluvial flooding events.	Huang <i>et al.</i> , 2020
Ecosystem protection	Protection and restoration of coastal seagrass communities to mitigate coastal erosion and inundation.	Kiddle <i>et al.</i> , 2021; Ondiviela <i>et al.</i> , 2014

Box 2. What are Nature-based Solutions?

The European Commission (2015) describes nature-based solutions as "actions which are inspired by, supported by or copied from nature". The IUCN report notes that nature-based solutions are a range of different approaches which focus on the enhancement of ecosystem services to initiate meaningful solutions to the myriad of issues facing society at present (Cohen Shacham *et al.*, 2016). The report states that nature-based solutions:

- "embrace nature conservation norms (and principles);
- can be implemented alone or in an integrated manner with other solutions to societal challenges (e.g. technological and engineering solutions);
- are determined by site-specific natural and cultural contexts that include traditional, local and scientific knowledge;
- produce societal benefits in a fair and equitable way, in a manner that promotes transparency and broad participation;
- maintain biological and cultural diversity and the ability of ecosystems to evolve over time;
- are applied at the landscape scale;
- recognise and address the trade-offs between the production of a few immediate economic benefits for development, and future options for the production of the full range of ecosystems services; and
- are an integral part of the overall design of policies, and measures or actions, to address a specific challenge."

Franzeskaki (2019) analysed a number of nature-based solutions around the world and found that for them to be effective they required:

1. Attractiveness to initiate engagement and investment by citizens;
2. Creation of useful urban spaces;
3. A number of active stakeholders and fora;
4. Experiments which are based on trust between the experimenters and the citizens;
5. A collaborative governance;
6. Inclusive narrative; and
7. Measurement and monitoring which yield useful, effective and replicable results.

based solutions to the issues we face (Seddon *et al.*, 2019, Box 2). Cohen-Shacham *et al.*, (2016) divided nature-based solutions into the following five categories that can be implemented alone or as an integrated system:

- ecosystem restoration;
- issue specific ecosystem related approaches such as ecosystem-based disaster risk reduction;
- infrastructure related approaches such as the use of green infrastructure;
- ecosystem-based management approaches such as the integrated water management strategies; and
- ecosystem protection approaches (Table 6).

Example of an urban area in Christchurch landscaped with native plants and stones for pollinators.



The theory of nature-based solutions has been used as an umbrella term which is gaining momentum and being used in various ways with different terms. These include "ecosystem-based adaptation such as restoration efforts; ecosystem-based management, urban green and blue infrastructure, ecological restoration, ecological engineering, forest landscape restoration, ecosystem-based mitigation, ecosystem-based disaster risk reduction, natural capital and potentially biomimicry and biophilic design" (Kiddle *et al.*, 2021). As noted, there are unifying aspects which involve the appreciation, understanding and acknowledgement that the natural world has an ability to mitigate changes within society.

4.4 The Need for Urban Wild

4.4.1 Creation of Living Cities

Facilitating more, bigger, better and joined natural environments does not only extend to the rural or uncultivated areas of the District. Whilst urban centres account for only 1% of land cover currently in Aotearoa New Zealand, it is estimated that over 80% of population growth in the future years will occur in the urban fringe, extending into surrounding landscapes (Stats NZ Tatauranga Aotearoa, 2021a). Globally, cities consume 75% of natural resources and the population shift to urban areas in Aotearoa New Zealand signifies an increase in ecosystem service requirements to ensure our human communities remain healthy (Muller *et al.*, 2010).

Muller *et al.*, (2010) described urban biodiversity as "the variety and richness of living organisms ... and habitat diversity found in and on the edge of

human settlements". It has been stated that urban areas in Aotearoa New Zealand are relatively greener than elsewhere in the world with access to larger parks and greenspaces (Meurk, Blaschke & Simcock, 2013). However, the urban landuse offers an altered set of environmental conditions including light levels, climate, soil conditions, pollution incidence; altered ecological conditions with fragmented habitats and different indigenous species; and are more dynamic with different disturbance regimes and pressures from multiple uses (Sullivan *et al.*, 2009; Wallace & Clarkson, 2019). These conditions create novel ecosystems and have been shown to be a significant threat to indigenous biodiversity, adversely affect water and air quality and contribute to climate change (Chakravarthy *et al.*, 2019; Grimm *et al.*, 2008; Pedersen Zari *et al.*, 2021). For these reasons, urban ecological restoration projects have been steadily increasing internationally (Clarkson & Kirby, 2016).

The urban environment is dominated by the preference for exotic species and an abundance of lawns in tidy, manicured parcels within streetscapes and urban parks (Stewart *et al.*, 2009; Stewart *et al.*, 2010). This is deemed detrimental to biodiversity in a number of ways such as not providing sufficient habitat and resources for species residing in the cities, not providing connectivity through the developed areas to wild habitats outside the urban boundaries and by diminishing the visibility of indigenous biodiversity by using exotic species in landscaping and city artwork.

Innovative projects to enhance the natural environment through sensitive landscaping are emerging. The appearance of native, low-growing herb lawns, green walls and roofs are being considered in landscape design to facilitate ecosystem services within cities and allow persistence and movement of species within and through developed areas (Ignatieva *et al.*, 2008). Whilst the size of ecological restoration projects within cities may be limited, there has been shown to be a positive relationship between patch size and connectedness and biodiversity (Beninde *et al.*, 2015). However, in Aotearoa New Zealand research has found that even small patches of native vegetation, such as the efforts of individual residents in their gardens or local council-maintained roadside plantings, are useful for naturally regenerating plant species leading to the idea of creating corridors through the built environment (Clarkson & McQueen, 2004; Sullivan *et al.*, 2009).

There is a need to view each non-impervious area within cities as an opportunity to enhance our natural environment, increasing the biodiversity and ecosystem services provided. Aotearoa New Zealand's cities have a wealth of opportunity for biodiversity (Clarkson *et al.*, 2007). For example, urban areas with spatial heterogeneity and intermediate disturbance may enhance the biodiversity of an area (Beninde *et al.*, 2015). In practice this could be roadside areas containing deadwood, bare earth, plants suitable for pollinator species such as nectar producing species for birds and lizards and host plants of invertebrates. In Auckland, Pollinator

Paths, a registered charity, is helping people to take action to fill their streetscapes with habitat suitable for pollinators (Pollinator Paths, 2021). Similarly, Palmerston North City Council has a programme to enhance the green corridors around and through the city to ensure wildlife is thriving (Palmerston North City Council, 2023). Predator management may also be required in cities to ensure that biodiversity is not adversely affected, and efforts are not wasted. Predator Free Wellington is an organisation which is engaging the local community in various sectors from individuals to organisations to eradicate predators and protect their biodiversity (Predator Free Wellington, 2023). Initiatives such as these may allow cities to become biodiverse sanctuaries in their own right.

4.4.2 Connecting People and Nature

Approximately 85% of the Aotearoa New Zealand population resides in urban areas (EHINZ, 2023). For this demographic, urban biodiversity may be the first and, in some situations, only encounter with nature (Freeman *et al.*, 2015; Muller *et al.*, 2010). As stated in section 3.5 of this report, connecting people with nature is increasingly important for matters of physical and mental health, stewardship and creativity (Cox *et al.*, 2017; Hartig *et al.*, 2014; Helford, 2000). This was observed during the Covid-19 lockdown periods where residents from Aotearoa New Zealand reconnected with their local environment which led to insights about taking better care of nature and others in the community (Stronge *et al.*, 2023).

There are opportunities within the landscaping design of our urban centres to promote connection and offer relevance to biodiversity by being visible and legible in the streetscapes. Ignatieva *et al.*, (2008) define this legibility as "reading our history as we walk through the landscape" and mentions that plant signatures, combinations of plants (real plants and artifacts) reminiscent of wild habitats, are a useful tool for achieving this.

4.5 Collaboration and Partnerships

It has been argued that environmental and ecological restoration is "as much about people as about the natural environment" (Norton *et al.*, 2016). For kaitiakitanga and environmental



Example of the use of art on a public toilet to reflect nature and aid connectedness for communities close to the Waimakariri River, Canterbury.

stewardship, collaboration and partnerships with tangata whenua are essential. The necessity for Māori leadership within the natural environment sector has been increasingly embraced in policy and law, rightfully supporting iwi and hapū to act as kaitiaki (Ruru *et al.*, 2017). Indigenous-led projects have been shown to result in outcomes

which support restoration of both species and habitat resilience and allows for detailed and "nuanced" insights through the inclusion of mātauranga Māori (Rayne *et al.*, 2020). Inter-agency collaborations and partnerships are becoming increasingly important for nature conservation and the natural environment

(Peters *et al.*, 2015). A strong, local community foundation for projects appears to be the most efficient model. The work achieved by these groups collectively outweighs that which can be accomplished by a single agency (see Table 7 for a list of some environmental groups operating in Aotearoa New Zealand). However, it has been

Table 7. Examples of some environment groups operating in the Waimakariri District and their projects (taken from WDC, 2021).

Name of group/organisation	Key projects and future plans
Ashley Gorge Reserve Advisory Group	Oversee the development of Ashley Gorge Reserve and protect, enhance and maintain the biodiversity and recreational opportunities of the area.
Ashley/Rakahuri Rivercare Group	A local group of volunteers who aim to protect birds and ecosystems on and around the Ashley Rakahuri River.
Birds NZ	A society promoting the study of birds, data collation, conservation and management.
Braided River Aid (BRaid Inc)	Braided river protection for habitats and species.
Canterbury Botanical Society	Promotes the study of indigenous biodiversity, particularly Canterbury indigenous flora, and undertakes an advocacy role.
Kaipoi Food Forest	Building community self-reliance through the development of a food forest and community space that aims to connect, nourish, educate and inspire.
Keep New Zealand Beautiful, local groups	Maintaining gardens around the District.
Matawai Park Reserve Advisory Group	Group advising on the management of Matawai Park to retain and enhance biodiversity and recreation.
Royal Forest and Bird Protection Society of New Zealand and local branches	Independent conservation organisation focusing on the protection and enhancement of "wildlife and wild places".
Sefton Saltwater Creek Catchment Group	Monitoring, managing and enhancing the Saltwater Creek Catchment.
Silverstream Reserve Advisory Group and volunteers	Advisory and volunteer work to enhance the recreational and nature conservation values of the Silverstream Reserve and surrounding ecosystems.
Taranaki Reserve Advisory Group	Monitoring and managing the Taranaki Reserve.
Te Kōhaka o Tūhaitara Trust	Restoration and enhancement of the local coastal environment and education and research opportunities into coastal ecosystems issues.
Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust	Provision of information/resources to enhance/protect areas of biodiversity throughout the District.
Waimakariri Landcare Trust	Support sustainable land development, alternative land use options and education for landowners.
Waimakariri Lifestyle Block Owners Group	A group of interested volunteers who have lifestyle blocks and wish to protect, maintain and enhance the local environment.
Waimakariri Water Zone Committee	Local volunteers and rūnanga, regional and local council staff aim to implement water management work in the Waimakariri District.

noted that coordination of the groups is required to achieve efficient results (Norton *et al.*, 2018). Educational campaigns by governmental and non-governmental organisations and partnerships highlighting the situation for nature conservation can be effective at mobilising communities into action. Aucklanders (rural and urban) were found to have strong support for spending on conservation and could recall high profile endangered species such as Hector's dolphin and kiwi due to the advocacy of nature conservation groups (Seabrook-Davidson & Brunton, 2014). Financial support was also evident in the South

Island with 90% of mainly urban dwellers willing to have rates increased or to pay \$10 to fund indigenous planting schemes on private and public land (Kaval *et al.*, 2009). Citizen science is another mechanism becoming increasingly used by those involved with the natural environment. It involves members of the public working in collaboration with organisations and researchers to collect meaningful data relating to the natural environment which can be used in a number of ways such as to inform management plans, restoration sites, and pest control programs. This collaboration can

generate more insight than researchers can collect individually and can foster a greater appreciation and public support for science and nature (Ganzevoort *et al.*, 2017; Richardson *et al.*, 2020). The ability to inspire and include people in important scientific issues can lead to empowerment and aid to foster "transformative social-ecological change" (Pereira *et al.*, 2020). Citizen science is most useful in urban and peri-urban environments due to the density of the population residing in such areas. Examples of citizen science include monitoring change in populations such as the "Garden Bird Survey" in which households have a week in which to record the birds they see in a particular place, usually their gardens (Manaaki Whenua – Landcare Research, 2023). This project is a collaboration not only between researchers and community but a number of organisations including Manaaki Whenua – Landcare Research, Forest and Bird, iNaturalistNZ and NZ Birds, to name a few.



4.6 Effect Management Hierarchy

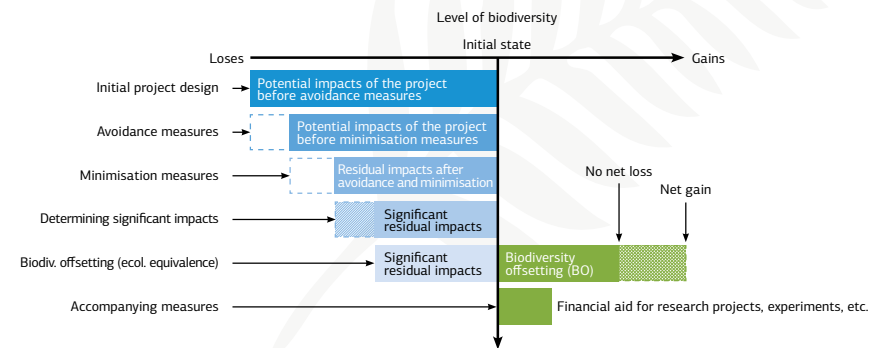
Internationally, the mitigation hierarchy has been designed to address impacts to the environment from certain practices, land uses and developments. The concept is simply to avoid, minimise or compensate (restore or offset) for any adverse effects (Gardner *et al.*, 2013). Avoidance is the first stage but where this cannot be achieved, impacts are reduced as much as possible. If there are residual impacts, these are then compensated for (Figure 13). The concept has developed

many different terms in different countries such as 'no net loss', 'biodiversity gain', 'ecological compensation', and the terms themselves can convey a vagueness open to misinterpretation leading to confusion (Bull *et al.*, 2016).

In Aotearoa New Zealand, the mitigation hierarchy concept was given the name 'effects management hierarchy' in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023. Essentially, it comprises the first three steps of the mitigation

hierarchy followed by the management of anything more than minor adverse residual effects using compensation techniques. Initially, any impacts are sought to be avoided. If all impacts cannot be avoided, measures need to be taken to minimise the adverse effects and mitigate effects. Where residual effects remain, the enhancement of biodiversity elsewhere is required (offsetting). If this is not feasible, compensation for the effects is required which will not incur any biodiversity net gain as the enhancing of biodiversity will not be

Figure 13. The mitigation hierarchy, adapted from Bezombes, 2017.



comparable to that which is impacted. If none of these actions can be achieved, the activity should be avoided (Table 8).

The first stage of the hierarchy is to “anticipate and prevent” adverse effects to the natural environment (Ekstrom *et al.*, 2015). Avoiding impacts has the greatest certainty for the biodiversity resource, and it removes the need for what could be costly mitigation, remediation and compensation activities (Roper-Lindsay *et al.*, 2018). The costs incurred include direct project costs for measures such as restoration or species translocation but also losses arising from impacted biodiversity. The latter are often not monitored sufficiently following the work to assess the full impacts (Glasson *et al.*, 2013; Treweek & Thomson, 1997).

Furthermore, there are calls to strengthen the “avoid” step as the first principle in the concept due to concerns that it is often overlooked when certain criteria are not fulfilled. These were noted as “political will, regulation, process, capacity and technical knowledge” (Phalan *et al.*, 2018). For avoidance to be fully considered, there needs to be political backing for biodiversity conservation in policies and regulations ensuring biodiversity is seen as pivotal infrastructure and then ensuring the capacity and technical knowledge of people involved in creating meaningful change. These comments could also be applied to the minimise and remedy mitigation options where the backing, capacity and knowledge is required to ensure there is meaningful impact mitigation (Hunter *et al.*, 2021).

Table 8. The Effects Management Hierarchy explained (adapted from MFE, 2022)

Management Measure	Explanation
Biodiversity Mitigation Management	
Avoid	Avoid damaging biodiversity by adapting the project, methods, footprint etc.
Minimise	Minimise effects by adapting the project.
Remedy	Remedy/restore biodiversity “at the point of impact”.
Residual Effects Management	
Offset	Where the avoidance, minimising and remedying of adverse impacts is not enough to “redress effects”, biodiversity enhancement can occur elsewhere to achieve no net loss and potentially biodiversity gain (only in terms of mitigation and not with regard to the project in question).
Compensation	Similar to offsets but used where an offset is not feasible. Compensation measures do not incur any biodiversity net gain as they are not comparable and therefore are a worse option than offsetting.
No activity	The project cannot proceed if there will be adverse impacts that cannot be mitigated or compensated for.

The “residual effects management” actions can be seen as the least supportive for biodiversity and the last resort for a project to proceed. In some habitats such as the coastal environment which meets certain policy definitions, the effects management hierarchy cannot proceed beyond the avoidance or the remedy step (Greater Wellington Regional Council, 2020). The first step to consider in residual effects management is biodiversity offsetting. Offsets have been described as “conservation actions intended to compensate for the residual, unavoidable harm to biodiversity caused by development projects, so as to ensure no net loss of biodiversity” (ten Kate *et al.*, 2004).

It has been further defined as the protection against net loss of a biodiversity target (such as a species population or habitat extent) (Maron *et al.*, 2012). Maseyk *et al.*, (2018) outline the principles that underpin good offsetting projects which include criteria such as acknowledging that not all adverse effects can be compensated for by offsetting and the fact that when offsetting the impact needs to be considered on the project site but also the offset site.

Compensation is not the same as biodiversity offsetting. It represents the worst outcome for biodiversity, purely compensating for the losses incurred from the adverse impacts, but does not

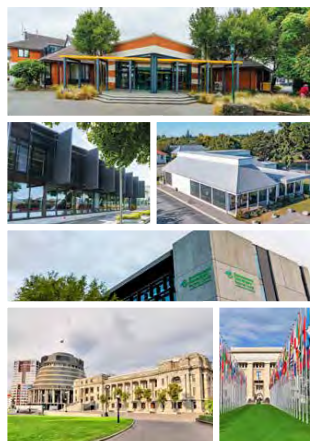
equate to a “no net loss” situation. Maseyk *et al.*, (2018) define the offset-compensation continuum as a risk continuum including:

1. Like-for-like offset – the biodiversity resource is enhanced elsewhere to generate a no net loss result. The biodiversity equivalence includes the type, amount, suitable timescale and equivalence over space;
2. Trading-up offset – the replacement of enhancement measures for a biodiversity resource of lesser conservation value for one with greater. This must be determined by experts due to the subjective nature;
3. Environmental compensation – compensation may be applied to different biodiversity targets thereby making any gains or losses unquantifiable and potentially subjective; and
4. Other compensation – compensation which does not benefit biodiversity such as the offer of social or recreation gains. This is unquantifiable, subjective and involves definite biodiversity losses.



5. Legislation and Policy

The natural environment is the focus for many pieces of legislation, policy and guidance at an international, national, regional and local scale.



These statutory instruments are constantly being updated, particularly on a national scale with elections potentially eliciting changes in government every 3 years. Some of the legislation and policies which are current, relevant or have guided the formation of the Natural Environment Strategy are outlined below (Figure 14).

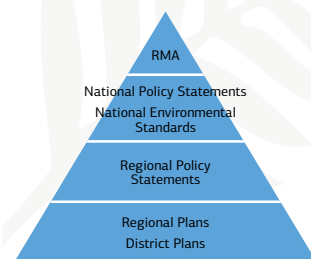


Figure 14. Hierarchy of Aotearoa New Zealand's Planning Instruments

5.1 International Agreements

Aotearoa New Zealand is a signatory to many agreements. Whilst these conventions are not legally binding unless woven into national law, there are some obligations and legal effects although this is often seen as insufficient (Wallace, 2015). The most apparent negative effect is that of disregarding the convention and losing respect within the international community. The international agreements most relevant to Aotearoa New Zealand are:

- International Plant Protection Convention (1952)
- Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (1972)
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (1975) (CITES in law through Trade in Endangered Species Act 1989)
- Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species of Wild Animals (1979)
- Convention on Biological Diversity (1992)
- Kunming - Montreal Global Biodiversity Framework (see Figure 15 for detail).

Figure 15.

Themes and targets outlined in the Kunming-Montreal Global Biodiversity Framework to be completed by 2030 and in order to achieve outcome-oriented goals by 2050 (permission from Environment and Climate Change Canada, 2023).

The 23 Targets of the Kunming-Montreal Global Biodiversity Framework. Targets highlighted in dark green are particularly relevant for Ecosystems and People.											
	1	Biodiversity inclusive spatial planning of all areas		2	Effective restoration of 30% of areas of degraded ecosystems		3	Protected areas, '30 by 30'			
	4	Conservation of species		5	Sustainable use, harvesting and trade of wild species		6	Invasive alien species management		7	Reduce pollution risks
	8	Minimise the impact of climate change		9	Benefits from sustainable use of wild species		10	Sustainable management in agriculture, fisheries and forestry		11	Restore, enhance and maintain nature's contributions to people
	12	Green and blue urban spaces		13	Equitable sharing of benefits from genetic resources		14	Mainstreaming biodiversity and its multiple values		15	Involve businesses and financial institutions
	16	Sustainable consumption choices		17	Biosafety measures		18	Reform harmful incentives		19	Financial resources
	20	Capacity building and development		21	Data, information and knowledge		22	Representation and participation of indigenous Peoples and local communities		23	Gender equity

5.2 National Legislation

It has been acknowledged that legislation and policy regarding the natural environment in Aotearoa New Zealand is outdated. Currently there are 24 Acts created over 70 years which do not include full consideration of indigenous or local knowledge, the improved scientific knowledge of recent years or the changing social environment of Aotearoa New Zealand (Allan, 2021). It has been highlighted that despite the increase in knowledge surrounding our natural environment, threatened species continue to decline and this is partly due to the "political and legal inertia" (Hare *et al.*, 2019).

Therefore, reviews and reform of much of the legislation to better reflect the current situation of our natural environment, society and the future challenges have been ongoing. Below is a brief description of the legislation at the current time of writing. However, it should be noted that the coalition Government elected in 2023 has documented its intentions in the 100-day plan to establish "a permanent Rural Regulation Review Panel to assess all regulations affecting the primary sector and propose solutions to cut red tape" which is likely to alter some of the legislation outlined below (National Party, 2023).

5.2.1 Resource Management Act 1991 and the reform

The Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) came into force in the early 1990's with the purpose of promoting the sustainable management of natural and physical resources. It is administered by regional

councils and territorial authorities with regional councils primarily managing air, water, soil, and the coastal marine area and territorial authorities primarily managing land use and subdivision.

The RMA constitutes an effects-based management approach whereby the effects of activities, rather than the party carrying out the activity or the activity itself, are assessed. It attempts to integrate human actions as part of the functioning ecosystem to reach sustainable management (Craig *et al.*, 2000).

However, the RMA does not cover the management of all natural resources with the harvesting of shellfish, marine pollution, use of minerals, covered by other legislation. The Act itself is highly complicated, with insufficient guidance and relies on compliance monitoring which has been shown to seldom occur at a rate which is effective (Brower *et al.*, 2018; Fischer, 2022; Miller, 2003; Millis, 2020; Palmer & Clarke, 2022). For many years, there has been a call for all legislation to effectively communicate to one another rather than the current situation where multiple statutory instruments can be contradictory at best or utterly unclear at worse (Palmer & Clarke, 2022).

The Randerson report (Randerson, 2019) reviewed the RMA and recommended it be replaced with legislation that incorporates Te Tiriti o Waitangi, te Ao Māori and future challenges such as climate change into new legislation. Under the Labour government (2017-2023) conservation and resource management law reform initiated the

review and repeal of the RMA and replacement with three Acts: Strategic Planning Act (SPA), the Natural and Built Environment Act (NBA) and the Climate Adaptation Act (CAA) (MfE, 2022a). The National Adaptation Plan, released in 2022, outlined the approach and steps that can be taken to achieve climate adaptation (MfE, 2022b).

In 2023, the new Acts were repealed by the National Coalition Government and replaced by the Resource Management (Natural and Built Environment and Spatial Planning Repeal and Interim Fast-Track Consulting) Bill 2023. This was done so that the government could review and achieve the following goals:

- "strengthen our strategy and stewardship, using better evidence to support priorities in national environmental management
- coordinate our relationships, reducing the demand on our partners and supporting them in their environmental management roles
- embed Te Ao Māori and Te Tiriti capability to uphold our statutory and Treaty settlement responsibilities
- embed an organisation-wide focus on climate change adaptation and mitigation.
- centralise enabling services to better support our people" (MfE, 2023).

This bill essentially governs the use of resources under the RMA as it did prior to the previously described new Acts being announced. There are few alterations from the RMA 1991, but of significance is the retention of the NBA's fast-track consenting process and the amendments to the National

Policy Statement for freshwater Management. The bill remains in force until an alternative resource management system is developed.

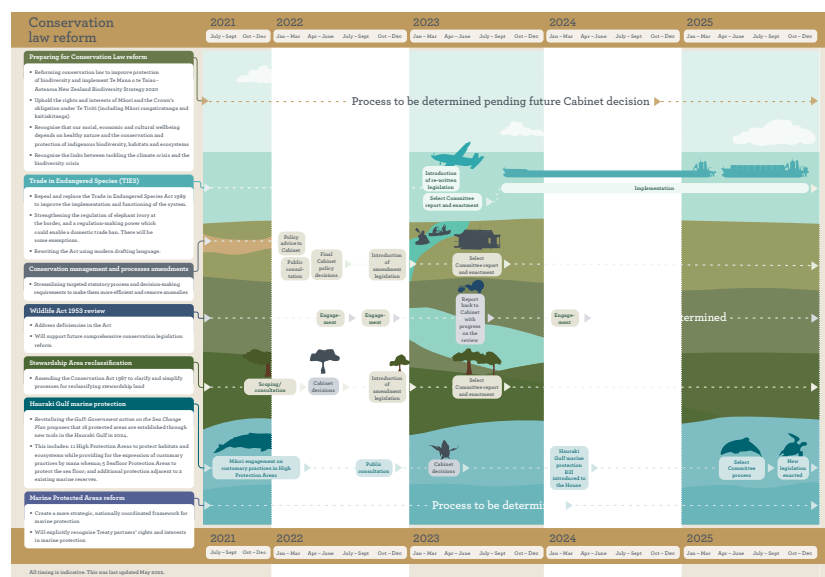
The government has signalled that the "fast-track consenting one-stop-shop" is desired to rapidly progress approvals for infrastructure and industry and will feature in the RMA reform (Bishop & Jones, 2024). This would include provisions for regional and national projects of significance (criteria for these is currently undefined).

The other areas where the 2023 bill amends the RMA 1991 are:

- Freshwater consents – the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 is currently under review and, rather than notifying freshwater plans by the end of 2024, the Bill provides Councils an extra 3 years allowing for review of the policy statement;
- Requiring authorities – the bill repeals the right for Council Controlled Organisations to have authority for the designation of land for specific planning and consenting purposes (for example, schools or roads);
- Treaty Settlements – expired consent application information (particularly time-bound or expired requirements) will not be provided to Post-Settlement Governance Entities;
- Mana Whakahono ā Rohe – the co-governance tool for tangata whenua and local authorities has been repealed and if any agreements had been initiated, they will need to begin again under the RMA (MfE, 2023a).

Work on the proposed Climate Change Adaptation Act has not been explicitly stated by the government but the climate change minister, Hon Simon Watts, has indicated they will "develop a national Climate Adaptation Framework" (Watts, 2023).



Figure 16. Representation of the conservation law reform proposed under the Labour Government (Department of Conservation, 2022)**Table 9.** Legislation relating to the natural environment but not directly relevant to the Natural Environment Strategy (adapted from Environment Foundation, 2021).

Legislation	Description	Administered by:
Native Plants Protection Act 1934	Protection of native plants.	DOC
Queen Elizabeth the Second National Trust Act 1977	An Act to "encourage and promote, for the benefit of New Zealand, the provision, protection, preservation and enhancement of open space".	DOC
Wild Animal Control Act 1977	Provides for control of wild, exotic animals and the establishment of recreational hunting areas.	DOC
Trade in Endangered Species Act 1989	Protects and conserves endangered species threatened by trade in addition to restricting their export and import fulfilling obligations under CITES.	DOC
Forests Act 1949	Control of logging, milling and export of indigenous trees and promotion of sustainable forestry.	Ministry for Primary Industries
Biosecurity Act 1993 & GIA Deed 2012	Enables the exclusion, eradication and management of pests and unwanted organisms. The Act was modified to allow for government and industry to work together for positive outcomes. This legislation is being reformed to better reflect the current situation.	MPI
Crown Pastoral Land Act 1998 and The Crown Pastoral Land Reform Act 2022	To ensure sustainable pastoral farming retaining the inherent values (cultural, ecological, landscape, heritage and scientific) of the land.	LINZ
Local Government Act 2002	Provides for local authorities to play a broad role in promoting the social, economic, environmental, and cultural wellbeing of their communities, taking a sustainable development approach. It requires that Long Term and Annual Plans are produced that set out Councils' intended work programmes including funding for biodiversity.	Territorial Authorities

5.2.2 Environmental Legislation

Similar to the RMA, there are at least 24 Acts regarding the conservation of the environment. These are complicated, inconsistent and outdated (Allan, 2021; Department of Conservation, 2023a). Therefore, these Acts are also in the process of being updated and replaced (Figure 16). However, Table 9 shows some of the main pieces of legislation currently applicable.

The most prominent conservation Acts are summarised below.

Wildlife Act 1953

The Wildlife Act is the primary law for governing and protecting threatened animals in Aotearoa New Zealand. It deals with both native and exotic species with most native species being absolutely protected and safeguarded from hunting, killing, harassment, injury or possession of the whole animal or part thereof (eggs, feathers etc). The Act also allows for the creation and management of wildlife sanctuaries, refuges and reserves.

This 70-year-old piece of legislation has gained significant criticism for the lack of an integrated approach to wildlife protection. Wallace & Fluker (2015) cite the quoted shortfalls including a lack of focus on species recovery and management, a disjoint between conservation and resource management, a limited stance on species take and habitat protection, no regard given to the management of predators and the discretionary allowance for taking threatened species. In addition, the Wildlife Act has been criticised for being "inconsistent and alarmingly under-resourced". Due to the age of the legislation,

there is no regard of current or future challenges such as climate change, no regard for mātauranga Māori, kaitiakitanga and rangatiratanga are not provided for and the legislation is not fit for purpose with many protected species still experiencing drastic declines (Department of Conservation, n.d).

The process to review the Wildlife Act is underway starting with exploring the issues. The Department of Conservation aims to engage cultural use practitioners, technical experts and industry/sector representatives to assist and guide the process (Department of Conservation, n.d; Figure 17).

Conservation Act 1987

This piece of legislation was enacted to enable “the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations”.

In effect, the Act created the Department of Conservation (DOC), established the Fish & Game Council, New Zealand Conservation Authority, Conservation Boards and Crown-owned conservation areas. The conservation areas comprise land specifically held for conservation objectives. DOC explain the eight categories of conservations areas as (Department of Conservation, 2023):

- Conservation parks, managed for their natural and historic resources and to be used by the public for recreation and enjoyment;
- Wilderness areas, managed to protect indigenous biodiversity with any development excluded;

- Ecological areas, managed to protect prescribed values and resources;
- Sanctuary areas, managed to protect natural resources for scientific purposes;
- Watercourse areas, land protected via the Conservation Act, Reserves Act or QEII which is adjacent to inland water also under protection which is managed for conservation and recreation;
- Amenity areas, managed for the natural or historic resources with a focus on public engagement;
- Wildlife management areas, areas managed for biodiversity;
- Marginal strips, land adjacent to the sea, lakes or rivers for maintenance of natural or

historic resources and to allow access to the adjacent waters;

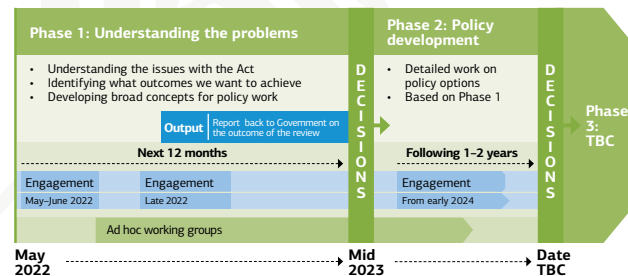
- Stewardship areas, maintained for natural and historic values but can be disposed of following full and clear public consultation; and
- Administrative, land used for conservation information centres, office or similar.

In addition to managing land held under the Act, there is also a responsibility to produce management strategies and advocate for nature conservation.

National Parks Act 1980

This Act preserves “in perpetuity as national parks, for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, use, and enjoyment of the public, areas of Aotearoa New Zealand that contain scenery

Figure 17. Projection of process for reviewing the Wildlife Act 1953 (Department of Conservation, N.D)



of such distinctive quality, ecological systems, or natural features so beautiful, unique, or scientifically important that their preservation is in the national interest”. There are 13 National Parks important for tourism and nature conservation.

Reserves Act 1977

This Act was created to define the system around acquiring, protecting and managing areas for conservation, recreation and educational uses. Control and management of the reserve is afforded to the organisation that vested the reserve. Under this Act there are nine categories of reserve as defined by DOC (Department of Conservation, 2023):

- National Reserves with nationally important values;
- Recreation Reserves for physical and aesthetic enjoyment such as recreation and sporting activities;
- Historic Reserves which protect features of historic significance;
- Scenic Reserves protected for their scenic interest, beauty and intrinsic worth;
- Nature Reserves, protected by permits, which protect and preserve indigenous flora, fauna or natural features;
- Scientific Reserves, often protected by permit, to protect and preserve areas for the purpose of education and research;
- Government Purpose Reserves are areas preserved for a particular reason stated by government such as gravel extraction;

- Local Purpose Reserves are areas protected for local reasons; and
- Wilderness Areas maintained in a natural state without manmade features.

5.3 National Policy Documents

5.3.1 National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity (NPSIB)

National Policy Statements are produced in order to prescribe objectives and policies which allow the purpose of an Act to be achieved. They are not legislative and do not contain rules. However, National Policy Statements must be given effect to and guide the decision-making and development of legislative plans at every level of government to ensure the purpose of the Act is achieved. The District and Regional Plans are required to give effect to a NPS. The NPSIB (2023) relates to the protection, maintenance and enhancement of all indigenous biodiversity. Below is a description of the NPSIB as it stands at time of writing. However, the government has indicated that it will “commence an urgent review into the implementation of the National Policy Statement on Indigenous Biodiversity before any implementation, including implementation of Significant Natural Areas and review the current ones” (Taituarā, 2023).

The NPSIB is based on principles of “the mauri and intrinsic value of indigenous biodiversity”, in addition to the interconnectedness to people and wellbeing. It comprises seven elements:

- (a) prioritise the mauri, intrinsic value and wellbeing of indigenous biodiversity;

- (b) take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi);
- (c) recognise the bond between tangata whenua and indigenous biodiversity based on whakapapa relationships;
- (d) recognise the obligation and responsibility of care that tangata whenua have as kaitiaki of indigenous biodiversity;
- (e) recognise the role of people and communities (including landowners) as stewards of indigenous biodiversity;
- (f) enable the application of te ao Māori and mātauranga Māori;
- (g) form strong and effective partnerships with tangata whenua.

In order to protect, maintain and enhance indigenous biodiversity, the NPSIB requires the maintenance of biodiversity with no reduction in species population size; species occupancy across their natural range; properties and functions of ecosystems; full range and extent of habitats and ecosystems; connectivity and buffering; and resilience and adaptability of ecosystems. It describes the Effects Management Hierarchy that should be applied when assessing adverse effects to biodiversity as a top-down approach, from avoiding the adverse effects to the activity not being permitted where mitigation or compensation is not adequate (see section 4.6 of this report).

It requires consistent identification of significant natural areas (SNAs) whilst allowing existing land uses that do not further deteriorate those

biodiverse or important natural resources. It discusses targets for indigenous land cover of at least 10% in urban areas and requires regional council to create or update regional biodiversity strategies whilst also monitoring and managing highly mobile fauna.

5.3.2 Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy

Released in 2020 and named Te Mana o te Taiao, this document presents a framework for biodiversity management in Aotearoa New Zealand (Department for Conservation, 2020). The underpinning concept is 'te mauri hikahika o te taiao' which purports that nature is vibrant and vigorous with people perceived as part of nature: 'we can only thrive when nature thrives'. The document outlines five outcomes:

- Ecosystems from mountain tops to ocean depths are thriving;
- Indigenous species and their habitats across the country and beyond are thriving;
- People's lives are enriched through their connection with nature;
- Treaty partners and tangata whenua are exercising their full role as Rangatira and kaitiaki; and
- Prosperity is intrinsically linked with thriving biodiversity.

These are achieved by three pou/pillars which are "getting the system right", empowering people and addressing the direct pressures (Figure 18). The timelines for the outcomes to be achieved are 2025, 2030 and 2050.

5.3.3 Implementation Plan

The Implementation Plan outlines the steps that can be taken to implement the Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy over the next 30 years. The document has been described as a "living document" and will be updated every five years to report on progress to date and ensure it aligns with the future goals. It outlines action required to achieve the outcomes noting the lead agency and the expected timeframe.

5.3.4 National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management and National Environmental Standards for Freshwater

Although not directly dealt with in the Natural Environment Strategy, freshwater regulations requires acknowledgement due to the interface between land and water.

National Environmental Standards are regulations which set standards for resources (MfE, 2021). The NES freshwater (NESF) came into force in 2020 to address the protection of natural wetlands and urban and rural streams and rivers, to provide for fish passage, and address agricultural intensification and excessive nutrient use on land which has a detrimental effect on the freshwater systems.

In conjunction with the NESF, Te Mana o te Wai (the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management (NPS-FM)) was gazetted in 2020, then updated in 2023 (MfE, 2022c). Applying to both freshwater and groundwater, importantly, it outlined a hierarchy of water priorities. These were firstly the health and wellbeing of water bodies and freshwater ecosystems, followed by the health needs of people,

and lastly the ability for people and communities to provide for social, economic and cultural wellbeing.

The policy is intended to be given effect to via Regional and Local District Plans to stymie the loss and deterioration of wetlands and river values, to improve fish passage, to ensure Māori freshwater values are identified and acted upon, to take a "whole catchment" perspective, species and habitats are protected, water use is monitored and used efficiently. There are also targets for freshwater to be suitable for primary contact with regard to 80% by 2030 and 90% by 2040 and this is monitored whilst enabling communities to be involved with the protection and enhancement of freshwater environments. Importantly, both pieces of policy are to be reviewed and replaced by central government as outlined in the coalition agreement (Tu, 2023). It is hoped that the replacement will:

- "rebalance Te Mana o te Wai to better reflect the interests of all water users.
- Allow district councils more flexibility in how they meet environmental limits and seek advice on how to exempt councils from obligations as soon as practicable" (Taituarā, 2023).

5.4 Regional and District Plans

Central Government can set National Environmental Standards and National Policy Statements which can direct the work and focus of regional and local councils. Regional plans can set direction for an entire region. For Canterbury these include the Canterbury Land and Water Regional Plan, Canterbury Air Regional Plan and Coastal Environment Regional Plan. Non-mandatory, regional strategies also

influence environmental outcomes. These include the Canterbury Biodiversity Strategy (ECan, 2008) and the draft Canterbury Climate Action Plan. District Plans primarily manage land use activities and subdivision.

Figure 18. Pictorial representation of the Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy.



References

- Albrecht, J., Peters, M. K., Becker, J. N., Behler, C., Classen, A., Ensslin, A., ... & Schleuning, M. (2021). Species richness is more important for ecosystem functioning than species turnover along an elevational gradient. *Nature ecology & evolution*, 5(12), 1582-1593.
- Alexandri, E., & Jones, P. (2006, September). Ponds, Green Roofs, pergolas and high albedo materials; which cooling technique for urban spaces. In proceedings of the 23rd Conference of Passive and Low Energy Architecture, Geneva, Switzerland. Alley, M. R., & Gartrell, B. D. (2019). Wildlife diseases in New Zealand: recent findings and future challenges. *New Zealand veterinary journal*, 67(1), 1-11.
- Allan, K. (2021). Modernising conservation law to better reflect today's thinking. Retrieved from beehive.govt.nz/release/modernising-conservation-law-better-reflect-today%E2%80%99s-thinking February, 2023.
- AMSI. (2023). Will halo's be the saviour of Australia's endangered mammals? Retrieved from vrs.amsi.org.au/halos-saviour-australias-endangered-mammals/, April, 2023.
- Atkins, J., & Macpherson, M. (2022). Introduction: Why Are Species Extinction and Biodiversity Collapse Relevant to the Financial Markets, Accounting and Governance?. In *Extinction Governance, Finance and Accounting* (pp. 1-10). Routledge.
- Atkinson, I.A.E. (2001) Introduced mammals and models for restoration. *Biol. Conserv.* 99, 81-96
- Atkinson, J. (2016). The political role of television in New Zealand. *Politics and the Media*, 273-291.
- Ausseil, A. G. E., Dymond, J. R., & Weeks, E. S. (2011). Provision of natural habitat for biodiversity: quantifying recent trends in New Zealand. *Biodiversity loss in a changing planet*, 201-220.
- Ausseil, A. G. E., Kirschbaum, M. U., Andrew, R. M., McNeill, S., Dymond, J. R., Carswell, F., & Mason, N. W. (2013). Climate regulation in New Zealand: contribution of natural and managed ecosystems. *Ecosystem services in New Zealand-conditions and trends*, 386-399.
- Babe, J., Thompson, H., Mcalister, W. H., & McIntosh, P. (n.d.) The Forces that Shape the Upper Waimakariri Catchment. Retrieved from: canterbury.ac.nz/media/documents/oexp-science/geography/community-engagement/geog-309/2022/The-Forces-that-Shape-the-Upper-Waimakariri-Catchment.pdf February, 2023.
- Bargaz, A., Lyamlouli, K., Chtouki, M., Zeroual, Y., & Dhiba, D. (2018). Soil microbial resources for improving fertilizers efficiency in an integrated plant nutrient management system. *Frontiers in microbiology*, 9, 1606.
- Barnes, A. M., Wratten, S. D., & Sandhu, H. S. (2008). Harnessing biodiversity to improve vineyard sustainability. In *Organic Fruit Conference 873* (pp. 67-74).
- Bellingham, P.J., Amst, E.A., Clarkson, B.D. et al., (2023). The right tree in the right place? A major economic tree species poses major ecological threats. *Biol Invasions* 25, 39-60. doi.org/10.1007/s10530-022-02892-6
- Bender, D. J., Contreras, T. A., & Fahrig, L. (1998). Habitat loss and population decline: a meta-analysis of the patch size effect. *Ecology*, 79(2), 517-533.
- Beninde, J., Veith, M., & Hochkirch, A. (2015). Biodiversity in cities needs space: a meta-analysis of factors determining intra-urban biodiversity variation. *Ecology letters*, 18(6), 581-592.
- Bennett, A. F., Haslem, A., Cheal, D. C., Clarke, M. F., Jones, R. N., Koehn, J. D., ... & Yen, A. L. (2009). Ecological processes: a key element in strategies for nature conservation. *Ecological Management & Restoration*, 10(3), 192-199.
- Bennett, N. J., Di Franco, A., Calò, A., Nethery, E., Niccolini, F., Milazzo, M., & Guidetti, P. (2019). Local support for conservation is associated with perceptions of good governance, social impacts, and ecological effectiveness. *Conservation letters*, 12(4), e12640.
- Beier, P., & Noss, R. F. (1998). Do habitat corridors provide connectivity? *Conservation Biology*, 12(6), 1241-1252.
- Berkes, F., Colding, J., Folke, (2000). Rediscovery of traditional ecological knowledge as adaptive management. *Ecological applications* 10(5): 1251-1262.
- Bezombes, L. (2017). Development of a methodological framework to assess ecological equivalence: application in the context of the mitigation hierarchy in France. *AGRI5*
- Biosecurity Act 1993, legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1993/0095/latest/DLM314623.html
- Bishop, C., Jones, S. (2024) Fast track consenting in the fast lane. Retrieved February 2024 from: beehive.govt.nz/release/fast-track-consenting-fast-lane
- Boffa Miskel (2010) Canterbury Regional Landscape Study Review. Boffa Miskel, Christchurch.
- Boscolo, D., & Paul Metzger, J. (2011). Isolation determines patterns of species presence in highly fragmented landscapes. *Ecography*, 34(6), 1018-1029.
- Broadbent, A., Sood, A., Stuart, S., Macara, G., Zammit, C. (2022) Waimakariri District Climate Change Scenario: Technical Report. NIWA Taihoro Nukurangi, Wellington.
- Brown, M.A. et al. (2015). Vanishing nature: facing New Zealand's biodiversity crisis. Environmental Defence Society Incorporated.
- Brudvig, L. A., Damschen, E. I., Tewksbury, J. J., Haddad, N. M., & Levey, D. J. (2009). Landscape connectivity promotes plant biodiversity spillover into non-target habitats. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 106(23), 9328-9332.
- Brundrett, M. (2004). Diversity and classification of mycorrhizal associations. *Biological reviews*, 79(3), 473-495.
- Brundtland, G. H. (1987). Our Common Future World Commission On Environment And Development. Retrieved February 2024 from: un-documents.net/our-common-future.pdf
- Bull, J.W.; Gordon, A.; Watson, J.E.M.; Maron, M. (2016) Seeking Convergence on the Key Concepts in 'No Net Loss' Policy. *J. Appl. Ecol.*, 53, 1686-1693
- Burge, O. R., Innes, J. G., Fitzgerald, N., Guo, J., Etherington, T. R., & Richardson, S. J. (2021). Assessing the habitat and functional connectivity around fenced ecosanctuaries in New Zealand. *Biological Conservation*, 253, 108896.
- Burgess PJ, Harris J, Graves AR, et al., (2019). Regenerative Agriculture: Identifying the Impact: Enabling the Potential. Report for SYSTEMIQ. Cranfield: Cranfield University.
- Cardinale, B. J., Duffy, J. E., Gonzalez, A., Hooper, D. U., Perrings, C., Venail, P., ... & Naeem, S. (2012). Biodiversity loss and its impact on humanity. *Nature*, 486(7401), 59-67.
- Ceballos, G., García, A., & Ehrlich, P. R. (2010). The sixth extinction crisis: Loss of animal populations and species. *Journal of Cosmology*, 8(1821), 31.
- Cieraad, E., Walker, S., Price, R. and Barringer, J. (2015). An updated assessment of indigenous cover remaining and legal protection in New Zealand's land environments. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology* 39, 309.
- Chakravarthi, K., Charters, F., & Cochrane, T. A. (2019). The impact of urbanisation on New Zealand freshwater quality. *Policy Quarterly*, 15(3).

- Chapin, F. S., Matson, P. A., Mooney, H. A., & Vitousek, P. M. (2002). *Principles of terrestrial ecosystem ecology*. Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Chaston, T. B., Broome, R. A., Cooper, N., Duck, G., Geromboux, C., Guo, Y., ... & Hanigan, I. C. (2022). Mortality Burden of Heatwaves in Sydney, Australia Is Exacerbated by the Urban Heat Island and Climate Change: Can Tree Cover Help Mitigate the Health Impacts?. *Atmosphere*, 13(5), 714.
- Christchurch City Council (2023) Our Urban Forest Plan for Ōtautahi Christchurch. Christchurch City Council, NZ. Retrieved February 2023 from: ccc.govt.nz/assets/Documents/Consultation/2023/02-February/CUS5882-Urban-Forest-Plan-A4-WEB.pdf
- Clarkson, B. (2022). Reversing Biodiversity Decline in Aotearoa New Zealand. *Policy Quarterly*, 18(2), 61-70.
- Clarkson, B. D., & Kirby, C. L. (2016). Ecological restoration in urban environments in New Zealand. *Ecological management & restoration*, 17(3), 180-190.
- Clarkson, B. D., Kirby, C. L., & Wallace, K. J. (2018). Restoration targets for biodiversity depleted environments in New Zealand. Hamilton, New Zealand: Environmental Research Institute Te Pūtahū Rangahau Taiao, The University of Waikato.
- Clarkson, B., & McQueen, J. C. (2004). Ecological restoration in Hamilton City, North Island, New Zealand. In *Proceedings of the 16th international conference, Society for Ecological Restoration*, Victoria.
- Clarkson BD, Wehi PM, Brabyn LK. (2007). A spatial analysis of indigenous cover patterns and implications for ecological restoration in urban centres, New Zealand. *Urban Ecosystems* 10:441–457
- Clout, M. (2001). Where protection is not enough: active conservation in New Zealand. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution*, 16(8), 415-416.
- Cohen-Shacham, E., Walters, G., Janzen, C., & Maginnis, S. (2016). Nature-based solutions to address global societal challenges. IUCN: Gland, Switzerland, 97, 2016-2036.
- Conservation Act 1978. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1987/0065/latest/DLM103610.html
- Convention on Biological Diversity (2018) List of parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity. cbd.int/information/parties.shtml (accessed January 2023).
- Cooper, R. A., and Millener, P. R. (1993) The New Zealand biota: historical background and new research. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution* 8, 429-433.
- Corlett, GE. (2021) A land divided by climate extremes: what the IPCC report says about New Zealand. *The Guardian*, UK. Accessed February 2023 from: [theguardian.com/world/2021/aug/10/a-land-divided-by-extremes-what-the-ippc-report-says-about-new-zealand-climate-change](https://www.theguardian.com/world/2021/aug/10/a-land-divided-by-extremes-what-the-ippc-report-says-about-new-zealand-climate-change)
- Cowan, P. E., and C. H. Tyndale-Biscoe. (1997). Australian and New Zealand mammal species considered to be pests or problems. *Reproduction, Fertility and Development* 9:27-36.
- Cox DTC, Shanahan DF, Hudson HL, Plummer KE, Siriwardena GM, Fuller RA, Anderson K, Hancock S, Gaston KJ. (2017). Doses of Neighborhood Nature: The Benefits for Mental Health of Living with Nature. *BioScience* 7:173.
- Cristiano, E., Deidda, R., & Viola, F. (2021). The role of green roofs in urban Water-Energy-Food-Ecosystem nexus: A review. *Science of the Total Environment*, 756, 143876.
- Craig, J., Anderson, S., Clout, M., Creese, B., Mitchell, N., Ogden, J., ... & Ussher, G. (2000). Conservation issues in New Zealand. *Annual Review of ecology and Systematics*, 31(1), 61-78.
- Craig, J. L. (2004). Science and sustainable development in New Zealand. *Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand*, 34(1), 9-22.
- Crown Pastoral Land Act 1998. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1998/0065/latest/DLM426894.html
- Davis, C. M., Head, N., Myers, S. C., & Moore, S. H. (2016). Department of Conservation guidelines for assessing significant ecological values. Publishing Team, Department of Conservation.
- Davies-Colley, R. J. (2013). River water quality in New Zealand: an introduction and overview. *Ecosystem services in New Zealand: conditions and trends*. Manaaki Whenua Press, Lincoln, 432-447.
- Department of Conservation (N.D.) Wildlife Act Review Summary Brochure: What is the Wildlife Act and what does it do? Department of Conservation. Retrieved from: doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/legislation/wildlife-act-summary-brochure.pdf May, 2023.
- Department of Conservation (2020). Te Mana o Te Taiao - Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2020. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Department of Conservation (2023) Conservation Act 1987. Retrieved from: doc.govt.nz/about-us/our-role/legislation/conservation-act/, February 2023.
- Department of Conservation (2023a) Modernising conservation legislation. Retrieved from: doc.govt.nz/about-us/our-role/legislation/conservation-law-reform/, May 2023.
- Diamond, J. M., & May, R. M. (1976). Island biogeography and the design of natural reserves. In R. M. May (Ed.), *Theoretical Ecology: Principles and Applications* (pp. 163-186). Philadelphia, PA: W.B. Saunders.
- Díaz, S., Settele, J., Brondizio, E. S., Ngo, H. T., Agard, J., Arnet, A., ... & Zayas, C. N. (2019). Pervasive human-driven decline of life on Earth points to the need for transformative change. *Science*, 366(6471), eaax3100.
- Díaz, S., Pascual, U., Stenseke, M., Martín-López, B., Watson, R. T., Molnár, Z., et al. (2018). Assessing Nature's Contributions to People. *Science* 359, 270–272. doi:10.1126/science.aap8826
- Dick, J., Stephenson, J., Kirikiri, R., Moller, H., & Turner, R. (2012). Listening to the kaitiaki: consequences of the loss of abundance and biodiversity of coastal ecosystems in Aotearoa New Zealand. *Mai Journal*.
- Didham, R. K., Kapos, V., & Ewers, R. M. (2012). Rethinking the conceptual foundations of habitat fragmentation research. *Oikos*, 121(2), 161-170.
- Didham R K, Barker G M, Bartlam S, Deakin E L, Denmead L H, Fisk L M, Peters J M, Tylianakis J M, Wright H R and Schipper L A (2015) Agricultural intensification exacerbates spillover effects on soil biogeochemistry in adjacent forest remnants. *PLoS One* 10, e0116474.
- Divya, C., & Naachimuthu, K. P. (2020). Human nature connection and mental health: What do we know so far?. *Indian Journal of Health and Well-being*, 11(1-3), 84-92.
- Doak, D. F. (1995). Source-sink models and the problem of habitat degradation: general models and applications to the Yellowstone grizzly. *Conservation Biology*, 9(6), 1370-1379.
- Dodson, M., Aitchinson-Earl, P., Scott, L. (2012) Ashley-Waimakariri groundwater Resources Investigation. Environment Canterbury, Canterbury NZ. Retrieved from: citeseerx.ist.psu.edu/document?repid=rep1&type=pdf&doi=dd36a88afe897fc366ccff74e2602e8c3221d51
- Dollery, R. (2017). 'Ecological restoration of dryland kanuka communities in an irrigated agricultural landscape.', PhD thesis. Lincoln University. researcharchive.lincoln.ac.nz/handle/10182/8524
- Dollery, R., Bowie, M. H., & Dickinson, N. M. (2022). The ecological importance of moss ground cover in dry shrubland restoration within an irrigated agricultural landscape matrix. *Ecology and Evolution*, 12(4), e8843.
- Doody, B. J., Sullivan, J. J., Meurk, C. D., Stewart, G. H., & Perkins, H. C. (2010). Urban realities: the contribution of residential gardens to the conservation of urban forest remnants. *Biodiversity and conservation*, 19, 1385-1400.

- Duncan, R. P., and T. M. Blackburn. (2004). Extinction and endemism in the New Zealand avifauna. *Global Ecology and Biogeography* 13:509-517.
- Durie, M. (2005). Indigenous knowledge within a global knowledge system. *Higher Education Policy*, 18(3), 301-312.
- EHINZ (2023). Urban-rural profile. Retrieved from ehinz.ac.nz/indicators/population-vulnerability/urbanrural-profile/#:~:text=Most%20people%20live%20in%20main%20urban%20areas,-Most%20New%20Zealanders&text=14.1%25%20lived%20in%20large%20urban,Zealanders%20lived%20in%20rural%20areas. April, 2023.
- Ekstrom, J., Bennun, L. & Mitchell, R. (2015) A Cross-Sector Guide for Implementing the Mitigation Hierarchy. Cross Sector Biodiversity Initiative, London, UK.
- Environment and Climate Change Canada (2023) Toward a 2030 Biodiversity Strategy for Canada: Halting and Reversing Nature Loss. Environment and Climate Change Canada. Retrieved from: canada.ca/en/services/environment/wildlife-plants-species/biodiversity/2030-biodiversity-strategy-canada.html
- Environment Canterbury (2008). A biodiversity strategy for the Canterbury Region. Environment Canterbury. Christchurch, New Zealand.
- Environment Canterbury (2016). Land of National Significance. Retrieved from: ecan.maps.arcgis.com/home/item.html?id=651952dd4c1c448fb17d08aff381ea79. December 2022.
- Environment Canterbury (2018). Waimakariri Water Zone Committee: Draft Zone Implementation Programme Addendum. Christchurch, New Zealand.
- Environment Canterbury (2018). Canterbury Regional Pest Management Plan: 2018-2038. Retrieved from: ecan.govt.nz/your-region/your-environment/our-natural-environment/pest-management/ May, 2023.
- Environment Foundation (2021). Environment Guide: Legislation. Retrieved from: environmentguide.org.nz/issues/biodiversity/im:2506/legislation/ May, 2023.
- Erueti, B., Tassell-Matamua, N., Pomare, P., Masters-Awatere, B., Dell, K., Te Rangi, M., & Lindsay, N. (2023). 'Pūrākau o te Ngāhere': Indigenous Māori Interpretations, Expressions and Connection to Taonga Species and Biosecurity Issues. *Knowledge Cultures*, 11(1), 34-54.
- Esperon-Rodriguez, M., Rymer, P. D., Power, S. A., Challis, A., Marchin, R. M., & Tjoelker, M. G. (2020). Functional adaptations and trait plasticity of urban trees along a climatic gradient. *Urban Forestry & Urban Greening*, 54, 126771.
- EC—European Commission. (2015) Towards an EU Research and Innovation Policy Agenda for Nature-Based Solutions & Re-Naturing Cities. Final Report of the Horizon2020 Expert Group on Nature-Based Solutions and Re-Naturing Cities; European Commission: Brussels, Belgium.
- Ewers, R. M., & Didham, R. K. (2006). Confounding factors in the detection of species responses to habitat fragmentation. *Biological reviews*, 81(1), 117-142.
- Ewers, R. M., Kliskey, A. D., Walker, S., Rutledge, D., Harding, J. S., & Didham, R. K. (2006). Past and future trajectories of forest loss in New Zealand. *Biological conservation*, 133(3), 312-325.
- Felipe-Lucia, M. R., Soliveres, S., Penone, C., Fischer, M., Ammer, C., Boch, S., ... & Allan, E. (2020). Land-use intensity alters networks between biodiversity, ecosystem functions, and services. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 117(45), 28140-28149.
- Fischer, S. (2022). A Review of Current Regional-Level Environmental Monitoring: Reporting and Enforcement in Aotearoa New Zealand. *Policy Quarterly*, 18(2), 28-35.
- Fischer, J., & Lindenmayer, D. B. (2007). Landscape modification and habitat fragmentation: a synthesis. *Global ecology and biogeography*, 16(3), 265-280.
- Fischer, J., Lindenmayer, D.B., Hobbs, R. (2009). Landscape pattern and biodiversity. pp. 431-437. In Levin S. A. (ed.), *The Princeton guide to ecology*. New Jersey.
- Fitzgerald, N., Innes, J., & Mason, N. W. (2019). Pest mammal eradication leads to landscape-scale spillover of tūī (*Prothemadera novaeseelandiae*) from a New Zealand mainland biodiversity sanctuary. *Notornis*, 66, 181-191.
- Frantzeskaki, N. (2019) Seven lessons for planning nature-based solutions in cities. *Environmental science & policy* 93: 101-111.
- Freeman, C., Van Heezik, Y., Hand, K., & Stein, A. (2015). Making cities more child-and nature-friendly: A child-focused study of nature connectedness in New Zealand cities. *Children, Youth and Environments*, 25(2), 176-207.
- Forbes, A. S., Wallace, K. J., Buckley, H. L., Case, B. S., Clarkson, B. D., & Norton, D. A. (2020). Restoring mature-phase forest tree species through enrichment planting in New Zealand's lowland landscapes. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 44(1), 1-9.
- Foresight, U. (2011) The future of food and farming. Final Project Report, London, The Government Office for Science.
- Forests Act 1949. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1949/0019/latest/DLM255626.html
- Foote, K. J., Joy, M. K., & Death, R. G. (2015). New Zealand dairy farming: milking our environment for all its worth. *Environmental management*, 56, 709-720.
- Fraser, P. L., Ewers, R. M., & Cunningham, S. (2015). The ecological consequences of habitat loss and fragmentation in New Zealand and Australia. *Austral Ark: The State of Wildlife in Australia and New Zealand* (eds A. Stow, N. Maclean and G. Howell) pp. 45-64.
- Fryd, O., Pauleit, S., & Bühler, O. (2012). The role of urban green space and trees in relation to climate change. *CABI Reviews*, (2011), 1-18.
- Ganzevoort, W. van den Born, R., Halfman, W. and Turnhout, S. 2017. Sharing biodiversity data: citizen scientists' concerns and motivations. *Biodiversity & Conservation*, 26(12): 2821-2837. DOI: doi.org/10.1007/s10531-017-1391-z
- Gardner, T.A., von Hase, A., Brownlie, S., Ekstrom, J.M.M., Pilgrim, J.D., Savy, C.E. et al. (2013) Biodiversity offsets and the challenge of achieving no net loss. *Conservation Biology*, 27, 1254-1264.
- Garvey, P. M., Glen, A. S., Clout, M. N., Nichols, M., & Pech, R. P. (2022). Niche partitioning in a guild of invasive mammalian predators. *Ecological Applications*, 32(4), e2566.
- Glasson, J., Therivel, R., Chadwick, A. (2013). Introduction to environmental impact assessment. Routledge, Abingdon, UK.
- Gonzalez, A., Lawton, J. H., Gilbert, F. S., Blackburn, T. M., & Evans-Freke, I. (1998). Metapopulation dynamics, abundance, and distribution in a microecosystem. *Science*, 281(5385), 2045-2047.
- Gray, D., Scarsbrook, M. R., & Harding, J. S. (2006). Spatial biodiversity patterns in a large New Zealand braided river. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research*, 40(4), 631-642.
- Gray, K. (2012). The use of rongoā in contemporary physiotherapy: An exploratory study. Auckland, New Zealand: The Health Research Council of New Zealand.
- Greater Wellington Regional Council (2020) Managing adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity in the Wellington Region: A guide to implementing the effects management hierarchy in the Natural Resources Plan. Greater Wellington Regional Council, Wellington, NZ.
- Grimm, N.B., Faeth, S.H., Golubiewski, N.E., Redman, C.L., Wu, J., Bai, X. et al. (2008). Global change and the ecology of cities. *Science*, 319, 756-760
- Groom, M. J., Meffe, G. K., Carroll, C. R., & Andelman, S. J. (2006). Principles of conservation biology (No. Sirsi) i9780878935185). Sunderland: Sinauer associates.

- Haddad, N. M., Brudvig, L. A., Clobert, J., Davies, K. F., Gonzalez, A., Holt, R. D., ... & Townshend, J. R. (2015). Habitat fragmentation and its lasting impact on Earth's ecosystems. *Science advances*, 1(2), e1500052.
- Hanski, I. (1998). Metapopulation dynamics. *Nature*, 396(6706), 41–49.
- Harding M. Nature Heritage Fund and New Zealand Department of Conservation-Canterbury Conservancy (2009) Canterbury land protection strategy: a report to the Nature Heritage Fund Committee. Nature Heritage Fund, Wellington [N.Z.].
- Hare, K. M., Borrelle, S. B., Buckley, H. L., Collier, K. J., Constantine, R., Perrott, J. K., ... & Towns, D. R. (2019). Intractable: species in New Zealand that continue to decline despite conservation efforts. *Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand*, 49(3), 301–319.
- Harrington, L. J., & Frame, D. (2022). Extreme heat in New Zealand: a synthesis. *Climatic Change*, 174(1–2), 2.
- Harmsworth, G. (2002). Indigenous concepts, values and knowledge for sustainable development: New Zealand case studies. In 7th Joint Conference on the Preservation of Ancient Cultures and the Globalization Scenario. India (pp. 22–24).
- Harmsworth, G. R., Awatere, S. (2013). Indigenous Māori knowledge and perspectives of ecosystems. In: Dymond J ed. *Ecosystem services in New Zealand—conditions and trends*. Lincoln, Manaaki Whenua Press. Pp. 274–286.
- Hartig T, Mitchell R, de Vries S, Frumkin H. 2014. *Nature and Health*. Annu. Rev. Public Health 35:207–28.
- Heywood, V. H., & Watson, R. T. (1995). Introduction. In: (ed. V.H. Heywood) *Global biodiversity assessment* (Vol. 1140). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Head, N., and Given, D. (2001). Threatened plants of Canterbury including a revised species list. *Canterbury Botanical Society Journal*, 35.
- Heaviside, C., Macintyre, H., & Vardoulakis, S. (2017). The urban heat island: implications for health in a changing environment. *Current environmental health reports*, 4, 296–305.
- Helford, R. M. (2000). Constructing nature as constructing science: expertise, activist science and public conflict in the Chicago wilderness. In: Gobster, P. H.; Hull, R. B. ed. *Restoring Nature. Perspectives from the social sciences and humanities*. Washington DC, Island Press. Pp. 119–142.
- Hill, J. L., and P. J. Curran. (2003) Area, shape and isolation of tropical forest fragments: effects on tree species diversity and implications for conservation. *Journal of Biogeography* 30:1391–1403.
- Hilty, J. A., Keeley, A. T., Merenlender, A. M., & Lidicker Jr, W. Z. (2019). Corridor ecology: linking landscapes for biodiversity conservation and climate adaptation. Island Press. Washington, US.
- Hilty, J. A., Lidicker Jr., W. Z., & Merenlender, A. M. (2006). *Corridor Ecology: The Science and Practice of Linking Landscapes for Biodiversity Conservation*. Washington, Covelo, London: Island Press.
- Hilty, J., Worboys, G. L., Keeley, A., Woodley, S., Lausche, B., Locke, H., ... & Tabor, G. M. (2020). Guidelines for conserving connectivity through ecological networks and corridors. *Best practice protected area Guidelines Series*, 30, p-122.
- Holdaway, R. J., Wiser, S. K., and Williams, P. A. (2012). Status assessment of New Zealand's naturally uncommon ecosystems. *Conservation Biology* 26, 619–629.
- Hooper, D. U., Bignell, D. E., Brown, V. K., Brussard, L., Dangerfield, J. M., Wall, D. H., ... & Wolters, V. (2000). Interactions between Aboveground and Belowground Biodiversity in Terrestrial Ecosystems: Patterns, Mechanisms, and Feedbacks: We assess the evidence for correlation between aboveground and belowground diversity and conclude that a variety of mechanisms could lead to positive, negative, or no relationship—depending on the strength and type of interactions among species. *Bioscience*, 50(12), 1049–1061.
- Hu, W., Cichota, R., Beare, M., Müller, K., Drewry, J., & Eger, A. (2023). Soil structural vulnerability: Critical review and conceptual development. *Geoderma*, 430, 116346.
- Huang, Y., Tian, Z., Ke, Q., Liu, J., Irannezhad, M., Fan, D., ... & Sun, L. (2020). Nature-based solutions for urban pluvial flood risk management. *Wiley Interdisciplinary Reviews: Water*, 7(3), e1421.
- Hudson, M., Whaanga, H., Waiti, J., Maxwell, H., Davis, K., Arahanga, T. A., ... & Taitoko, M. (2020). Visualising Mātauranga Māori for iwi outcomes. *New Zealand Science Review*, 76(1–2), 42–48.
- Hulme, P. E. (2020). Plant invasions in New Zealand: global lessons in prevention, eradication and control. *Biological invasions*, 22(5), 1539–1562.
- Hunt, A., & Watkiss, P. (2011). Climate change impacts and adaptation in cities: a review of the literature. *Climatic change*, 104(1), 13–49.
- Hunter, S. B., zu Ermgassen, S. O. E., Downey, H., Griffiths, R. A., & Howe, C. (2021). Evidence shortfalls in the recommendations and guidance underpinning ecological mitigation for infrastructure developments. *Ecological Solutions and Evidence*, 2(3), e12089.
- Ignatieva, M., Haase, D., Dushkova, D., & Haase, A. (2020). Lawns in cities: from a globalised urban green space phenomenon to sustainable nature-based solutions. *Land*, 9(3), 73.
- Ignatieva, M., Meurk, C. D., Van Roon, M., Simcock, R., & Stewart, G. H. (2008). How to put nature into our neighbourhoods: Application of Low Impact Urban Design and Development (LIUDD) principles, with a biodiversity focus, for New Zealand developers and homeowners. *Landcare Research Science Series No.35*, Manaaki Whenua Press, Christchurch.
- IPCC (ed.) (2014). *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability. Part A: Global and Sectoral Aspects. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, USA: Cambridge University Press.
- İşik, K. (2011). Rare and endemic species: why are they prone to extinction? *Turkish Journal of Botany*, 35(4), 411–417.
- Jolly, D., & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group. (2013). *Mahaanui Iwi Management Plan*. Christchurch., from: mahaanui.kurataia.co.nz/wp-content/uploads/2019/08/Full-Plan.pdf
- Joseph, R., Benton, R. (Eds.), (2021). *Waking the Taniwha: Māori Governance in the 21st Century*. Wellington, Thomson Reuters NZ Ltd
- Kaval, P., Yao, R., & Scrimgeour, F. (2009). The economic value of biodiversity in New Zealand: results from a household survey. University of Waikato, Hamilton NZ.
- Keegan, L. J., White, R. S., & Macinnis-Ng, C. (2022). Current knowledge and potential impacts of climate change on New Zealand's biological heritage. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 46(1), 1–24.
- Kier G, Kreft H, Lee T M, Jetz W, Ibsch P L, Nowicki C, Mutke J and Barthlott W (2009) A global assessment of endemism and species richness across island and mainland regions. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 106, 9322–9327.
- Kiddle, G. L., Pedersen Zari, M., Blaschke, P., Chanse, V., & Kiddle, R. (2021). An Oceania urban design agenda linking ecosystem services, nature-based solutions, traditional ecological knowledge and wellbeing. *Sustainability*, 13(22), 12660.
- Krull, C. R., Galbraith, J. A., Glen, A. S., Nathan, H. W., Stow, A., Maclean, N., & Holwell, G. I. (2015). Invasive vertebrates in Australia and New Zealand. *Austral Ark*, 680.
- Laurance, W. F. (2005) When bigger is better: the need for Amazonian mega-reserves. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution* 20:645–648

- Lawton, J.H. (1999) Are there general laws in ecology? *Oikos*, 84, 177–192.
- Lawton, J.H., Brotherton, P.N.M., Brown, V.K., Elphick, C., Fitter, A.H., Forshaw, J., Haddow, R.W., Hilborne, S., Leaf, R.N., Mace, G.M., Southgate, M.P., Sutherland, W.J., Tew, T.E., Varley, J., & Wynne, G.R. (2010) Making Space for Nature: a review of England's wildlife sites and ecological network. Report to Defra, UK.
- Lawton, J.H., Brotherton, P.N.M., Brown, V.K., Elphick, C., Fitter, A.H., Forshaw, J., Haddow, R.W., Hilborne, S., Leaf, R.N., Mace, G.M., Southgate, M.P., Sutherland, W.J., Tew, T.E., Varley, J., & Wynne, G.R. (2020) Making Space for Nature: 10 years on. Retrieved from: nbn.org.uk/wp-content/uploads/2020/09/MakingSpaceforNature_10years_final.pdf
- Lee, D. E., Lee, W. G., and Mortimer, N. (2001) Where and why have all the flowers gone? Depletion and turnover in the New Zealand Cenozoic angiosperm flora in relation to palaeogeography and climate. *Australian Journal of Botany* 49, 341–356.
- Lee WG and Lee DE. (2015). *New Zealand – a land apart*. In: Stow A, Maclean N, and Holwell G (Eds). *Austral ark: the state of wildlife in Australia and New Zealand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Livingstone, P. G., Hancox, N., Nugent, G., & De Lisle, G. W. (2015). Toward eradication: the effect of *Mycobacterium bovis* infection in wildlife on the evolution and future direction of bovine tuberculosis management in New Zealand. *NZ veterinary journal*, 63(sup1), 4–18.
- Lin, B. B., Egerer, M. H., & Ossola, A. (2018). Urban gardens as a space to engender biophilia: evidence and ways forward. *Frontiers in Built Environment*, 4, 79.
- Local Government Act 2002. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2002/0084/latest/DLM170873.html
- Louv R. (2005) *Last Child in the Woods: Saving Our Children from Nature-Deficit Disorder*. Chapel Hill, NC, USA: Algonquin Books of Chapel Hill.
- Lyle, J. T. (2008). *Ecosystem Management*. In: *Conservation Biology*. Springer, Dordrecht.
- Macara, G. (2016) *The Climate and Weather of Canterbury*. 2nd Edition. In *NIWA Science and Technology Series Number 68*. NIWA, Canterbury NZ.
- Macara, G., John-Mark Woolley, Petra Pearce, Sanjay Wadiwa, Christian Zammit, Abha Sood, Scott Stephens (2020). *Climate change projections for the Canterbury Region*. NIWA. Wellington, New Zealand.
- MacArthur, R. H., & Wilson, E. O. (1963). An equilibrium theory of insular zoogeography. *Evolution*, 373–387.
- Mack, R. N., D. Simberloff, W. M. Lonsdale, H. Evans, M. Clout, and F. A. Bazzaz. 2000. Biotic invasions: causes, epidemiology, global consequences, and control. *Ecological Applications* 10:689–710.
- Maimaitiyming, M., Ghulam, A., Tiyp, T., Pla, F., Latorre-Carmona, P., Halik, Ü., ... & Caetano, M. (2014). Effects of green space spatial pattern on land surface temperature: Implications for sustainable urban planning and climate change adaptation. *ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing*, 89, 59–66.
- MacLeod, C. J., Tinkler, G., Gormley, A. M., & Spurr, E. B. (2012). Measuring occupancy for an iconic bird species in urban parks. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 36(3), 1–10.
- Manaaki Whenua – Landcare Research (2023). *Garden Bird Survey*. Retrieved from: gardenbirdsurvey.nz/, April 2023.
- Manaaki Whenua – Landcare research (2023a) *Smarter Targeting of Erosion Control (STEC)*. Retrieved from: landcareresearch.co.nz/discover-our-research/land/erosion-and-sediment-smarter-targeting-of-erosion-control/ May 2023.
- Manaaki Whenua – Landcare Research (2022). *Threatened Environment Classification in Our Environment*. Retrieved April 2023 from: ourenvironment.scinfo.org.nz/maps-and-tools/app/Habitats/lenz_tec
- Martin, E. A., Dainese, M., Clough, Y., Báldi, A., Bommarco, R., Gagic, V., ... Steffan-Dewenter, I. (2019). The interplay of landscape composition and configuration: New pathways to manage functional biodiversity and agroecosystem services across Europe. *Ecology Letters*, 22(7), 1083–1094. doi.org/10.1111/ele.13265
- Maron, M., Hobbs, R.J., Moilanen, A., Matthews, J.W., Christie, K., Gardner, T.A., Keith, D.A., Lindenmayer, D.B & McAlpine, C.A. (2012) *Faustian bargains? Restoration realities in the context of biodiversity offset policies*. *Biological Conservation*, 155, 141–148.
- Maseyk, F. J., Dominati, E. J., & Mackay, A. D. (2019). More than a'haie to have: integrating indigenous biodiversity into agroecosystems in New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 43(2), 1–12.
- Maseyk, F. J., Dominati, E. J., Death, R. G., & Mackay, A. D. (2022). Progressing the consideration of indigenous biodiversity in farm planning processes in New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Agricultural Research*, 65(6), 534–546.
- Maseyk, F., Ussher, G., Kessels, G., Christensen, M., & Brown, M. (2018). *Biodiversity Offsetting under the resource management Act: A guidance document*. Prepared for the Biodiversity Working Group on behalf of the BioManagers Group.
- McAllister, T., Hikuroa, D., & Macinnis-Ng, C. (2023). *Connecting Science to Indigenous Knowledge: kaitiakitanga, conservation, and resource management*. New Zealand Journal of Ecology, 47(1), 3521.
- McCarthy, M. P., Best, M. J., & Betts, R. A. (2010). Climate change in cities due to global warming and urban effects. *Geophysical research letters*, 37(9).
- McEwan, M., (1987) *Ecological regions and districts of New Zealand*. Department of Conservation. Wellington, New Zealand.
- McGlone, M., Duncan R., and Heenan P. (2001). Endemism, species selection and the origin and distribution of the vascular plant flora of New Zealand. *Journal of Biogeography* 28, 199–216.
- McGuire, A. (2018) *Regenerative Agriculture: Solid Principles, Extraordinary Claims*. Available at: csanr.wsu.edu/regen-ag-solid-principles-extraordinary-claims/ Retrieved May 2023.
- McLure, T., (2023) *Cyclone Gabrielle worst storm to hit New Zealand this century, says PM*. The Guardian, UK. Accessed February 2023 from: theguardian.com/world/2023/feb/13/cyclone-gabrielle-new-zealand-declares-national-state-of-emergency
- McLure, T., Graham-McLay, C. (2023) *New Zealand minister decries climate crisis 'lost decades' in wake of Cyclone Gabrielle*. The Guardian, UK. Accessed February 2023 from: theguardian.com/world/2023/feb/14/new-zealand-minister-delivers-furious-speech-about-lost-decades-spent-bickering-over-climate-crisis
- Merfield CN (2019) *An analysis and overview of regenerative agriculture*. Report number 2-2019. Lincoln, NZ: The BHU Future Farming Centre.
- Meurk C, Bellingham P J and Macmillan B. (1995). *The last kākūka landscape on the Canterbury Plains*. *Canterbury Botanical Society Journal* 29, 11–24.
- Meurk, C. D., Blaschke, P. M., & Simcock, R. (2013). *Ecosystem services in New Zealand cities. Ecosystem services in New Zealand: conditions and trends*. Manaaki Whenua Press, Lincoln, 254–273.
- Meurk, C. D., & Hall, G. M. (2006). Options for enhancing forest biodiversity across New Zealand's managed landscapes based on ecosystem modelling and spatial design. *New Zealand journal of ecology*, 131–146.
- Meurk C. (2008) *Vegetation of the Canterbury Plains and downlands. The natural history of Canterbury*. University of Canterbury Press, Christchurch, New Zealand, 195–250.
- Meurk, C. D., Sullivan, J., & McWilliam, W. (2016). *Vegetation history and dynamics in New Zealand: Future scenarios and improved trajectories towards restoring natural patterns. Vegetation structure and function at multiple spatial, temporal and conceptual scales*, 517–528.

- Meurk, C. D., Sullivan, J. J., Dawson, M. I., Butt, J., & Shanks, A. (2019) What do we do with the weeds of Canterbury? Emerging biosecurity risks for Canterbury's natural biota and timely responses. *Canterbury Botanical Society* 50 (38-54)
- MfE and Stats NZ (2019) *Environment Aotearoa 2015*. Ministry for the Environment & Statistics New Zealand: Wellington, New Zealand.
- MfE and Stats NZ (2019a) *Environment Aotearoa 2019 Glossary*. Retrieved February 2024 from: environment.govt.nz/assets/Publications/Files/EA2019-glossary.pdf
- MfE (2021). *Everyday guide to the Resource Management Act: Understanding national direction*. MfE, Wellington, New Zealand.
- MfE (2022). *National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity; Exposure Draft*. Ministry for the Environment, Wellington, New Zealand.
- MfE (2022a). *Resource management reform: the Natural and Built Environment Act One of three new laws that will replace the Resource Management Act 1991*. Te Kāwanatanga o Aotearoa New Zealand Government, Wellington. Retrieved from: environment.govt.nz/assets/publications/rm-reform-natural-and-built-environment-act.pdf
- MfE (2022b). *Adapt and thrive: Building a climate resilient New Zealand: Draft national adaptation plan: Managed retreat*. New Zealand Government, Wellington
- MfE (2022c). *Essential freshwater 2022 amendments*. Te Kāwanatanga o Aotearoa New Zealand Government, Wellington. Retrieved from: environment.govt.nz/news/essential-freshwater-2022-amendments/
- MfE (2023). *RM reform update - December 2023*. Seventeenth edition. Understanding the RMA and how to get involved. Te Kāwanatanga o Aotearoa New Zealand Government, Wellington. Retrieved January 2024 from: environment.govt.nz/news/rm-reform-update-december/
- MfE (2023a). *Changes to resource management. Retrieved February 2024 from: environment.govt.nz/what-government-is-doing/areas-of-work/rma/changes-to-resource-management/*
- Millennium Ecosystem Assessment. (2005). *Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Current State and Trends, Volume 1* (R. Hassan, R. Scholes, & N. Ash Eds.). Washington, United States of America: Island Press.
- Miller, C. L. (2003). *Measuring quality: the New Zealand experience*. *Built Environment* (1978-), 336-342.
- Million, D. (2013). *Therapeutic nations: Healing in an age of Indigenous human rights*. University of Arizona Press.
- Miskelly, C. M. (2018). *Changes in the forest bird community of an urban sanctuary in response to pest mammal eradications and endemic bird reintroductions*. *Notornis*, 65(3), 132-151.
- Mitchell, M. G., Bennett, E. M., & Gonzalez, A. (2015). *Strong and nonlinear effects of fragmentation on ecosystem service provision at multiple scales*. *Environmental Research Letters*, 10(9), 094014.
- Mittmermeier R, Gil P, Hoffman M, Pilgrim J, Brooks T, Mittermeier C, Lamoreux J and Da Fonseca G (2005) *Hotspots revisited: earth's biologically richest and most endangered terrestrial ecoregions*. Washington, DC: Conservation International.
- Ministry for the Environment. (2022). *Aotearoa New Zealand's first national adaptation plan*. Wellington. Ministry for the Environment.
- Monaghan, R. M., De Klein, C. A., & Muirhead, R. W. (2008). *Prioritisation of farm scale remediation efforts for reducing losses of nutrients and faecal indicator organisms to waterways: A case study of New Zealand dairy farming*. *Journal of environmental management*, 87(4), 609-622.
- Morrison, M. A., Lowe, M. L., Parsons, D. M., Usmar, N. R., & McLeod, I. M. (2009). *A review of land-based effects on coastal fisheries and supporting biodiversity in New Zealand*. New Zealand aquatic environment and biodiversity Report, 37, 100.
- Morse, H. (2022). *Modelling Endemic and Invasive Species' Biodiversity Corridors in the Southern North Island of Aotearoa New Zealand* (Doctoral dissertation, Open Access Te Herenga Waka-Victoria University of Wellington).
- Morton, G. (2023) *Hotter than Northland: West Coast's 'exceptional' marine heatwave breaks records*. NZ Herald, NZ. Accessed February 2023 from: nzherald.co.nz/hotter-than-northland-west-coasts-exceptional-marine-heatwave-breaks-records/GHI3J7Q66RHTLIGAA67P2DBH6U/
- Muller, N., Werner, P., & Kelcey, J. G. (Eds.). (2010). *Urban biodiversity and design*. John Wiley & Sons.
- Müller, N., Ignatieva, M., Nilon, C. H., Werner, P., & Zipperer, W. C. (2013). *Patterns and trends in urban biodiversity and landscape design. Urbanization, biodiversity and ecosystem services: challenges and opportunities: a global assessment*, 123-174.
- National Parks Act 1980. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1980/0066/latest/whole.html
- National Party (2023). *National's 100 day Action Plan*. Retrieved February 2024 from: assets.nationbuilder.com/nationalparty/pages/18431/attachments/original/1696107664/100_Day_Action_Plan.pdf?1696107664
- National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020. Retrieved from: [environment.govt.nz/publications/national-policy-statement-for-freshwater-management-2020-amended-january-2024/#:~:text=The%20National%20Policy%20Statement%20for,Management%202014%20\(amended%202017\).](https://environment.govt.nz/publications/national-policy-statement-for-freshwater-management-2020-amended-january-2024/#:~:text=The%20National%20Policy%20Statement%20for,Management%202014%20(amended%202017).)
- Native Plants Protection Act 1934. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1934/0015/latest/whole.html
- National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity, 2023. Retrieved from environment.govt.nz/assets/publications/biodiversity/National-Policy-Statement-for-Indigenous-Biodiversity.pdf
- Natural and Built Environment Act 2023. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2023/0046/latest/LMS501892.html
- Nemogá, Gabriel R., Amanda Appasamy, and Cora A. Romanow. (2022). *Protecting Indigenous and Local Knowledge Through a Biocultural Diversity Framework*. *The Journal of Environment & Development* 31.3, 223-252.
- Neuman, W. L. (2011). *Social research methods: Qualitative and quantitative approaches* (7th ed). Boston, MA: Pearson Education.
- New Zealand Parliament Pāremata Aotearoa (2023). *RMA reform at select committee stage*. Retrieved from parliament.nz/en/pb/sc/select-committee-news-archive/rma-reform-at-select-committee-stage/#:~:text=The%20Natural%20and%20Built%20Environment%20Bill%20aims%20to%20set%20out,primary%20replacement%20for%20the%20RMA,May,2023.
- Niemiec, R., Berl, R. E., Gonzalez, M., Teel, T., Salerno, J., Breck, S., ... & Crooks, K. (2022). *Rapid changes in public perception toward a conservation initiative*. *Conservation Science and Practice*, 4(4), e12632.
- Nienhuis, P.H. (2009). *The Natural Environment*. In: Boersema, J.J., Reijnders, L. (eds) *Principles of Environmental Sciences*. Springer, Dordrecht. doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4020-9158-2_10
- Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1998/0097/latest/DLM429090.html
- Nguyen, T. T., Meurk, C., Benavidez, R., Jackson, B., & Pahlow, M. (2021). *The effect of blue-green infrastructure on habitat connectivity and biodiversity: a case study in the Ōtākaro/Avon River catchment in Christchurch, New Zealand*. *Sustainability*, 13(12), 6732.
- Nimmo-Bell (2021) *Economic costs of pests to New Zealand*. Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry Biosecurity New Zealand Technical Paper no. 2009/31
- Norton D. A. (1988) *Managing for the long term*. *Forest & Bird* 19(2), 32-34

- Norton, D. A., Butt, J., & Bergin, D. O. (2018). Upscaling restoration of native biodiversity: A New Zealand perspective. *Ecological Management & Restoration*, 19, 26-35.
- Norton, D. A., Suryaningrum, F., Buckley, H. L., Case, B. S., Cochrane, C. H., Forbes, A. S., & Harcombe, M. (2020). Achieving win-win outcomes for pastoral farming and biodiversity conservation in New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 44(2), 1-9.
- Norton, D. A., Young, L. M., Byrom, A. E., Clarkson, B. D., Lyver, P. O. B., McGlone, M. S., & Waipara, N. W. (2016). How do we restore New Zealand's biological heritage by 2050? *Ecological management & restoration*, 17(3), 170-179.
- Noss, R. F., & Cooperrider, A. Y. (1994). *Saving Nature's Legacy: Protecting and Restoring Biodiversity*. Washington D.C., & Covelo, California: Island Press.
- Ondiviela, B., Losada, I. J., Lara, J. L., Maza, M., Galván, C., Bouma, T. J., et al. (2014). The role of seagrasses in coastal protection in a changing climate. *Coast. Eng.* 87, 158-168. doi: 10.1016/j.coastaleng.2013.11.005
- Orchard, S., & Schiel, D. R. (2021). Enabling nature-based solutions for climate change on a peri-urban sandspit in Christchurch, New Zealand. *Regional Environmental Change*, 21(3), 66.
- Owens, B. (2017). The big cull. *Nature*, 541(7636), 148-150.
- Overdyck, E., & Clarkson, B. D. (2012). Seed rain and soil seed banks limit native regeneration within urban forest restoration plantings in Hamilton City, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 177-190.
- Palmer, G., & Clarke, R. (2022). A new Natural Environment Act is Needed-Now. *Policy Quarterly*, 18(2), 3-9.
- Palmerston North City Council (2023). *Green Corridors*. Retrieved from: pncc.govt.nz/Community/Community-projects-and-programmes/Green-Corridors. April, 2023
- Parkes JP, Nugent G, Forsyth DM, Byrom AE, Pech RP, Warburton B, Choquenot D. (2017). Past, present and two potential futures for managing New Zealand's mammalian pests. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*. 41:151-161.
- Pascual, U., Adams, W. M., Díaz, S., Lele, S., Mace, G. M., & Turnhout, E. (2021). Biodiversity and the challenge of pluralism. *Nature Sustainability*, 4(7), 567-572.
- Pascual, U., Balvanera, P., Díaz, S., Pataki, G., Roth, E., Stenseke, M., et al. (2017). Valuing Nature's Contributions to People: the IPBES Approach. *Curr. Opin. Environ. Sustainability* 26-27, 7-16. doi:10.1016/j.coust.2016.12.006
- Pearson, S. (2008). The Conservation of Habitat and Landscape. In: *Conservation Biology*. Springer, Dordrecht.
- Pedersen Zari, M., MacKinnon, M., Varshney, K., & Bakshi, N. (2022). Regenerative living cities and the urban climate-biodiversity-wellbeing nexus. *Nature Climate Change*, 12(7), 601-604.
- Pereira, L., Davies, K, den Belder, E, Ferrier, S, Karlsson-Vinkhuyzen, S, Hyejin, K, Kuiper, J, Okayasu, S, Palomo, M, Pereira, H, Peterson, G, Sathyapalan, J, Schoolenberg, M, Alkemade, R, Ribeiro, S, Greenaway, A, Hauck, J, King, N, Lazarova, T, Ravera, F, Chettri, N, Cheung, W, Hendriks, R, Kolomytsev, G, Leadley, P, Metzger, J-P, Ninan, K, Pichs, R, Popp, A, Rondinini, C, Rosa, I, van Vuuren, D and Lundquist, C. (2020). Developing multiscale and integrative nature-people scenarios using the Nature Futures Framework. *People and Nature*, 2(4): 1172-1195. DOI: doi.org/10.1002/pan3.10146
- Peters, M. A., Hamilton, D., & Eames, C. (2015). Action on the ground: a review of community environmental groups' restoration objectives, activities and partnerships in New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 39(2), 179-189.
- Phalan, B., Hayes, G., Brooks, S., Marsh, D., Howard, P., Costelloe, B., ... & Whitaker, S. (2018). Avoiding impacts on biodiversity through strengthening the first stage of the mitigation hierarchy. *Oryx*, 52(2), 316-324.
- Picuno, P., Sica, C., Dimitrijevic, A., Tortora, A., Capobianco, R.L., Statuto, D. (2015). *New Technologies for the Sustainable Management and Planning of Rural Land and Environment*. In: Vastola, A. (eds) *The Sustainability of Agro-Food and Natural Resource Systems in the Mediterranean Basin*. Springer, Cham.
- Pollinator Paths. (2021). *A Path to a Better Future*. Retrieved from: pollinatorpaths.com/ April, 2023.
- Predator Free Wellington. (2023) *Our Project*. Retrieved from: pfw.org.nz/our-project/
- Priour, J. (2020). Critical warning! Preventing the multidimensional apocalypse on planet Earth. *Ecosystem services*, 45, 101161.
- QEII National Trust. (2008). *Magazine of the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust*, 72.
- Queen Elizabeth the second National Trust Act 1977. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1977/0102/latest/DLM8801.html
- Radford, J., Bennett, A. F., & MacRaid, L. (2004). How much habitat is enough? Planning for wildlife conservation in rural landscapes (pp. 8). Melbourne: Deakin University.
- Raihan, A., & Tuspekova, A. (2023). Towards net zero emissions by 2050: the role of renewable energy, technological innovations, and forests in New Zealand. *Journal of Environmental Science and Economics*, 2(1), 1-16.
- Randerson, T., and Resource Management Review Panel (2020). *New Directions for Resource Management in New Zealand*. Resource Management Review Panel, Wellington.
- Rayne, A., Byrnes, G., Collier-Robinson, L., Hollows, J., McIntosh, A., Ramsden, M., ... & Steeves, T. (2020). Centring Indigenous knowledge systems to re-imagine conservation translocations.
- Razzaghamanesh, M., Beecham, S., & Salemi, T. (2016). The role of green roofs in mitigating Urban Heat Island effects in the metropolitan area of Adelaide, South Australia. *Urban Forestry & Urban Greening*, 15, 89-102.
- Reserves Act 1977. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1977/0066/latest/DLM444305.html
- Resource Management Act 1991. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1991/0069/latest/DLM230265.html
- Resource Management (Natural and Built Environment and Spatial Planning Repeal and Interim Fast-track Consenting) Bill. legislation.govt.nz/bill/government/2023/0008/latest/d162906e2.html
- Richardson, M., Passmore, H., Barbett, L., Lumber, R., Thomas, R and Hunt, R. 2020. The green care code: How nature connectedness and simple activities help explain pro-nature conservation behaviours. *People and Nature*, 2(3): 821-839. DOI: doi.org/10.1002/pan3.10117
- Ricklefs, R., Naveh, Z. & Turner, R. (1984) *Conservation of ecological processes*. IUCN: International Union for Conservation of Nature. The Environmentalist, Volume 4, Supplement 8.
- Rodríguez-Rodríguez, D., & Martínez-Vega, J. (2022). Human Impact on the Biosphere: A Contemporary Ecocide. In *Effectiveness of Protected Areas in Conserving Biodiversity: A Worldwide Review* (pp. 1-10). Cham: Springer International Publishing.
- Rogers, G. M., Courtney, S. P., & Heenan, P. B. (2018). The calcicolous vascular flora of New Zealand. *Science for Conservation Report* (331), Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand.
- Roper-Lindsay, J., Fuller S.A., Hooson, S., Sanders, M.D., Ussher, G.T. (2018). *Ecological impact assessment*. EIANZ guidelines for use in New Zealand: terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems. 2nd edition.
- Ruru, J., O'Lyver, P. B., Scott, N., & Edmunds, D. (2017). Reversing the decline in New Zealand's biodiversity: empowering Māori within reformed conservation law. *Policy Quarterly*, 13(2).
- Russell, J. C., Innes, J. G., Brown, P. H., & Byrom, A. E. (2015). Predator-free New Zealand: conservation country. *BioScience*, 65(5), 520-525.

- Salata, F., Golasi, I., de Lieto Vollaro, A., & de Lieto Vollaro, R. (2015). How high albedo and traditional buildings' materials and vegetation affect the quality of urban microclimate. A case study. *Energy and Buildings*, 99, 32-49.
- Sandbrook, C., Gómez-Baggethun, E., & Adams, W. M. (2022). Biodiversity conservation in a post-COVID-19 economy. *Oryx*, 56(2), 277-283.
- Saunders, A., Towns, D., Broome, K., Horn, S., Neureuter, S., Conomos, K., ... & Bryant, S. (2021). Social dimensions in island restoration: some case studies from Aotearoa-New Zealand. *Pacific Conservation Biology*.
- Scarsbrook, M. R., Barquín, J., & Gray, D. P. (2007). *New Zealand coldwater springs and their biodiversity* (Vol. 278). Wellington: Department of Conservation.
- Seabrook-Davidson, M. N., & Brunton, D. H. (2014). Public attitude towards conservation in New Zealand and awareness of threatened species. *Pacific Conservation Biology*, 20(3), 286-295.
- Seddon, N., Turner, B., Berry, P., Chausson, A., & Girardin, C. A. J. (2019). Grounding nature-based climate solutions in sound biodiversity science. *Nature Climate Change*, 9, 84-87. doi.org/10.1038/s41558-019-0405-0
- Shahmohamadi, P., Che-Ani, A. I., Etessam, I., Maulud, K. N. A., & Tawil, N. M. (2011). Healthy environment: the need to mitigate urban heat island effects on human health. *Procedia Engineering*, 20, 61-70.
- Sills, M. J., & Carrow, R. N. (1983). Turfgrass Growth, N Use, and Water Use under Soil Compaction and N Fertilization 1. *Agronomy Journal*, 75(3), 488-492.
- Soulé, M. E., & Terborgh, J. (Eds.). (1999). *Continental Conservation: Scientific Foundations of Regional Reserve Networks*. Washington D.C. & Covelo, California: Island Press.
- Sparrow, M. (2015) *Canterbury Water Management Strategy: Waimakariri Zone Socio-Economic Profile*. Environment Canterbury and Waimakariri District Council.
- Sparrow, M., Taylor, N. (2019) *Waimakariri Land and Water Solutions Programme: Options and Solutions Assessment*. Technical Report to Environment Canterbury.
- Spatial Planning Act 2023. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/2023/0047/latest/LMS545761.html
- Standish, R. J., Robertson, A. W., & Williams, P. A. (2001). The impact of an invasive weed *Tradescantia fluminensis* on native forest regeneration. *Journal of Applied Ecology*, 38(6), 1253-1263.
- Stats NZ Tatauranga Aotearoa (2021). *Agricultural and horticultural land use*. Retrieved from: stats.govt.nz/indicators/agricultural-and-horticultural-land-use
- Stats NZ Tatauranga Aotearoa (2021a). *New Report Shows Impact of Demands on Land in New Zealand*. Retrieved from: stats.govt.nz/news/new-report-shows-impact-of-demands-on-land-in-new-zealand/
- Stats NZ Tatauranga Aotearoa, (2023). *Waimakariri District*. Retrieved from: stats.govt.nz/tools/2018-census-place-summaries/waimakariri-district#more-data-and-information
- Stein, A., Gerstner, K., & Kreft, H. (2014). Environmental heterogeneity as a universal driver of species richness across taxa, biomes and spatial scales. *Ecology letters*, 17(7), 866-880.
- Stewart, G. H., Ignatieva, M. E., Meurk, C. D., Buckley, H., Horne, B., & Braddick, T. (2009). Urban biotopes of Aoteroa New Zealand (URBANZ) (I): Composition and diversity of temperate urban lawns in Christchurch. *Urban Ecosystems*, 12, 233-248
- Stewart, G. H., Ignatieva, M. E., & Meurk, C. D. (2010). Multivariate approaches to the study of urban biodiversity and vegetation: An example from a southern temperate colonial city, Christchurch, New Zealand. In N. Müller, P. Werner, & J. Kelcey (Eds.), *Urban biodiversity & design* (pp. 291-307). Hoboken: Wiley-Blackwell.
- Stronge, D. C., Greenaway, A., Kannemeyer, R. L., & Howard, C. (2023). *Reframing well-being: Lessons from Aotearoa New Zealand's first wave COVID-19 response*. Asia Pacific Viewpoint.
- Sullivan, J. J., Meurk, C., Whaley, K. J., & Simcock, R. (2009). Restoring native ecosystems in urban Auckland: urban soils, isolation, and weeds as impediments to forest establishment. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 60-71.
- Taormina, B. (2019). *Potential impacts of submarine power cables from marine renewable energy projects on benthic communities* (Doctoral dissertation, Brest).
- Taituarā (2023). *Incoming Government Coalition Agreements*. Taituarā, Wellington, NZ.
- Tapper, N. J., Tyson, P. D., Owens, I. F., & Hastie, W. J. (1981). Modeling the winter urban heat island over Christchurch, New Zealand. *Journal of Applied Meteorology and Climatology*, 20(4), 365-376.
- Te Ahukaramū Charles Royal. (2005). *Māori-Pre-European society*. Te Ara-the Encyclopaedia of New Zealand.
- Te Ara Kakariki (2023) *Greendots*. Accessed February 2023 from: kakariki.org.nz/greendots/
- Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu. (2024). *Ngāi Tūhauriri*. Retrieved January 2024 from: ngaitahu.iwi.nz/ngai-tahu/papatipu-runanga/ngai-tuauriri/
- ten Kate K, Bishop J, Bayon R (2004) *Biodiversity offsets: views, experience and the business case*. IUCN, Gland, Switzerland and Insight Investment, London, UK
- Timoti, P., Lyver, P. O. B., Matamua, R., Jones, C. J., & Tahī, B. L. (2017). A representation of a Tuawhenua worldview guides environmental conservation. *Ecology and Society*, 22(4).
- Tischendorf, L., Grez, A., Zaviezo, T., & Fahrig, L. (2005). Mechanisms affecting population density in fragmented habitat. *Ecology and Society*, 10(1).
- Townsend, A. J., de Lange, P. J., Duffy, C. A., Miskelly, C. M., Molloy, J., & Norton, D. A. (2008). *New Zealand threat classification system manual*. Department of Conservation, Wellington, 16, 2008-11.
- Trade in Endangered Species Act 1989. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1989/0018/latest/DLM145966.html
- Treweek, J., & Thompson, S. (1997). A review of ecological mitigation measures in UK environmental statements with respect to sustainable development. *The International Journal of Sustainable Development & World Ecology*, 4(1), 40-50.
- Trussell, P., Brandt, A., & Knapp, S. (1981). Science as a way of knowing. *Journal of Nursing Administration*, 37-40.
- Tschamtké, T., Klein, A. M., Kruess, A., Steffan-Dewenter, I., & Thies, C. (2005). Landscape perspectives on agricultural intensification and biodiversity-ecosystem service management. *Ecology letters*, 8(8), 857-874.
- UNESCO (2021). *Local and Indigenous Knowledge Systems (LINKS)*. Retrieved January 2024 from: en.unesco.org/links#:~:text=Local%20and%20indigenous%20knowledge%20refers,day%20to%20day%20life
- van der Plas, F. (2019). Biodiversity and ecosystem functioning in naturally assembled communities. *Biological Reviews*, doi.org/10.1111/brv.12499
- von Hase, A., & ten Kate, K. (2017). *Correct framing of biodiversity offsets and conservation: A response to Apostolopoulou & Adams*. *Oryx*, 51, 32-34. doi:10.1017/S0030605316001022
- Walker S, Price R, Rutledge D, Stephens R T T and Lee W G. (2006). Recent loss of indigenous cover in New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology* 30, 169-177.
- Walker, S., Bellingham, P. J., Kaine, G., Richardson, S., Greenhalgh, S., Simcock, R., ... & Lee, W. G. (2021). What effects must be avoided, remediated or mitigated to maintain indigenous biodiversity?. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 45(2), 1-12.

- Wardle, P. (1991) *Vegetation of New Zealand*. Cambridge University Press, UK.
- Waimakariri District Council (2015). Neighbourhood Reserves Management Plan 2015. Retrieved February 2024 from: waimakariri.govt.nz/_data/assets/pdf_file/0026/14759/WaimakaririDistrictCouncilNeighbourhoodReservesManagementPlanFebruary2015.pdf
- Waimakariri District Council (2021) 2018 Waimakariri District Profile. Waimakariri District Council, Canterbury NZ.
- Waimakariri District Council (2021). Partnering for Environmental Action: Notes from the Natural Environmental Forum. Waimakariri District Council, Rangiora.
- Waimakariri District Council (2023) Proposed Waimakariri District Plan. Retrieved February 2024 from: waimakariri.isoplan.co.nz/draft/0/226#
- Waimakariri Water Zone Committee. (2018). Zone Implementation Programme Addendum. Waimakariri Water Zone Committee.
- Waimakariri Zone Committee (n.d.) Waimakariri Zone Implementation Programme. Environment Canterbury, Christchurch.
- Wallace, P. (2015). The reduced effect of international conservation agreements: A New Zealand case study. *Journal of Environmental Law*, 27(3), 489-516.
- Wallace, K. J., & Clarkson, B. D. (2019). Urban forest restoration ecology: a review from Hamilton, New Zealand. *Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand*, 49(3), 347-369.
- Wallace, P., & Fluker, S. (2015). Protection of threatened species in New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Environmental Law*, 19, 179-205.
- Waters J. M., and Craw D. (2006) Goodbye Gondwana? New Zealand biogeography, geology, and the problem of circularity. *Systematic Biology* 55, 351-356.
- Watson, C. J., Carignan-Guillemette, L., Turcotte, C., Maire, V., & Proulx, R. (2020). Ecological and economic benefits of low-intensity urban lawn management. *Journal of Applied Ecology*, 57(2), 436-446.
- Watts, S. (2023) COP28 National Statement for New Zealand. Retrieved February 2024 from: beehive.govt.nz/speech/cop28-national-statement-new-zealand
- Wehi, P. M., Beggs, J. R., & McAllister, T. G. (2019). Ka mua, ka muri. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 43(3), 1-8.
- Weidong, G., Heikkilä, R. and Hanski, I. (2002). Estimating the consequences of habitat fragmentation on extinction risk in dynamic landscapes. *Landscape Ecol.* 17: 699-710.
- Wild Animal Control Act 1977 legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1977/0111/40.0/DLM16623.html
- Wildlife Act 1953. legislation.govt.nz/act/public/1953/0031/latest/whole.html
- Willis, T. J., Handley, S. J., Chang, F. H., Law, C. H., Morrisey, D. J., Mullan, A. B., Pinkerton, M., Rodgers, K.L., Sutton, P.J.H., Tait, A. (2007). Climate Change and the New Zealand marine environment. NIWA, Nelson, New Zealand.
- Wells, J. E., Oakley Browne, M. A., Scott, K. M., McGee, M. A., Baxter, J., Kokaua, J., & Team, N. Z. M. H. S. R. (2006). Te Rau Hinengaro: The New Zealand mental health survey: Overview of methods and findings. *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry*, 40(10), 835-844
- Whitau, K., Kelly, D., Galloway, T. N., MacFarlane, A. E., van Vianen, J. C., Rossignaud, L., & Doherty, K. J. (2023). Effects of altitude, seedfall and control operations on rat abundance in South Island Nothofagus forests 1998–2016. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 47(1), 3502.
- Whitburn, J., Linklater, W., & Abrahamse, W. (2020). Meta-analysis of human connection to nature and proenvironmental behavior. *Conservation biology*, 34(1), 180-193.
- Williams, P. A. (2006). The role of blackbirds (*Turdus merula*) in weed invasion in New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 285-291.
- Williams, N. S., Lundholm, J., & Scott MacIvor, J. (2014). Do green roofs help urban biodiversity conservation?. *Journal of applied ecology*, 51(6), 1643-1649.
- Winterbourn M, Knox G, Burrows C and Marsden I. (2008). *The natural history of Canterbury*. Canterbury University Press, Christchurch.
- Wiser, S.K.; Buxton, R.P.; Clarkson, B.R.; Hoare, R.J.B.; Holdaway, R.J.; Richardson, S.J.; Smale, M.C.; West, C.; Williams, P.A. (2013). New Zealand's naturally uncommon ecosystems. In Dymond JR ed. *Ecosystem services in New Zealand – conditions and trends*. Manaaki Whenua Press, Lincoln, New Zealand. Pp. 49-61.
- Xu, Q., Yang, X., Yan, Y., Wang, S., Loreau, M., & Jiang, L. (2021). Consistently positive effect of species diversity on ecosystem, but not population, temporal stability. *Ecology Letters*, 24(10), 2256-2266
- Young, R. (2014) Farmer 'destroyed' protected bush. *Stuff Online - stuff.co.nz/the-press/news/north-canterbury/9781362/Farmer-destroyed-protected-bush*

Appendix A

Glossary

Aquatic habitats - freshwater habitats like lakes, rivers, streams, wetlands, and coastal estuaries etc.

Ara tawhito - ancestral trails (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Biodiversity - the diversity found within species, between species and of ecosystems (Pascual *et al.*, 2021).

Climate - informally, the average weather over a period ranging from months to thousands or millions of years. In more formal terms, a statistical description of the mean and variability of quantities, usually of surface variables such as temperature, precipitation and wind, averaged over a period (typically 30 years, as defined by the World Meteorological Organisation). More broadly, climate is the state, including a statistical description, of the climate system (MfE, 2022b).

Climate Change - a change of climate that is attributed directly or indirectly to human activity that alters the composition of the global atmosphere and that is in addition to natural climate variability observed over comparable time periods (RMA, 1991).

Climate Resilience - the ability to anticipate, prepare for and respond to the impacts of a changing climate, including the impacts that

we can anticipate and the impacts of extreme events. It involves planning now for sea-level rise and more frequent flooding. It is also about being ready to respond to extreme events such as forest fires or extreme floods, and to trends in precipitation and temperature that emerge over time such as droughts (MfE, 2022b).

Ecological District – a geographical area which is distinct from others in New Zealand on the basis of the ecological factors including climate, soils, topography, geology, fauna and flora.

Ecological integrity – the extent to which an ecosystem can maintain its composition, structure and functioning.

Ecological function – the physical, chemical, biological and ecological flows within an ecosystem that help to maintain the integrity.

Ecosystem – the complete composition of biological organisms and their interactions with their abiotic environment.

Ecosystem services - the key provisions gained from ecosystems which can be divided into four: provisioning which includes the supply of consumables such as mahinga kai, food, timber, biochemicals; regulating relating to services such as climate, air quality and water regulation as well as pest and disease; supporting indicating primary

production, soil formation and nutrient cycling; and cultural services which provide a sense of place, spirituality, recreation and aesthetic values.

Environment - the surroundings or conditions in which a person, animal or plant lives or operates (Oxford Dictionary).

Exotic/Introduced/Non-indigenous species - species that have been brought to New Zealand by humans, whether intentionally or unintentionally. (Department of Conservation, 2020).

Fragmentation – the loss of habitat which leads to a loss of connection and a disjoint between species populations.

Green Infrastructure - means a natural or semi-natural area, feature or process, including engineered systems that mimic natural processes, which are planned or managed to:

- provide for aspects of ecosystem health or resilience, such as maintaining or improving the quality of water, air or soil, and habitats to promote biodiversity; and
- provide services to people and communities, such as stormwater or flood management or climate change adaptation.

(National Planning Standard definition, found in Waimakariri Proposed District Plan, 2023).

Habitat – the physical place where a species population or community resides for part or all of its life cycle or utilises for certain functional needs such as breeding or feeding.

Hapū - sub-tribe (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Indigenous biodiversity - all plants and animals that occur naturally in New Zealand and have evolved without any assistance from humans and includes the variability among these organisms and the ecological complexes of which they are part. It includes diversity within species, between species, and of ecosystems, and includes their related indigenous biodiversity values (Waimakariri Proposed District Plan, 2023).

Indigenous Species – a species that occurs naturally in Aotearoa New Zealand (Department of Conservation, 2020).

Iwi -tribe (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Kaitiaki - iwi, hapū or whānau group with the responsibility of kaitiakitanga (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Kaupapa - theme, policy (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Kōrero pūrākau - oral traditions (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Mahinga kai - food and other resources, and the areas they are sourced from (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Mana - respect, dignity, influence (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Manaakitanga - hospitality, kindness (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Mana whenua - customary authority, those who have customary authority (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Mātauranga - knowledge (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Mauri - the essential life force of all things, spiritual essence (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Montane habitat – ecosystems found on the sides of mountains.

Natural environment - nature is a holistic term that encompasses the living environment (te taiao), which includes all living organisms and the ecological processes that sustain them. By this definition, people are a key part of nature (Department of Conservation, 2020).

Nature-based Solutions - solutions that are inspired and supported by nature, cost effective and simultaneously provide environmental, social and economic benefits and help build resilience (Department for Conservation, 2020).

Pā - fortified settlement site (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Papatipu Rūnanga - marae based councils, administering the affairs of the hapū (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Remnant - vegetation or animal populations or communities which are diminished from their former size because of the influence of man (McEwan, 1987).

Resilience – the ability of an ecosystem to withstand or recover from disturbances maintaining a strong degree of ecosystem integrity.

Restoration – active intervention to assist with the recovery of a degraded, disturbed or modified area in order to retain a more natural state. Restoration can be applied to composition, processes or functions.

Riparian – any vegetated strip of land which extends along streams, rivers and the banks of lakes and wetlands and is therefore the interface between terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems (Waimakariri Proposed District Plan, 2023).

Rongoā - medicinal plants (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Scenic Reserve - as defined in the Reserves Act 1977, an area protected for the scenic interest, beauty and intrinsic worth.

SNA (Significant Natural Area) – land which has been identified through assessment outlined in section 6 of the Resource Management Act 1991 to contain significant indigenous vegetation, habitat or species populations and composition.

Sustainable Development - the ability to meet the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs (Brundtland, 1987).

TāngataWhenua - a people of the land; the iwi or hapū who hold manawhenua over an area (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Takiwā - region, tribal or hapū traditional territory (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Taonga - treasures (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Terrestrial – land above the mean high-water springs but excluding land covered by water or wetlands as described by the NPSFW.

Threatened species – species listed on the New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual (Andrew J Townsend, Peter J de Lange, Clinton A J Duffy, Colin Miskelly, Janice Molloy and David A Norton, 2008, Science & Technical Publishing, Department of Conservation, Wellington), available at: doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-and-technical/sap244.pdf, or its current successor publication.

Tikanga - customary values and practices (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Tohunga - experts (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Trophic Level Index - An indication of the level of nutrient enrichment (excessive amounts of nutrients) of a lake, based on the growth of plants and algae (MfE & Stats NZ, 2019).

Tūpuna - ancestors (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Tūrangawaewae - a person's right to stand on particular land and be heard on matters affecting that place and their relationship to it (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Wāhi taonga - places and things that are treasured and valued (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Wāhi tapu - places and things that are sacred (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Whakapapa - genealogy, cultural identity (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Whakatauki - proverb (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).

Whenua - land (Jolly & Ngā Papatipu Rūnanga Working Group, 2013).



215 High Street
Private Bag 1005
Rangiora 7440, New Zealand
Phone 0800 965 468
waimakairiri.govt.nz

240606091607



Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy





Our Environment - Our Future Summary



Vision

Our healthy and resilient natural environment sustains our ecosystems, our communities and our future.

Photo Credit: David Baird

Vision		Our healthy and resilient natural environment sustains our ecosystems, our communities and our future.					
Strategic Goal		We work together to ensure Waimakariri's natural environment is valued, protected, restored and celebrated.					
	Strategic Direction 1 Prioritise nature		Strategic Direction 2 Connect people and nature		Strategic Direction 3 Improve our knowledge		Strategic Direction 4 Sustain and create resilient ecosystems
Desired Outcome The District's natural environment is valued as critical infrastructure, essential to our wellbeing, and the survival of other species we share Earth with. Natural ecosystems are a significant feature of the Waimakariri District. There is better integration of the natural and built environment.		Desired Outcomes Living in a healthy natural environment enriches our everyday life and we work together to achieve and maintain this. People understand and value indigenous biodiversity and natural ecosystems. Residents have a 'sense of place' or connectedness to the District's natural landscape. Our community understands how it can contribute to and become actively involved in protecting, restoring, and recreating natural ecosystems.		Desired Outcomes Tangata Whenua knowledge and practices are recognised, respected and encouraged. We have the knowledge to effectively protect and restore our natural ecosystems.		Desired Outcome The District's natural ecosystems are self-sustaining, healthy, resilient, and connected from the mountains to the sea. A greater proportion of vegetation cover in the District is indigenous. There is no further loss or degradation of Significant Natural Areas (SNAs). Urban vegetation, including street trees, is valued by the community as making a significant contribution to urban resilience, human health, and environmental sustainability.	
Strategic Actions Integrate planning <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Increase the circle of influence in infrastructure and district planning• Advocate for a holistic approach Mainstream biodiversity <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ensure biodiversity is prioritised as a key Council activity• Move from grey to green• Create spaces for nature		Strategic Actions Make it easy to connect <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Provide opportunities to bring together people and biodiversity.• Ensure education programmes, activities, and resources are available.• Look for opportunities to partner with and support others.• Encourage people to physically connect with the natural environment. Rediscover and make our indigenous landscape visible <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Increase the proportion of indigenous planting on Council reserves and streetscapes.• Support the achievement of 10% indigenous biodiversity in the wider landscape.		Strategic Actions Know what we have <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Continue the assessment, monitoring, and reporting of biodiversity values on public and private land. Understand future challenges <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Carry out research, and work with research partners, community groups and landowners to fill knowledge gaps and understand challenges• Identify the impacts of key trends on the natural environment.		Strategic Actions Protect what we have <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Implement a climate change natural environment mitigation and adaptation programme.• Reduce the pressure in high value indigenous ecosystems by improving the wider environment.• Provide support for SNA landowners and incentivise SNA protection. Rebuild nature - more, bigger, better, and joined <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MORE - Create new natural environment sites to provide for future wellbeing.• BIGGER - Increase the size of existing indigenous flora and fauna sites.• BETTER - Improve the quality of the natural environment by better habitat management and promoting fauna-friendly practices.• JOINED - Enhance connections between, or join up sites.	
Guiding Principles		Lead by example Engage with others Use best practice Commit to action					

About the Strategy

The Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy (WNES) is Council's local response to the degradation of important natural ecosystems and species being reported across the world, including within our District.

Current global biodiversity loss is so great it is called the 'sixth extinction'. The biodiversity crisis and the climate crisis are acknowledged to be closely linked and healthy and diverse ecosystems can adjust more effectively to climate threats. The contribution nature-based solutions can make to buffering climate impacts by sequestering carbon and protecting built up areas is also reflected in the strategy.

All aspects of life in Aotearoa New Zealand rely on a thriving natural environment including our physical and mental health, economy, and culture. This strategy seeks to restore our connection to the natural world we are a part of so that we feel inspired to better protect it. We need to prioritise the protection and restoration of the natural environment not only for the ecosystems benefits it provides us and those who follow, but also for its own intrinsic worth. A world without dolphins, kiwi, tuatara and Kauri trees seems unimaginable but could become a possibility.

The strategy takes into account strategic directions outlined in the Local Government Act 2002 (4 wellbeing), National Adaptation Plan, National

Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity, Aotearoa Biodiversity Strategy and others. It also complements the work of other organisations such as Environment Canterbury's Zone Implementation Plan Addendum (ZIPA), Forest and Bird's 'Make Every Wetland Count' campaign, QEII Trust and the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust.

The strategy currently consists of three documents plus a summary document which should be read in conjunction with one another.

Background documents



A Biodiversity SOE report describes the current state of indigenous biodiversity within the District and the challenges and opportunities foreseen over the next 30 years. It also provides an overview of biodiversity concepts and relevant legislation.

A review of Council reserve provision also informs the strategy. This will form part of a Reserves SOE report that identifies opportunities, in collaboration with local residents, for increasing natural values in reserves and streetscapes.

Strategy

Provides a high-level strategic framework to guide Council's work in protecting and restoring the natural environment over the next 30 years.

Roles range from developing plans and carrying out the work, to supporting the efforts of others, educating people about the issues and opportunities, and advocating for change, both at a national and local level.

Action plan

Contains specific costed actions to be included in the Council's Long Term Plan for implementation between 2024 and 2034.



Purpose

The Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy provides direction for the Council's future investment in protecting and enhancing natural ecosystems within the District, particularly its own business, plans and practices. It:

- Gives effect to international agreements and national legislation to protect indigenous biodiversity and mitigate/adapt to the effects of climate change
- Allows for kaitiakitanga and stewardship for future generations
- Enhances the natural values of Council's extensive reserve portfolio and other land owned and/or managed by the Council
- Recognises and supports the cultural practices of Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga
- Recognises and supports landowners as stewards for the natural environment, particularly those who have significant natural areas (SNAs) on their land
- Supports community organisations who are actively engaged in delivering the desired outcomes of this strategy.

White Road Reserve, Ohoka
This gravel extraction pit was developed as a wetland by the local community in the 1990's and now provides an important feeding and roosting area for waders and protected waterfowl such as Grey Teal, Scaup and Brown Teal.



Matawai Park, Rangiora
Designed in the 1970's and developed by passionate and knowledgeable locals, this nationally recognised Scenic Reserve is an excellent example of the indigenous vegetation habitats found within the District.



Why it matters

The natural world provides us with clean air and water, food, medicines, energy, materials, recreation, creative inspiration and a sense of place. This means our wellbeing and the wellbeing of those who follow us relies on the Earth's ability to sustain its life-supporting processes.



"Maintaining planetary health is essential for human and societal health and a pre-condition for climate-resilient development."

IPCC Chair, 2nd World Ocean Summit Asia-Pacific 2022

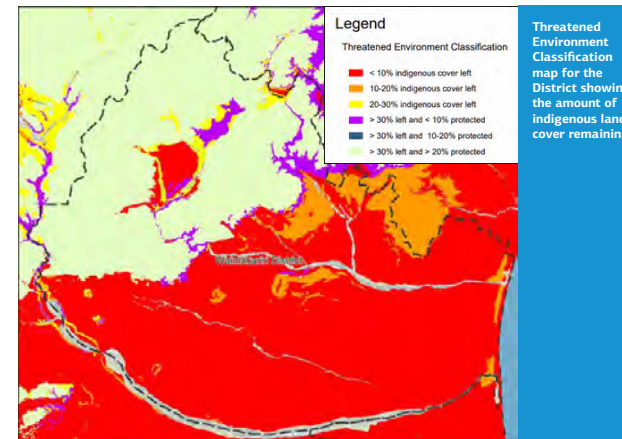
In Aotearoa New Zealand

10% of wetlands remained in 2010 compared to pre-human existence.

More than 3,200 of our known indigenous species are **threatened or at risk of extinction** partly due to habitat loss.

MFE briefing for incoming ministers November 2023

Transforming our relationship with nature is the key to a sustainable future.



Threatened Environment Classification map for the District showing the amount of indigenous land cover remaining.

We need to reclaim our unique identity by protecting what remains and recreating degraded and lost ecosystems.

Jewelled gecko

The Waimakariri is home to the threatened and stunning green jewelled gecko, *Naultinus gemmeus*. It can be found in trees or on the ground, in a range of habitats including forests, kanuka shrublands and tussock grasslands.



This map shows over half of the Waimakariri District has less than 10% indigenous cover left, reducing to less than 0.5% in some areas. Much of the indigenous biodiversity in the District is contained within small and fragmented sites that are "acutely threatened".

Entire ecosystems can collapse below a 10% threshold, putting our indigenous flora and fauna, and the ecosystem services they provide, at

significant risk. Extreme weather events and shifting climatic zones can also cause local extinctions.

Planting new sites is expensive and they take a long time to mature. The protection and expansion of our naturally occurring, rare and special ecosystems is extremely important as it is difficult to reproduce the unique character and richness of the habitat that has been lost.

The Vision 2023–2053

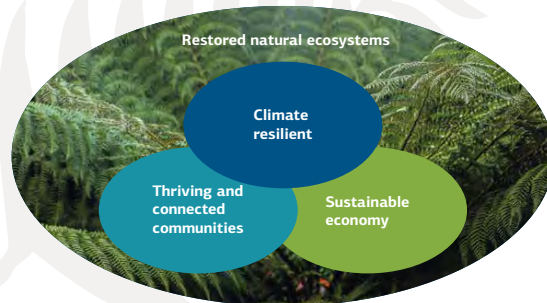
In 2001 the Council adopted a strategy for the District called Vision 2020. This document contained a vision for 'a high-quality natural environment' where natural ecosystems were a significant feature of the District and the land, water and air were healthy. A key strategic action was to 'preserve natural ecosystems' by:

- Supporting Kaitiakitanga – the duty of the tangata whenua to safeguard the life supporting capacity of the community's natural resources
- Recognising that biodiversity is a highly valued resource
- Recognising the vulnerability of natural resources
- Identifying, protecting, and where appropriate restoring, and/or enhancing
 - Waterways and wetlands
 - Significant remnant native vegetation
 - Natural ecosystems
 - Significant habitats for indigenous fauna.

More than 20 years later these actions are still relevant with the need to protect our natural environment and indigenous biodiversity ecosystems even more important due to increased

pressures from population growth, land use change and climate change. The vision for the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy recognises the interrelationship between a healthy environment and thriving, healthy communities, and the need for us all to work together to

achieve this. The implementation plan that gives effect to this strategy demonstrates Council's commitment to being a leader in the protection and enhancement of our natural environment, while working in partnership with, and actively supporting our community on the journey.



Vision	Our healthy and resilient natural environment sustains our ecosystems, our communities and our future.
Strategic Goal	We work together to ensure Waimakariri's natural environment is valued, protected, restored and celebrated.

Guiding principles

The following principles underpin this strategy and guide its implementation.

Guiding Principles | Lead by example | Engage with others | Use best practice | Commit to action

Key themes

The following four key focus areas have been identified for the strategy.



Strategic Direction 1 Prioritise nature

This focus area is about recognising nature is core to our identity, lifestyle, wellbeing and economy and making space for it to thrive in our built-up and productive environments.



Strategic Direction 2 Connect people and nature

The more our community connects with nature the more we will respect, understand, and care for it. This focus area is about making it easy for people to be a part of nature and supporting those already engaged in protecting and restoring it.



Strategic Direction 3 Improve our knowledge

We need to know what we have to determine whether our actions are making a difference. This focus area is about developing baseline data, carrying out research to inform best practice responses to current and future challenges, and monitoring performance.



Strategic Direction 4 Sustain and create resilient ecosystems

This focus area is about making practical on the ground improvements to protect and restore natural ecosystems across the District.





Strategic direction 1: Prioritise nature

Desired outcomes:

1. The District's natural environment is valued as critical infrastructure, essential to our wellbeing and the survival of other species we share Earth with.
2. Natural ecosystems are a significant feature of the Waimakariri District.
3. There is better integration of the natural and built environment.

To succeed we need to:

- Understand the District's unique contribution to global biodiversity.
- Increase awareness of the importance of our natural areas for connection to place, and our community's social, cultural, economic, and environmental wellbeing.
- Increase funding to protect and restore the natural environment.
- Understand and mitigate the effects of development on our natural environment.
- Ensure environmental impacts are factored into District development and infrastructure planning and management.

Strategic Actions:

1. Integrate planning by:

- Increasing the circle of influence in infrastructure and district planning.
- Advocating for a holistic approach.

2. Mainstream biodiversity by:

- Ensuring biodiversity is prioritised as a key Council activity.
- Moving from grey to green.
- Creating spaces for nature.





Strategic direction 2: Connect people and nature

Desired outcomes:

1. Living in a healthy natural environment enriches our everyday life and we work together to achieve and maintain this.
2. People understand and value indigenous biodiversity and natural ecosystems.
3. Residents have a 'sense of place' or connectedness to the District's natural landscape.
4. Our community understands how it can contribute to and become actively involved in protecting, restoring and recreating natural ecosystems.

To succeed we need to:

- Assist our community to understand, appreciate and care for our natural environment.
- Encourage residents to become actively involved with environmental rehabilitation and enhancement projects.
- Maximise benefits, including value for money, by partnering with others.
- Celebrate biodiversity success stories – past, present, and future.
- Enable sustainable public access to the natural environment.
- Significantly increase the amount of indigenous biodiversity in the District's landscape.
- Integrate indigenous biodiversity with our urban form to ensure it is visible.

Strategic Actions:

1. Make it easy to connect by:

- Providing opportunities to bring together people and biodiversity.
- Ensuring education programmes, activities, and resources are available.
- Looking for opportunities to partner with and support others.
- Encouraging people to physically connect with the natural environment.

2. Rediscover and make our indigenous landscape visible by:

- Increasing the proportion of indigenous planting on Council reserves and streetscapes.
- Supporting the achievement of 10% indigenous biodiversity in the wider landscape.

The 'mere-exposure' effect

People connected to nature are more likely to advocate for the natural environment.

People joining in, caring for nature and each other.





Strategic direction 3: Improve our knowledge

Desired outcomes:

1. Tangata Whenua knowledge and practices are recognised, respected and encouraged.
2. We have the knowledge to effectively protect and restore our natural ecosystems.

To succeed we need to:

- Understand the District's natural ecosystems and biodiversity indicators.
- Understand the impacts of activities on the District's water catchments and any flow on effects.
- Understand the likely effects of climate change on the District's biodiversity and how resilience can be promoted.
- Work in partnership with Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga to incorporate Mātauranga Māori into policies and actions.
- Work collaboratively with local, regional, and national organisations committed to transforming environmental outcomes.
- Use knowledge, science, data, and innovation to inform our work.

Strategic Actions:

1. Know what we have by:

- Continuing the assessment, monitoring, and reporting of biodiversity values on public and private land.

2. Understand future challenges by:

- Carrying out research, and working with research partners, community groups and landowners to fill knowledge gaps and understand challenges.
- Identifying the impacts of key trends on the natural environment.

	<p>iNaturalist NZ - Mātaki Taiao</p> <p>A place where you can record what you see in nature, meet other nature watchers, and learn about Aotearoa's natural world.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 48,861 people signed up • 1,865,227 observations to date • 18,288 species observed 		
			<p>Through increasing natural environment information, people become more involved, empowered, and responsive.</p>
<p>New Zealand GARDEN BIRD SURVEY</p> <p>Collaborative learning through citizen science</p>		<p>Biodiversity values in the estuary and coastal wetlands</p>	<p>7-8.30pm Wednesday 13 September</p> <p>Presenter: Bev Alexander, Ashley-Rakahuri River Group</p> <p>Venue: Waikuku Beach Hall</p>



Strategic direction 4: Sustain and create resilient ecosystems

Desired outcomes:

1. The District's natural ecosystems are self-sustaining, healthy, resilient, and connected from the mountains to the sea.
2. A greater proportion of vegetation cover in the District is indigenous.
3. There is no further loss or degradation of Significant Natural Areas (SNAs).
4. Urban vegetation, including street trees, is valued by the community as making a significant contribution to urban resilience, human health and environmental sustainability.

To succeed we need to:

- Prioritise the protection of species and ecosystems that are internationally, nationally and regionally important.
- Prioritise the protection, restoration and enhancement of the District's most vulnerable and high-value ecosystems.
- Conserve, rehabilitate, extend, and connect biodiversity and wildlife corridors.
- Ensure waterways provide healthy and connected habitats for indigenous aquatic species.
- Have a joined-up response to managing our natural resource.
- Work in partnership with Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga to promote improved natural environment outcomes.
- Encourage and support action by landowners and community to protect, maintain, restore, and recreate indigenous biodiversity.
- Prioritise the planting of eco-sourced (where possible) indigenous vegetation over exotics on Council-owned land.
- Develop more of the Council's reserve land as self-sustaining natural ecosystems.
- Reduce biological threats and pressures through effective management.
- Implement climate change mitigation and adaptation action.
- Transition to maintenance practices that work in harmony with nature.
- Promote the ecosystem services provided by street trees to residents.

Strategic Actions:

1. Rebuild nature – more, bigger, better, and joined by:

- **More** - Creating new natural environment sites to provide for future wellbeing.
- **Bigger** - Increasing the size of existing indigenous flora and fauna sites.
- **Better** - Improving the quality of the natural environment by better habitat management and promoting fauna-friendly practices.
- **Joined** - Enhancing connections between, or joining up sites.

2. Protect what we have by:

- Implementing a climate change natural environment mitigation and adaptation programme.
- Reducing the pressure in high value indigenous ecosystems by improving the wider environment.
- Providing support for SNA landowners and incentivising SNA protection.



Implementation

2024-34 Long Term Plan

The Implementation Plan for this strategy contains 124 actions that could be carried out over the next 30 years. Actions programmed for 2024 to 2034 have been included in the Council's Long Term Plan (LTP). Over this ten year period an additional \$1.2m operational expenditure and \$2.9m capital expenditure has been provided to support the implementation of these actions.

Implementation Plan actions have been prioritised as following:

1. Meeting Council's legislative requirements (protecting remaining indigenous priority ecosystems).
2. Very Important (restoring and managing natural ecosystems, education).
3. Important (educating residents in general).

Many of the actions are business as usual for the Council and have been captured to guide Greenspace biodiversity work programmes over the next few years. In order to make further progress on environmental outcomes the Council significantly increased its expenditure on biodiversity in the 2021-24 LTP and this increased activity is reflected in the Implementation Plan.



Key projects from the 2021-24 Long Term Plan include:

- Additional funding for SNA landowners in the form of rates relief and a contestable fund
- Funding to implement Arohaitia te Awa over 10 years
- Funding to support the establishment of the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust

- Funding to provide access to the coast for people with restricted mobility
- Additional biodiversity staff resource.

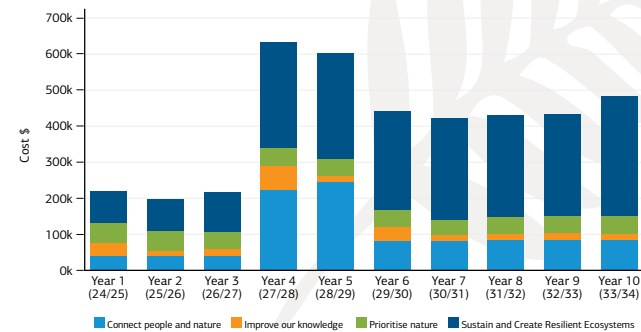
In addition to these new projects, 85ha of wetland off Lineside Road was purchased by the Council in 2023 to cover a shortfall in its stated levels of service for Natural Parks.

Key Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy implementation actions that have been funded in the 2024-34 Long Term Plan include:

- Operational funding for the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust
- An annual contestable fund to support community-based environmental groups to implement strategy actions
- New education and research programmes
- An increase in Council biodiversity capability and capacity in light of increased legislative requirements arising from the recent gazettal of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity
- New targets for additional tree planting to increase the size of urban tree canopies (approximately 12,000 more specimen trees by 2033) and increased indigenous biodiversity planting on Council reserves
- The development of the Lineside Road wetland
- Projects that increase access to the natural environment for those with restricted mobility
- An additional ranger to work with community groups, plant reserves and carry out pest and weed management
- Partnering in an integrated landscape-wide pest and weed control programme
- Developing more walking tracks at natural parks such as Ashley Gorge Reserve
- Part funding (with Department of Conservation) a new toilet at Coopers Creek.

Strategy actions funded in the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan

This graph includes all the Implementation Plan actions and shows the logical progression of activities from ensuring internal resources, processes and knowledge are in order, to concentrating on connecting people and nature, and then making on-the-ground ecosystem improvements.



Monitoring

Improving environmental outcomes takes time and the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy is intended to provide strategic direction for achieving this over the next 30 years. A key action is to identify, monitor and publicly report on biodiversity indicators for the Waimakariri District so progress can be tracked.

Review

The strategy document will be reviewed in eight years' time prior to the development of the Council's 2034 Long Term Plan.

The Implementation Plan needs to be flexible enough to respond to changing circumstances and priorities. This will therefore be reviewed every three years in line with LTP reviews to allow requests for funding to be considered by Council.





215 High Street
Private Bag 1005
Rangiora 7440, New Zealand
Phone 0800 965 468
waimakairiri.govt.nz

240606091644



Vision





Our healthy and resilient natural environment sustains our ecosystems, our communities and our future.

Photo Credit: David Baird

Contents

Plan on a Page	4	Challenges	26	Increasing urban tree canopies.....	39
Introduction	5	Pressures and their impacts on biodiversity	26	More, bigger, better and joined	40
About the Strategy	4	Invasive species	26	Landscape matrix	41
Purpose	6	Changes in land use	27	Working with others	42
Scope	7	Habitat loss	27	Collaboration and partnerships	42
Why do we need one?	8	Habitat degradation	27	Citizen bioscience	42
Context for the Strategy	10	Climate change	28	Nature-based solutions	43
Key drivers	10	Societal pressures	30	Where we want to be	44
Wider context	11	Challenges for the Waimakariri environmental sector	31	The vision 2023-253	44
Council context	12	Significant Natural Areas	31	Guiding principles.....	45
Where we are now	14	Waimakariri District voluntary environmental groups.....	32	Key themes	45
Current state of biodiversity in Aotearoa New Zealand	14	Waimakariri District Council Greenspace.....	34	Strategic direction 1	46
Current state of our District's natural environment	16	Opportunities	36	Strategic direction 2	48
Indigenous vegetation cover	16	Rebuilding nature	36	Strategic direction 3	50
At risk flora and fauna	17	Reconnecting with our indigenous landscape..	36	Strategic direction 4	52
Ecological districts	18	Reintroducing indigenous vegetation to rural areas	37	How we are going to get there	54
Freshwater and coastal.....	20	Reintroducing indigenous vegetation to urban areas	38	Implementation	54
Council land	22			2024-34 Long Term Plan.....	54
				Monitoring	56
				Review	56
				Appendices	57
				Appendix 1 Council Park Categories	57
				Appendix 2 References	60



Vision		Our healthy and resilient natural environment sustains our ecosystems, our communities and our future.	
Strategic Goal		We work together to ensure Waimakariri's natural environment is valued, protected, restored and celebrated.	
	Strategic Direction 1 Prioritise nature		Strategic Direction 2 Connect people and nature
Desired Outcomes The District's natural environment is valued as critical infrastructure, essential to our wellbeing and the survival of other species we share Earth with. Natural ecosystems are a significant feature of the Waimakariri District. There is better integration of the natural and built environment.		Desired Outcomes Living in a healthy natural environment enriches our everyday life and we work together to achieve and maintain this. People understand and value indigenous biodiversity and natural ecosystems. Residents have a 'sense of place' or connectedness to the District's natural landscape. Our community understands how it can contribute to and become actively involved in protecting, restoring, and recreating natural ecosystems.	
Strategic Actions Integrate planning <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Increase the circle of influence in infrastructure and district planning• Advocate for a holistic approach Mainstream biodiversity <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ensure biodiversity is prioritised as a key Council activity• Move from grey to green• Create spaces for nature		Strategic Actions Make it easy to connect <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Provide opportunities to bring together people and biodiversity.• Ensure education programmes, activities, and resources are available.• Look for opportunities to partner with and support others.• Encourage people to physically connect with the natural environment. Rediscover and make our indigenous landscape visible <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Increase the proportion of indigenous planting on Council reserves and streetscapes.• Support the achievement of 10% indigenous biodiversity in the wider landscape.	
	Strategic Direction 3 Improve our knowledge		Strategic Direction 4 Sustain and create resilient ecosystems
Desired Outcomes Tangata Whenua knowledge and practices are recognised, respected and encouraged. We have the knowledge to effectively protect and restore our natural ecosystems.		Desired Outcomes The District's natural ecosystems are self-sustaining, healthy, resilient, and connected from the mountains to the sea. A greater proportion of vegetation cover in the District is indigenous. There is no further loss or degradation of Significant Natural Areas (SNAs). Urban vegetation, including street trees, is valued by the community as making a significant contribution to urban resilience, human health, and environmental sustainability.	
Strategic Actions Know what we have <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Continue the assessment, monitoring and reporting of biodiversity values on public and private land. Understand future challenges <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Carry out research, and work with research partners, community groups and landowners to fill knowledge gaps and understand challenges• Identify the impacts of key trends on the natural environment.		Strategic Actions Protect what we have <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Implement a climate change natural environment mitigation and adaptation programme.• Reduce the pressure in high value Indigenous ecosystems by improving the wider environment.• Provide support for SNA landowners and incentivise SNA protection. Rebuild nature - more, bigger, better, and joined <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MORE - Create new natural environment sites to provide for future wellbeing.• BIGGER - Increase the size of existing indigenous flora and fauna sites.• BETTER - Improve the quality of the natural environment by better habitat management and promoting fauna-friendly practices.• JOINED - Enhance connections between, or join up sites.	
Guiding Principles			
Lead by example		Engage with others	
Use best practice		Commit to action	

About the Strategy

This Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy (WNES) is the Council's local response to the degradation of important natural ecosystems and species being reported across the world, including within our District.

Current global biodiversity loss is so great it is called the 'sixth extinction'. The biodiversity crisis and the climate crisis are acknowledged to be closely linked, and healthy and diverse ecosystems can adjust more effectively to climate threats. The contribution nature-based solutions can make to buffering climate impacts by sequestering carbon and protecting built-up areas is also reflected in the strategy.

All aspects of life in Aotearoa New Zealand rely on a thriving natural environment including our physical and mental health, economy and culture. This strategy seeks to restore our connection to the natural world we are a part of so that we feel inspired to better protect it. We need to prioritise the protection and restoration of the natural environment not only for the ecosystems benefits it provides us and those who follow, but also for its own intrinsic worth. A world without dolphins, kiwi, tuatara and Kauri trees seems unimaginable but could become a possibility.

The strategy takes into account strategic directions outlined in the Local Government Act 2002 (4 wellbeing), National Adaptation Plan, National

Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity, Aotearoa Biodiversity Strategy and others. It also complements the work of other organisations such as Environment Canterbury's Zone Implementation Plan Addendum (ZIPA), Forest and Bird's 'Make Every Wetland Count' campaign, QEII Trust and the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust.

The strategy currently consists of three documents plus a summary document which should be read in conjunction with one another.

Background documents



A Biodiversity SOE report describes the current state of indigenous biodiversity within the District and the challenges and opportunities foreseen over the next 30 years. It also provides an overview of biodiversity concepts and relevant legislation.

A review of Council reserve provision also informs the strategy. This will form part of a Reserves SOE report that identifies opportunities, in collaboration with local residents, for increasing natural values in reserves and streetscapes.

Strategy

Provides a high-level strategic framework to guide Council's work in protecting and restoring the natural environment over the next 30 years. Roles range from developing plans and carrying out the work, to supporting the efforts of others, educating people about the issues and opportunities, and advocating for change, both at a national and local level.

Action plan

Contains specific costed actions to be included in the Council's Long Term Plan for implementation between 2024 and 2034.



Purpose

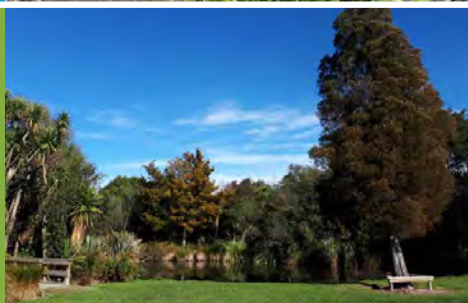
The Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy provides direction for the Council's future investment in protecting and enhancing natural ecosystems within the District, particularly its own business, plans and practices. It:

- Gives effect to international agreements and national legislation to protect indigenous biodiversity and mitigate/adapt to the effects of climate change
- Allows for kaitiakitanga and stewardship for future generations
- Enhances the natural values of Council's extensive reserve portfolio and other land owned and/or managed by the Council
- Recognises and supports the cultural practices of Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga
- Recognises and supports landowners as stewards for the natural environment, particularly those who have significant natural areas (SNAs) on their land
- Supports community organisations who are actively engaged in delivering the desired outcomes of this strategy.

Whites Road Reserve, Ohoka
This gravel extraction pit was developed as a wetland by the local community in the 1990s and now provides an important feeding and roosting area for waders and protected waterfowl such as Grey Teal, Scaup and Brown Teal.



Matawai Park, Rangiora
Designed in the 1970s and developed by passionate and knowledgeable locals, this nationally recognised Scenic Reserve is an excellent example of the indigenous vegetation habitats found within the District.



Scope

The strategy's vision and objectives encompass the natural environment of the whole District, but the primary focus and actions relate to indigenous biodiversity on land in Council ownership.

By taking this approach the Council can lead by example, improving the natural values of the land it manages, providing exemplar sites and conducting trials to develop understanding and good practice techniques without direct costs to private landowners. These can then be adopted and adapted by others. Council's role in implementing national policy and supporting local environmental groups is also outlined.



Silverstream Reserve, Kaiapoi

Nature Defined

"Nature is a holistic term that encompasses the living environment (te taiao), which includes all living organisms and the ecological processes that sustain them. By this definition, people are a key part of nature."

(Te Mana o te Taiao – Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2020)

What's in?	What's out?
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Council-owned and/or managed land, including coastal land up to the District's eastern boundary, reserve land, streetscapes and land held in the property portfolio that can be repurposed. • Private land with SNAs located on them and/or land that supports highly mobile fauna species. • Education and information services for private landowners in general. • Supporting local environmental organisations to achieve their goals where they are consistent with this strategy. • Terrestrial/aquatic interface and supporting water catchment programmes. • Stock water where it is an important resource for flora and fauna, for example, freshwater mussels and koura and other important native species. • Exotic vegetation where it supports indigenous fauna or contributes to an important goal such as the achievement of sufficient urban tree canopy cover and the provision of community food forests and gardens. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Urban stormwater receiving environments such as stormwater basins and systems due to pending Water Services Legislation that will influence Council's approach to future stormwater management. However, some consideration is still given to the aquatic environment due to the interconnectedness of the terrestrial/aquatic interface. • Rivers and other waterways, including issues to do with the quality and quantity of the District's fresh water. This is to avoid duplication with the ECan Zone Implementation Programme Addendum (ZIPA) which covers these. • Air and soil quality as these are regulated by Environment Canterbury (ECan). However, due to the connectedness of the natural environment, the Biodiversity SOE Report that informs this strategy does outline implications to and from these ecosystems where appropriate.

Why do we need one?

Keeping the planet healthy is key to providing health and wellbeing for all.

Despite considerable efforts being made to expand sustainable forest management, protect critical biodiversity sites, conserve species at risk of extinction and address threats of invasive alien species, human activities are still causing global biodiversity (the variety of genes, species and ecosystems on Earth) to decline faster than at any other time in human history.

Economic, social and technological advances have come at the expense of the Earth's capacity to sustain its life-supporting processes yet the graph

below shows our own future relies on a sustained source of resources from nature.

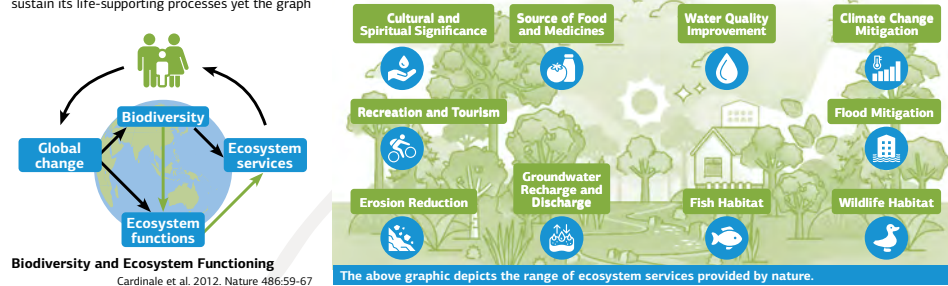
We all benefit from the many eco-services the natural world provides such as clean air and water, food, medicines, energy, materials, recreation, creative inspiration and a sense of place.

The 2021 United Nations 'Making Peace with Nature' report concludes that the international community is failing to meet most of its commitments to limit

environmental damage and that the number and severity of environmental challenges we now face represent a planetary emergency.

"Making peace with nature, securing its health and building on the critical and undervalued benefits that it provides are key to a prosperous and sustainable future for all."

Antonio Guterres,
Secretary General of the United Nations 2021



We need to urgently move away from the current pathway of environmental decline if we are to safeguard the wellbeing of our young people and future generations.

International agreements are not currently on track to fulfil the Paris Agreement of limiting global warming to 1.5°C above pre-industrial levels and there are indications warming could

reach this target by 2040, if not earlier. Existing greenhouse gas emissions reduction policies put the world on a pathway to warming of at least 3°C by 2100.

Warming of more than 1°C has already led to shifts in climate zones, changes in precipitation patterns, melting of ice sheets and glaciers, sea level rise and more frequent and intense extreme weather events, threatening people and nature.

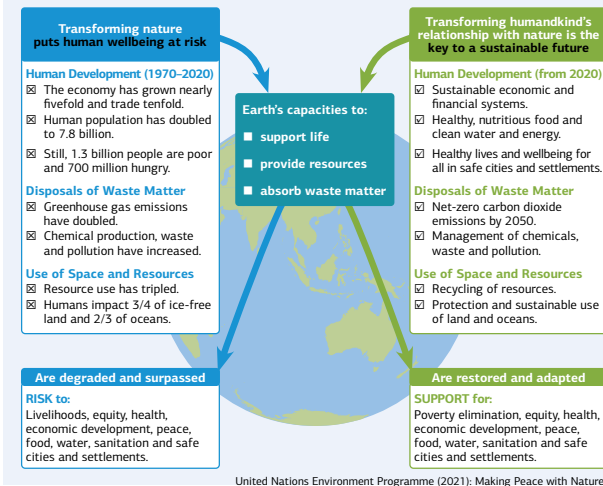
Over the past few years, our government has introduced, or has indicated in various reports that it plans to introduce, legislative changes to address issues such as urban intensification, climate change mitigation and adaptation, freshwater management and biodiversity loss. A number of these require territorial authorities to act at a local level and it is expected that these requirements will increase over time.

This strategy is, in part, a response to these legislative changes. It is also a response to the loss of biodiversity values in the District and the increasing density of our urban areas. It aims to promote recognition of the true value of nature, by prioritising the protection and repair of natural ecosystems and making space for it to flourish in the built environment.

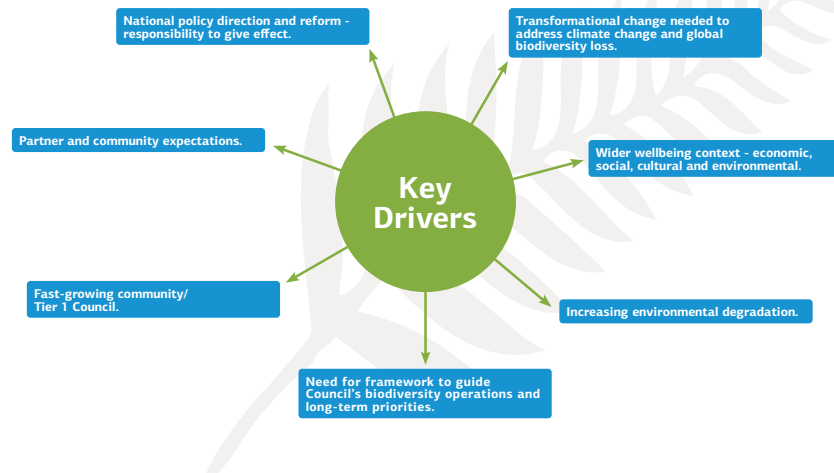
"Maintaining planetary health is essential for human and societal health and a pre-condition for climate-resilient development."

IPCC Chair, 2nd World Ocean Summit Asia-Pacific 2022

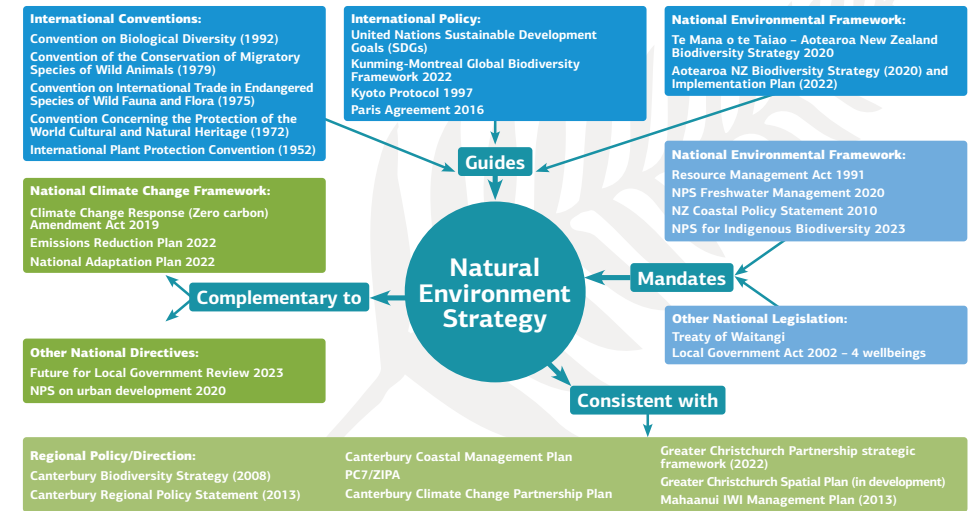
Making peace with nature



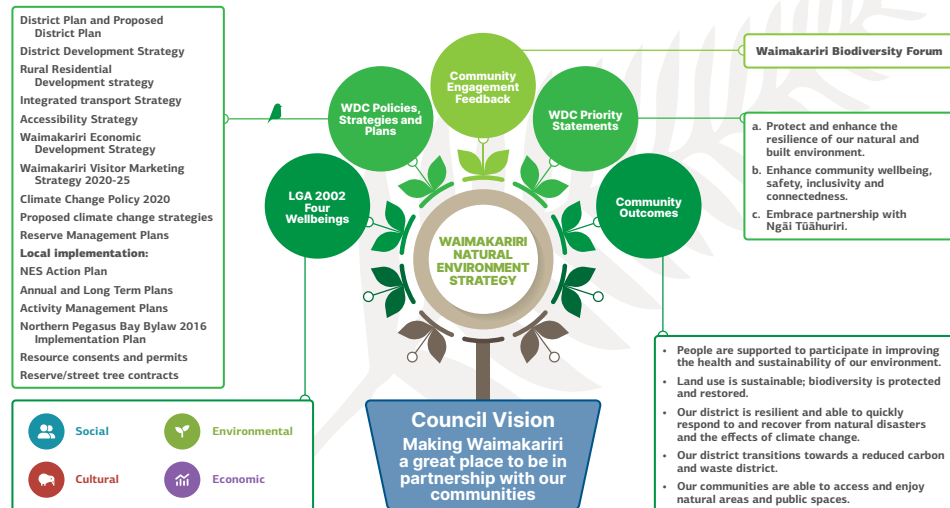
Key drivers



Wider context



Council context



Environmental snapshot



Climate change

Our emissions are not decreasing fast enough

19% ↑ The increase in our gross emissions between 1990 and 2021. Our emissions peaked in 2006.
6% ↓ The decrease in our gross emissions since 2006.
 We are not on track to meet NZ's target of reducing net emissions to 50% below 2005 levels by 2030.

Our air temperature will continue to rise

Between 1909 and 2020 the increase in our annual average air temperature was **+1.26°C**
 Temperature rise causes:
 • more frequent and severe extreme weather events
 • glacial retreat
 • sea-level rise
 • large die-off of plants and animals.

Socio-economic impacts escalate with every increment of warming

Agricultural drought frequency increased at **15** out of **30** sites across NZ.
 Costs estimated at **\$4.8b** from the two major drought events of 2007-08 and 2012-13.

Land and freshwater

Our fresh water is degraded

Between 2016 and 2020 **84%** of monitored river water quality sites had median concentrations for at least one form of nitrogen which suggested a risk of environmental impairment.
62% of 101 monitored lakes across NZ showed poor or very poor health.

Between 2016 and 2020

25% of monitored river water quality sites had severe organic pollution or nutrient enrichment, while only 6% showed pristine conditions or almost no organic pollution.

With consequences for how we use it

Between 2016 and 2020 **66%** of monitored river water quality sites were not suitable for activities like swimming.

Our natural infrastructure is an asset

Our natural infrastructure helps to:
 • regulate our climate
 • prevent erosion and landslides
 • protect our coastal environment from storm surges
 • improve water quality and regulate flooding.

While:
 • supporting cultural values, health and wellbeing
 • improving biodiversity
 • providing economic opportunities and resilience.

But it's under pressure

10% of wetlands remained in 2010 compared to pre-human existence.

As of 2018, indigenous forests covered **~7million ha** (for 27% of total land area). The overall indigenous forest land area increased since 2008, but continue to be located in upland areas.

More than **3,200** of our known indigenous species are threatened or at risk of extinction partly due to loss of habitat.

Coastal and marine

Sea level rise is accelerating

Between 1961 and 2020, the mean sea level rise rate **doubled** at 3 out of 4 monitoring sites, compared to the period from 1901 to 1960.

+20cm
 The average sea level rise around NZ compared to a century ago.

Adapting to sea-level rise

At risk from coastal flooding in 2022:
72k People **49.7k Buildings** **191 Marae**
 A 20-30cm sea-level rise above present-day levels is expected in the next 30 years, exposing billions of dollars worth of infrastructure to flooding and damage.

Our ocean is warming to record levels and becoming more acidic

Between 1981 and 2018, the sea surface temperature increased between **+0.1** and **+0.2°C** per decade across our four oceanic regions.
 Between 1998 and 2020 ocean acidity increased **8.6%** on average in NZ's subantarctic surface waters.

Ocean warming and acidification can impact:

• marine habitats like kelp forests
 • calcification rates of corals and molluscs
 • species migration and/or survival.

With consequences for our:

• biodiversity
 • marine economy.

Current state of biodiversity in Aotearoa New Zealand

State of biodiversity



Marine birds

- 28 (31%) are 'Threatened'
- 53 (60%) are 'At Risk'

Around 5,000 of the assessed 14,000 terrestrial, freshwater and marine species are 'Data Deficient' – i.e. there is not enough information to know if they are in trouble.

For example, 609 marine macroalgae (68%) and 105 earthworms (59%) are assessed as 'Data Deficient'.

214 non-indigenous marine species now live in Aotearoa New Zealand's marine environments. Some of these have the ability to compete with and prey on indigenous species, modify natural habitats or alter ecosystem processes.

Biogenic marine habitats (created by living plants or animals) support high biodiversity and provide ecosystem services. Many of them have been degraded or lost. For example, there has been a near total loss of kuku/green-lipped mussel beds in the Firth of Thames.

Te Mana o te Taiao Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2020

Around 43% of Aotearoa New Zealand's land area remains in native cover.

Some species have improving population trends. The conservation status of 23 bird species improved in the 2016 assessment as a result of population increases, mainly because of management intervention.

Land reptiles

- 37 (35%) are 'Threatened'
- 52 (50%) are 'At Risk'

A large body of research has found that concentrations of nutrients, sediment and pathogens in rivers increase as the catchment area in pastoral land use increases.

Rivers in urban areas are contaminated with nutrients, suspended sediment, pathogens and heavy metals.

Based on modelled Trophic Level Index values, 46% of over 3,000 lakes larger than 1ha are estimated to be in poor or very poor ecological health.

Around 40,800ha of indigenous forest, scrub and shrubland was converted to non-indigenous land cover between 1996 and 2018. In the same period, 44,800ha of indigenous grasslands and 5,500ha of other indigenous cover were also converted to non-indigenous cover types.

Naturally uncommon ecosystems are those which covered less than 0.5% of the country's land area in pre-human times. There are 72 of these, of which 45 (63%) are now threatened.

Many species are in decline. Population declines of 61 vascular plant species means they have moved to a worse conservation status in the latest 2017 assessment.

250,000ha of inland wetlands remain in Aotearoa New Zealand – around 10% of their former extent. Wetland loss is still occurring: At least 5,000ha of wetland is estimated to have been lost since 2001.

Freshwater fish

- 22 (43%) are 'Threatened'
- 17 (33%) are 'At Risk'

The companion report Biodiversity in Aotearoa provides the evidence base for the national strategy by describing the present state, trends and pressures of our country's plants, animals and ecosystems on land, in fresh water and at sea. This is summarised in the infographic.

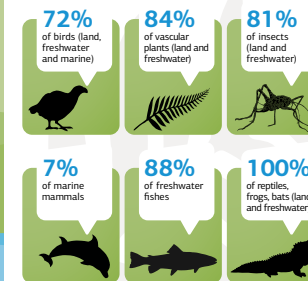
Biodiversity defined

Biodiversity is the variety of all living things and ecosystems. It includes plants, animals, fungi and micro-organisms as well as the ecosystems (on land or in water) where they live. Biodiversity can be of any scale. It could be a patch in your backyard or the whole planet. Biodiversity is the web of life.

Te Mana o te Taiao, Aotearoa Biodiversity Strategy 2020

Due to our geographical isolation, many of our indigenous plants and wildlife exist nowhere else on Earth. We are lucky enough to enjoy ancient rainforests, tussock grasslands and braided rivers on our doorstep. This means our taonga species and ecosystems make a significant contribution to global biodiversity and attract visitors from afar.

Proportion of New Zealand indigenous species found nowhere else on Earth



Note: These data do not include extinct, exotic or non-resident native (coloniser, migrant or vagrant) species.
Source: Biodiversity in Aotearoa

However, our country is not immune from the global biodiversity crisis and despite some success stories, the overall picture is one of continued depletion.

Te Mana o te Taiao

Te Mana o te Taiao, the Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2020, outlines a strategic framework for the protection, restoration and sustainable use of biodiversity, particularly indigenous biodiversity, in our country from 2020 to 2050. Collaboration and partnerships are a key focus for Te Mana o te Taiao as working together, we can make the biggest difference.

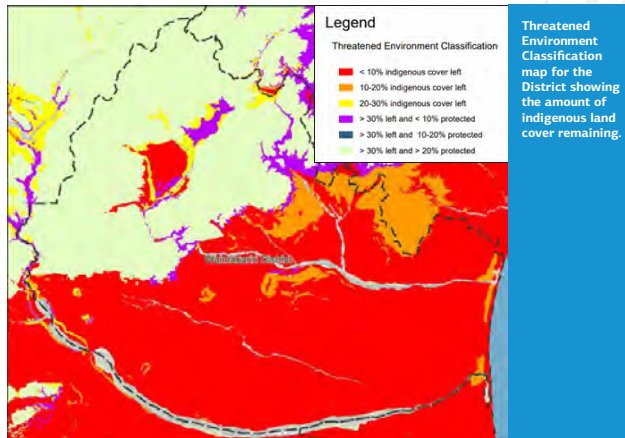
A strategy implementation plan, released in 2022, sets out a pathway for achieving the strategy's outcomes over the next 30 years. The immediate focus is on establishing systems to stimulate nationwide action.

We are in a biodiversity crisis

"Our ecosystems are directly under threat from pressures such as changes in land, freshwater and sea use, introduced species, exploitation for food and resources, pollution, and the increasing threat of climate change. Indirect pressures such as not having the right 'systems' in place, people not having enough knowledge or resources to act, and a disconnect between people and nature are causing and contributing to these direct pressures."

Te Mana o te Taiao Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2020

Current state of our District's natural environment



Indigenous vegetation cover

Less than 0.1% of indigenous vegetation cover is left in some parts of the Canterbury Plains. The remaining areas are small and fragmented, often containing non-regenerating populations. These are categorised as being acutely threatened.

The adjacent map shows that over half of the District has less than 10% indigenous cover left, with some of these areas containing less than 0.5%.

However, within these remnants are many rare and threatened species which are not represented in the Aotearoa New Zealand protected areas network.

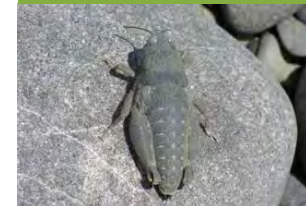
The loss of this habitat and the ecosystems it supports is mainly due to urban development, agricultural practices and mineral extraction. In more recent years exotic plantation forest has been the main driver for indigenous forest loss.



At risk flora and fauna

The District is home to a number of nationally threatened species across many habitats and ecosystems as detailed in the Biodiversity State of Environment Report that forms part of this strategy. These include birds, fish, lizards, Arthropods and plants.

Robust grasshopper
NZSnowman, CC BY-SA 3.0, via Wikimedia Commons



Robust grasshopper *Brachaspis robustus*

This highly camouflaged invertebrate was thought to be extinct until individuals were found in the 1980s. The nationally endangered species can be found in the gravels of the Waimakariri braided river system and numbers only 250-300 individuals across the country. The grasshopper feeds on lichens and other vegetation and can be seen resting on stones or around low lying scabweed (*Raoulia* spp.) type vegetation.

Jewelled gecko

The Waimakariri is home to the threatened and stunning green jewelled gecko, *Naultinus gemmeus*. It can be found in trees or on the ground, in a range of habitats including forests, kanuka shrublands and tussock grasslands.



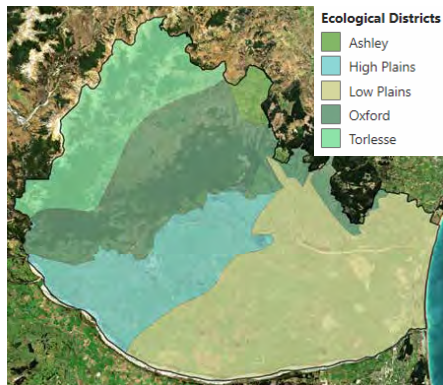
Tauhinu *Pomaderris amoena*

This small-leaved flowering shrub is found at the most southern limit of its natural distribution in our District. It loves the sunny spots in the nutrient poor, bony soils along the Waimakariri River.



Kōwaro/Canterbury mudfish *Neochanna burrowsius*

These small, stocky, scaleless fish are regarded as taonga by tanga whenua. They are found in wetlands and particularly drains within Canterbury. Amazingly, these fish can survive for short periods of time when there is no surface water present by altering their metabolism and breathing through their skin. The Canterbury mudfish has a threat classification of Nationally Critical and is the most endangered of the mudfish and the second most endangered fish in New Zealand. Trampling by stock and the draining and alteration of waterways are some of the major threats to the species.



Ecological Districts

- Ashley
- High Plains
- Low Plains
- Oxford
- Torlesse

Ecological districts

The District's natural environment varies widely in terms of altitudes, landforms, ecosystems and species, including terrestrial, coastal, montane and aquatic habitats. It is characterised by the large alpine Waimakariri River, the hill-fed Ashley/Rakahuri River and its tributaries and estuary, as well as a network of spring-fed streams and lagoons in the coastal zone. Much of the land to the east of Rangiora is reclaimed swamp, which drains poorly and can be subject to flooding. Hill and high country lie to the north-west of the District, with the western landscape being dominated by Mt Oxford, Mt Richardson and Mt Thomas.

The adjacent map shows Waimakariri divided into five distinct ecological districts based on the interconnected characteristics of topography, geology, climate, soils and the residing flora and fauna (McEwan, 1987). Each area is unique and holds a wealth of taonga (treasures) including diverse species of fauna and flora, many of which are listed as threatened. For example, the limestone habitat at White Rock near Okuku, is highly significant because of its rarity in the District and the serious threats faced by limestone flora, both regionally and nationally. This means it deserves special recognition and protection.

Dominant land use cover is highly productive exotic grassland with at least 40% used for sheep and beef farming and a further 16% used for the dairy sector (ECan, 2018).

Ecological District	Area in District (ha)	Indigenous Vegetation Remaining	Indigenous Vegetation Protected	Naturally Uncommon Ecosystem Type	Example of Important Species in the Ecological District
Low Plains	88,367	<10%	<5%	Braided Rivers (E), Dune Slacks (E), Active sand dunes (E), Coastal lagoons (E)	Geckos and skinks, plants, black-fronted tern/tarapirohe (<i>Chlidonias albosistratus</i>), Canterbury Plains boulder copper butterfly (<i>Lycena</i> sp)
High Plains	38,593	<10%	<5%	Basic cliffs, scarps, and tors (V) of Burnthill	Geckos and skinks, freshwater crayfish/koura, long-fin eels
Ashley	3,775	>30%	>20%	Lake Margins (V)	Waipara gentian (<i>Gentianella calceis</i> subsp. waipara)
Oxford	55,058	>30%	<25%	Calcareous cliffs, scarps, and tors (V) of View Hill and Okuku	New Zealand Falcon, Kea (<i>Nestor notabilis</i>)
Torlesse	35,918	>30%	>20%	Inland outwash gravels (CE)	New Zealand Falcon, Canterbury mudfish, Kea (<i>Nestor notabilis</i>)
Oxford/Torlesse – Lees Valley	21,578	<10%	ND	Ephemeral wetlands (CE)	Speargrass (<i>Aciphylla subflabellata</i>), giant weta (<i>Deinacrida cornectans</i>), Kea (<i>Nestor notabilis</i>)
					New Zealand Pipit (<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae</i> nvaeseelandiae), geckos and skinks

Canterbury High and Low Plains

- The Plains cover 50% of the District, mainly to the south and east.
- Characteristics include low rainfall, large annual temperature variations and stony-silt thin soils.
- Highly modified environment with severe reduction of indigenous dryland vegetation mainly because of conversion of land for production and settlement
- The globally rare, braided river ecosystems of the Waimakariri and Ashley/Rakahuri Rivers are important to many endangered species.
- The drylands support a wealth of rare and threatened plant species including matagouri (*Discaria toumatou*) and kākūka (*Kunzea* spp.). These habitats also support a range of invertebrates and lizard species.
- Areas of swamp and wetland occur in the east on less porous soils.



Canterbury Foothills: Ashley and Oxford

- The eastern foothills have cooler, wetter weather, prevailing north-west winds and relatively fertile soils. Most of the area has at least 30% indigenous land cover and large, connected areas remain.
- Lees Valley is located at approximately 400m above sea level and has low rainfall and large temperature ranges. It contains dry shrubland, and important riparian and swamp wetland, although it has lost more than 90% of its indigenous land cover.
- A large proportion of the foothills, including Mt. Oxford, Ashley Forest and the Mt. Thomas Conservation Area, are protected as national land of significance.
- Beech forest habitats in the conservation areas support rare and threatened species and some sub-alpine shrubland.
- Podocarp forest remnants can be seen in the Coopers Creek/View Hill area. Wetlands that support Tawera mudfish populations are also found here.



Puketeraki: Torlesse High Country

- Montane area with a cool climate and snow on mountain tops for approximately three months of the year.
- Characterised by north-west winds, abundant rainfall and winter snow.
- Contains the headwaters for the Ashley/Rakahuri and Okuku Rivers.
- The Puketeraki Conservation Area is classified as land of National Significance containing beech, tussockland and subalpine habitats.
- The beech forests support rare mistletoes species and plants, as well as a range of fungal species and birds and invertebrates.
- Although this area is modified, it is important for birds such as kea (*Nestor notabilis*) and falcon (*Falco novaeseelandiae*) and many wetland birds associated with the rivers. The area is also known to have giant weta (*Deinacrida* spp.).



Freshwater and coastal

The Waimakariri District's meandering rivers are fed by springs, rainwater or snow melt depending on their location. These rivers provide habitat and shelter for rare and endangered species of invertebrates, birds, lizards and native fish. They are also of huge cultural significance to Ngāi Tahu and Ngāi Tūāhuriri.

The Ashley River/Rakahuri, the Okuku River, the Cam/Ruataniwha River, Kaiapoi River, Tūtaepatu Lagoon, the Pines Beach Wetland, areas of swampland around Loburn and the lower Waimakariri River and gorge are recognised as being 'Nationally Significant'.

Each of the braided rivers is listed as a 'naturally uncommon ecosystem' and designated 'Nationally Endangered'. These uncommon ecosystems often provide habitat for specialised fauna and flora, including rare birds, and over 90 species of birds have been recorded at the Ashley Rakahuri/Saltwater Estuary alone. This diversity is partly because the braided rivers and spring-fed watercourses contain good quality communities of aquatic macro-invertebrates and aquatic flora.



Pied Shag - Kāruhiruhi



Banded Dotterell - Pohowera



Australasian bittern - Matuku-hūrepo

The coastal resource in the east contains dune systems, coastal freshwater and brackish networks of wetlands, streams and lagoons, including the 49ha spring fed Tūtaepatu Lagoon, making it the largest open water body along the coast in the District. The Ashley/Rakahuri Estuary to the north of the District contains areas of salt marsh, which are rare in Canterbury. The coastal wetlands are home to many rare and endangered species including mudfish, whitebait (*Galaxias* spp.), bittern, banded dotterels (*Charadrius bicinctus*), black fronted-terns and wrybill (*Anarhynchus frontalis*).

The District's wetlands provide habitat for culturally important aquatic species such as long and shortfin eels (*Anguilla dieffenbachia* and *A. australis*), koura (*Paranephrops zealandicus*), inanga and lamprey (*Geotria australis*) with the 'Nationally Critical' Canterbury mudfish having populations in the Oxford area.

Matuku - hūrepo/Australasian Bittern *Botaurus poiciloptilus*

Despite being a large and stocky bird, this secretive species with its cryptically coloured plumage is more often heard than seen. The characteristic booming call of the males can be heard in the breeding season and often signifies their presence. When seen, they often adopt their famous freeze stance with their bills pointing up to the sky. Precise population estimates are unknown, but it is thought that there are less than 900 individuals in the wild, gaining them the threat classification of 'Nationally Critical'. Within the Waimakariri District, there is a resident population at the Tūtaepatu Lagoon.

Arohatia te Awa

In 2019, the Arohatia te Awa – Cherish the River project was initiated by the Council to identify and connect waterways for public use. Introducing native flora and enhancing habitats for native fauna along the waterways is being undertaken for both biodiversity and cultural aims. This ongoing project has seen more than 30,000 plants installed since work began.

ZIPA

The Zone Implementation Programme is a non-statutory document prepared by the Waimakariri Zone Committee to give effect to the Canterbury Water Management Strategy. It aims to:

- Improve lowland waterway health
- Protect coastal and foothill wetland biodiversity
- Have an integrated approach to managing the Ashley/Rakahuri River
- Promote good water and nutrient management practice
- Consider the role of water storage in improving irrigation reliability and improved river flows.

This strategy is complementary to the ZIPA.



Map of main waterways and settlements within the district (Sparrow and Taylor, 2019).

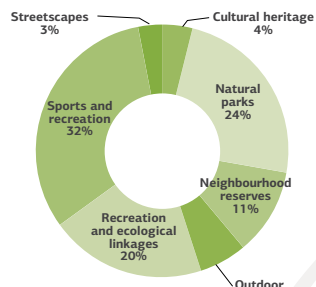


Council land

Reserves and streetscapes

In 2011 the Council consulted on and subsequently adopted a framework for categorising parks according to their primary purpose, adapted from national standards produced by the New Zealand Recreation Association (Recreation Aotearoa). Level of service guidelines were developed at the same time for reserves and streetscapes. A description of these park categories can be found in Appendix 1

Type of reserve as a percentage of the total land area



The Council is a significant provider of public open space within the District managing over 882ha. Just under half of this land is provided primarily for sports and recreation purposes, including neighbourhood recreation. While there is potential to improve the natural values of all reserves, there are more opportunities in the natural parks and recreation and ecological linkages portfolios where there is less conflict of use between people/nature, and more undeveloped land.

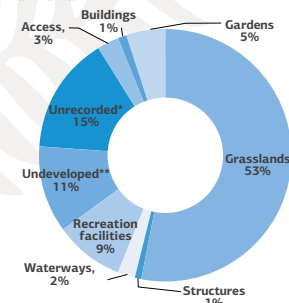
Reserves summary

Type of reserves	Number of sites	Land area (ha)	Size range
Civic space	8	3.47	0.03ha-1.6ha
Cultural heritage	19	38.35	0.02ha-7.9ha
Natural parks	16	215.34	0.3ha-84ha
Neighbourhood parks	75	95.14	0.1ha-6.5ha
Outdoor adventure parks	1	50.79	50.7ha
Public gardens	3	2.82	0.6ha- 1.1ha
Recreation and ecological linkages	248	173.35	55m ² -36.5ha
Sports and recreation	28	280.48	0.3ha-83ha
Streetscapes	356	22.49	
Total	754	882.23	

There are another 12 sites listed as undeveloped reserves that total 71.7 hectares. Eight of these are located in Kaiapoi on red zone land, two are at Pines Kairaki, one is in Rangiora and one in Oxford. Work is underway to categorise these.

Over 96ha of reserve land is undeveloped offering significant potential for restoration. Just over half of all reserve land is covered in grass and only 5% is planted. Replanting some of the grassland in indigenous biodiversity will improve biodiversity values as well as reduce carbon emissions arising from grass maintenance.

Use of reserves as a percentage of the total land area



* Unrecorded is the difference between the total amount of land and the amount of land taken up by the assets recorded on it.

** Undeveloped is a garden classification where the vegetation type is unknown and likely to be scrub.

Type of land use

Type of land use*	Land area (ha)
Access, parking, footpaths	30.6
Buildings	6.2
Structures	2.2
Recreation facilities	76.8
Gardens	46.4
Grasslands	466.3
Waterways, ponds, lakes, drains, streams	19.9
Undeveloped	96.3
Unrecorded	136.4
Total**	882.2

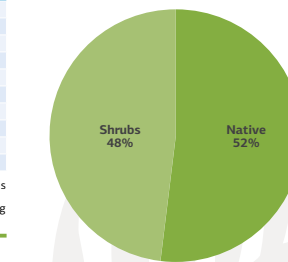
* Excludes streetscapes

** Totals do not add up due to rounding

Council garden asset data has not been collected with indigenous biodiversity in mind and reliability will be greatly improved once the vegetation is resurveyed. Current asset data shows just over half of reserve plantings are indigenous although this figure will be higher as indigenous plants will also be in mixed shrub plantings recorded as shrubs.

The Council manages over 23,800 specimen trees, with 7,663 known to be planted on reserves and 1,615 in streetscapes. The database does not record a site type for over 14,109 trees. The majority of these trees are exotic, the most popular species being Oak (*Quercus* spp.), *Prunus* spp., and Ash (*Fraxinus* spp.).

Vegetation type as a percentage of reserve gardens



* Excludes undeveloped scrub

Type of garden vegetation

Vegetation	Land area (ha)
Native	24.2
Shrub	22.0
Flowers	0.2
Total	46.4
Hedges	14,006 (LM)
Trees	23,800

Levels of service, key performance indicators and targets

There are currently two relevant major levels of service that Council publicly reports on a quarterly basis. These are reviewed every three years in conjunction with the Long Term Plan.

Major level of service	Measuring performance	Targets
Providing sports grounds, neighbourhood reserves and natural parks for the community to use.	The number of hectares of parkland per 1,000 residents	8ha
	The number of hectares of neighbourhood reserve land per 1,000 residents	1ha

There are also relevant internal levels of service adopted by the Council in the 2011 review. These are:

- 5–15ha of natural park per 1,000 residents
- No less than 2.51ha of sport and recreation reserves per 1,000 residents
- 0.03ha of public garden per 1,000 residents
- 1 tree every 20m on average in streetscapes.

A level of service review has been carried out as part of this strategy and the following table shows the Council currently owns enough reserve land in total to meet the agreed levels of service for parkland until about 2050.

No more land is required during this period to meet sport and recreation reserve targets, and while neighbourhood reserve land shows up as a deficit by 2053, if it continues to be acquired through subdivision at the same rate as at present it will be well into surplus by that time.

Council could consider setting aside land for a new public garden in the rapidly expanding Woodend/

Ravenswood area to meet the slight shortfall in this target expected by 2053. This could also serve as a town centre focal point and showcase the merits of using indigenous biodiversity in an urban setting.

The table shows the level of service for natural parks is not currently being achieved unless the 750ha of Te Kōhaka te Tūhaitara Trust land is included in the equation. In this case the lowest target of 5 ha per 1,000 residents will still be in surplus by 245ha by 2053, although climate change could have an impact on this vulnerable coastal land in the future. There is also the

potential to set aside surplus Council land for development as natural parks as has successfully occurred in the past with Kaiapoi Lakes and Whites Road Reserve.

No levels of service currently exist for biodiversity and the following two are proposed.

- Number of specimen trees in reserves/streetscapes. This level of service recognises the important role tree canopies have in mitigating the effects of climate change and the important habitat they provide for fauna. It is recommended that a target also be set for urban tree canopies once a baseline is measured.
- Number of hectares of reserves planted in indigenous plants. The intention of this target is to ensure the amount of indigenous vegetation on Council reserves is increased over time in line with the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity requirement for at least 10% indigenous vegetation cover in urban and non-urban environments.

Other Council property

The Council owns a large number of other land parcels, some of which are no longer needed for their current purpose. In 2021 it adopted a Property Acquisition and Disposal Policy that requires property to be assessed for alternative purposes before being disposed of. These purposes include future potential as indigenous vegetation and wildlife habitats and carbon sinks to offset emissions. Biodiversity staff are currently working through this portfolio to assess existing biodiversity values.



Publicly reported targets (highlighted in blue)

Performance measure - Reserves	Target	2023 Baseline	2023 achieved targets for population of 69,789	Additional land required by 2033 for population of 81,742*	Additional land required by 2043 for population of 92,178*	Additional land required by 2053 for population of 101,791*
The number of hectares of parkland per 1,000 residents	8ha	882.2ha**	12.7ha	0 (648ha required in total)	0 (736ha required in total)	0ha (808ha required in total)
The number of hectares of neighbourhood reserve land per 1,000 residents	1ha	95.1ha	1.3ha	0 (81ha required in total)	0 (92ha required in total)	5.9ha (101ha required in total)
The number of hectares of natural park per 1,000 residents	5–15ha	215.3ha	3.1ha	190ha (405ha required in total)	244ha (460ha required in total)	289ha (505ha required in total)***
The number of hectares of sports and recreation reserves per 1,000 residents	No less than 2.51ha	280.4ha	4.0ha	0 (203ha required in total)	0 (230ha required in total)	0 (253ha required in total)
The number of hectares of public gardens per 1,000 residents	0.03ha	2.8ha	0.04ha	0 (2.43ha required in total)	0 (2.76ha required in total)	0.23ha (3.03ha required in total)

* Assumes additional land isn't acquired during this period

** Excludes 71.7ha of reserve land not yet categorised

*** Excludes TKOTT land.

Performance measure - Biodiversity	Target	2023 Baseline	2023 achieved targets for population of 69,789	Additional trees required by 2033 for population of 81,742	Additional trees required by 2043 for population of 92,178	Additional trees required by 2053 for population of 101,791
The number of specimen trees in reserves/streetscapes	1 additional specimen tree stock per new resident (to be measured every 3 years in line with the LTP)	23,800	23,800	11,953 new trees	10,436 new trees*	9,613 new trees*
Performance measure - Biodiversity			Target		2023 Baseline	
The amount of tree canopy in urban areas			Increase in the amount of tree canopy (to be re-measured every 5 years)		To be measured	
The number of hectares of reserve planted in indigenous plants			A rolling annual percentage increase of indigenous vegetation cover		2.7%	
The number of key indicator species in natural parks			Increase in number of key indicator species		To be measured	
The number of advisory groups/volunteers involved with Council reserves			Maintain or increase number of groups/volunteers		To be measured	

* Assumes the required additional trees were planted each decade.

Pressures and their impacts on biodiversity

The IPBES* global assessment 2019 outlined five global pressures on biodiversity. These are:

- Historical and ongoing impacts of invasive species
- Changes in land and sea use
- Direct exploitation of species
- Climate Change
- Pollution.

These pressures also drive biodiversity loss in our own country.

Te Mana O Te Taiao,
Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2020

*Intergovernmental Science-Policy Platform on
Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services



Predator Control Programme - Silverstream Reserve

Volunteers have operated a successful pest control programme at the reserve since 2019. Over 1,662 possums, rats, mice, hedgehogs, weasels and feral cats have been trapped and bird counts have increased six-fold as a result. The increase in the proportion of native birds has increased by 50%.



Invasive species

Introduced predators and browsers threaten many indigenous species. Cats and stoats, for example, interfere with the breeding success of banded dotterels while wasps prey on indigenous insects and compete with birds for nectar. Other pests found within the District include possums, ferrets, rats, hedgehogs, rabbits, deer and goats.

Invasive plants can have severe effects on indigenous vegetation. The exotic grasses out compete the moss communities found within our District's drylands and hard to eradicate weeds such as wilding pines, gorse, clematis and blackberry limit natural regeneration of indigenous plants. Introduced algae can make freshwater ecosystems inhospitable to humans as well as their indigenous occupants.

There is also a constant biosecurity threat of new invasive species becoming introduced either from outside of the country or from other parts of Aotearoa New Zealand. Examples include microorganisms such as Kauri dieback and myrtle rust which can have devastating impacts on iconic flora and the ecosystems they support.

Changes in land use

The District has experienced substantial indigenous biodiversity loss since its settlement by humans. This has mainly occurred through the loss and modification of habitat by deforestation, burning, drainage, cultivation, urban development, and the introduction of new species. Impacts of animal and plant pests and continuing habitat loss and modification remain the main threats to indigenous biodiversity today.

The greatest loss has occurred in lowland and coastal environments where development has been the most intensive. Lowland forests, shrublands and indigenous grasslands have been reduced to small, scattered fragments and these remnants are still threatened by changing land use, browsing pressure, edge effects, and weeds and pests. Freshwater and coastal wetlands have been drained and reclaimed and the remaining wetlands are under threat from land use changes, grazing, recreation impacts and saltwater inundation. Here the remaining indigenous biodiversity is at the greatest risk of further loss.

Little intact indigenous vegetation cover remains in the heavily modified low plains. Semi-natural mixed native-exotic and even largely exotic species now provide the best habitats for native flora and fauna to survive in.

The loss has not been as extensive in the montane environments (400-800m above sea level) and some important ecological corridors of native forest, shrublands and tussock grasslands

remain. However, some of the frontal hill country and Lees Valley inland basin are experiencing land use change and intensification resulting in reductions in habitats for red tussock wetlands and dry shrubland. The Mt Pember alluvial fan in Lees Valley is regionally significant as the last undeveloped alluvial fan of its type, supporting populations of several threatened species.

Habitat loss

Habitat loss reduces the physical area in which plants and animals can survive. It also reduces the capacity of the ecosystem to sustain populations and can lead to fragmentation. The remaining

'islands' of biodiversity are less resilient to change, and the natural dispersal and flow of genetic material is prevented.

Habitat degradation

Land use and human activities can alter the surrounding natural environment in a manner which leads to the slow death of habitats and ecosystems. An example is applying fertilisers to naturally low-nutrient areas or discharging waste to the environment. This can alter the chemistry of ecosystems, particularly soil and water, leading to habitats which are unsuitable for the existing indigenous species.



Lees Valley Dryland Agrostis (Festuca) grasslands interspersed with open areas of Racomitrium mossfields.

Climate change

Assessing possible changes to the climate system is challenging because the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) climate projections depend strongly on future greenhouse gas (GHG) concentrations. The Council has taken a precautionary approach and adopted a high intensity scenario for its planning purposes. This scenario is based on greenhouse gas concentrations increasing at the current or an elevated future rate.

In 2022 a Climate Change Scenario: Technical Report was prepared for the District by the National Institute of Water & Atmospheric Research Ltd (NIWA). This report concluded that future climate changes are likely to be significant and could impact the entire District. Overall, our wind, rainfall and seasonal patterns are expected to shift and we are likely to see more extreme events and unpredictability in our weather. The sea level is also expected to rise by up to 0.8m by 2100.

- Average air temperatures are expected to increase under both a moderate (RCP 4.5) and high (RCP 8.5) GHG scenario with the high scenario causing twice as much end-century warming than the moderate scenario. Correspondingly, a decrease in frost and snow days is expected.
- Changes to extreme temperatures (>25°C) are projected to double by 2100 under a moderate GHG scenario and more than triple under a high scenario with the Lees Valley and western plains seeing the biggest increases in hot days.
- Mean annual rainfall is projected to increase across most of the District under both GHG

scenarios. The general trend shows increased rainfall across the lower plains and coastal areas and slight decreases or no change in rainfall in the western high-altitude areas and Lees Valley. The southern edge of the District may experience 12% more rainfall annually under RCP 8.5. This increase is expected to occur relatively consistently across all seasons except spring where a decrease could be seen in some areas. Extreme rainfall is likely to become more frequent and intense as the warmer atmosphere holds more water.

- Wind speed is generally expected to increase, and relative humidity decrease, as the climate warms.

A broad range of impacts could be felt both directly and indirectly. The District is predicted to become more drought prone, with droughts becoming more severe and lasting longer. Flooding, particularly in those areas close to our braided rivers, could continue to be an issue and saltwater could intrude further into coastal land as the sea level rises. There could be more frequent and intense storms and an increased risk of heat waves, wildfire and landslides.

Many natural ecosystems are already being adversely impacted and some species and ecosystems will be more vulnerable to climate change than others. Shifts in ecological boundaries are already being observed in some species, and local population extinctions are likely to be seen in those species unable to adapt or migrate to cooler areas. An increase in heat waves could cause plant fatalities from heat stress especially when combined with soil moisture deficits

Warmer temperatures could enhance the risk of pests and diseases with some pests and diseases normally wiped out by cooler winter temperatures being able to persist and spread. Plants and fauna living at higher altitudes may also be affected by new pests as snowlines rise. Mast events, which produce extremely heavy flowering and seeding, also fuel plagues of pests like rats and stoats that feed on native birds, lizards, bats and insects once the seed is gone.

Plants and animals have evolved to behave in certain ways because of seasonal cues such as daylight and temperature, and the timing of cycles across interdependent ecosystems was sequenced. As the climate changes 'phenological mismatching' is occurring when the timing of events such as birds being hatched and the supply of grubs to feed them is out of sync. This can result in the chicks starving and the caterpillars growing into plague numbers, killing plants and impacting crops. It may also be too hot for fruit and flowers to form putting pollinators at risk.

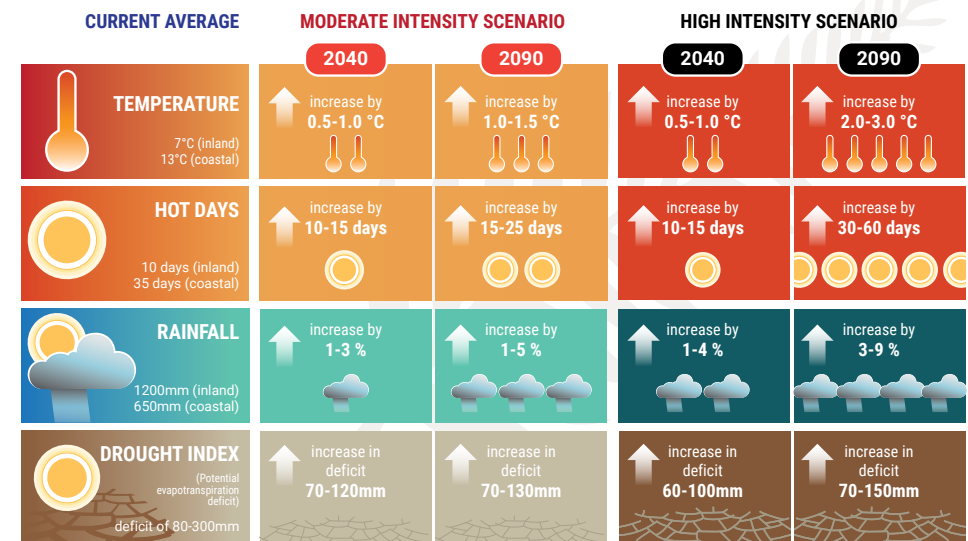
The sensitive Ashley/Rakahuri Saltwater Creek estuarine area is at risk from multiple factors such as sea level rise, ocean acidification, saltwater intrusion, flooding, reduced water flows, increased demand for water take for irrigation and an increase in pest and diseases such as toxic algae blooms as temperatures rise.



Photographer: Greg Byrnes

Overview - Waimakariri Climate change Scenarios

Graphic from Overview - Waimakariri Climate Change Scenarios, NIWA
Climate Change Technical Scenarios Summary Report



Societal pressures

The District has experienced rapid population growth in just under four decades, from 25,811 in 1986 to an estimated population of 66,246 today. By 2050 the population is expected to be approximately 100,000. The new town of Pegasus has been developed in the east of the District and large-scale urban intensification has occurred on the outskirts of Rangiora, Kaiapoi and Woodend on what used to be farmland.

As the natural environment increasingly competes with human populations for space and resources, attitudes towards the environment, along with fluctuations in economic prosperity, determine the extent to which it is protected.

The relatively recent shift towards smaller sections and larger houses in new urban subdivision areas has resulted in smaller private yards with less space for trees and gardens. This removes opportunities for people to care for nature within their home environments and reduces the amount of food and habitats available to birds and insects.

Many people are spending less time outdoors than previous generations and research has linked this with less of an understanding of the natural world and a decline in kaitiakitangi or sense of stewardship, as well as an increase in associated physical and mental health issues termed 'nature deficit disorder'.

In Aotearoa New Zealand, the predominance of exotic rather than indigenous species in the landscape and the lack of integration of nature with the built-up environment has led to an 'extinction of experience'. This is where people no longer value nature or indigenous vegetation due to a lack of exposure to it.



Challenges for the Waimakariri environmental sector

Significant Natural Areas

Significant natural areas (SNAs) hold high biodiversity values and are important for the preservation of rare species and ecosystems within the District.

Currently, there are 92 mapped SNAs containing significant indigenous vegetation and/or significant habitat of indigenous fauna that have been voluntarily listed in the proposed District Plan. The Plan contains objectives, policies and rules aimed at protecting these areas and other significant ecosystems from loss or degradation through inappropriate subdivision and development.

The National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity currently requires all SNA areas within the District to be mapped by 2027, although the Government has signalled its intention to review this legislation.

The significance of each SNA is assessed against specific criteria such as the rarity of the species found there. These sites provide an important benchmark and reference by which other areas of indigenous vegetation and habitats can be restored.

Some of these sites are owned by the Department of Conservation and a few by the

Council but the majority are located on private land. We all benefit from private landowners protecting indigenous biodiversity, and therefore need to support their efforts.

Issues for SNA landowners include:

- Protection costs typically fall to the landowner and although some rates relief and funding is available through contestable funds, this may not be sufficient to cover all expenses.

- Accessing expert advice and resources for fencing, pest and weed control and restoration.
- Fragmented SNAs that are too small to be self-sustaining.
- Insufficient buffer zones between SNAs and adjacent activities, for example irrigation, and the loss of productive land to provide them.
- The opportunity costs of protecting SNAs as vegetation cannot be cleared to develop land for a more intensive use, such as productive farming.



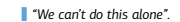
The District is well served by community groups and organisations committed to improving our natural environment and collectively the work carried out by these volunteers adds up to thousands of hours every year. Some members have spent decades acquiring expertise about specific ecosystems or species; and the work of some groups, such as the Matawai Park Advisory Group and the Ashley/Rakahuri Rivercare

In 2021, the Waimakariri District Council assisted a group of knowledgeable and enthusiastic community members to establish the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust. The Trust has a vision to assist the District's biodiversity in various practical and educational ways. Since their set-up they have organised public lectures from esteemed ecological

Te Kōhaka te Tūhaitara Trust was set up between the Council and Te Runanga o Ngāi Tahu to manage the Tūhaitara Coastal Park in accordance with strong ecological, conservation and cultural values. The park covers approximately 750ha of land along the Pegasus Bay coastline area on which the Trust is undertaking the creation of a restored coastal forest sequence, the first of its kind for Canterbury.

32 Natural Environment Strategy - Our Environment - Our Future, Version 2 - June 2024

- Developing an agreed vision and targets for the District so we can collectively measure success.
- Having strong policies that protect indigenous biodiversity and prioritising the protection of existing remnants over new plantings.



Waimakariri District Council Greenspace

Challenges for Council reserves and streetscapes include the following.

Provision

- Insufficient natural parks to meet national parks and recreation standards and agreed Council levels of service, although this is compensated in part by Department of Conservation land to the west and Te Kōhaka te Tūhāitara Trust land in the east.
- The need to re-evaluate how greenspace is provided to take into account loss of biodiversity through urban intensification.
- Significant cost of acquiring and developing new sites.
- Small reserves with a large number failing to meet the minimum 10ha threshold required for self-sustainability.
- Poor access to recreation and ecological linkages.
- Trees and indigenous vegetation competing for space with neighbourhood recreation.
- Street trees competing for space with underground services and road carriageway users.
- Lack of enforcement of Council's Reserve Engineering Code of Practice.

Resources/systems

- Limited biodiversity staff resources to provide expert advice and education.
- Limited resources for general maintenance as well as pest and weed control.
- Difficulties in establishing a reliable baseline due to missing vegetation and tree data.
- Lack of forward planning, for example, development and refresh of reserve management plans, especially one for recreation and ecological linkages.
- Lost opportunities through not having sufficient funding to develop existing sites.
- Lack of priority given to understanding and protecting biodiversity.

Biodiversity values

- Low natural ecosystem values in most reserves.
- Reserve landscapes dominated by grass monocultures and a few shrubs and trees.
- Limited indigenous vegetation.
- Limited food for bees and pollinators.
- Lack of knowledge of biodiversity values on Council land.
- No measures established for biodiversity values and no ongoing monitoring programmes.
- Critical loss of wetlands.
- Environmental impacts from the use of chemicals, particularly close to waterways.
- Tension between the use of reserves for recreation and enhancing biodiversity values.

Community

- Lack of awareness of and valuing indigenous biodiversity.
- Low community buy-in to development projects, for example, planting days.
- 'Not in my backyard' attitudes.
- Ongoing vandalism.
- Objections to the 'untidier' look of more naturally maintained reserves.
- Dislike of shade and leaf fall caused by street trees.
- Perceptions of safety for park users in more densely planted reserves.
- Affordability of Council projects.
- Limited interpretation provided to connect people with nature.



Rebuilding nature

Reconnecting with our indigenous landscape

Normalising an environment which is exotic leads to an 'extinction of (indigenous) experience'. Early immigrants would have had a completely different experience of the District's natural environment than those arriving today. Over time exotic vegetation can become more highly valued than indigenous vegetation, some of which exists nowhere else in the world, because of its predominance in the landscape. This can lead to an altered sense of place and alienation from naturally occurring ecosystems. It also has a negative impact on native fauna which has adapted over time to thrive on indigenous species.

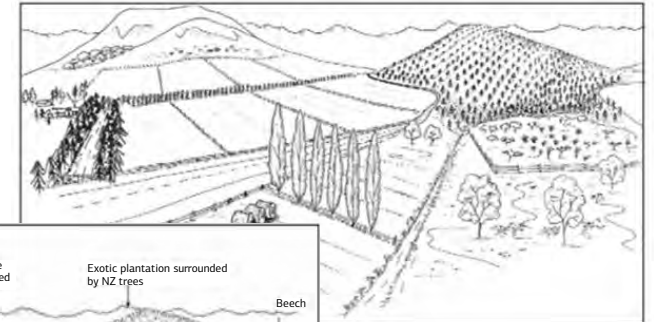
We need to reclaim our unique identity by making significant efforts to protect the little that remains and prioritise the planting of indigenous over exotic species in both our urban and rural areas.



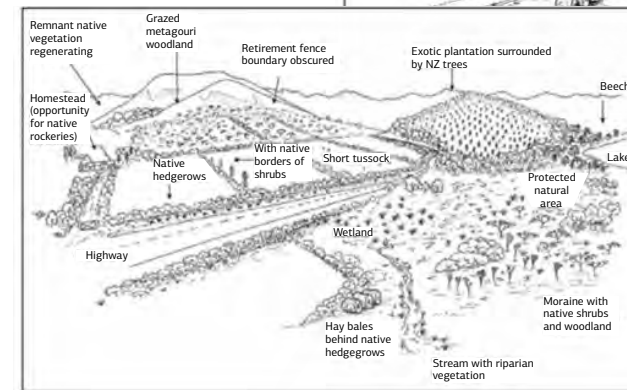
Visibility is key to conservation culture.

Reintroducing indigenous vegetation to rural areas

Over time, the wholesale removal of indigenous vegetation, draining of wetlands and modification of natural waterways for primary industry has led to the loss of ecosystem values within the District. This includes significant reductions in indigenous flora and fauna habitats as well as soil degradation, erosion, nutrient imbalances and deteriorating water quality.



Above: Predominant rural landscapes
Left: Integrated functional landscape



The adjacent picture shows how a mix of land uses can be regenerative and sustainable for productivity, as well as enhance biodiversity values and promote human health.

Under this system marginal land can be retired and left to regenerate, wetlands and waterways fenced off, natural waterways restored and flax fields planted for effluent release. Biodiversity corridors can be created by planting shelterbelts and boundary hedges with indigenous species and planting under pivots. Regenerating native vegetation also provides shade and feed for stock.

Reintroducing indigenous vegetation to urban areas

Even the smallest urban areas can play a part in restoring indigenous biodiversity by:

- Promoting visibility of our cultural heritage
- Providing habitats for indigenous lizards and invertebrates
- Providing stopover points within a wider corridor for indigenous birds
- Enhancing food/water sources for birds during times of seasonal scarcity
- Creating a seed bank for dispersal/regeneration of indigenous vegetation.

Opportunities include:

- Creating micro-bush areas
- Planting vertically
- Using indigenous vegetation to create lush courtyards
- Providing insect boxes and lizard habitats
- Using indigenous species in streetscapes
- Allowing species to regenerate in urban 'wild' areas.

We can do so much more to integrate/protect biodiversity in urban environments:

- Backyard micro-bush gardens
- Courtyards and inner sanctuaries
- Walls can be buffers
- Green roofs and roof gardens can be refuges for lizards and macro-invertebrates.

Research shows that people who are more connected with nature are usually happier in life and more likely to report feeling their lives are worthwhile.

Improvements to physical wellbeing and lower levels of poor mental health are associated with connection to nature.



Increasing urban tree canopies

Trees are on the job for us, 24 hours a day, seven days a week, working to improve our local neighbourhoods, our wellbeing and helping to mitigate the effects of our changing climate.

Our Urban Forest Plan for Ōtautahi Christchurch.
Christchurch City Council 2023

As urban intensification increases there is less space for trees in private gardens and road corridors. If not addressed, this could result in a significant overall reduction in the amount of tree canopy in urban areas of the District.

Street trees are often seen as a nuisance as they can block views, crack footpaths, drop leaf/fruit litter and cause excessive shading. However, they also provide many benefits and are a significant tool we can use to address our climate and ecological crisis. The cooling effect of trees on urban streets will become even more important as the climate warms.

Urban trees need to be viewed as critical infrastructure in the same way footpaths, pipes and cables are and sufficient space provided for them within the road corridor and public open space.

Opportunities include:

- Planting the right tree in the right place to minimise issues
- Educating residents about the value trees provide
- Protecting existing trees better
- Developing urban canopy targets and planting more trees to achieve these.

Benefits of urban trees

Spending time near trees **improves physical and mental health** by increasing energy levels and speed of recovery, while decreasing blood pressure and stress.

A tree can absorb up to 150kg of CO₂ per year, **sequester carbon** and consequently **mitigate climate change**.

Two medium-sized healthy trees **produces oxygen required for a single person** for one year.

Landscaping, especially with trees, can **increase property values** by 20%

Trees **protect biodiversity** by providing habitat. Large urban trees are excellent **filters for urban pollutants** and fine particulates.

Trees have been shown to **intercept** between 9% and 61% of **rainfall**. They also **reduce erosion and sediment** into our stormwater systems.

Strategic placement of trees in urban areas can **cool the air** by between 2°C and 8°C.

Trees properly placed around buildings can **reduce air conditioning needs** by 30% and **save energy used for heating** by 20-50%.



(Our Urban Forest Plan for Ōtautahi Christchurch, Christchurch City Council 2023)

More, bigger, better and joined

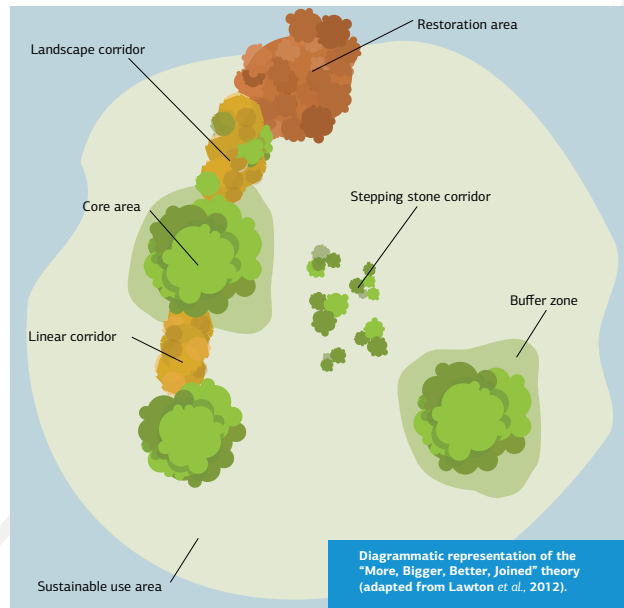
"The ability to sustain biodiversity and ecosystem services will hinge upon the total amount and quality of habitat left in fragments, their degree of connectivity, and how they are affected by other human-induced perturbations such as climate change and invasive species".

Haddad et al (2015)

Fewer, smaller, isolated patches of habitat lead to a reduction, and sometimes extinction, of species. A rapid decline in species' diversity and increase in fragmentation occurs when less than 10% vegetation cover remains. As well as supporting biodiverse ecosystems, more habitat patches within an area can greatly increase the dispersal of a range of species and enhance the regenerative capacity of the natural environment.

Key strategies are to:

- Improve the quality of current sites by better habitat protection, restoration and management
- Create new natural sites larger than 10ha (minimum size required to be self-sustaining)
- Enhance connections between, or join up, sites, either through physical corridors, or through 'stepping stones'
- Reduce the pressures on wildlife by improving the wider environment, including through buffering wildlife sites
- Increase the size of current wildlife sites (kokako and kiwi need at least 2ha).



Landscape matrix

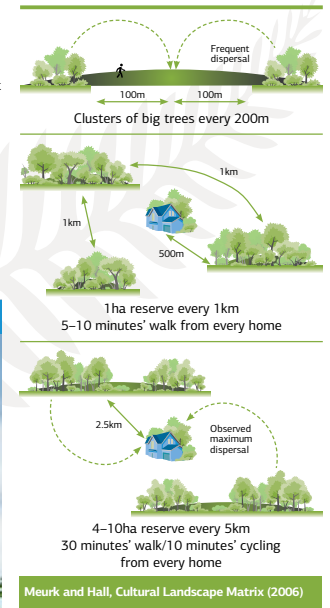
Natural ecosystems are dynamic, forever moving and evolving. Species do not survive in isolated populations but in connected populations where individuals are able to move between groups. Joining up our natural environment allows for the mixing of genes and resilient populations which in turn creates healthy ecosystems with ecological integrity.

A matrix of habitat patches, adequately buffered and of varying sizes, can assist in the movement of species across a landscape. Places where birds can feed and nest from sea to mountains extends their range and population size. This is true for much of the biodiversity in the District.



Meurk and Hall (2006) developed a cultural landscape matrix providing optimal distances for the effective regeneration of forest habitat patches. This included the following:

- Groves – a few minutes' walk from each resident
- Mid-habitats – within 10 minutes' walk (maximum distance 0.5km)
- Core sanctuaries – within 45 minutes' walk or 10 minutes' biking (maximum distance 2.5km)
- Connectivity – through corridors and the halo effect to habitat and homes. The halo effect is where species can spillover from well-functioning ecosystems to repopulate new areas. An example of this is previously rare birds entering Wellington city from the Zealandia ecosanctuary.



Meurk and Hall, Cultural Landscape Matrix (2006)

Working with others

Environmental and ecological restoration is 'as much about people as about the natural environment'.

Norton et al., 2016

Collaboration and partnerships

Collaboration and partnerships with tangata whenua are essential to acknowledge and support their role as kaitiaki and to enable a deeper understanding of natural systems through the application of mātauranga Māori. The need for Māori leadership within the natural environment sector is increasingly being embraced in policy and law.



'Indigenous people have the right to maintain, protect and control their culture and traditional ecological knowledge.'

United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples, 2007

Inter-agency collaborations and community partnerships are also extremely important for efficient nature conservation. Collectively, the work achieved by committed community groups can far outweigh that of a single agency. Aotearoa New Zealand examples include Pollinator Paths, a registered charity which helps people in Auckland to fill their streetscapes with habitat suitable for pollinators, and Predator Free Wellington. This organisation assists groups and individuals to protect biodiversity by eradicating predators. Initiatives such as these may allow towns and cities to become biodiverse sanctuaries over time.



Citizen bioscience

Citizen science is defined as 'public participation and collaboration in scientific research with the aim to increase scientific knowledge'. Benefits can include learning opportunities, personal enjoyment, social interaction, contributing to scientific evidence and policy development, and connecting the wider community with science. It is particularly useful in more densely populated urban and peri-urban areas.

A well-known nationwide example is the annual 'Garden Bird Survey' where households have a week to record the birds they see over an hour at a particular location. A local example is the 2019 Bird Count report prepared by the Council to inform the Northern Pegasus Bay Bylaw using bird count data supplied by Birds NZ and the Ashley/Rakahuri Rivercare Group.

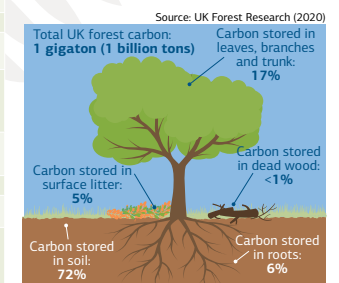


Nature-based solutions

Nature-based solutions that address climate change issues

Issue	Nature-based solution
Stormwater and flood management Extreme weather events are becoming more common as the planet heats up putting more moisture into the atmosphere. Climate change will substantially increase the severity and frequency of flood risk. Nature-based solutions allow excess water to be stored and slowly released to the surrounding environment.	Sponge towns and cities, stormwater swales, daylighting streams, waterways, and wetlands. Making room for rivers and waterways. Letting these flow more naturally will improve their natural flood capacity, health, and habitat quality. Replacing hard surfaces with permeable surfaces, for example, concrete with crusher dust pathways.
Urban heat islands Vehicles and buildings generate heat, and dark, paved surfaces absorb heat. These surfaces also allow fewer plants to grow. This reduces the cooling effects of shading and evaporation. The resulting urban heat-island effect can increase temperatures in built-up areas and worsen the effects of heatwaves on health and wellbeing.	Increasing tree canopy coverage in urban areas to provide shade and cool temperatures through transpiration. Integrating landscape design with built-up areas to create living towns. Growing green roofs, roof gardens and rain gardens. Promoting the 'urban wild' concept where natural ecosystems are given space to flourish in highly developed urban areas.
Thunderstorm asthma This is where pollen particles take on moisture in the clouds and then become small enough to pass directly into the lungs causing severe illness and death.	Replacing high allergenic exotic species with indigenous species as these are not known to cause asthma.
Wildfire The risk of multiple/large scale wildfires is increasing as the climate warms.	Planting indigenous species as a green firebreak.
Climate change mitigation Trees can store large amounts of carbon and therefore help to mitigate the effects of climate change.	Planting street trees and urban pocket forests. Protecting and restoring wetlands as blue carbon sinks.
Food insecurity Climate change events can disrupt food production and supply chains making it difficult for people, especially those on low incomes, to source, access and afford adequate food.	Providing food forests, community gardens, space to grow and harvest mahinga kai, fruiting street trees, raised bed and container vegetable growing.

The European Commission (2015) describe nature-based solutions as 'actions which are inspired by, supported by or copied from nature'. Nature-based solutions buffer against climate impacts, while also fostering wellbeing, sequestering carbon, and increasing biodiversity. As such, they provide environmental, social and economic benefits, and help build resilience. The Government signaled in the 2022 Aotearoa National Adaptation Plan that it will prioritise nature-based solutions in planning and regulations for both carbon removals and climate change adaptation in order to address the climate and biodiversity crises together.



The Vision 2023–2053

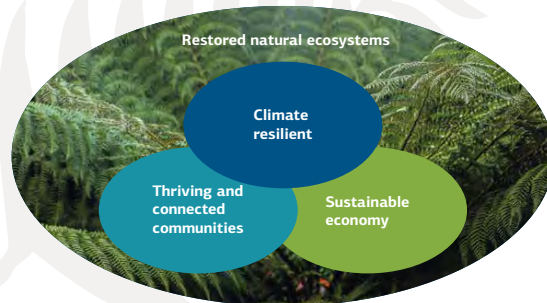
In 2001 the Council adopted a strategy for the District called Vision 2020. This document contained a vision for “a high-quality natural environment” where natural ecosystems were a significant feature of the District and the land, water and air were healthy. A key strategic action was to ‘preserve natural ecosystems’ by:

- Supporting Kaitiakitanga – the duty of the tangata whenua to safeguard the life supporting capacity of the community’s natural resources
- Recognising that biodiversity is a highly valued resource
- Recognising the vulnerability of natural resources
- Identifying, protecting and, where appropriate, restoring and/or enhancing:
 - Waterways and wetlands
 - Significant remnant native vegetation
 - Natural ecosystems
 - Significant habitats for indigenous fauna.

More than 20 years later these actions are still relevant with the need to protect our natural environment and indigenous biodiversity ecosystems even more important due to increased

pressures from population growth, land use change and climate change. The vision for the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy recognises the interrelationship between a healthy environment and thriving, healthy communities, and the need for us all to work together to

achieve this. The implementation plan that gives effect to this strategy demonstrates Council’s commitment to being a leader in the protection and enhancement of our natural environment, while working in partnership with, and actively supporting, our community on the journey.



Vision	Our healthy and resilient natural environment sustains our ecosystems, our communities and our future.
Strategic Goal	We work together to ensure Waimakariri’s natural environment is valued, protected, restored and celebrated.

Guiding principles

The following principles underpin this strategy and guide its implementation:

Guiding Principles | Lead by example | Engage with others | Use best practice | Commit to action

Key themes

The following four key focus areas have been identified for the strategy:



Strategic Direction 1 Prioritise nature

This focus area is about recognising nature is core to our identity, lifestyle, wellbeing and economy and making space for it to thrive in our built-up and productive environments.



Strategic Direction 2 Connect people and nature

The more our community connects with nature the more we will respect, understand and care for it. This focus area is about making it easy for people to be a part of nature and supporting those already engaged in protecting and restoring it.



Strategic Direction 3 Improve our knowledge

We need to know what we have to determine whether our actions are making a difference. This focus area is about developing baseline data, carrying out research to inform best practice responses to current and future challenges, and monitoring performance.



Strategic Direction 4 Sustain and create resilient ecosystems

This focus area is about making practical on the ground improvements to protect and restore natural ecosystems across the District.





Strategic direction 1: Prioritise nature

Desired outcomes:

1. The District's natural environment is valued as critical infrastructure, essential to our wellbeing and the survival of other species we share Earth with.
2. Natural ecosystems are a significant feature of the Waimakariri District.
3. There is better integration of the natural and built environment.

To succeed we need to:

- Understand the District's unique contribution to global biodiversity.
- Increase awareness of the importance of our natural areas for connection to place, and our community's social, cultural, economic and environmental wellbeing.
- Increase funding to protect and restore the natural environment.
- Understand and mitigate the effects of development on our natural environment.
- Ensure environmental impacts are factored into District development and infrastructure planning and management.

Strategic Actions:

1. Integrate planning by:

- Increasing the circle of influence in infrastructure and district planning.
- Advocating for a holistic approach.

2. Mainstream biodiversity by:

- Ensuring biodiversity is prioritised as a key Council activity.
- Moving from grey to green.
- Creating spaces for nature.

The environment has different meanings for people, shaping the way they interact with it.



There is only one earth and one solution. The ultimate test for us and everything we do is: "Am I working with nature or against it?" Rod Oram 2023





Strategic direction 2: Connect people and nature

Desired outcomes:

1. Living in a healthy natural environment enriches our everyday life and we work together to achieve and maintain this.
2. People understand and value indigenous biodiversity and natural ecosystems.
3. Residents have a 'sense of place' or connectedness to the District's natural landscape.
4. Our community understands how it can contribute to and become actively involved in protecting, restoring and recreating natural ecosystems.

To succeed we need to:

- Assist our community to understand, appreciate and care for our natural environment.
- Encourage residents to become actively involved with environmental rehabilitation and enhancement projects.
- Maximise benefits, including value for money, by partnering with others.
- Celebrate biodiversity success stories – past, present and future.
- Enable sustainable public access to the natural environment.
- Significantly increase the amount of indigenous biodiversity in the District's landscape.
- Integrate indigenous biodiversity with our urban form to ensure it is visible.

Strategic Actions:

1. Make it easy to connect by:

- Providing opportunities to bring together people and biodiversity.
- Ensuring education programmes, activities and resources are available.
- Looking for opportunities to partner with and support others.
- Encouraging people to physically connect with the natural environment.

2. Rediscover and make our indigenous landscape visible by:

- Increasing the proportion of indigenous planting on Council reserves and streetscapes.
- Supporting the achievement of 10% indigenous biodiversity in the wider landscape.

The 'mere-exposure' effect

People connected to nature are more likely to advocate for the natural environment

People joining in, caring for nature and each other.





Strategic direction 3: Improve our knowledge

Desired outcomes:

1. Tangata Whenua knowledge and practices are recognised, respected and encouraged.
2. We have the knowledge to effectively protect and restore our natural ecosystems.

To succeed we need to:

- Understand the District's natural ecosystems and biodiversity indicators.
- Understand the impacts of activities on the District's water catchments and any flow-on effects.
- Understand the likely effects of climate change on the District's biodiversity and how resilience can be promoted.
- Work in partnership with Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga to incorporate Mātauranga Māori into policies and actions.
- Work collaboratively with local, regional and national organisations committed to transforming environmental outcomes.
- Use knowledge, science, data and innovation to inform our work.

Strategic Actions:

1. Know what we have by:

- Continuing the assessment, monitoring and reporting of biodiversity values on public and private land.

2. Understand future challenges by:

- Carrying out research and working with research partners, community groups and landowners to fill knowledge gaps and understand challenges.
- Identifying the impacts of key trends on the natural environment.

	<p>iNaturalist NZ - Mātaki Taiao</p> <p>A place where you can record what you see in nature, meet other nature watchers, and learn about Aotearoa's natural world.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 48,861 people signed up • 1,865,227 observations to date • 18,288 species observed 		
<p>Collaborative learning through citizen science</p>		<p>Biodiversity values in the estuary and coastal wetlands</p>	<p>7-8.30pm Wednesday 13 September</p> <p>Presenter: Bev Alexander, Ashley-Rakahuri River Group</p> <p>Venue: Waikuku Beach Hall</p>



Strategic direction 4: Sustain and create resilient ecosystems

Desired outcomes:

1. The District's natural ecosystems are self-sustaining, healthy, resilient, and connected from the mountains to the sea.
2. A greater proportion of vegetation cover in the District is indigenous.
3. There is no further loss or degradation of Significant Natural Areas (SNAs).
4. Urban vegetation, including street trees, is valued by the community as making a significant contribution to urban resilience, human health and environmental sustainability.

To succeed we need to:

- Prioritise the protection of species and ecosystems that are internationally, nationally and regionally important.
- Prioritise the protection, restoration and enhancement of the District's most vulnerable and high-value ecosystems.
- Conserve, rehabilitate, extend and connect biodiversity and wildlife corridors.
- Ensure waterways provide healthy and connected habitats for indigenous aquatic species.
- Have a joined-up response to managing our natural resource.
- Work in partnership with Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga to promote improved natural environment outcomes.
- Encourage and support action by landowners and community to protect, maintain, restore and recreate indigenous biodiversity.
- Prioritise the planting of eco-sourced (where possible) indigenous vegetation over exotics on Council-owned land.
- Develop more of the Council's reserve land as self-sustaining natural ecosystems.
- Reduce biological threats and pressures through effective management.
- Implement climate change mitigation and adaptation action.
- Transition to maintenance practices that work in harmony with nature.
- Promote the ecosystem services provided by street trees to residents.

Strategic Actions:

1. Protect what we have by:

- Implementing a climate change natural environment mitigation and adaptation programme.
- Reducing the pressure in high value indigenous ecosystems by improving the wider environment.
- Providing support for SNA landowners and incentivising SNA protection.

2. Rebuild nature – more, bigger, better, and joined by:

- **More** - Creating new natural environment sites to provide for future wellbeing.
- **Bigger** - Increasing the size of existing indigenous flora and fauna sites.
- **Better** - Improving the quality of the natural environment by better habitat management and promoting fauna-friendly practices.
- **Joined** - Enhancing connections between, or joining up sites.



Implementation

2024-34 Long Term Plan

The Implementation Plan for this strategy contains 124 actions that could be carried out over the next 30 years. Actions programmed for 2024 to 2034 have been included in the Council's Long Term Plan (LTP). Over this ten year period an additional \$1.2m operational expenditure and \$2.9m capital expenditure has been provided to support the implementation of these actions.

Implementation Plan actions have been prioritised as following:

1. Meeting Council's legislative requirements (protecting remaining indigenous priority ecosystems).
2. Very Important (restoring and managing natural ecosystems, education).
3. Important (educating residents in general).

Many of the actions are business as usual for the Council and have been captured to guide Greenspace biodiversity work programmes over the next few years. In order to make further progress on environmental outcomes the Council significantly increased its expenditure on biodiversity in the 2021-24 LTP and this increased activity is reflected in the Implementation Plan.



Key projects from the 2021-24 Long Term Plan include:

- Additional funding for SNA landowners in the form of rates relief and a contestable fund
- Funding to implement Arohaitia te Awa over 10 years
- Funding to support the establishment of the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust

- Funding to provide access to the coast for people with restricted mobility
- Additional biodiversity staff resource.

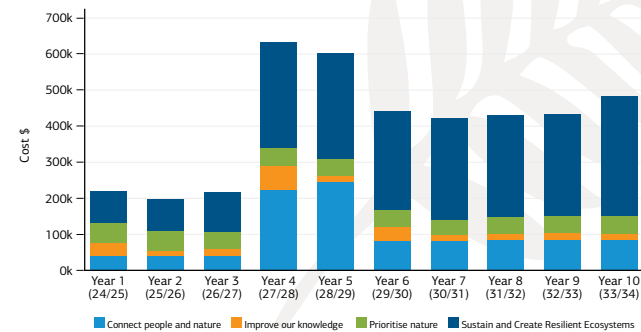
In addition to these new projects, 85ha of wetland off Lineside Road was purchased by the Council in 2023 to cover a shortfall in its stated levels of service for Natural Parks.

Key Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy implementation actions that have been funded in the 2024-34 Long Term Plan include:

- Operational funding for the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust
- An annual contestable fund to support community-based environmental groups to implement strategy actions
- New education and research programmes
- An increase in Council biodiversity capability and capacity in light of increased legislative requirements arising from the recent gazettal of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity
- New targets for additional tree planting to increase the size of urban tree canopies (approximately 12,000 more specimen trees by 2033) and increased indigenous biodiversity planting on Council reserves
- The development of the Lineside Road wetland
- Projects that increase access to the natural environment for those with restricted mobility
- An additional ranger to work with community groups, plant reserves and carry out pest and weed management
- Partnering in an integrated landscape-wide pest and weed control programme
- Developing more walking tracks at natural parks such as Ashley Gorge Reserve
- Part funding (with Department of Conservation) a new toilet at Coopers Creek.

Strategy actions funded in the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan

This graph includes all the Implementation Plan actions and shows the logical progression of activities from ensuring internal resources, processes and knowledge are in order, to concentrating on connecting people and nature, and then making on-the-ground ecosystem improvements.



Monitoring

Improving environmental outcomes takes time and the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy is intended to provide strategic direction for achieving this over the next 30 years. A key action is to identify, monitor and publicly report on biodiversity indicators for the Waimakariri District so progress can be tracked.

Review

The strategy document will be reviewed in eight years' time prior to the development of the Council's 2034 Long Term Plan.

The Implementation Plan needs to be flexible enough to respond to changing circumstances and priorities. This will therefore be reviewed every three years in line with LTP reviews to allow requests for funding to be considered by Council.



Appendix 1 Council Park Categories

Type of Park	Primary purpose	What are they?	What are they used for?
Natural Parks	To provide opportunities for people to experience nature and/or to protect the natural environment.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Protect natural ecosystems including indigenous flora and fauna. Allow us to experience nature close to home. Enable participation in low impact recreation activities compatible with the park's natural values. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conservation. Ecological restoration and enhancement. Access to the coast, rivers, man-made waterbodies, natural environment. Walking, cycling, horse riding, kayaking, camping, picnicking, environmental education.
Recreation and Ecological Linkages	Open space, linkages and corridors.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enhance urban form and landscape values. Often provide walkway/cycleway networks linking one neighbourhood to another or park areas together. Usually have a low level of development which may include tracks, park furniture and signage. Can be to protect and enhance biodiversity and provide linked ecological corridors within the built environment. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Amenity/open space. Walking/cycling/commuting. Conservation and ecological enhancement.
Neighbourhood Parks	Recreation, play and open space.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Smaller reserves located within residential areas or larger rural domains serving the needs of small townships/outlying communities. Add to the attractiveness of neighbourhoods. Provide space for informal recreation, social interaction and play. Facilities include public toilets, playgrounds, half courts and seating. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Amenity open space in built up neighbourhoods. Recreation including children's play, informal sports, socialising, relaxation, localised community activity.

Type of Park	Primary purpose	What are they?	What are they used for?
Sports and Recreation Reserves	Sport and recreation activity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Larger multi-purpose reserves providing for active sports and recreation. • Sports facilities and buildings - sports turf and hard courts, changing rooms and club rooms, public toilets and on-site car parking. • Recreation facilities - playgrounds, skate parks, half courts and seating. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Organised sports. • Informal/social sports. • Active recreation such as walking. • Events. • Amenity open space.
Outdoor Adventure Parks	Recreation activities requiring a large scale non-urban environment.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large sites (20ha plus) generally located on the outskirts of urban areas or further afield. • Enable visitors to experience a variety of recreation activities in different open space environments. • Character and management varies widely and can include exotic forestry, farm parks, native bush, coastal and river areas. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Managed nature. • Walking, tramping, cycling and mountain biking. • Equestrian activities. • Motor and wind sports. • Camping. • Other recreation activities not suited to an urban park environment or requiring natural features such as rock climbing and canoeing.
Cultural Heritage Parks	To protect and experience our history and to provide for commemoration, mourning and remembrance.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cultural heritage sites/features. • Open and closed cemeteries. • Attractive open spaces appropriate for reflection and grieving. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Protection, restoration and enhancement of historic features. • Historic information/education. • Commemoration. • Burials, mourning, remembrance.
Public Gardens	Horticultural collections and displays for relaxation, contemplation and education.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High quality public gardens in key locations. • Provide opportunities for botanical collections and protection of heritage features such as band rotundas. • Education and leisure experiences. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Horticultural/botanical displays and high quality landscaping. • Interpretation – plant names, horticultural or historic information. • Relaxation and children's play. • Community events, weddings, picnics, outdoor area for town centre workers to eat their lunches. • Tourist destination.

Type of Park	Primary purpose	What are they?	What are they used for?
Streetscapes	Provide open space amenity and natural elements within built-up areas.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Street-related public open space designed to enhance amenity values, accessibility and safety along road corridors and pedestrian avenues. • Includes street trees, street gardens, amenity landscape planting, some grassed berm areas, street furniture, historic and town entrance signs and caravan effluent disposal sites. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Amenity (walking, cycling, driving). • Social interaction. • Relaxation. • Civic pride arising from visual amenity/town identity. • Botanical/source of food for wildlife.
Civic Space	Social and community open space and events.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open spaces within central business districts or other retail business areas which provide space for leisure and/or landscape/amenity enhancement. • They may also provide for large public gatherings, events and entertainment and therefore be designed to attract and cater for periodic high levels of use. • High level of amenity development and associated maintenance. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lunch/meetings/socialising/relaxation for workers and shoppers. • Amenity open space in town centre, business or industrial areas. • Social and community gatherings/events. • Entertainment.

Appendix 2 References

- Ashley-Rakahuri Rivercare Group. arrg.org.nz
- Ausseil, A. G. E., Dymond, J. R., & Weeks, E. S. (2011). Provision of natural habitat for biodiversity: quantifying recent trends in New Zealand. *Biodiversity loss in a changing planet*, 201–220.
- Bellingham, P.J., Amst, E.A., Clarkson, B.D. *et al.*, (2023). The right tree in the right place? A major economic tree species poses major ecological threats. *Biol Invasions* 25, 39–60. doi.org/10.1007/s10530-022-02892-6
- Birds New Zealand. birdsnz.org.nz
- Broadbent, A., Sood, A., Stuart, S., Macara, G., Zammit, C. (2022) Waimakariri District Climate Change Scenario: Technical Report. NIWA Taihoro Nukurangi, Wellington.
- Broadbent, A., Sood, A., Stuart, S., Macara, G., Zammit, C. (2022) Waimakariri District Climate Change Scenario: Summary Report. NIWA Taihoro Nukurangi, Wellington.
- Cardinale, B. J., Duffy, J. E., Gonzalez, A., Hooper, D. U., Perrings, C., Venail, P., ... & Naeem, S. (2012). Biodiversity loss and its impact on humanity. *Nature*, 486(7401), 59–67.
- Christchurch City Council (2023) Our Urban Forest Plan for Ōtautahi Christchurch. Christchurch City Council, NZ. Retrieved February 2023 from: ccc.govt.nz/assets/Documents/Consultation/2023/02-February/CUS5882-Urban-Forest-Plan-A4-WEB.pdf
- Department of Conservation (2020). Te Mana o Te Taiao - Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2020. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Dollery, R. (2023) Natural Environment Strategy Biodiversity State of Environment Report Waimakariri District Council, Rangiora Environment Canterbury (2018). Waimakariri Water Zone Committee: Draft Zone Implementation Programme Addendum. Christchurch, New Zealand.
- EC—European Commission. (2015) Towards an EU Research and Innovation Policy Agenda for Nature-Based Solutions & Re-Naturing Cities. Final Report of the Horizon2020 Expert Group on Nature-Based Solutions and Re-Naturing Cities; European Commission: Brussels, Belgium.
- Ewers, R. M., & Didham, R. K. (2006). Confounding factors in the detection of species responses to habitat fragmentation. *Biological reviews*, 81(1), 117–142.
- Grove, P. (2016) Current state biodiversity assessment for the Waimakariri Canterbury Water Management Strategy Zone, Environment Canterbury, Christchurch, New Zealand.
- Ignatieva, M., Meurk, C. D., Van Roon, M., Simcock, R., & Stewart, G. H. (2008). How to put nature into our neighbourhoods: Application of Low Impact Urban Design and Development (LIUDD) principles, with a biodiversity focus, for New Zealand developers and homeowners. *Landcare Research Science Series No.35*, Manaaki Whenua Press, Christchurch.
- INaturalist NZ. <https://inaturalist.nz>
- Lawton, J.H., Brotherton, P.N.M., Brown, V.K., Elphick, C., Fitter, A.H., Forshaw, J., Haddow, R.W., Hilborne, S., Leaf, R.N., Mace, G.M., Southgate, M.P., Sutherland, W.J., Tew, T.E., Varley, J., & Wynne, G.R. (2010) Making Space for Nature: a review of England's wildlife sites and ecological network. Report to Defra, UK.
- Manaaki Whenua – Landcare Research (2023). Garden Bird Survey. Retrieved from: gardenbirdsurvey.nz April 2023.
- Manaaki Whenua – Landcare Research (2022). Threatened Environment Classification in Our Environment. Retrieved April 2023 from: ourenvironment.scinfo.org.nz/maps-and-tools/app/Habitats/lenz_tec
- McEwan, M., (1987) Ecological regions and districts of New Zealand. Department of Conservation. Wellington, New Zealand.
- Meurk, C. D., Blaschke, P. M., & Simcock, R. (2013). Ecosystem services in New Zealand cities. Ecosystem services in New Zealand: conditions and trends, Manaaki Whenua Press, Lincoln, 254–273.
- Meurk, C. D., & Hall, G. M. (2006). Options for enhancing forest biodiversity across New Zealand's managed landscapes based on ecosystem modelling and spatial design. *New Zealand journal of ecology*, 131–146.
- MFE (2023). Briefing for Incoming Ministers - Environment, Climate Change and RMA Reform, New Zealand Government, Wellington
- MFE (2022). Aotearoa's New Zealand's First National Adaptation Plan, New Zealand Government, Wellington.
- National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity, 2023. Retrieved from environment.govt.nz/assets/publications/biodiversity/National-Policy-Statement-for-Indigenous-Biodiversity.pdf
- Pollinator Paths. (2021). A Path to a Better Future. Retrieved from: pollinatorpaths.com/ April, 2023.
- Predator Free Wellington. (2023) Our Project. Retrieved from: pfw.org.nz/our-project/
- Sparrow, M (2015) Canterbury Water Management Strategy: Waimakariri Zone Socio-Economic Profile. Environment Canterbury and Waimakariri District Council.
- Te Kōhaka o Tūhaitara Trust. tuhaitarapark.org.nz
- United Nations Environment Programme (2021). Making Peace with Nature: A scientific blueprint to tackle the climate, biodiversity and pollution emergencies. Nairobi. unep.org/resources/making-peace-nature.
- United Nations (2007) United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples. un.org
- Waimakariri District Council (2021). Partnering for Environmental Action: Notes from the Natural Environmental Forum. Waimakariri District Council, Rangiora.
- Waimakariri District Council (2001) Vision 2020 - The Community's Vision for the Waimakariri District
- Waimakariri Proposed District Plan (2023). Waimakariri District Council, Rangiora, New Zealand.
- Waimakariri Water Zone Committee. (2018). Zone Implementation Programme Addendum. Waimakariri Water Zone Committee.



215 High Street
Private Bag 1005
Rangiora 7440, New Zealand
Phone 0800 965 468
waimakairiri.govt.nz

240607091999



Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy Implementation Plan



About the Implementation Plan

This Implementation Plan is intended to give effect to the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy (WNES). The Strategy is the Council's local response to the degradation of important natural ecosystems and species being reported across the world, including within our District.

Current global biodiversity loss is so great it is called the 'sixth extinction'. The biodiversity crisis and the climate crisis are acknowledged to be closely linked and healthy and diverse ecosystems can adjust more effectively to climate threats. The contribution nature-based solutions can make to buffering climate impacts by sequestering carbon and protecting built up areas is also reflected in the strategy.

All aspects of life in Aotearoa New Zealand rely on a thriving natural environment including our physical and mental health, economy and culture. The strategy seeks to restore our connection to the natural world we are a part of so that we feel inspired to better protect it. We need to prioritise the protection and restoration of the natural environment not only for the ecosystems benefits it provides us and those who follow, but also for its own intrinsic worth. A world without dolphins, kiwi, tuatara and Kauri trees seems unimaginable but could become a possibility.

The strategy takes into account strategic directions outlined in the Local Government Act 2002 (4 wellbeings), National Adaptation Plan, National Policy Statement for Indigenous

Biodiversity, Aotearoa Biodiversity Strategy and others. It also complements the work of other organisations such as Environment Canterbury's Zone Implementation Plan Addendum (ZIPA), Forest and Bird's 'Make Every Wetland Count' campaign, QEII Trust and the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust.

The strategy currently consists of three documents plus a summary document which should be read in conjunction with one another.

Background documents



A Biodiversity SOE report describes the current state of indigenous biodiversity within the District and the challenges and opportunities foreseen over the next 30 years. It also provides an overview of biodiversity concepts and relevant legislation.

A review of Council reserve provision also informs the strategy. This will form part of a Reserves SOE report that identifies opportunities, in collaboration with local residents, for increasing natural values in reserves and streetscapes.

Strategy

Provides a high level strategic framework to guide Council's work in protecting and restoring the natural environment over the next 30 years. Roles range from developing plans and carrying out the work, to supporting the efforts of others, educating people about the issues and opportunities and advocating for change, both at a national and local level.

Action plan

Contains specific costed actions to be included in the Council's Long Term Plan for implementation between 2024 and 2034.



Key

Abbreviations used:

ABS – Aotearoa Biodiversity Strategy

ERP – Emissions Reduction Plan

NAP – National Adaptation Plan

NPS-FW – National Policy Statement for Fresh Water 2020

NPSIB – National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity

WDCCO – Community Outcomes

WVMS – Waimakariri Visitor Marketing Strategy 2020-25

PF 2050 – Predator Free 2050

EWG – Forest & Bird Every Wetland Counts

The abbreviations are used to show the links between the above documents and the actions. Those highlighted in bold are currently mandatory, although the Government has signalled its intention to review the implementation of the NPSIB and replace the NPS-FW.

Actions are classified as:

✓✓✓ = legislative

✓✓ = very important

✓ = important

Implementation years:

Yrs 1-3 = July 2024–June 2027

Yrs 4-6 = July 2027–June 2030

Yrs 7-10 = July 2030–June 2034

Yrs 11-30 = July 2034 onwards

Asset symbols:

= Parks and Reserves

= Streetscapes

= Water Bodies

= Other Land

= Significant Natural Areas















































Strategic Direction 1

Prioritise nature

Desired outcomes:

1. The District's natural environment is valued as critical infrastructure, essential to our wellbeing and the survival of other species we share Earth with.
2. Natural ecosystems are a significant feature of the Waimakariri District.
3. There is better integration of the natural and built environment.



Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
1.1 Integrate planning									
1.1.1 Increase the circle of influence in infrastructure and district planning									
1.1.1.1	Ensure national and regional environmental policy direction is given effect to where required and considered for inclusion in Council's planning processes where discretionary (NPSIB , ABS, ERP and NAP).	     	Development Planning Unit, Strategy & Business, Greenspace	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
1.1.1.2	Amend the District Plan as required to give effect to the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity (NPSIB).	     	Development Planning Unit, Greenspace	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.				●
1.1.1.3	Require ecological protection or enhancement either via direct resource consent conditions, covenants, consent notices or bonds, where possible to do so, to manage the effects of an activity (NPSIB).	     	Development Planning Unit, landowners, Greenspace	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.				●
1.1.1.4	Provide specialised biodiversity input to planning processes including resource consents, particularly where an ecological report is provided (NPSIB).	     	Greenspace, Development Planning Unit, Utilities & Roading	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
1.1.1.5	Work with Council staff and developers to provide ecologically functional landscapes in urban areas as described in the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy and Biodiversity State of Environment Report.	     	Greenspace, Strategy & Business, Development Planning Unit, land developers, Utilities & Roading	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
1.1.1.6	Review and implement Council's Engineering Code of Practice to ensure biodiversity is prioritised as critical infrastructure.	     	Greenspace, Utilities & Roading	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●			
1.1.1.7	Provide specialised biodiversity input to engineering infrastructure design (NPSIB).	     	Greenspace, Utilities & Roading	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
1.1.1.8	Develop education resources and programmes for staff working across the Council (ABS, NPSIB).		Greenspace, Council staff	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$11,000. Additional biodiversity staff time covered in 1.2.1.2 plus \$11k project costs over years 24/25 and 25/26.	●			
1.1.1.9	Continue to administer and support the cross-council Biodiversity Co-ordination Group.		Strategy & Business, Greenspace, Development Planning Unit, District Plan Admin, 3 Waters Unit	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
1.1.2 Advocate for a holistic approach									
1.1.2.1	Advocate for nature-centric policies, strategies, and plans both within the organisation and externally.		Strategy & Business, Greenspace, Development Planning Unit, Utilities & Roding, external organisations	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
1.1.2.2	Promote the economic, social, cultural, and other ecosystem service benefits, such as climate change mitigation, provided by the natural environment.		Strategy & Business, Greenspace	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●			
1.2 Mainstream biodiversity									
1.2.1 Ensure biodiversity is prioritised as a key Council activity									
1.2.1.1	Adopt parks levels of service, and biodiversity KPI's and targets that ensure biodiversity is prioritised and provide a mandate for an increased biodiversity funding share.		Strategy & Business, Greenspace	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●			
1.2.1.2	Increase Council biodiversity capability and capacity.		Greenspace	✓✓	Mix of existing and new funding. Total additional cost of \$0.5m for two new staff members.	●	●	●	●

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
1.2.2 Move from grey to green									
1.2.2.1	Advocate for nature-based engineering solutions to mitigate the effects of climate change (ERP, NAP).		Strategy & Business, Greenspace, Development Planning Unit, Utilities & Roding	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.	●	●	●	●
1.2.2.2	Promote the use of indigenous flora, fauna and cultural icons on urban infrastructure such as signs, bridges, sculptures, street flags, toilets and hard surfaces etc.; and indigenous flora and fauna names for reserve and street names.		Greenspace, Utilities & Roding, Strategy & Business, Community Development, Waimakariri Arts Trust	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only. Project costs to be included in individual project budgets.	●	●	●	●
1.2.2.3	Review the District Plan and other relevant Council documents as appropriate, to encourage and incentivise water sensitive urban design; and develop implementation guidelines (NPS-FW)		Development Planning Unit, Greenspace, Utilities & Roding, 3 Waters Unit	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.				●
1.2.3 Create spaces for nature									
1.2.3.1	Prioritise the protection of existing wetlands over other proposed land uses (ERP, EWC).		Development Planning Unit, Greenspace, developers, landowners	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
1.2.3.2	Recommend sufficient buffer zones are provided when changing/intensifying land use for existing high value terrestrial and aquatic habitats and/or flora/fauna species to continue be protected (NPSIB).		Development Planning Unit, Greenspace, developers, landowners	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
1.2.3.3	Complete the Reserves State of Environment Report, engaging with residents to understand their views about promoting ecosystem health in Council reserves and streetscapes.		Strategy & Business, Greenspace	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●			



Desired outcomes:

1. Living in a healthy natural environment enriches our everyday life and we work together to achieve and maintain this.
2. People understand and value indigenous biodiversity and natural ecosystems.
3. Residents have a 'sense of place' or connectedness to the District's natural landscape.
4. Our community understands how it can contribute to and become actively involved in protecting, restoring and recreating natural ecosystems.

Strategic Direction 2

Connect people and nature

































Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
2.1 Make it easy to connect									
2.1.1 Provide opportunities to bring together people and biodiversity									
2.1.1.1	Establish an online public portal for sharing knowledge, educational resources and successes. Examples may include a plant selector tool that will enable people to create ecologically sound plant lists, pairing volunteers with projects and highlighting community-based environmental projects (ABS).		Greenspace, Communications & Engagement Team, Business & Technology Solutions, community groups, landowners	✓✓	No additional cost. \$20k BOF project costs in year 24/25. Additional staff time to enable portal to remain current and create content covered in 1.2.1.2.	●	●	●	●
2.1.2 Ensure education programmes, activities and resources are available									
2.1.2.1	Develop educational/resource material to fill information gaps, for example, improving natural stormwater and drainage ecosystems and practices, and the impacts of pests and weeds on indigenous ecosystems (ABS).		Greenspace, 3 Waters Unit, Communications & Engagement Team, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, community groups, landowners, ECan	✓	Total additional cost of \$10,000. \$10k BOF in year 24/25 plus \$10k project costs divided equally over years 25/26 and 26/27.	●	●	●	●
2.1.2.2	Run community educational and connection events, including fun learning and activation programmes, and those that empower students and support student-led action (ABS).		Greenspace, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, Waimakariri District Libraries, Enviro Schools, other schools, landowners, community groups, community members, ECan	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$71,000. Additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2 plus \$10k BOF project costs for years 24/25 and 25/26 and then \$71k divided over the remaining eight years.	●	●	●	●
2.1.2.3	Support the educational activities of proactive environment groups operating within the District, for example, the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust District Biodiversity Forum and the public winter lecture series (ABS).		Greenspace, community groups, community members	✓✓	No additional cost. \$10k BOF project costs divided into \$4k in 24/25 and \$3k each year for 25/26 and 26/27.	●			
2.1.2.4	Continue to support the EnviroSchools programme (ABS).		Greenspace, Solid Waste, Enviro Schools, other schools	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
2.1.3 Look for opportunities to partner with and support others									
2.1.3.1	Seek to partner with Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga on natural environment issues including the management, protection and restoration of indigenous biodiversity, and ensure engagement is early, meaningful and in accordance with tikanga Māori (NPSIB).	  	Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga, Greenspace, Development Planning Unit	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.	●	●	●	●
2.1.3.2	Provide input to the refresh of the Canterbury Biodiversity Strategy (NPSIB).	  	ECan, Greenspace, Strategy & Business, Development Planning Unit, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.		●		
2.1.3.3	Continue to support Te Kōhaka o Tūhaitara Trust as a Council CCO (LGA).	  	Te Kōhaka o Tūhaitara Trust, Greenspace	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time plus existing annual grant of c.\$250k pa.	●	●	●	●
2.1.3.4	Continue to provide resource and/or advisory support to groups running volunteer programmes in the District that have proven environmental benefits, for example, the Silverstream Reserve Volunteer Group, Ashley/Rakahuri Rivercare Group, Ashley Gorge Advisory Group, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, Braid and Keep NZ Beautiful groups (ABS).	  	Greenspace, 3 Waters Unit, community groups	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only plus existing annual grants to groups such as KNZ Beautiful c.\$10k pa.	●	●	●	●
2.1.3.5	Participate in/support environmental focused activities run by other organisations, for example, the Forest and Bird 'Every Wetland Counts He Piupiuaki la Rohe Kāreporepo' Campaign and annual bird surveys (ERP, EWC, ABS).	  	Greenspace, community groups, community members	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
2.1.3.6	Provide operational funding for the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust to lead, promote and advocate for environmental protection, restoration and revegetation (ABS).	  	Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, Greenspace, 3 Waters Unit	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$45,000. \$20k in year 24/25, \$15k in year 25/26 and \$10k in year 26/27.	●			

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
2.1.3.7	Provide a Waimakariri District community groups contestable fund to support the implementation of Natural Environment Strategy objectives and actions.		Greenspace, community groups	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$100,000. \$10k each year for 10 years.	●	●	●	●
2.1.3.8	Support Mainpower's Waimakariri community biodiversity fund.		Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, Mainpower, Greenspace, community groups, landowners	✓	Total additional cost of \$50,000. \$50k in total, divided into \$5k every year if matched by an equal contribution from Mainpower.	●	●	●	●
2.1.3.9	Partner with the Department of Conservation to provide a toilet/carpark on the Mount Oxford Coopers Creek access track.		Greenspace, Department of Conservation	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$50,000. LTP bid of \$50k in Greenspace budget for year 25/26 subject to a toilet being provided by the Department of Conservation.	●			
2.1.4 Encourage people to physically connect with the natural environment									
2.1.4.1	Consider providing additional opportunities for the safe gathering of mahinga ka, rōngoa and perennial edibles when developing Council reserves.		Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga, Greenspace, 3 Waters Unit, community	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
2.1.4.2	Continue to promote the creation of community food forests, gardens, and perennial edibles on Council land where appropriate.		Greenspace	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time and budgets only.	●	●	●	●
2.1.4.3	Provide wayfinding interpretation in Council reserves and streetscapes.		Greenspace, Utilities & Roading,	✓	Total additional cost of \$65,000. Starting in year 24/25 at \$5k and increasing each year to \$8k by year 33/34.	●	●	●	●

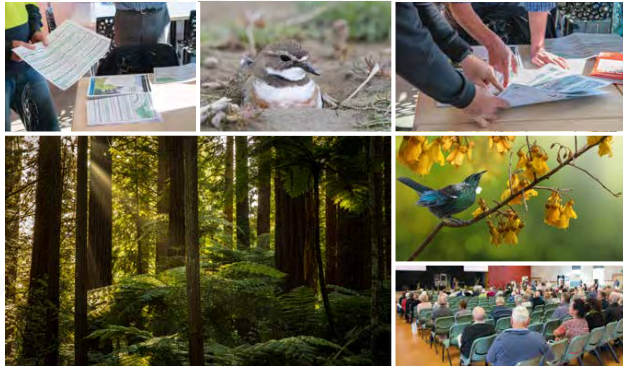
Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
2.1.4.4	Ensure opportunities are provided for all people to access the coastal environment.		Greenspace, ECan, beach resident groups, Te Kōhaka o Tūhāitara Trust	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$250,000. Capital works of \$125k each year in years 27/29 for a viewing platform at Pegasus Bay.		●		
2.1.4.5	Upgrade and provide additional walking tracks in the natural environment, for example, at Ashley Gorge Reserve.		Greenspace, reserve advisory groups	✓	Total additional cost of \$40,000. Existing staff time plus additional \$40k split into \$20k each in years 27/28 and 28/29.		●		
2.1.4.6	Provide more accessible physical access and services within natural environments where appropriate, for example, toilets and pathways, to enable people to enjoy the outdoors.		Greenspace	✓	Total additional cost of \$350,000. \$50k pa from year 27/28-33/34. Specific projects to be determined.		●	●	
2.1.4.7	Promote the uptake of compatible recreation opportunities in the District's natural areas.		Greenspace, Communications & Engagement Team, Department of Conservation	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
2.2 Rediscover and make our indigenous landscape visible									
2.2.1 Increase the proportion of indigenous planting on Council reserves and streetscapes (NPSIB)									
2.2.1.1	Continue to transition to the default position of prioritising the planting of indigenous over exotic vegetation on Council-owned land (NPSIB).		Greenspace, 3 Waters Unit	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time and existing renewal budgets.	●	●	●	●
2.2.1.2	Implement indigenous vegetation targets for Council reserves (NPSIB).		Greenspace	✓✓✓	No additional cost.	●	●	●	●
2.2.1.3	Look for opportunities to showcase and increase indigenous biodiversity in urban streetscapes.		Greenspace, Utilities & Roading, developers	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
2.2.2 Support the achievement of 10% indigenous biodiversity in the wider landscape (NPSIB)									
2.2.2.1	Offer technical expertise to plant suppliers as requested to ensure the availability of eco-sourced indigenous plants.	     	Greenspace, nursery owners	✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time required.		●		
2.2.2.2	Ensure it is easy for residents to obtain ecologically sound planting advice (ABS).	  	Greenspace, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, community members	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●			
2.2.2.3	Develop a video for general release in the movie theatre, website etc, promoting the District's indigenous flora and fauna.	     	Communications & Engagement Team, Greenspace	✓	Total additional cost of \$20,000. Project costs provided in year 28/29.		●		
2.2.2.4	Promote special/unique (often hidden) indigenous flora and fauna.	     	Greenspace, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, community members, landowners	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.			●	
2.2.2.5	Promote the planting of indigenous vegetation on privately-owned land.	  	Greenspace, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, landowners	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.			●	
2.2.2.6	Identify significant indigenous and exotic trees on private and public land in the District and ensure they are protected where possible as notable trees in the District Plan.	     	Development Planning Unit, Greenspace, landowners	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$40,000. Existing staff time plus \$40k provided in year 34/35.				●










Strategic Direction 3

Improve our knowledge



Desired outcomes:

1. Tangata Whenua knowledge and practices are recognised, respected and encouraged.
2. We have the knowledge to effectively protect and restore our natural ecosystems.

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
3.1 Know what we have									
3.1.1 Continue the assessment, monitoring and reporting of biodiversity values on public and private land (NPSIB)									
3.1.1.1	Complete the District's SNA assessment and mapping programme as required by statute, in partnership with landowners in recognition of their role as stewards (NPSIB).		ECan, Department of Conservation, Development Planning Unit, Greenspace	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time provided in 1.2.1.2.		●		
3.1.1.2	Discuss with Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga the development of a list of taonga species that can be mapped as agreed (NPSIB).		Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga, ECan, Department of Conservation, Development Planning Unit, Greenspace	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time.		●		
3.1.1.3	Work with ECan to complete the assessment and mapping of the rest of the District's Indigenous biodiversity, especially highly mobile fauna (NPSIB).		ECan, Department of Conservation, Greenspace, landowners	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time provided in 1.2.1.2.		●		
3.1.1.4	Develop an ongoing SNA monitoring programme (NPSIB).		Greenspace, Development Planning Unit, ECan	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time provided in 1.2.1.2.	●			
3.1.1.5	Develop an appropriate database for storing Council's Indigenous biodiversity data; and partner with tangata whenua to develop systems for managing information provided by them, particularly with regard to taonga (NPSIB).		Greenspace, Business & Technology Solutions, GIS, Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time.		●		
3.1.1.6	Carry out a biological assessment of Council's property portfolio; and make recommendations for repurposing appropriate sites for natural environment enhancement projects (NPSIB).		Greenspace, Property, Strategy & Business	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time provided in 1.2.1.2.	●	●	●	●
3.1.1.7	Ascertain the extent and nature of the District's urban tree canopy.		Greenspace, landowners, consultant	✓	Total additional cost of \$40,000. Project costs of \$20k in year 24/25 for initial survey and \$20k in year 29/30 for monitoring.	●			

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
3.1.1.8	Work with ECan to identify, monitor and publicly report on ecosystem health indicators for the Waimakariri District (NPSIB).	   	ECan, Department of Conservation, Greenspace, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust	✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time provided in 1.2.1.2.	•	•	•	•
3.2 Understand future challenges									
3.2.1 Carry out research and work with research partners, community groups and landowners to fill knowledge gaps and understand challenges									
3.2.1.1	Continue to carefully consider options for reductions in the use of chemicals as a precautionary principle, taking into account the effects on human health, and indigenous flora and fauna.	   	Greenspace, 3 Waters Unit	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	•	•	•	•
3.2.1.2	Contribute to natural environment climate change mitigation and adaptation research.	   	Greenspace, Strategy & Business, universities, Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan Working Group	✓✓	No additional cost. \$25k BOF to be spent in years 24/25 and 25/26. Additional staff time for supervision provided in 1.2.1.2.	•			
3.2.1.3	Participate in relevant research carried out by other organisations.	   	Greenspace, ECan, Department of Conservation, universities, Ministry for the Environment	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$100,000. \$10k each year to cover costs of employing summer students. Existing staff time only.	•	•	•	•
3.2.1.4	Carry out an assessment of the economic value of ecosystem services to the District.	   	Greenspace, consultant	✓	Total additional cost of \$40,000. To be spent in year 27/28 for specialist advice.		•		
3.2.1.5	Form mutually beneficial relationships with universities, including supporting student research projects.	   	Greenspace, universities	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	•	•	•	•
3.2.1.6	Partner with Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga, and other tangata whenua as appropriate, to obtain advice/upskill on how to integrate Mātauranga Māori within conservation and restoration projects (ABS, NPSIB).	   	Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga, Ngāi Tahu, Greenspace	✓✓✓	Total additional cost of \$50,000. \$5k each year for specialist advice.	•	•	•	•

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
3.2.1.7	Liaise with innovative research organisations and individuals to ensure Council's ecological advice and practices are up to date and forward focussed (ABS).	   	Greenspace, Ecan, environmental organisations, Helen Clark Foundation, Manaaki Whenua, universities, local authorities	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	•	•	•	•
3.2.1.8	Engage with community, including diverse/minority groups to determine their aspirations and requirements for connecting with nature.	   	Greenspace, Community Team, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, community organisations, community members	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$10,000. Research project in 27/28 plus additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.		•		
3.2.1.9	Research restoration and management techniques for priority ecosystems, for example, kānuka drylands.	   	Greenspace, Lincoln University	✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time for supervision covered in 1.2.1.2. \$25k BOF for years 24/25 and 25/26.	•			
3.2.1.10	Investigate the feasibility of using indigenous tree species as street trees.	   	Greenspace	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.		•		
3.2.1.11	Research best practice pest and weed control and restoration practices.	   	Greenspace	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$9,000. \$3k provided in years 26/27, 29/30 and 32/33.	•	•	•	•
3.2.2 Identify the impacts of key trends on the natural environment									
3.2.2.1	Collaborate with others to identify, manage, and mitigate increased biosecurity risks.	   	ECan, Greenspace	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	•	•	•	•
3.2.2.2	Keep up to date and respond appropriately to key trends such as population growth, increased urbanisation, land use intensification, development of alternative energy sources, use of non-native carbon sinks, changes to government legislation and directives, Mātauranga Māori etc.	   	Strategy & Business, Greenspace, Development Planning Unit, government agencies, Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga, Ngāi Tahu	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	•	•	•	•














Desired outcomes:
















1. The District's natural ecosystems are self-sustaining, healthy, resilient and connected from the mountains to the sea.
2. A greater proportion of vegetation cover in the District is indigenous.
3. There is no further loss or degradation of Significant Natural Areas (SNAs).
4. Urban vegetation, including street trees, is valued by the community as making a significant contribution to urban resilience, human health, and environmental sustainability.





Strategic Direction 4












Sustain and create resilient ecosystems

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
4.1 Protect what we have									
4.1.1 Implement a climate change natural environment mitigation and adaptation programme (ERP, NAP)									
4.1.1.1	Provide specialised biodiversity input to the development of Council climate change strategies and plans, including mitigation options, risk assessments and adaptation planning. (ERP, NAP, NPSIB).	     	Strategy & Business, Greenspace, 3 Waters Unit	✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.	●			
4.1.1.2	Implement natural environment actions identified in climate change plans and strategies (ERP, NAP).	     	Strategy & Business, Greenspace, 3 Waters Unit, Utilities & Road, Community Boards, reserve advisory groups, community members	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$50,000. Existing staff time plus project costs in year 33/34		●	●	●
4.1.1.3	Integrate nature-based climate change solutions in policies, strategies and plans (NAP, NPSIB).	     	Strategy & Business, Greenspace, Development Planning Unit, Utilities & Road, Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan Working Group	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●			
4.1.1.4	Co-lead the development of a regional blue-green network as provided for in the Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan (NAP).	     	Strategy & Business, Greenspace, Selwyn District Council, Development Planning Unit, Utilities & Road, Canterbury Climate Partnership Plan Working Group	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time. Project costs funded out of CCPP budget.	●	●	●	●





Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
4.1.2 Reduce the pressure in high value indigenous ecosystems by improving the wider environment									
4.1.2.1	Partner in an integrated landscape-wide pest and weed control programme (ABS).	     	Greenspace, ECan, reserve advisory groups, community groups, community members	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$70,000. \$50k BOF to be spent in years 24/25-26/27 for pest coordinator and additional \$10k each year from 27/28 for continued coordination.	●	●	●	●
4.1.2.2	Continue to support the predator control programme at Ashley Gorge Reserve (PF 2050).		Greenspace, Department of Conservation, Ashley Gorge Reserve Advisory Group	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time.	●			
4.1.2.3	Promote and assist with the development and enhancement of buffer zones around high value indigenous flora and fauna sites (NPSIB).	     	Greenspace, landowners, QEII Trust, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time.	●	●	●	●
4.1.2.4	Review and continue to implement the Northern Pegasus Bay Bylaw Implementation Plan.	 	Greenspace, Strategy & Business, ECan, Te Kōhaka o Tūhaitara Trust, Department of Conservation, Northern Pegasus Bay Advisory Group, community members	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time plus existing project costs of \$21,530 pa.		●		

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
4.1.3 Provide support for SNA landowners and incentivise SNA protection									
4.1.3.1	Ensure all identified SNAs are listed in the District Plan as required by statute (NPSIB).		Development Planning Unit, ECan, Greenspace, SNA landowners	✓✓✓	Planning costs covered in planning budget. Additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.		●		
4.1.3.2	Administer and promote the biodiversity contestable fund for SNAs (ABS).		Greenspace, Development Planning Unit, SNA landowners	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing funding of \$480k over 10 years increasing by \$10k pa from \$25k in 24/25 to \$95k in 31/32.	●	●	●	●
4.1.3.3	Maintain regular contact with all SNA landowners (NPSIB).		Greenspace, SNA landowners	✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.	●	●	●	●
4.1.3.4	Provide ecological advice to SNA landowners as requested (ABS).		Greenspace, SNA landowners, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust	✓✓	No additional cost. Additional biodiversity staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.	●		●	●
4.1.3.5	Continue to implement the rates grant/rates relief scheme for SNA landowners (ABS).		Development Planning Unit, SNA landowners	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time plus existing funding of \$500k over 10 years divided into \$50k pa plus LGCI.	●	●	●	●
4.1.3.6	Continue to develop incentives for protecting and restoring SNAs, for example, transferable development rights (ABS).		Development Planning Unit, Greenspace, SNA landowners	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.				●








Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
4.2 Rebuild nature - more, bigger, better and joined									
4.2.1 MORE - Create new natural environment sites to provide for future wellbeing									
4.2.1.1	Identify and obtain additional land through subdivision and/or land purchase for future natural parks (WDCCO).	 	Greenspace, Property, landowners	✓✓	To be considered when the need or opportunity arises.				●
4.2.1.2	When seeking to acquire or develop new natural parks, prioritise rare ecosystems, for example drylands and wetlands, to ensure their future protection.	 	Greenspace, Property, landowners	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time.	●	●	●	●
4.2.1.3	Repurpose suitable Council land as indigenous bionodes. (ERP, NAP, NPSIB).	 	Greenspace, Property	✓✓	No additional cost. To be reviewed in 2027 LTP. There could be opportunities for external funding including public/private partnerships.			●	
4.2.1.4	Look for opportunities to develop new wader and waterfowl habitats, for example, at Kaiapoi Lakes and other closed gravel extraction sites.	 	Greenspace, Birds NZ	✓✓	No additional costs. Existing funding of \$92,097 for further development of Kaiapoi Lakes in years 24/27.	●			
4.2.1.5	Investigate an indigenous vegetation carbon sink programme, exploring private/partnership opportunities to implement this (ERP, NAP, NPSIB).	 	Strategy & Business, Greenspace, Property, private businesses	✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.		●		
4.2.1.6	Investigate the development of a flagship park or sanctuary, for example, the creation of an eco-tourist park (WVMS).	 	Greenspace, Strategy & Business, Property, Enterprise North Canterbury	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$1.49m. \$30k provided annually from 24/25-26/27 for project planning and then \$200k pa for development of the Lineside Road Wetland. Additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.	●	●	●	●

	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
					Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
flora and fauna sites								
		Greenspace, Silverstream Reserve Advisory Group, community members	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time and existing annual project budget of \$12,244.	●	●		
	 	Greenspace, Birds NZ	✓✓	No additional costs. \$187,729 provided in year 25/26 for development of the last gravel pit at Kaiapoi Lakes.		●		
	 	Greenspace, Whites Road Reserve Advisory Group, community members	✓	Additional cost of \$60,000. Existing staff time plus \$60k BOF in years 24/25 and 25/26 and a further \$20k funding each year in years 26/27-28/29 for indigenous planting, pathways and signage.	●	●	●	
es		ECan, QEII Trust, Greenspace, Development Planning Unit, landowners	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
environment by better habitat management and promoting fauna-friendly practices								
	 	Greenspace, reserve contractors, reserve advisory groups, community members	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$150,000. \$15k provided each year.	●	●	●	●
	  	Greenspace, landowners, community members	✓	Total additional cost of \$50,000. \$5k provided annually	●	●	●	●

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
4.2.3.3	Develop additional secondary growth ecosystems as required at natural reserves, to provide enhanced habitat value and encourage a wider natural variety of flora and fauna species.		Greenspace, reserve advisory groups, community members	✓	Total additional cost of \$80,000. \$8k provided annually.	●	●	●	●
4.2.3.4	Plant suitable plant species to provide more natural transitions from modified natural park environments to river and coastal environments.	  	Greenspace, ECan, Te Kōhaka o Tūhaitara Trust	✓	Total additional cost of \$100,000. Existing staff time plus existing planting budgets of \$10k pa.	●	●	●	●
4.2.3.5	Promote and create more effective buffer zones between land uses and water bodies.	  	Greenspace, 3 Waters Unit, ECan	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time plus project costs from existing Arohatia Te Awa budget of \$125,000 in 24/25 and then \$100k pa. (Refer to action 4.2.4.5).	●	●	●	●
4.2.3.6	Advocate for/protect ecosystems supporting mahinga kai and rēngoa.	  	Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga, Greenspace	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
4.2.3.7	Advocate for the development of a management plan for the Ashley Rakahuri Estuary.	 	ECan, Greenspace, Strategy & Business, Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●			
4.2.3.8	Advocate for ECan to define objectives for each waterbody in the District and create achievable water catchment action plans (NPS-FM).		ECan, 3 Waters Unit, Greenspace	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.		●		
4.2.3.9	Continue to support the implementation of the ZIPA water catchment programme (PC 7, NPS-FM).	  	ECan, 3 Waters Unit, Zone Committee	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing funding in 3 Waters budget.	●	●	●	●
4.2.3.10	Ensure Council's everyday operations take the effects on water catchments into account (PC 7, NPS-FM).	   	3 Waters Unit, Greenspace, Utilities & Roading	✓✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
4.2.3.11	Encourage natural drain solutions in Large Lot Rural Residential zones such as planting on drain sides to increase amenity and biodiversity, reduce mowing and chemical use, and filter sediment from waterways.		Greenspace, Development Planning Unit, Utilities & Roading, 3 Waters Unit, developers	✓✓	No additional cost. Review in conjunction with rural drainage contract renewal.	●	●	●	●
4.2.3.12	Work with WIL to ensure the protection of threatened habitats and species in water races where appropriate.		WIL, 3 Waters Unit, Greenspace	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.			●	
4.2.3.13	Review reserve maintenance contracts to incorporate ecology-friendly best practice management techniques.	 	Greenspace, reserve contractors	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●		
4.2.3.14	Develop and promote indigenous vegetation eco-sourcing guidelines.	   	Greenspace, ECan, Department of Conservation, landowners	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.		●		
4.2.3.15	Implement a District fauna enhancement programme, for example, bee-friendly, lizard havens, beetle lodges etc.	   	Greenspace, landowners, schools	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$21,000. \$3k pa to be spent from year 27/28 onwards. Additional biodiversity staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.		●		
4.2.3.16	Promote the uptake of environmentally friendly maintenance practices on lifestyle blocks.		Greenspace, ECan, landowners	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.		●		
4.2.3.17	Partner with/encourage private landowners to engage in practices that enrich the natural environment (NPSIB).		Greenspace, ECan, landowners	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.		●		
4.2.3.18	Plant new street trees in accordance with 'right tree - right place' principles.		Greenspace, Utilities & Roading, developers	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
4.2.4 JOINED - Enhance connections between, or join up sites									
4.2.4.1	Promote the uptake of key biodiversity concepts such as landscape corridors from the 'mountains to the sea', linear corridors, stepping stone 'green dot' corridors, and the 'landscape matrix' to enhance the biodiversity values of fragmented landscapes'.		Greenspace, ECan, reserve advisory groups, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, developers, landowners	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.	●	●	●	●
4.2.4.2	Develop urban tree canopy targets and implement.		Greenspace, Utilities & Roading, developers, landowners	✓	Total additional cost of \$200,000. Existing staff time and existing reserve and street tree budgets plus \$20k pa for increased LOS (12,000 new specimen trees to be planted by 2033).	●	●	●	●
4.2.4.3	Increase the proportion of indigenous streetscape vegetation cover (NPSIB).		Greenspace, Utilities & Roading, developers	✓	No additional costs. Existing landscaping and tree budgets.	●	●	●	●
4.2.4.4	Enhance fish passage where appropriate.		3 Waters Unit, ECan, Greenspace, Utilities & Roading, developers, landowners	✓✓	No additional costs. Existing staff time and existing funding of \$10k pa.	●	●	●	●
4.2.4.5	Continue to implement Arohata Te Awa.		Greenspace, 3 Waters Unit, landowners	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time plus project costs from existing Arohata Te Awa budget of \$125k in 24/25 and then \$100k pa.	●	●	●	●

Action	What are we doing?	What assets does it impact?	Possible stakeholders	How important is it?	Funding	When are we doing it?			
						Years 1-3	Years 4-6	Years 7-10	Years 11-30
4.2.4.6	Develop new pocket forests on suitable low-use urban reserves (ERP, NPSIB).		Greenspace, Community Boards, community members	✓	Total additional cost of \$20,000. Existing staff time and additional funding of \$20k with \$5k being spread over 4 years from years 30/31-33/34.			●	
4.2.4.7	Promote backyard micro-bush gardens (Meurk, NPSIB).		Greenspace, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, landowners	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.			●	
4.2.4.8	Promote the use of native hedges and shelterbelts in semi-rural and rural environments (NPSIB).		ECan, Greenspace, Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust, developers, landowners	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.			●	
4.2.4.9	Establish a strategic, district-wide approach to riparian management and ecological linkages to close gaps and prioritise the acquisition of esplanades.		Greenspace, ECan, Development Planning Unit, developers, landowners	✓✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.		●		
4.2.4.10	Develop Reserve Management Plans for Greenspace recreation and ecological linkages and natural parks.		Greenspace, reserve advisory groups, community members	✓✓	No additional cost. Additional staff time covered in 1.2.1.2.	●			
4.2.4.11	Plant Council's undeveloped recreation and ecological linkages where these have the potential to contribute significant natural environment benefits.		Greenspace, community members	✓✓	Total additional cost of \$20,000. Existing staff time and additional funding of \$20k with \$5k being spread over 4 years from years 30/31-33/34.			●	
4.2.4.12	Review the landscaping rules in the District Plan to require indigenous plants to be used predominantly in carpark landscaping.		Development Planning Unit, Greenspace, Utilities & Road, developers,	✓	No additional cost. Existing staff time only.				●

Implementation

2024-34 Long Term Plan

The Implementation Plan for this strategy contains 124 actions that could be carried out over the next 30 years. Actions programmed for 2024 to 2034 have been included in the Council's Long Term Plan (LTP). Over this ten year period an additional \$1.2m operational expenditure and \$2.9m capital expenditure has been provided to support the implementation of these actions.

Implementation Plan actions have been prioritised as following:

1. Meeting Council's legislative requirements (protecting remaining indigenous priority ecosystems).
2. Very Important (restoring and managing natural ecosystems, education).
3. Important (educating residents in general).

Many of the actions are business as usual for the Council and have been captured to guide Greenspace biodiversity work programmes over the next few years. In order to make further progress on environmental outcomes the Council significantly increased its expenditure on biodiversity in the 2021-24 LTP and this increased activity is reflected in the Implementation Plan.



Key projects from the 2021-24 Long Term Plan include:

- Additional funding for SNA landowners in the form of rates relief and a contestable fund
- Funding to implement Arohaitia te Awa over 10 years
- Funding to support the establishment of the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust

- Funding to provide access to the coast for people with restricted mobility
- Additional biodiversity staff resource.

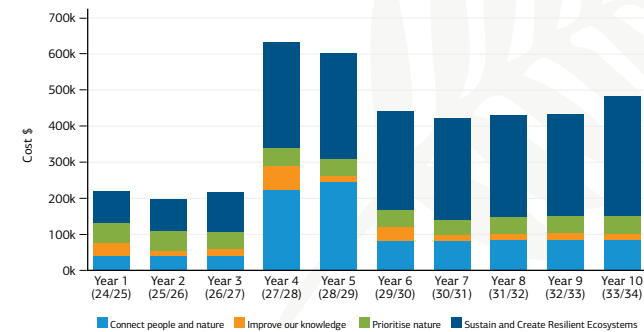
In addition to these new projects, 85ha of wetland off Lineside Road was purchased by the Council in 2023 to cover a shortfall in its stated levels of service for Natural Parks.

Key Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy implementation actions that have been funded in the 2024-34 Long Term Plan include:

- Operational funding for the Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust
- An annual contestable fund to support community-based environmental groups to implement strategy actions
- New education and research programmes
- An increase in Council biodiversity capability and capacity in light of increased legislative requirements arising from the recent gazettal of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity
- New targets for additional tree planting to increase the size of urban tree canopies (approximately 12,000 more specimen trees by 2033) and increased indigenous biodiversity planting on Council reserves
- The development of the Lineside Road wetland
- Projects that increase access to the natural environment for those with restricted mobility
- An additional ranger to work with community groups, plant reserves and carry out pest and weed management
- Partnering in an integrated landscape-wide pest and weed control programme
- Developing more walking tracks at natural parks such as Ashley Gorge Reserve
- Part funding (with Department of Conservation) a new toilet at Coopers Creek.

Strategy actions funded in the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan

This graph includes all the Implementation Plan actions and shows the logical progression of activities from ensuring internal resources, processes and knowledge are in order, to concentrating on connecting people and nature, and then making on-the-ground ecosystem improvements.



Monitoring

Improving environmental outcomes takes time and the Waimakariri Natural Environment Strategy is intended to provide strategic direction for achieving this over the next 30 years. A key action is to identify, monitor and publicly report on biodiversity indicators for the Waimakariri District so progress can be tracked.

Review

The strategy document will be reviewed in eight years' time prior to the development of the Council's 2034 Long Term Plan.

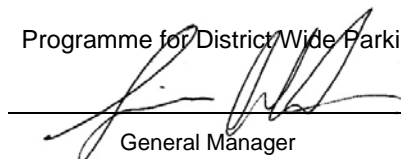
The Implementation Plan needs to be flexible enough to respond to changing circumstances and priorities. This will therefore be reviewed every three years in line with LTP reviews to allow requests for funding to be considered by Council.





215 High Street
Private Bag 1005
Rangiora 7440, New Zealand
Phone 0800 965 468
waimakairiri.govt.nz

240607092509

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL**REPORT FOR DECISION****FILE NO and TRIM NO:** BAC-03-101/2406120895033**REPORT TO:** COUNCIL**DATE OF MEETING:** 2nd July 2024**AUTHOR(S):** Heike Downie, Senior Advisor, Strategy and Programme
Don Young, Senior Engineering Advisor**SUBJECT:** Programme for District Wide Parking Management Plans**ENDORSED BY:**
(for Reports to Council,
Committees or Boards)
General Manager
Chief Executive**1. SUMMARY**

- 1.1. This report follows workshops held with Council, Rangiora Ashley Community Board and Kaiapoi Tuahiwi Community Board in June 2024 regarding the development of Parking Plan(s), and now seeks the Council's endorsement of a staged programme to develop individual Parking Management Plans for a range of District locations. This programme would see the preparation of Parking Management Plans in the following general timeframe:
 - 1.1.1. Complete the preparation of a Rangiora Town Centre Parking Management Plan and a Kaiapoi Town Centre Parking Management Plan in the next 12-18 months.
 - 1.1.2. Over the next few months, undertake initial discussions with Oxford Ohoka Community Board and Woodend Sefton Community Board to understand the urgent parking issues in their area(s), and discuss a suitable timeframe to prepare Parking Management Plans for their centres following those prepared for Rangiora town centre and Kaiapoi town centre.
 - 1.1.3. Progress investigative work on the potential scope of a Southbrook Development Plan in the next 6 months.
- 1.2. Section 4 of this report provides further relevant context and rationale for the above proposed timeframe.
- 1.3. The Council's recently adopted Integrated Transport Strategy identifies 5 Key Moves and through it, the Council has committed to ensuring Council's parking management strategy optimises parking demand and supply. In addition, the Council's adopted District Parking Strategy commits Council to creating parking management plans for Rangiora and Kaiapoi town centres, and other locations on a case-by-case basis when specific plans are needed.
- 1.4. As a separate issue, the Council has previously expressed its desire for the development of a Southbrook Development Plan to ensure that Southbrook grows and develops in a coordinated and sustainable manner, and scoping to underpin this is underway. There are likely a number of key issues that need careful consideration as this work progresses including roading linkages, infrastructure services, stormwater and flooding, efficient and appropriate use of land, and relationship of activities to the Rangiora town centre. Whilst parking issues are not the key driver for this Plan, it is nevertheless important that consideration of this aspect is thought through as part of this work, and so advancing these processes generally in synch with each other is prudent. Therefore, the Southbrook Development Plan will also be developed over a timeframe that allows consideration in conjunction with the Rangiora Town Centre Parking Management Plan.

- 1.5. It should be noted that the timeframes listed in this report are a guide only, and dates may shift as the work progresses. If this happens, then this will be reported to Council.
- 1.6. It is also noted that there are a wide range of different documents being prepared or planned for at present, as previously reported elsewhere. This report only covers the Parking Management Plans, and the Southbrook Development Plan, as these were specifically noted by the Councillors at the June Parking Plan workshop. It does however briefly touch on some interrelationships with the development / review of some strategies where this aids to provide further context for the timeframe.

2. **RECOMMENDATION**

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240612095033.
- (b) **Endorses** the following general programme for developing Parking Management Plans:
 - i. Rangiora Town Centre Parking Management Plan – adopted within 12-18 months.
 - ii. Kaiapoi Town Centre Parking Management Plan – adopted within 12-18 months.
 - iii. Workshop with the Oxford Ohoka Community Board over the next few months to discuss the urgent parking issues in their ward, and to agree on a timeframe for developing an Oxford Town Centre Parking Management Plan.
- (c) Workshop with the Woodend Sefton Community Board over the next few months to discuss the urgent parking issues in their ward, and to agree on a timeframe for developing Parking Management Plans for the centres of Woodend, Pegasus and Ravenswood. **Notes** that work to investigate the potential scope of a Southbrook Development Plan will progress over the next 6 months.
- (d) **Circulates** this report to all Community Boards.

3. **BACKGROUND**

- 3.1. In February 2024, the Council adopted the Moving Forward: Waimakariri Integrated Transport Strategy 2035+ (ITS). This high-level strategy sets out how the Council will manage transport and mobility needs for the District, now and into the future. The ITS confirms '5 Key Moves', including "Support alternative travel choices" and commits Council through this to "ensure Council's parking management strategy optimises parking demand and supply".
- 3.2. In December 2021, Council adopted the District Parking Strategy, which sets out seven objectives for car-parking within the District including:
 - 3.2.1. Parking is managed efficiently and effectively.
 - 3.2.2. Parking occupancy is maintained at desired levels.
 - 3.2.3. Alternative transport mode infrastructure is prioritised.
 - 3.2.4. Good urban design is achieved.
 - 3.2.5. Parking management and provision is cost effective.
 - 3.2.6. The road is safe for all users.
 - 3.2.7. Economic development is supported.
- 3.3. The District Parking Strategy confirms 18 policies ('tools') that together set out a framework for responding to parking issues within the District, outlining a range of actions or principles, including such things as parking restrictions, road prioritisation, supply management, all-day parking, parking buildings etc. Policy 18 refers to the development of parking management plans and identifies that development of these will be prioritised

"for the Rangiora and Kaiapoi town centres that assess key parking issues and provide short, medium and long term recommendations to address these", and that "parking management plans for other locations will be assessed on a case-by-case basis and specific plans created as needed". An Action Plan was included as Appendix 1 of the Strategy, and two of the actions agreed by the Council to be carried out within 1-3 years are:

- 3.3.1. Update the existing parking management plan for Rangiora and review internally on a triennial basis.
- 3.3.2. Complete a new parking management plan for Kaiapoi and review internally on a triennial basis.
- 3.4. At a workshop of the Council on 11th June 2024, staff presented a general outline for preparing these two Parking Management Plans for Rangiora and Kaiapoi town centres. At the workshop, Councillors expressed a concern about progressing these two Parking Management Plans in isolation, without considering the parking issues in other parts of the District. In addition, Councillors noted that a Southbrook Development Plan had been requested, and that it would be important to understand where that body of work fitted into the programme.
- 3.5. In order to provide the community with some visibility of the wider programme in this area while giving effect to the most urgent needs in the parking area, a brief timeframe and way forward is proposed, to be considered by the Council.

4. ISSUES AND OPTIONS

- 4.1. This report sets out a staged programme to develop Parking Management Plans for a range of District locations, within the following general timeframe:
 - 4.1.1. Complete the preparation of a Rangiora Town Centre Parking Management Plan and a Kaiapoi Town Centre Parking Management Plan in the next 12-18 months.
 - 4.1.2. Progress investigative work on the potential scope of a Southbrook Development Plan in the next 6 months.
 - 4.1.3. Hold workshops with the Oxford Ohoka Community Board and the Woodend Sefton Community Board over the next few months to understand any urgent parking issues relating to their areas and discuss a suitable timeframe for developing Parking Management Plans for their respective centres. Following workshops, staff will investigate whether any urgent isolated parking issues can be addressed in their own right, ahead of developing Parking Management Plan(s) for their areas, if practical.
- 4.2. The rationale for these timeframes is linked to a number of factors that are impacted by issues and opportunities, relative priority, and staff and financial resources to undertake the work. There are also some inter-dependencies with a number of other strategic documents in the pipeline that provide additional context. In summary:

Rangiora

- 4.3. As noted above, the Council's District Parking Strategy signals that a Parking Management Plan is to be developed for Rangiora town centre. The Waimakariri District Plan defines the two town centres of Rangiora and Kaiapoi as having common (generally Council owned) car parking whereas in the outer areas, parking is developed largely to individual landowners. The Council's Rangiora Town Centre Strategy, adopted in 2020, identifies that car parking plays a key role in the retail success of the centre, and commits, through one of its 10 major projects, to "provide access to the town centre through consolidated public car parking in key locations..." It's high-level implementation schedule identifies key actions relating to parking management and parking provision that need to be undertaken / investigated further.

- 4.4. Rangiora town centre is the District's main service centre that is frequently visited by a reasonably large catchment population and hence, experiences parking pressures in central locations, through higher than optimal occupancy at peak times. Several commercial developments occurring now or in the short to medium term are likely to cause additional parking demand, including a risk to some loss of public parking currently provided on private land. Largely fragmented land ownership means it is difficult to amalgamate sites to achieve scale and cost-efficiency of continued at-grade parking provision, and Council owns no off-street parking facility and only limited on-street parking in the eastern town centre, which has been identified as a key growth area in the Rangiora Town Centre Strategy.
- 4.5. Council has committed significant budget in the Long Term Plan and Infrastructure Strategy to parking investment for the Rangiora town centre, and it is important that the Council reassesses and clarifies its approach to addressing parking management in order to direct spending appropriately. This includes addressing and confirming intentions for a potential car parking building, as identified in the North of High Development Plan developed under the Land Use Development Plan following the Canterbury earthquakes. Whilst the Council's Customer Satisfaction Survey shows that generally, satisfaction with Rangiora off-street parking has risen over the last decade, a consistent message through this survey work from the community is that we need to "improve parking issues, including in the Rangiora and Kaiapoi town centres."
- 4.6. The National Policy Statement for Urban Development (NPS-UD) has removed the requirement for private developers to provide on-site parking at commercial developments, which puts additional pressure of the supply and management of public parking. Whilst this is not unique to Rangiora, the effects are likely to be most noticeably felt in the Rangiora town centre, given its role and function in the District, and its development activity.
- 4.7. As noted in 1.4 of this report, scoping work to help inform the preparation of a Southbrook Development Plan has commenced and will progress over the next 6 months. Whilst this piece of work is driven by a number of considerations that impact the development of Southbrook, as opposed to parking management alone, it is advantageous that this work progresses alongside the Rangiora Town Centre Parking Management Plan, as a key consideration of a Southbrook Development Plan would be anticipated land use and activities, and their relationship with the town centre.

Kaiapoi

- 4.8. Kaiapoi town centre is the District's second largest centre. As noted above, the Council's District Parking Strategy signals that a Parking Management Plan is to be developed for Kaiapoi town centre. The Waimakariri District Plan defines the two town centres of Rangiora and Kaiapoi as having common (generally Council owned) car parking whereas in the outer areas, parking is devolved largely to individual landowners. The Council's Kaiapoi Town Centre Plan, adopted in 2018, commits a project to "continue to monitor car parking usage and reconfigure where required, including implementing parking management changes." A Parking Management Plan will appropriately consider all parking issues and opportunities for the town centre holistically and provide Council with a robust roadmap for addressing localised parking issues and managing demand into the future.
- 4.9. Kaiapoi town centre currently experiences some isolated parking pressures, and results from the latest Customer Satisfaction Survey show that satisfaction with off-street parking has decreased in the last few survey runs to 44% in 2022, with almost the same proportion of respondents (42%) dissatisfied. The significant development planned in the South MUBA area will have a major effect on the town centre including on parking. Again, it is important that the Council fully considers the centre-wide parking issues and options in advance of finalising key decisions on this development.

Oxford

- 4.10. Oxford has some isolated issues relating to parking that cause some frustration for the business community. While it will be important to consider these in due course, they do not have the same level of township wide pressures as other examples, and limited resources preclude these issues being considered and addressed through the development of a Parking Management Plan at the same time as developing these plans for Rangiora and Kaiapoi town centres. However, staff will endeavour to hold a workshop with the Oxford Ohoka Community Board in the coming months to understand parking related issues and will investigate opportunities to address any isolated issues ahead of developing a Parking Management Plan for Oxford town centre in due course, where practical.
- 4.11. Staff have also committed to undertaking a review of the Council's original Oxford Town Centre Strategy, adopted in 2014, commencing in the second half of this year. This work will consider and provide strategic direction for a wide range of matters, including the business and built environment, facilities and open space, and access and parking matters, and will involve stakeholder, elected member and community engagement. The timing of developing a Parking Management Plan for Oxford town centre following the review of the town centre strategy makes sense, in order to take into account strategic directions identified through that work, and staff will further discuss suitable timeframes with the Oxford Ohoka Community Board.

Woodend, Pegasus and Ravenswood

- 4.12. The Pegasus / Ravenswood / Woodend area is facing major changes as the Woodend Bypass project progresses, and as Ravenswood's commercial area fills up. It is noted that Council currently does not enforce any time-restricted parking in Ravenswood on a scheduled basis as there are no limited parking areas to patrol – rather, enforcement there only occurs in response to complaints relating to illegal parking, i.e. parking on yellow lines.
- 4.13. Furthermore, staff have engaged with the Community Board Chair earlier this year about the appropriate timing of the review of the Council's Woodend Pegasus Area Strategy, adopted in 2013, in connection with plans for the Woodend Bypass project. Staff understand that NZTA's funding plans are to be confirmed in the next 6 months. A wide range of matters will need to be investigated and addressed in a strategy review, relating to the business and built environment, facilities and open space, and access and parking. Woodend town centre in particular has a unique opportunity to 'reimagine itself' post bypass, and it is likely that significant community, elected member and stakeholder engagement will need to be undertaken to inform the future vision for that centre.
- 4.14. Staff will engage with the Woodend Sefton Community Board in the coming months to understand parking related issues and will discuss with the Board a suitable timeframe for developing Parking Management Plan(s) for central Woodend, Pegasus and Ravenswood, and the relationship with a review of the wider Strategy. Staff will investigate opportunities to address any isolated parking related issues following the workshop, ahead of the development of Parking Management Plan(s), where there are practical opportunities to do so.
- 4.15. Staff will report back to Council with timeframes for developing Parking Management Plans for other District centres (outside of Rangiora and Kaiapoi) once these have been developed, following workshops with the relevant Community Boards.

Implications for Community Wellbeing

There are implications on community wellbeing by the issues and options that are the subject matter of this report. Equitable access to community and commercial areas is an important part of the wellbeing of our District, as is economic sustainability.

- 4.16. The Management Team has reviewed this report and support the recommendations.

5. **COMMUNITY VIEWS**

5.1. **Mana whenua**

Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri hapū are not likely to be affected by or have an interest in the subject matter of this report. There may be interest in some of the findings and options that are considered as part of the later work and will be part of the conversation at that time.

5.2. **Groups and Organisations**

There are groups and organisations likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report. The Community Boards, landowners, business owners and developers will all have an interest in the provision of parking and will be consulted with at the appropriate time.

5.3. **Wider Community**

The wider community is likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report. The wider community will have an interest in the provision of parking and will be consulted with at the appropriate time.

6. **OTHER IMPLICATIONS AND RISK MANAGEMENT**

6.1. **Financial Implications**

There are financial implications of the decisions sought by this report. The Council has a budget of \$80,000 towards development of the Rangiora Town Centre Parking Management Plan and the Kaiapoi Town Centre Parking Management Plan. A contract has recently been awarded to a consultant for this amount to carry out the works necessary for the preparation of these Plans. There is budget available in future years for the further works noted in this report.

The \$80,000 referenced above is Better Off Funding budget and therefore has no impact on the Annual Plan/Long Term Plan.

6.2. **Sustainability and Climate Change Impacts**

The recommendations in this report do have sustainability and/or climate change impacts. Determining a Parking Management Plan that considers the benefits of an economically and environmentally sustainable approach to parking will be an important indicator of success.

6.3. **Risk Management**

There are risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report. There is a risk that the development of these plans will be more complex and take longer, and therefore the recommended timeframe may slip.

6.3. **Health and Safety**

There are health and safety risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report. These will be considered at the optioneering and design phases.

7. **CONTEXT**

7.1. **Consistency with Policy**

This matter is not a matter of significance in terms of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

7.2. **Authorising Legislation**

This matter is considered under the Local Government Act.

7.3. Consistency with Community Outcomes

The Council's community outcomes are relevant to the actions arising from recommendations in this report.

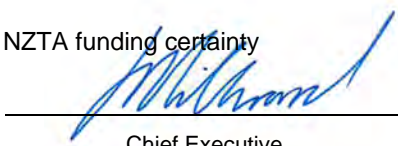
Transport is accessible, convenient, reliable and sustainable.

Businesses in the district are diverse adaptable and growing.

The distinctive character of our takiwa – towns, villages and rural areas is maintained.

7.4. Authorising Delegations

The Council has authority to consider this matter.

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL**REPORT FOR DECISION****FILE NO and TRIM NO:** RDG-11 / 240618099228**REPORT TO:** COUNCIL**DATE OF MEETING:** 2 July 2024**AUTHOR(S):** Joanne McBride, Roding and Transport Manager
Don Young, Senior Engineering Advisor**SUBJECT:** Progressing key projects in advance of NZTA funding certainty**ENDORSED BY:**
(for Reports to Council,
Committees or Boards)
General Manager
Chief Executive**1. SUMMARY**

- 1.1. This report is to seek Council endorsement to progress design on three key projects (Tram/Bradleys/McHughs Rd Roundabout, Lees Valley Bypass Bridge, and Fernside/Todds Intersection improvements) in advance of having confirmation of National Land Transport Programme (NLTP) funding for the 2024/25 financial year.
- 1.2. The Council has budgeted for the construction of the following three projects to be carried out in 2024/25, in its 2024-34 LTP.
 - 1.2.1. Tram/Bradleys/McHughs Rd Roundabout - \$1.80M
 - 1.2.2. Lees Valley resilience - \$350,000
 - 1.2.3. Fernside/Todds Intersection improvements - \$685,000
- 1.3. The Council has applied for subsidy for all three projects as part of its NLTP request for funding. However, it is unlikely that any decision on the subsidy will be made until September 2024, due to this year being the first year of a new three-year cycle, and the added uncertainty caused by the change in central government funding drivers.
- 1.4. Therefore, there is benefit in advancing the design of these three projects in early 2024/25 to achieve construction this year, by funding the design work from the Council share. This would be on the understanding that if the funding was agreed in October 2024, then the subsidy would cover those spent costs. It is also likely that if the funding was received as a 'top-up' during the NLTP period of 2024/27, that the design costs would be recoverable.
- 1.5. However, if the subsidy was not made available until after June 2027 (or at all), then the costs of design would remain un-subsidised.

2. RECOMMENDATION**THAT** the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240618099228.
- (b) **Endorses** the staff proceeding with design on Tram/Bradleys/McHughs Rd Roundabout from early 2024/25 onwards at an estimated cost of \$50,000 to be funded from the local share of the budget PJ 102136.000.5135 in advance of knowing whether the project has subsidy funding.
- (c) **Endorses** the staff proceeding with design on Lees Valley Bypass Bridge replacement from early 2024/25 onwards at an estimated cost of \$25,000 to be funded from the local

share of the budget PJ 101780.000.5133 in advance of knowing whether the project has subsidy funding.

- (d) **Endorses** the staff proceeding with design on Fernside/Todds Intersection improvements from early 2024/25 onwards at an estimated cost of \$25,000 to be funded from the local share of the budget PJ 102135.000.5135 in advance of knowing whether the project has subsidy funding.
- (e) **Notes** that certainty on NZTA subsidy funding will be known in October 2024.
- (f) **Notes** that if the design does not proceed within the recommended timeframe, that the projects will be delayed by at least a year, and that there will likely be additional costs associated with the delay.
- (g) **Notes** that if subsidy is provided, the design costs will also be subsidised, and the staff will continue on the tendering and construction of each project.
- (h) **Notes** that if subsidy is not provided, the design costs of approx. 50% (or \$50,000 in total) will not be subsidised, and in that case staff will provide a report to the Council to recommend a way forward.

3. **BACKGROUND**

- 3.1. In the 2024-34 Long Term Plan (LTP), the Council has budgeted for the following projects to proceed in 2024/25:
 - 3.1.1. Tram/Bradleys/McHughs Rd Roundabout - \$1.80M
 - 3.1.2. Lees Valley resilience (intended to be partially spent on the Lees Valley Bypass Bridge) - \$350,000
 - 3.1.3. Fernside/Todds Intersection improvements - \$685,000
- 3.2. All of these projects have also been included in the Council's National Land Transport Programme (NLTP) application to NZTA Waka Kotahi. Therefore, the budget in the LTP assumes the NZTA subsidy is received.
- 3.3. The NLTP application is to cover the next three years. Therefore, the time taken to approve an NLTP can take some time. This is in particular in this instance, as the change of government has meant that several of the previous drivers have now changed, and so the task of allocating the budget around the country will take longer. The Council has been informed that approval of the NLTP may not occur until October 2024.
- 3.4. Waiting until after October to prepare the designs for projects means that the likelihood of completing construction in 2024/25 is significantly reduced. The time taken to complete design, document preparation, tendering, and award will mean that we are likely to be too late to construct this year.
- 3.5. If the Council approves the recommendations, the sort of work that will proceed will be surveying (where not completed), detailed design on services, lighting, geometrics. Drainage, foundations, surfacing and signage, as well as Road Safety Audits where applicable.
- 3.6. Staff would progress with land negotiations where previously agreed but would not progress to land purchase until subsidy was approved.

4. **ISSUES AND OPTIONS**

- 4.1. The Council could wait until after being advised as to which projects are in the 2024/27 NLTP before committing further resources to advancing the design of the three projects. In this instance, design would only occur on projects that had received funding, thereby eliminating the risk of paying the full design costs with no subsidy. However, this would

mean that all three projects would be unlikely to be constructed in 2024/25, meaning a significant amount of delayed works, and carry-over. This is not recommended.

- 4.2. The Council could endorse the staff progressing the design of the three projects from July 2024 onwards. This would increase the opportunity to complete the projects within this coming financial year, although there is no guarantee that this objective wouldn't be affected by other delays. To achieve this, the Council would incur expenditure against all three projects from the local share of the respective budgets, in the interim.

If the projects were subsequently granted subsidy this would cover the previously spent design costs. Even if the projects were subsequently approved at a later stage in the NLTP timeframe, (such as can happen when NZTA seek to balance under expenditure elsewhere) then the design costs would be retrospectively subsidised. However, if the projects were not approved for subsidy in this NLTP, then it is unlikely that any future approval would cover the earlier design costs, and they would not be eligible for subsidy. This is the recommended approach.

- 4.3. The Council could endorse one or two of the projects to proceed in advance of certainty over subsidy, but not all three. Of the three projects, the Fernside/Todds Intersection has the lowest risk of not getting subsidy, as it has a poor safety record, is an important infrastructural improvement for industrial and commercial growth, and is a relatively low cost.

The Tram/McHughs/Bradley intersection has a higher risk of not getting subsidy, as it is mainly safety driven, and is a higher cost. However, this intersection has a poor safety record, and has been identified by NZTA as a safety risk.

The risk of the Lees Valley Bypass Bridge not getting subsidy is difficult to assess. Due to its remote location, it would not have a high Cost/Benefit ratio based on traditional principles. However, it is a resilience project which is an important driver for this government, and it significantly affects primary access for the local residents. Also, its low cost would be in its favour.

- 4.4. It is worth noting that all three projects have been built into the Council's resourcing plan, and so staff have the resources to advance all three projects.

Implications for Community Wellbeing

There are implications on community wellbeing by the issues and options that are the subject matter of this report. All three projects are important infrastructural improvements that the community are expecting to be delivered in 2024/25. A delay will affect accessibility, safety and efficiency of travel for our community.

- 4.5. The Management Team has reviewed this report and support the recommendations.

5. COMMUNITY VIEWS

5.1. Mana whenua

Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri hapū are not likely to be affected by or have an interest in the subject matter of this report. While each of the projects will need discussing separately regarding any issues of interest, the subject matter of advancing the timing is of less importance.

5.2. Groups and Organisations

There are groups and organisations likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report. The traveling public and residents will all be affected by a delay in construction.

5.3. Wider Community

The wider community is likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report. The traveling public and residents will all be affected by a delay in construction.

6. **OTHER IMPLICATIONS AND RISK MANAGEMENT**

6.1. **Financial Implications**

There are financial implications of the decisions sought by this report.

This budget is included in the Annual Plan/Long Term Plan. The total budgets in the LTP are as follows:

- Tram/Bradleys/McHughs Rd Roundabout - \$1.80M
- Lees Valley resilience (intended to be partially spent on the Lees Valley Bypass Bridge) - \$350,000
- Fernside/Todds Intersection improvements - \$685,000

The Council share of these budgets is approximately 50%, (being \$900,000, \$175,000 and \$342,000 respectively) and so a significantly in excess of the requested design costs of \$50,000, \$25,000, and \$25,000 respectively.

However, as noted above, the budget has been established on the basis that the work will be subsidised. If the projects are subsequently approved, then this assumption remains. However, if any of the projects are not approved for subsidy, then the design work may not be subsidised.

6.2. **Sustainability and Climate Change Impacts**

The recommendations in this report do have sustainability and/or climate change impacts. The designs are all being designed to allow for Climate Change. In addition, the improvement of safety and accessibility both contribute towards the sustainability of our society.

6.3 **Risk Management**

There are risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report.

There is a risk that one or all of the projects will not be funded when the 2024-27 NLTP is approved. However, even if this occurs, it may be that funding would be made available during the remaining 2 ½ years of the NLTP. This can happen when NZTA seeks to re-allocate funding to other Councils when it is apparent it won't get spent. In either of these instances, the subsidy would be paid on the design costs.

There is then the further risk that the projects are not funded in this three-year NLTP. If this occurs, the design costs will not be subsidised. This would result in a loss of subsidy of up to \$50,000, or 50% of the requested design costs.

However, even in this instance, the underlying design outputs will still not be lost, as all three projects are important projects for our district which will proceed sooner or later when funding allows, and the design will be able to be refreshed at that time.

On the other hand, if the design work is not advanced, there is a very high risk that the construction would not be completed in this coming financial year, meaning further delays and costs on these important projects, and meaning that the community would not get the advantages of these projects as proposed in the LTP.

6.3 **Health and Safety**

There are health and safety risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report, but these will be dealt with as part of the design and construction of each project.

7. **CONTEXT**

7.1. **Consistency with Policy**

This matter is not a matter of significance in terms of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

7.2. Authorising Legislation

This matter is covered by the Local Government Act.

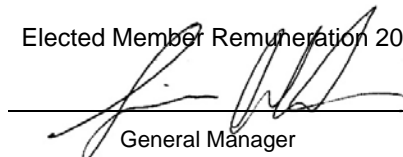
7.3. Consistency with Community Outcomes

The Council's community outcomes are relevant to the actions arising from recommendations in this report.

Transport is accessible, convenient, reliable, and sustainable.

7.4. Authorising Delegations

It is appropriate that the Council makes this decision.

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL**REPORT FOR DECISION****FILE NO and TRIM NO:** GOV-01-11/ 240420062991**REPORT TO:** COUNCIL**DATE OF MEETING:** 2 July 2024**AUTHOR(S):** Sarah Nichols, Governance Manager**SUBJECT:** Elected Member Remuneration 2024/25**ENDORSED BY:**
(for Reports to Council,
Committees or Boards)


General Manager



Acting Chief Executive
1. SUMMARY

- 1.1 This report provides an update on the Remuneration Authority Determination for the July 2024 to June 2025 financial year, pertaining to elected members remuneration and expenses.
- 1.2 The remuneration pool for councillors (including deputy mayor) but excluding Mayor from 1 July 2024 to 30 June 2025 is \$575,791. This is an increase of 3.7% from the previous financial year. The remuneration pool remained unchanged from mid-October 2022 to 30 June 2023 period and through the next financial year of 1 July 2023 to 30 June 2024, being \$555,247.
- 1.3 As of 1 July 2024 the new Remuneration rate will be applicable with the Mayor being paid \$152,271pa, the Deputy Mayor paid \$71,940pa and all nine councillors will be paid the higher duties rate which will have a remuneration of \$55,983pa because they all carry portfolios and chairperson requirements. The base remuneration for a councillor with no higher duties would be \$43,702pa and is currently not paid to any councillor.
- 1.4 This report also updates the Elected Member Expenses Policy applicable from 1 July 2024 to 30 June 2025, reflecting the requirements by the Remuneration Authority.

Attachments:

- i. Draft Elected Member Expenses Policy to 30 June 2025 (Trim 210811131910 V4)
- ii. Extract of Remuneration Authority Determination 2024/25

2. RECOMMENDATION**THAT** the Council

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240420062991.
- (b) **Notes** the remuneration is set by the Remuneration Authority for the Waimakariri Mayor, Councillors and Community Board members from 1 July 2024 to 30 June 2025 as follows:

	1 July 2024 to 30 June 2025
Mayor	\$152,271
Deputy Mayor	\$71,940
Councillor (with portfolio and chairing responsibilities)	\$55,983

Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board Chair	\$19,402
Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board	\$9,701
Oxford-Ohoka Community Board Chair	\$18,278
Oxford-Ohoka Community Board	\$9,139
Rangiora-Ashley Community Board Chair	\$25,027
Rangiora-Ashley Community Board	\$12,513
Woodend-Sefton Community Board Chair	\$16,030
Woodend-Sefton Community Board	\$8,015

- (c) **Notes** there is sufficient Governance budget to cover the 3.7% increase in remuneration cost.
- (d) **Approves** the Elected Member Expenses Policy to 30 June 2025 (Trim 210811131910-V4).
- (e) **Circulates** a copy of this report and the approved Expenses Policy to all Community Boards for their reference.

3. **BACKGROUND**

- 3.1 The Remuneration Authority (RA) set the remuneration, allowances and expenses for elected members and Determinations normally covering a financial year (1 July to 30 June).
- 3.2 The Determination of remuneration changes to elected members is made by the Remuneration Authority and the legislative instrument processed through Parliament before receiving the Royal Assent. The Council has no choice, but to follow the legislation.
- 3.3 On receipt of the new Remuneration for the financial year, the Elected Member Expenses Policy is also required to be reviewed, and adjusted in line with the Determination. On conclusion of the Council accepting this information the updated Policy is sent to the RA for reference.
- 3.4 The governance remuneration pool does not apply to Mayors or Community Board members.
- 3.5 Because the triennial local elections will be held in 2025, the Authority will undertake, in the 2024/25 year, a full review of the framework for determining the remuneration, allowances and hearing fees covering the elected members of local authorities. The outcome of the full review will inform the determination that will take effect from 1 July 2025 and the governance remuneration pools, remuneration, allowances and hearing fees that will take effect, and apply to all local government members, from the day after polling day for the 2025 local elections.

4. **ISSUES AND OPTIONS**

- 4.1. The remuneration pools support the mandatory criteria (clause 7, schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002 and sections 19 and 18A of the Remuneration Authority Act 1977) that the Authority is required to consider when determining local government members pay. In particular, the RA were concerned with achieving and maintaining fair relativity with the levels of remuneration received elsewhere and being fair to the elected members and ratepayers. The governance remuneration pool provides the total amount that must be paid in remuneration to councils in each individual council and is based on the collective governance role (size index) of the council. The pool does not take into account the number of councillors on the council.

- 4.2. The Remuneration Authority (RA) has determined that a 3.7% increase to the governance remuneration pool which cover the councillors of each local authority will apply. The RA also determined that a 3.7% increase will apply to the Mayor and Community Board members. The Board Chairs are paid twice the amount of a Board Member.
- 4.3. The RA also determined to maintain the allowances and hearing fees covering the elected members of local authorities at the same levels as the last local government determination.
- 4.4. The vehicle kilometre rates have been maintained to reflect the current rates prescribed by the Inland Revenue Department. The rates were amended in 2022 in response to the overall increase in vehicle running costs largely due to fuel costs. The rates were \$0.83c/km (pre-October 2022) and increased to \$0.95c/km for the first 14,000km. The rate of \$0.95c/km remains in place for the 2024/25 financial year. If the rates change as prescribed by the Inland Revenue during the 2024/25 year, the Authority will review the vehicle-kilometre allowance and any subsequent changes to the allowance will be made by way of an amendment determination.
- 4.5. Access to staff benefits schemes has been requested from time to time by various local authorities. These schemes often offer council staff discounted access to council owned or controlled facilities such as swimming pools, gyms and museums. Given the nature of these schemes, it would be not only inappropriate for councils to offer these schemes to elected members, but would be contrary to both the LGA and the Remuneration Authority Act 1977.
- 4.6. The Management Team has reviewed this report.

Implications for Community Wellbeing

There are not implications on community wellbeing by the issues and options that are the subject matter of this report.

5. COMMUNITY VIEWS

5.1. Mana whenua

Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri hapū are not likely to be affected by, or have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

5.2. Groups and Organisations

There are not groups and organisations likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

5.3. Wider Community

The wider community is not likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

6. OTHER IMPLICATIONS AND RISK MANAGEMENT

6.1. Financial Implications

There are financial implications of the decisions sought by this report.

6.1.1. Elected member remuneration is funded from the Governance Budget, which has adequate provision for the 2024/25 budget. The budget collectively has \$1,045,400 for elected member remuneration.

6.1.2. The governance remuneration pool for councillors (including deputy mayor) from 1 July 2024 to 30 June 2025 is \$575,791.00. All councillors carry higher duties with portfolios and chairperson requirements.

6.1.3. Inland Revenue deems elected members of local authorities to be self-employed. Therefore, elected members are required to make their own ACC levy payments and KiwiSaver arrangements. They may also be required to make provisional tax payments. Being self-employed, elected members are taxed as individuals at a rate determined by Inland Revenue. Remuneration is taxed and is paid directly to the IRD from the Council fortnightly payments, generally at a rate of 33% tax (WT tax code). All allowances are non-taxable.

- 6.1.4. The Remuneration Authority have set the elected member remuneration from 1 July 2024 to 30 June 2025 as follows:

Position	1 July 2023 to 30 June 2024	1 July 2024 to 30 June 2025
Mayor	\$146,838	\$152,271
Deputy Mayor	\$69,373	\$71,940
Councillor (with portfolio and chairing responsibilities) (all 9 Councillors)	\$53,986	\$55,983
Kaiapoi-Tuahivi Community Board Chair	\$18,710	\$19,402
Kaiapoi-Tuahivi Community Board	\$9,355	\$9,701
Oxford-Ohoka Community Board Chair	\$17,627	\$18,278
Oxford-Ohoka Community Board	\$8,813	\$9,139
Rangiora-Ashley Community Board Chair	\$24,134	\$25,027
Rangiora-Ashley Community Board	\$12,067	\$12,513
Woodend-Sefton Community Board Chair	\$15,457	\$16,030
Woodend-Sefton Community Board	\$7,729	\$8,015

- 6.1.5. The expenses that an elected member is entitled to claim such as mileage has not changed for 2024/25. Hearing fees, internet/phone/consumables allowance have also remained unchanged for the 2024/25 Determination. Refer to the attached policy for rates.

6.2. Sustainability and Climate Change Impacts

The recommendations in this report do not have sustainability and/or climate change impacts.

6.3. Risk Management

There are not risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report.

6.4. Health and Safety

There are not health and safety risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report.

7. CONTEXT

7.1. Consistency with Policy

This matter is not a matter of significance in terms of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

7.2. Authorising Legislation

Local Government Members (2024/25) Determination 2024.
Local Government Act 2002 (clauses 6, 7A, 7(2) Schedule 7).
Remuneration Authority Act 1977.

7.3. Consistency with Community Outcomes

The Council's community outcomes are relevant to the actions arising from recommendations in this report.

7.4. Authorising Delegations

By legislation, the Remuneration Authority Determination is final.

Elected Member Expenses Policy (from 1 July 2024 to 30 June 2025)

1. Introduction

The Local Government Act 2002 has given the Remuneration Authority the responsibility for setting remuneration, approving expense rules and setting the mileage allowance for elected members.

2. Policy context

2.1. Policy principles

- 2.1.1. This policy covers the entitlement of elected members to allowances and contributions towards expenses related to travel, mileage, communication, childcare, and travel, conference and training attendance and professional development.
- 2.1.2. Elected members should be reimbursed for actual and reasonable expenses they incur in carrying out their official duties.
- 2.1.3. Reimbursement of expenses apply only to elected members personally and only while they are acting in their official capacity as elected members.
- 2.1.4. Elected members' expense expenditure must have a justifiable business purpose, is moderate and conservative having regard to the circumstances, is made transparently and is appropriate in all respects.

2.2. Legislative context

Local Government Act 2002 Schedule 7 Clauses 6–13.

Local Government Members (2024/25) (Local Authorities) Determination 2024

3. Policy objective

- 3.1. To establish guidelines on claiming of expenses by elected members.

- 3.1.1. This policy is based on the principles that all expenditure is:

- Actual and reasonable
- Related to conduct of local authority business
- Represents the best use of ratepayer funds.

- 3.1.2. All entitlements are considered to be a contribution to expenses elected members may incur in the course of conducting local authority business.

4. Implementation

- 4.1. All expense claims must be submitted on the relevant claim form and where appropriate accompanied by full receipts. Eligibility of claims presented without receipts will be determined by the Governance Manager.
 - 4.2. All expense claims are to be returned at least quarterly, and preferably monthly.
 - 4.3. Expense claims by the Mayor are to be approved by the Chair of Audit & Risk Committee and the Chief Executive.
 - 4.4. Expense claims by Deputy Mayor, Councillors and Community Board members are approved by the Governance Manager.
 - 4.5.
 - 4.6. All mileage claims, including Mayor, are approved by the Governance Manager.
- The internal audit work programme will include sampling of expense claims and allowances paid to elected members and staff. An external audit work programme may be undertaken as required.

5. Policy Statement

5.1. Remuneration, allowances and hearing fees

- 5.1.1. A member of a local authority or a board is entitled to:
 - (a) the applicable remuneration set out in the Schedule (adjusted in accordance with clause 9 if applicable)
 - (b) the applicable allowances payable in accordance with clauses 10 to 13
 - (c) the applicable hearing fees payable in accordance with clause 14.
- 5.1.2. If a member of a territorial authority is also elected or appointed to a board, the member is entitled only to the remuneration that is payable to the member as a member of the territorial authority.

5.2. Acting Mayor

- 5.2.1. This clause applies to a member who acts as a mayor during a period when, because of a vacancy or temporary absence, the remuneration or allowances that would usually be paid to the mayor are not being paid.
- 5.2.2. While acting as mayor, the member must be paid the remuneration and allowances usually payable to the mayor, instead of the member's usual remuneration, allowances, and hearing fees.

5.3. RMA resource consent hearing costs

- 5.3.1. Where an elected member (Councillor or Community Board member*) is appointed to an RMA Resource Consent Application Hearing Panel or District Plan Hearing Panel by the Council, remuneration and allowances are payable as outlined in the Local Government Members (2024/25) (Local Authorities) Determination 2024, Section 5, 6 and 7 (or subsequent Determinations).
 - Chairperson of an RMA Resource Consent hearing is entitled to be paid a fee of up to \$116 per hour of RMA hearing time related to the hearing, including preparation, reading materials, site visit and writing of decision time.
 - Panel member whom is not Chairperson of RMA Resource Consent or District Plan hearing is entitled to be paid a fee of up to \$93 per hour of RMA or District Plan hearing time related to the hearing, including preparation, reading materials, site visit and writing of decision time.
 - For any period of hearing time that is less than one hour, the fee must be apportioned accordingly.

- RMA Resource Consent or District Plan hearing fees are not payable to mayors or a member who acts as mayor and is paid the mayor's remuneration and allowances under clause 8(2).

5.3.2. Any/all elected members whom Waimakariri District Council appoints to a RMA Resource Management hearing or District Plan hearing must be suitably qualified by holding a current accreditation on behalf of the Ministry for the Environment having successfully completed the "Making Good Decisions" programme.

5.4. District Licensing Committee hearing costs

5.4.1. Where an elected member (Councillor or Community Board member*) is appointed to the District Licensing Committee (DLC) remuneration is set under section 183 of the Sale and Supply of Alcohol Act 2012 and their fees and expenses are payable as prescribed by the Minister of Justice in accordance with the Cabinet fees framework. This currently being:

- Chairperson of a DLC hearing is entitled to be paid a fee of up to \$116 per hour of DLC hearing time, including preparation, site visit and writing of decision time
- Panel member whom is not Chairperson of DLC hearing is entitled to be paid a fee of up to \$93 per hour of DLC hearing time, including preparation and site visit time
- For any period of hearing time that is less than one hour, the fee must be apportioned accordingly
- DLC hearing fees are not payable to mayors or a member who acts as mayor and is paid the mayor's remuneration and allowances.

5.5. Reimbursement of conference costs

5.5.1. Where an elected member attends a conference approved by the Council or a Community Board, all actual and reasonable costs associated with the conference or seminar will be met by the Council. This includes meal, accommodation costs and travel costs. **Alcohol costs will not be reimbursed.** The most cost effective means of travel must be used. Claims are to be supported by receipts and submitted to the Governance Manager within one month of conference.

5.6.

5.6.1. Accommodation and meals

Accommodation and meals will be reimbursed based on actual and reasonable costs, as determined by the Governance Manager. In respect of the Mayor, assessment of actual and reasonable costs shall be determined by the Chair of the Audit and Risk Committee together with the Chief Executive. Where private accommodation is used a claim of \$50 per night can be made. Meals will be reimbursed based on actual and reasonable costs. Claims are to be supported by receipts. Alcohol is considered a private expense and is not reimbursed.

5.7.

Mayoral vehicle

5.7.1. The Waimakariri District Council **will supply and service a motor vehicle for the Mayor**, including for private use. **This will be one vehicle per electoral term in accordance with the Determination.**

5.8. Vehicle mileage allowance

5.8.1. Mileage will be paid in accordance with Remuneration Authority Determination (2024/25)

5.8.2. A local authority may pay to a member a vehicle mileage allowance to reimburse that member for costs incurred in respect of eligible travel.

5.8.3. A member's travel is eligible for the allowance if—

- (a) it occurs on a day when the member is not provided with a motor vehicle by the local authority; and

- (b) the member is travelling—
 - (i) in a private vehicle; and
 - (ii) on local authority business; and
 - (iii) by the most direct route that is reasonable in the circumstances.

5.8.4. The allowance payable to a member for eligible travel is,—

- (a) for a petrol or diesel vehicle,—
 - (i) 95 cents per kilometre for the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term; and
 - (ii) 34 cents per kilometre after the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term;
- (b) for a petrol hybrid vehicle,—
 - (i) 95 cents per kilometre for the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term; and
 - (ii) 20 cents per kilometre after the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term;
- (c) for an electric vehicle,—
 - (i) 95 cents per kilometre for the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term; and
 - (ii) 11 cents per kilometre after the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term.

5.8.5. In the case of an elected member living outside the Waimakariri District, the mileage allowance will be payable only from their point of entry at the Waimakariri District boundary.

5.8.6. Transport costs other than mileage will be paid for on an actual and reasonable basis.

5.8.7. The Governance Manager will be responsible for monitoring mileage claims and agreeing with the elected member the most direct route reasonable in the circumstances.

5.9. Travel time allowance

5.9.1. A local authority may pay a member (other than a mayor) an allowance for eligible travel time.

5.9.2. A member's travel time is eligible for the allowance if it is time spent travelling within New Zealand—

- (a) on local authority business; and
- (b) by the quickest form of transport that is reasonable in the circumstances; and
- (c) by the most direct route that is reasonable in the circumstances.

5.9.3. The travel time allowance is \$40 for each hour of eligible travel time after the first hour of eligible travel time travelled in a day.

5.9.4. However, if a member of a local authority resides outside the local authority area and travels to the local authority area on local authority business, the member is only eligible for a travel time allowance in respect of eligible travel time —

- (a) after the member crosses the boundary of the local authority area; and
- (b) after the first hour of eligible travel within the local authority area.

5.9.5. The maximum total amount of travel time allowance that a member may be paid for eligible travel in a 24-hour period is 8 hours.

5.10. Computer, internet and associated consumables expenses (communications allowance)

- 5.10.1. It is determined by the local authority that Mayor and Councillors are provided laptops to enable them to perform their functions. The Mayor is provided a mobile phone by the local authority. All Councillors use their own mobile phones. Community Board members are required to use their own equipment. Waimakariri District Council will pay an allowance in accordance with the Remuneration Authority Determination.

Equipment

Mobile telephone	\$200pa (excludes Mayor)
Printer	\$50pa
Personal computer/tablet/laptop	\$400pa (excludes Mayor and Councillors)
Paper consumables	\$200pa

Services

Internet Connection	\$800 per term
---------------------	----------------

Equipment

To reimburse for the costs of their phone/printer/computers and related consumables, as follows:

- The Mayor to receive an allowance of \$9.61 per fortnight.
- The Councillors to receive an allowance of \$17.30 per fortnight.
- Community Board Chairpersons to receive an allowance of \$32.69 per fortnight.
- Community Board members to receive \$32.69 per fortnight.

Services

To reimburse for the costs of an Internet connection to their residential address to provide computer access to the Council, as follows:

- The Mayor and Councillors to receive an allowance of \$10.25 per fortnight
- Community Board Chairpersons to receive an allowance of \$10.25 per fortnight
- Community Board members to receive an allowance of \$10.25 per fortnight.

If a local authority requests a member to use the member's own mobile telephone service for the purpose of the member's work on local authority business, the member is entitled, at the member's option to –

- (a) An allowance for that use of up to \$500 for the determination term; or
- (b) Reimburse of actual costs of telephone calls made on local authority business on production of the relevant telephone records and receipts.

5.11. Childcare allowance

- 5.11.1. A local authority may pay a childcare allowance, in accordance with subclauses (2) and (3), to an eligible member as a contribution towards expenses incurred by the member for childcare provided while the member is engaged on local authority business.

- 5.11.2. A member is eligible to be paid a childcare allowance in respect of childcare provided for a child only if:

- (a) the member is a parent or guardian of the child, or is a person who usually has responsibility for the day-to-day care of the child (other than on a temporary basis); and
- (b) the child is aged under 14 years of age; and
- (c) the childcare is provided by a person who—
 - (i) is not a parent of the child or a spouse, civil union partner, or de facto partner of the member; and

- (ii) does not ordinarily reside with the member; and
- (d) the member provides evidence satisfactory to the local authority of the amount paid for childcare.

5.11.3. A local authority must not pay childcare allowances to a member that total more than \$6,000 per child during the determination term.

6. Breaches

An alleged breach of allowance and expense rules is to be considered under the Code of Conduct.

7. Effective date

2 July 2024

8. Review date

This policy will be reviewed annually following the release of the Remuneration Authorities Local Government Members Determination. The next review is due July 2025.

9. Policy owned by

The Governance Manager

10. Approval

Approved by Waimakariri District Council on 2 July 2024 for receipt by the Remuneration Authority

Appendix 1

Type of Meeting/Functions	Mileage	
	Paid	Not Paid
Council meetings (ordinary, special, extra-ordinary and emergency)	✓	
Committees and Subcommittees of Council (if appointed a member)	✓	
Community Board meetings (if an appointed member)	✓	
Resource Consent Hearings (if an appointed member of the Hearings Panel)	✓	
WDC Advisory Group meetings (if appointed by the Council as its representative) (e.g. Ohoka Domain Advisory Group)	✓	
Formally representing Council (as a result of resolution of Council) at a formal meeting of another local authority.	✓	
Meetings of other outside organisations as the Council's appointed representative (appointment pursuant to a Council resolution). (Note that meetings of Council Controlled Organisations and Trusts where Councillors and Community board members are otherwise remunerated do not qualify for payment.)	✓	
Full Council workshops or briefings (which have the prior approval of the Mayor and Chief Executive) at which no resolutions or decisions are made. These workshops are to be held solely to discuss major policy or strategic issues of interest to all Councillors.	✓	
Training and development courses, field trips, site visits, where authorised by the Mayor or formal resolution of Council or Community Board, in excess of four hours.	✓	
Public meetings where the Council is officiating.	✓	
Meetings with other statutory bodies to deal with issues which would be the responsibility of a Committee or Subcommittee of Council of which the Councillor attending is a member or which deal with issues directly affecting the Councillors Ward or Portfolio.	✓	
Local Conferences/Seminars (if an appointed WDC representative) <i>Note – Local being generally the Canterbury region. Mileage outside the region at the discretion of the Mayor.</i>	✓	
Working groups or working parties	✓	
Field trips or site visits/inspections (including site visits for resource consent hearings where approved by Mayor or Committee Chairperson)	✓	

Type of Meeting/Functions	Mileage	
	Paid	Not Paid
Briefings and discussions with the Mayor, Chief Executive, Senior Managers and Officers	✓	
Where Councillors, other than the Deputy Mayor, officiate at "official" functions as determined by the Mayor.	✓	
Constituency "meetings" (either with individuals or organisations) unless there is formal approval requiring official attendance		X
Social functions		X
Event attendance in a non-representative capacity		X
Travel not related to the business of the Waimakariri District Council		X
Personal travel interspersed with Council related business		X

17/06/2024
PCO 26494/6.0

Local Government Members (2024/25) Determination 2024

This determination is made by the Remuneration Authority under the Remuneration Authority Act 1977 and clauses 6 and 7A of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002, after having regard to the matters specified in clause 7 of that schedule.

Contents

		Page
1	Title	2
2	Commencement	2
3	Expiry	2
	<i>Interpretation</i>	
4	Interpretation	2
5	Meaning of hearing	2
6	Meaning of hearing time	3
	<i>Entitlement to remuneration, allowances, and hearing fees</i>	
7	Remuneration, allowances, and hearing fees payable	3
8	Acting mayor or chairperson	4
9	Motor vehicles for mayors and regional council chairpersons	4
	<i>Allowances</i>	
10	Definition of member	6
11	Vehicle-kilometre allowance	6
12	Travel-time allowance	7
13	ICT allowances	8
14	Childcare allowance	9
	<i>Hearing fees</i>	
15	Fees related to hearings	10
	<i>Revocation</i>	
16	Revocation	10
	Schedule Remuneration	11

**Local Government Members (2024/25) Determination
2024**

cl 1

Determination

1 Title

This determination is the Local Government Members (2024/25) Determination 2024.

2 Commencement

This determination comes into force on 1 July 2024.

3 Expiry

This determination expires at the close of 30 June 2025.

Interpretation

4 Interpretation

In this determination, unless the context otherwise requires,—

board means—

- (a) a community board of a territorial authority other than the Auckland Council; or
- (b) a local board of the Auckland Council

determination term means the period from the coming into force of this determination to its expiry

hearing has the meaning given to it by clause 5

hearing time has the meaning given to it by clause 6

local authority means a regional council or a territorial authority

member means, in relation to a local authority or a board, a person who is declared to be elected to that local authority or board under the Local Electoral Act 2001 or who, as the result of further election or appointment under that Act or the Local Government Act 2002, is an office holder in relation to the local authority or board (for example, a chairperson)

on local authority business includes on the business of any board of the local authority

regional council means a regional council named in Part 1 of Schedule 2 of the Local Government Act 2002

RMA means the Resource Management Act 1991

territorial authority means a territorial authority named in Part 2 of Schedule 2 of the Local Government Act 2002.

5 Meaning of hearing

In this determination, **hearing** means—

- (a) a hearing arising from a resource consent application made under section 88 of the RMA; or
- (b) a meeting for determining a resource consent application without a formal hearing; or
- (c) a hearing arising from a notice of requirement (including one initiated by the local authority); or
- (d) a pre-hearing meeting held under section 99 of the RMA in relation to a hearing referred to in paragraph (a) or (c); or
- (e) a hearing as part of the process of the preparation, change, variation, or review of a district or regional plan or regional policy statement; or
- (f) a mediation hearing in the Environment Court as part of an appeal from a decision of a local authority; or
- (g) a hearing on an objection against a charge fixed by a local authority under section 36 of the RMA.

6 Meaning of hearing time

In this determination, **hearing time** means the time spent on any of the following:

- (a) conducting a hearing;
- (b) formal deliberations to decide the outcome of a hearing;
- (c) participating in an official group site inspection related to a hearing;
- (d) determining a resource consent application where a formal hearing does not take place;
- (e) preparing for a hearing and participating in any inspection of a site for the purposes of a hearing (other than an official group site inspection under paragraph (c));
- (f) writing a decision arising from a hearing or communicating for the purpose of the written decision.

Entitlement to remuneration, allowances, and hearing fees

7 Remuneration, allowances, and hearing fees payable

Remuneration

- (1) A member of a local authority or a board of that local authority is entitled to the applicable remuneration set out in the Schedule (adjusted under clause 9, if applicable).
- (2) If a member of a territorial authority is also elected or appointed to a board, the member is entitled only to the remuneration that is payable to the member as a member of the territorial authority.

**Local Government Members (2024/25) Determination
2024**

cl 8

Allowances and hearing fees

- (3) A member of a local authority or a board is also entitled to—
 - (a) the applicable allowances payable under clauses 11 to 14;
 - (b) the applicable hearing fees payable under clause 15.

8 Acting mayor or chairperson

- (1) This clause applies to a member who acts as a mayor or chairperson during a period when, because of a vacancy or temporary absence, the local authority is not paying the remuneration or allowances that it would usually pay to the mayor or chairperson.
- (2) While the member is acting as mayor or chairperson, the local authority must pay the member the remuneration and allowances usually payable to the mayor or chairperson, instead of the member's usual remuneration, allowances, and hearing fees.

9 Motor vehicles for mayors and regional council chairpersons

- (1) A local authority may provide to the mayor or regional council chairperson of the local authority—
 - (a) a motor vehicle (which may be provided for restricted private use, partial private use, or full private use); or
 - (b) a vehicle-kilometre allowance under clause 11.
- (2) If a local authority provides a motor vehicle to a mayor or regional council chairperson during the determination term, the maximum purchase price that the local authority may pay for the motor vehicle is,—
 - (a) in the case of a petrol or diesel vehicle, \$55,000; and
 - (b) in the case of an electric or a hybrid vehicle, \$68,500.
- (3) If a local authority provides a motor vehicle to a mayor or regional council chairperson for restricted private use, the local authority must not make a deduction from the annual remuneration payable to the mayor or regional council chairperson under the Schedule for the provision of that motor vehicle.
- (4) If a local authority provides a motor vehicle to a mayor or regional council chairperson for partial private use or full private use,—
 - (a) the local authority must adjust the annual remuneration payable to the mayor or regional council chairperson under the Schedule in accordance with subclause (5) or (6) (as applicable); and
 - (b) the adjustment must take effect on and from—
 - (i) the date of commencement of this determination (in the case of a motor vehicle provided to the person before that date); or
 - (ii) the date of provision of the motor vehicle to the person (in the case of a motor vehicle provided during the determination term).

- (5) If a local authority provides a motor vehicle to a mayor or regional council chairperson for partial private use, the local authority must deduct the amount calculated in accordance with the following formula from the remuneration payable to that person:

$$v \times 41\% \times 10\%$$

where v means the purchase price of the vehicle.

- (6) If a local authority provides a motor vehicle to a mayor or regional council chairperson for full private use, the local authority must deduct the amount calculated in accordance with the following formula from the remuneration payable to that person:

$$v \times 41\% \times 20\%$$

where v means the purchase price of the vehicle.

- (7) In this clause,—

full private use means—

- (a) the vehicle is usually driven home and securely parked by the mayor or regional council chairperson; and
- (b) the vehicle is available for the mayor's or regional council chairperson's unrestricted private use; and
- (c) the vehicle is used by the mayor or regional council chairperson for both local authority business and private use; and
- (d) the vehicle may also be used by other local authority members or staff on local authority business, with the permission of the mayor or regional council chairperson

partial private use means—

- (a) the vehicle is usually driven home and securely parked by the mayor or regional council chairperson; and
- (b) the vehicle is used by the mayor or regional council chairperson for both local authority business and private purposes; and
- (c) the vehicle may also be used by other local authority members or staff on local authority business, with the permission of the mayor or regional council chairperson; and
- (d) all travel in the vehicle is recorded in a logbook; and
- (e) the use of the vehicle for private purposes accounts for no more than 10% of the distance travelled in the vehicle in a year

purchase price means the amount paid for the vehicle,—

- (a) including goods and services tax and any on-road costs; and
- (b) after deducting the amount of any rebate that applies under the clean car discount scheme in respect of the purchase of the vehicle

**Local Government Members (2024/25) Determination
2024**

cl 10

restricted private use means—

- (a) the vehicle is usually driven home and securely parked by the mayor or regional council chairperson; and
- (b) the vehicle is otherwise generally available for use by other local authority members or staff on local authority business; and
- (c) the vehicle is used solely for local authority business; and
- (d) all travel in the vehicle is recorded in a logbook.

*Allowances***10 Definition of member**

For the purposes of payment of allowances under clauses 11 to 14, **member**, in relation to a territorial authority, includes a member of a board of the territorial authority.

11 Vehicle-kilometre allowance

- (1) A local authority may pay to a member a vehicle-kilometre allowance to reimburse that member for costs incurred in relation to eligible travel.
- (2) A member's travel is eligible for the allowance if—
 - (a) it occurs at a time when the member is not provided with a motor vehicle by the local authority; and
 - (b) the member is travelling—
 - (i) in a private vehicle; and
 - (ii) on local authority business; and
 - (iii) by the most direct route that is reasonable in the circumstances.
- (3) The allowance payable to a member for eligible travel is,—
 - (a) for a petrol or diesel vehicle,—
 - (i) 95 cents per kilometre for the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term; and
 - (ii) 34 cents per kilometre after the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term;
 - (b) for a petrol hybrid vehicle,—
 - (i) 95 cents per kilometre for the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term; and
 - (ii) 20 cents per kilometre after the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term;
 - (c) for an electric vehicle,—
 - (i) 95 cents per kilometre for the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term; and

- (ii) 11 cents per kilometre after the first 14,000 kilometres of eligible travel in the determination term.
- (4) However, if a member of a local authority travels from a place where the member permanently or temporarily resides that is outside the local authority area, to the local authority area on local authority business, the member is only eligible for a vehicle-kilometre allowance for eligible travel after the member crosses the boundary of the local authority area.
- (5) Subclause (4) does not apply to the payment of a vehicle-kilometre allowance by a local authority to a member who permanently or temporarily resides outside the local authority area if—
 - (a) the member's primary place of residence was outside the local authority area at the time of the local election, or an exceptional circumstance beyond the member's control requires them to move outside the local authority area; and
 - (b) the Remuneration Authority determines, on an application from the member and having considered the recommendation of the mayor or regional council chairperson, that subclause (4) does not apply.

12 Travel-time allowance

- (1) A local authority may pay a member (other than a mayor or a regional council chairperson) an allowance for eligible travel time.
- (2) A member's travel time is eligible for the allowance if it is time spent travelling within New Zealand—
 - (a) on local authority business; and
 - (b) by the quickest form of transport that is reasonable in the circumstances; and
 - (c) by the most direct route that is reasonable in the circumstances.
- (3) The travel-time allowance is \$40 for each hour (pro-rated in the case of a part of an hour) of eligible travel time after the first hour of eligible travel time travelled in a day.
- (4) However, if a member of a local authority permanently or temporarily resides outside the local authority area and travels to the local authority area on local authority business, the member is only eligible for a travel-time allowance for eligible travel time—
 - (a) after the member crosses the boundary of the local authority area; and
 - (b) after the first hour of eligible travel time within the local authority area.
- (5) Subclause (4) does not apply to the payment of a travel-time allowance by a local authority to a member who permanently or temporarily resides outside the local authority area if—

**Local Government Members (2024/25) Determination
2024**

cl 13

- (a) the member's primary place of residence was outside the local authority area at the time of the local election, or an exceptional circumstance beyond the member's control requires them to move outside the local authority area; and
 - (b) the Remuneration Authority determines, on an application from the member and having considered the recommendation of the mayor or regional council chairperson, that subclause (4) does not apply.
- (6) The maximum total amount of travel-time allowance that a member may be paid for eligible travel in a 24-hour period is 8 hours.
- (7) Despite subclause (1), the Chatham Islands Council may pay the Mayor of the Chatham Islands Council an allowance for eligible travel time.

13 ICT allowances

Member uses local authority's ICT

- (1) If a local authority supplies ICT to a member for use on local authority business and allows for its personal use, the local authority may decide what portion, if any, of the local authority's costs reasonably attributable to such personal use must be paid by the member.

Member uses own equipment and consumables

- (2) If a local authority determines that a member requires particular ICT equipment to perform their functions and requests that the member use their own equipment for those purposes, the local authority may pay an allowance.
- (3) The matters for which the local authority may pay an allowance, and the amounts that the local authority may pay for the determination term, are as follows:
- (a) for the use of a personal computer, tablet, or laptop, including any related docking station, \$400;
 - (b) for the use of a multi-functional or other printer, \$50;
 - (c) for the use of a mobile telephone, \$200;
 - (d) for the use of ICT consumables, up to \$200.

Member uses own services

- (4) If a local authority requests a member to use the member's own internet service for the purpose of the member's work on local authority business, the member is entitled to an allowance for that use of up to \$800 for the determination term.
- (5) If a local authority requests a member to use the member's own mobile telephone service for the purpose of the member's work on local authority business, the member is entitled, at the member's option, to—
- (a) an allowance for that use of up to \$500 for the determination term; or
 - (b) reimbursement of actual costs of telephone calls made on local authority business on production of the relevant telephone records and receipts.

Pro-rating

- (6) If the member is not a member for the whole of the determination term, subclauses (3) to (5) apply as if each reference to an amount were replaced by a reference to an amount calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$(a \div b) \times c$$

where—

- a is the number of days that the member held office in the determination term
 - b is the number of days in the determination term
 - c is the relevant amount specified in subclauses (3) to (5).
- (7) The Remuneration Authority may approve rules proposed by a local authority to meet the costs of installing and running special ICT where, because of distance or restricted access, normal communications connections are not available.
- (8) In this clause, **ICT** means information or communication technology, including—
- (a) ICT equipment (for example, a mobile telephone and a laptop computer); and
 - (b) ICT services (for example, a mobile telephone service and an internet service); and
 - (c) ICT consumables (for example, printer or photocopy paper and ink cartridges).

14 Childcare allowance

- (1) A local authority may pay a childcare allowance to an eligible member as a contribution towards expenses incurred by the member for childcare provided while the member is engaged on local authority business.
- (2) A member is eligible to be paid a childcare allowance for childcare provided for a child only if—
- (a) the member is a parent or guardian of the child or is a person who usually has responsibility for the day-to-day care of the child (other than on a temporary basis); and
 - (b) the child is under 14 years of age; and
 - (c) the childcare is provided by a person who—
 - (i) is not a parent of the child or a spouse, civil union partner, or de facto partner of the member; and
 - (ii) does not ordinarily reside with the member; and
 - (d) the member provides evidence satisfactory to the local authority of the amount paid for childcare.

**Local Government Members (2024/25) Determination
2024**

cl 15

- (3) A local authority must not pay childcare allowances to a member that total more than \$6,000 per child during the determination term.

Hearing fees

15 Fees related to hearings

- (1) A member of a local authority or member of a board who acts as the chairperson of a hearing is entitled to be paid a fee of up to \$116 per hour of hearing time related to the hearing.
- (2) A member of a local authority or member of a board who is not the chairperson of a hearing is entitled to be paid a fee of up to \$93 per hour of hearing time related to the hearing.
- (3) For any period of hearing time that is less than 1 hour, the fee must be apportioned accordingly.
- (4) This clause does not apply to—
- (a) a mayor or a member who acts as mayor and is paid the mayor's remuneration and allowances under clause 8(2); or
 - (b) a chairperson of a regional council or a member who acts as chairperson of a regional council and is paid the chairperson's remuneration and allowances under clause 8(2).

Revocation

16 Revocation

The Local Government Members (2023/24) Determination 2023 (SL 2023/142) is revoked.

**Local Government Members (2024/25) Determination
2024**

Schedule

Raglan Community Board

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Chairperson	10,855
Member	5,428

Rural-Port Waikato Community Board

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Chairperson	10,256
Member	5,128

Taupiri Community Board

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Chairperson	4,762
Member	2,381

Tuakau Community Board

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Chairperson	11,631
Member	5,815

Waimakariri District Council

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Mayor	152,271
Deputy Mayor	71,940
Councillor with additional portfolio and chairing responsibilities (9)	55,983
Councillor (minimum allowable remuneration)	43,702

Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Chairperson	19,402
Member	9,701

Oxford-Ohoka Community Board

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Chairperson	18,278
Member	9,139

Rangiora-Ashley Community Board

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Chairperson	25,027
Member	12,513

pro

**Local Government Members (2024/25) Determination
2024**

Schedule

Woodend–Sefton Community Board

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Chairperson	16,030
Member	8,015

Waimate District Council

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Mayor	108,161
Deputy Mayor	43,810
Councillor with no additional responsibilities	29,207
Councillor (minimum allowable remuneration)	21,436

Waipa District Council

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Mayor	150,770
Deputy Mayor (also Committee Chair)	69,308
Committee Chair and Deputy Chair (Quarterly Committee)	55,039
Committee Chair	53,000
Councillor appointed to Community Board (also Deputy Committee Chair) (2)	53,000
Councillor appointed to Community Board (2)	48,923
Deputy Committee Chair	44,846
Councillor with iwi portfolio responsibility	48,923
Deputy Committee Chair (Quarterly Committee)	42,807
Committee Chair (Quarterly Committee)	46,885
Councillor (minimum allowable remuneration)	37,884

Cambridge Community Board

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Chairperson	20,844
Member	10,422

Te Awamutu Community Board

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Chairperson	20,126
Member	10,063

Wairoa District Council

Office	Annual remuneration (\$)
Mayor	121,307
Deputy Mayor	79,816
Councillor with no additional responsibilities	53,212
Councillor (minimum allowable remuneration)	37,069

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL**REPORT FOR DECISION****FILE NO and TRIM NO:** GOV-01-11/ 240608092544**REPORT TO:** COUNCIL**DATE OF MEETING:** 2 July 2024**AUTHOR(S):** Sarah Nichols, Governance Manager on behalf of the Representation Review Working Party.**SUBJECT:** Representation Review Proposal**ENDORSED BY:**
(for Reports to Council,
Committees or Boards)
General Manager
Chief Executive**1. SUMMARY**

- 1.1. This report is submitted on behalf of the Representation Review Working Party consisting of Mayor Gordon, Councillors Goldsworthy, Mealings and Redmond, and Community Board members Pete Merrifield (Oxford-Ohoka), Shona Powell (Woodend-Sefton), Tim Bartle (Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi) and Steve Wilkinson (Rangiora-Ashley).
- 1.2. This report recommends the Council does not undertake a Representation Review in 2024, ahead of the 2025 Local Body Elections. The reason for this recommendation by the Working Party is primarily due to the unavailability of the 2023 Census data. By using the out of date data (2108 Census) the current representation arrangements will not change.
- 1.3. It is recommended that a Representation Review be scheduled ahead of the 2028 local body election, rather than the 2025 election. The Representation Review work would therefore occur in 2026/27. The Council are legally bound to undertake a Review ahead of the 2028 local body elections. It was optional to undertake any review in the intervening years. Furthermore budget has been included in the Long Term Plan for the 2026/27 year, whereas there is no budget allocation in the 2024/25 year.

Attachments:

- i. Report to the Representation Review Working Party Meeting of 5 June 2024 (240508073206).
- ii. PowerPoint to Representation Review Working Party Meeting of 5 June 2024 (240526084565).
- iii. Minutes of the Representation Review Working Party Meeting of 5 June 2024 (240604089466).

2. RECOMMENDATION**THAT** the Council

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240608092544.
- (b) **Approve** that a Representation Review does not occur during 2024, ahead of the 2025 Local Body Elections.
- (c) **Approve** a Representation Review be undertaken during 2026/27.
- (d) **Approve** that the Representation Review Working Party be disbanded.
- (e) **Note** the new Council will appoint a Representation Review Working Party in early 2026.
- (f) **Note** a copy of the Council report be circulated to all Community Boards for information.

3. **BACKGROUND**

- 3.1. The Working Party consist of; Mayor D Gordon (Chair), Councillors J Goldsworthy, N Mealings and P Redmond representing each Ward area, and Community Board members T Bartle P Merrifield, S Powell and S Wilkinson.
- 3.2. The Representation Review Working Party was established in May 2023 for the purpose of consideration of undertaking a review of representation arrangements during 2023/24 with the determination to take effect for the 2025 Local Body elections. At that time, it was understood that 2023 Census data would be available to be used for decision making and would better incorporate the district growth particularly experienced in areas east of Rangiora and Woodend.
- 3.3. Since the working party was established the Local Government Commission (LGC) has provided further advice around Stats NZ 2023 Census data release date timing and advised that Stats NZ population estimates from the 2018 Census are the only population data that are able be used for the representation reviews for the 2025 election. Stats NZ have also confirmed that '2023 Census results will NOT be available in time'. The Department of Statistics has only just released the first tranche of Census data in late May, with more data to be released over the coming months. The timing of the released information is not sufficient to use appropriately for a 2024 Representation Review.
- 3.4. As the Council completed a Representation Review for the 2022 election, it is not required legally to complete a review until 2026/27 ahead of the 2028 local body elections.

4. **ISSUES AND OPTIONS**

- 4.1. The Stats NZ Population estimates from the 2018 Census have already been used for the 2022 Representation Review. There is no value in utilising the same statistics for a further review considering that those statistics have already informed the decision making for the current representation arrangements and would now be six years out of date. By using the same data it will result in the same representation outcomes as currently in place for additional expense and time. Furthermore the Council will be out of sequence for future census data use in the cycle of representation reviews.
- 4.2. Staff recommended the Review not be undertaken until 2026/27 to ensure better outcomes for the community by enabling an extensive Review to be undertaken using the 2023 Census data. The most up to date Census data is essential for a Review to ensure that there is fair and effective representation for the district.
- 4.3. It is anticipated that the 2026/27 Review ahead of the 2028 local body elections will be significant which may result in boundary changes, potentially the number of wards and membership representation, along with Community Board boundaries. The community should be consulted twice to assist the Council to make informed decisions on the future representative requirements for the Waimakariri District.
- 4.4. The Working Party meet on 5 June and considered three options:
 - A Dissolve the working party for the current term and do not undertake a Representation Review for 2024/25 ahead of the 2025 Local Body Elections.
 - B Undertake informal consultation, district wide before moving to the formal consultation phase.
 - C Bypass the informal consultation phase and seek Council to go to formal consultation, based on current representation ratios.

- 4.5. Each option was carefully considered by the Working Party noting the following aspects:
- The Council is legislatively not required to undertake a review until 2026/27.
 - 2018 Census data must be used.
 - By using the same data base (2018 Census data) the result will be the same representation outcomes and boundaries remaining unchanged.
 - There is no budget allocation in 2024/25 for the Review work and any spend would have a rating impact on the district.
 - The Government reforms may impact on the 2028 elections.
 - Work would need to be completed by early December 2024 with various teams that link into the Review not having current capacity in their work programme and a consultant would be required at various stages increasing overall costs.
 - There is budget allocated for 2026/27 in the Long Term Plan and the Review is in the work programme.

Implications for Community Wellbeing

There are not implications on community wellbeing by the issues and options that are the subject matter of this report.

- 4.6. The Management Team has reviewed this report and support the recommendations.

5. COMMUNITY VIEWS

5.1. Mana whenua

Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri hapū are not likely to be affected by, or have an interest in the subject matter of this report. However regular discussions have confirmed that they are satisfied with the current representation arrangements and there being no Māori ward.

5.2. Groups and Organisations

There are not groups and organisations likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

5.3. Wider Community

The wider community is likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

6. OTHER IMPLICATIONS AND RISK MANAGEMENT

6.1. Financial Implications

There are financial implications of the decisions sought by this report.

There was no budget included in the 2023/24 Annual Plan or in the 2024/25 budget year to undertake such a review in 2024. A modest value budget provision is included in the 2026/27 year for a Review (\$100,000), which is required to be undertaken. However the LTP budget may need to be reviewed as part of the Annual Plan for 2026.27. District circumstances with population growth and legislative reforms has changed the landscape and a comprehensive Representation Review will be required involving two phases of consultation, additional mapping and statistical work and fees with Statistics NZ. A potential for a consultant to be employed to peer review key strategic aspects of the review could be considered in 2026/27.

6.2. Sustainability and Climate Change Impacts

The recommendations in this report do not have sustainability and/or climate change impacts.

6.3 Risk Management

There are financial and resourcing risks arising from decisions differing from the recommendations in this report. It is not practical to undertake the work, using out of date data (2018 Census information) and significant consultation required within the timeframes to complete by end December 2024 ahead of consideration of the Local Government Commission (LGC). It is not the Council that determines the final outcome arrangements for the local body elections, but the role of the LGC. Both the Council and the Commission determination may also be subject to judicial review in relation to process followed. A Commission determination can be appealed to the High Court on a point of law.

6.3 Health and Safety

There are not health and safety risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report.

7. CONTEXT

7.1. Consistency with Policy

This matter is a matter of significance in terms of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

7.2. Authorising Legislation

Local Electoral Act 2001.
Local Government Act 2022.

7.3. Consistency with Community Outcomes

The Council's community outcomes are relevant to the actions arising from recommendations in this report.

7.4. Authorising Delegations

Council has authority to undertake a Representation Review in the intervening three year period outside of the legislative six year time frame.

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL**REPORT FOR DECISION****FILE NO and TRIM NO:** Gov-11 / 240508073206**REPORT TO:** Representation Review Working Party
Mayor Gordon, Councillors Goldsworthy, Mealings and Redmond, and Community Board members Pete Merrifield (OOCB), Shona Powell (WSCB), Tim Bartle (KTCB) and Steve Wilkinson (RACB).**DATE OF MEETING:** 5 June 2024**AUTHOR(S):** Sarah Nichols (Governance Team Leader) and Emma Stubbs (Governance Support Officer)**SUBJECT:** Recommendation for Representation Review for 2028 election**ENDORSED BY:**(for Reports to Council,
Committees or Boards)_____
General Manager_____
Chief Executive**1. SUMMARY**

- 1.1. In September 2023 a memo was provided to the Management Team seeking approval to update the Representation Review Working Party with any recommendations in a Review occurring in later 2023 and into 2024. The matter was placed on hold and the consideration of Maori Wards was to be considered by the Council.
- 1.2. This purpose of this report is to update the Representation Review Working Party of the changed situation with statistical data and to recommend to the July Council meeting that the Working Party be effectively disbanded.
- 1.3. The Council considered the establishment of Māori Wards at its meeting of 5 December 2023, whereby it resolved not to establish Māori Ward(s) based on the statistical data and the legislative requirements of people enrolled on the Māori Electoral Roll not meeting the threshold numbers. (Report attached).
- 1.4. It is proposed that a report go to the Council in July 2024 recommending that a Representation Review be scheduled ahead of the 2028 local body election, rather than the 2025 election. The Representation Review work would therefore occur in 2026/27. The Council are legally bound to undertake a Review ahead of the 2028 local body elections. It was optional to under any review in the intervening years.
- 1.5. The Representation Review Working Party was established in May 2023 for the purpose of consideration of undertaking a review of representation arrangements during 2023/24 with the determination to take effect for the 2025 Local Body elections. At that time, it was believed that 2023 Census data would be available to be used for decision making and would better incorporate the growth particularly experienced in the east of Rangiora and Woodend.
- 1.6. Since the working party was established the Local Government Commission (LGC) has provided further advice around Stats NZ 2023 Census data release date timing and advised that Stats NZ population estimates from the 2018 Census are the only population data that are able to be used for the representation reviews for the 2025 election. Stats NZ have also advised that '2023 Census results will NOT be available in time'.

- 1.7. The Stats NZ Population estimates from the 2018 Census have already been used for the 2022 Representation Review. There is no value in utilising the same statistics for a further review considering that those statistics have already informed the decision making for the current representation arrangements and would now be six years out of date. By using the same data it will result in the same representation outcomes as currently for additional expense and time. Furthermore you will be out of sequence for future census data use in the cycle of representation reviews.
- 1.8. Staff recommend the Review not be undertaken until 2026/27 to ensure better outcomes for the community by enabling an extensive review to be undertaken using the 2023 Census data. The most up to date Census data is essential for a review to ensure that there is fair and effective representation for the district.
- 1.9. As the Council completed a Representation Review for the 2022 election, it is not required legally to complete a review until 2026/27 ahead of the 2028 local body elections.

2. **RECOMMENDATION**

THAT the Working Party

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240508073206.
- (b) **Note** a Representation Review is not legislatively required to occur until 2026/27 ahead of the 2028 local body elections.
- (c) **Note** budget and resource for 2026 and 2027 to enable a comprehensive Representation Review to be undertaken ahead of the 2028 local body elections, has been included in the Long Term Plan for the 2026/27 financial year.

Recommend to the Council:

- (d) **Approve** that the Representation Review Working Group be disbanded immediately and a Representation Review does not occur during 2024, ahead of the 2025 Local Body Elections.
- (e) **Approve** a Representation Review be undertaken during 2026/27.
- (f) **Note** the new Council will appoint a Representation Review Working Group in early 2026.

3. **BACKGROUND**

- 3.1. At the Council meeting of 2 May 2023, Governance presented a report requesting the Council establish a Representation Review Working Party to undertake a review for the 2025 Local Government elections. This was based on recommendations from the previous Council and LG Commission information at the time, indicating that 2023 Census data would be available.
- 3.2. While establishment of the working party was approved, questions around the availability of Census data and the budget required for a representation review were raised. There was agreement by the Council that the Working Party would investigate the viability of deferring the review (instead completing it ahead of the 2028 election) and provide an update to Council.
- 3.3. As the Council completed a Representation Review for the 2022 election, it is not required to complete a Review until the 2028 election. It was the recommendation from the previous Council that a review be completed in 2025 following the 2023 Census. The reasoning for this was because it was believed the more recent Census data would capture the uneven growth in the district that had occurred since the 2018 Census, as well as having clearer direction of the local government reforms and how that may impact on future elections.

4. **ISSUES AND OPTIONS**

Statistical Data

- 4.1. Detailed population figures are required to complete a representation review as it is a legislative requirement that electoral boundaries conform to the +/- 10% rule (section 19V(2) of the Local Electoral Act 2001).
- 4.2. Initial advice from the LGC was that 2023 Census data would be released in November 2023. The more recent advice indicated that 2023 Census population data (of the type that could be used in a representation review) will not be available until mid-2024 at the earliest. Statistics NZ have confirmed that appropriate Census data will not be available for the 2024/25 Representation Reviews. In addition the Local Government Electoral Legislation Bill (enacted 24 August 2023) has brought forward key consultation dates in the timeline for the representation review.
- 4.3. Whilst there has been uneven growth in the district since 2018 which could support boundary changes (particularly in the northeast), and population estimates could be derived from data such as building consent numbers, the population figures legally required to apply for the review are the 'ordinarily resident population' figures derived from the most recent Census, or population estimates prepared by Stats NZ.
- 4.4. In addition, the LGC has advised that it is not possible to prepare an initial proposal from derived population best estimates and then 'sub-in' the 2023 Census population data once that becomes available. The Local Government Commission Representation Review Guidelines 2023 state that:
- 'Where a new population source is issued after a local authority has resolved its initial proposal the new population source should not be used when the final proposal is being resolved. Doing so might require changes to the proposed representation arrangements that submitters could not have anticipated. This might lessen or remove the ability of submitters to have a meaningful input into the process.'*
- 4.5. As the last date for the public notice of the initial proposal is required to be no later than 8 August 2024 and we were expecting 2023 Census data to be available mid-2024 at the earliest, then Stats NZ population estimates from the 2018 Census are the only population data source that could be used in the representation review. Staff have sought and received confirmation from the LGC that 2023 Census data cannot be used for a Representation Review for the 2025 elections. In their Representation Review Data Supply Guidelines (issued 1/1/2024), Stats NZ also advise that 2023 Census results will NOT be available in time for this representation review process.
- 4.6. Population estimates from the 2018 Census were used for the 2022 Representation Review (table below). There would be no value in utilising the same statistics for a further review. The 2023 Census data is not available to use ahead of the 2025 local body elections. Note the population information is not voting eligibility numbers.

WARD	Population	Members	Population-member ratio
Oxford-Ohoka Ward	13,050	2	6,525
Rangiora-Ashley Ward	26,700	4	6,675
Kaiapoi-Woodend Ward	24,900	4	6,225
Total	64,650	10	6,465

COMMUNITY/LOCAL BOARD AREA & SUBDIVISION

			Population- member ratio
Oxford-Ohoka Community	13,050	6	2,175
Rangiora-Ashley Community	26,700	8	3,338
Woodend-Sefton Community	9,250	5	1,850
Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community	15,650	5	3,130
Total	64,650		

Oxford-Ohoka Community

Oxford Subdivision	6,450	3	2,150
Ohoka-Swannanoa Subdivision	6,600	3	2,200
Total	13,050	6	2,175

Rangiora-Ashley Community

Rangiora Subdivision	19,400	6	3,233
Ashley Subdivision	7,360	2	3,680
Total	26,760	8	3,345

- 4.7. It is anticipated that the 2026/27 Review ahead of the 2028 local body elections will be significant which may result in boundary changes, potentially the number of wards and membership representation, along with Community Board boundaries. The community should be consulted twice to assist the Council to make informed decisions on the future representative requirements for the Waimakariri District.

Fair representation

- 4.8. During a Representation Review it is necessary to identify communities of interest and determine fair and effective representation for those communities. The element of fair representation is considered by identifying the ratio of population per member for each proposed ward (based on available data). Delaying the Review and undertaking an extensive review with population estimates based on the 2023 Census data will have greater benefit and result in more 'fair representation' for the community than utilising estimates based on 2018 data. In the case where a council's proposal does not comply with fair representation requirements and no appeals/objections are received, the Commission will determine the representation arrangements for the ward, community subdivision or constituency concerned only.
- 4.9. If a Council proposes to not comply with the statutory fair representation requirement for one or more of its wards, community subdivisions or constituencies, it must refer its proposal to the Commission, whether or not it has received any appeals or objections. The fair representation requirement (also known as the '+/- 10% rule') is designed to achieve approximate equality of population representation by each member of a council or board. As the Council is required to use the 2018 Census data, the same proportional representation will be the outcome of any review undertaken now. Only in 2026/27 when the 2023 Census data can be used will a different representation arrangement occur.

Budget and other considerations

- 4.10. The Representation Review carried out for the 2022 elections followed direction from the community that there was a desire for 'status quo'. The direct cost of the Review was approximately \$25,000 and the large proportion of that was for Stats NZ. In-house expertise was used for all aspects and operational budgets utilised.

- 4.11. Costs for a comprehensive review with robust consultation that involved boundary changes are estimated to be in the order of \$100,000 including Stats NZ costs of \$50,000. Additional costs would include \$20-30,000 for consultants to peer review the critical components of data analysis and consultation. It is important that the Council can show that a robust consultation and peer review process has been followed as each year several Representation Reviews are required to go to an external LGC Hearing where the process is closely inspected. It should also be noted that the LGC audit all documentation through a Representation Review process, to see that fair consideration of all aspects was given, and appropriate consultation occurred.
- 4.12. Budget provision is provided in the LTP for years 2026 and 2027 to enable a comprehensive review to be undertaken ahead of the 2028 local body elections. No budget provision has been made for a Review in 2024.
- 4.13. A comprehensive review would require significant involvement from the GIS Team to create new boundary options. Currently the workload of this team is significant with other projects. Also two Governance staff with experience in Representation Reviews would be required to lead the project however their time is currently committed on other projects.
- 4.14. The timeframe would require the final Council endorsed proposal to be advertised by 8 September 2024 and the final notice in early December, if no appeals or objections were received. The LGC must make its final determination by 10 April 2025 to enable election processes to commence.
- 4.15. The Future for Local Government review and any other government reforms may have an impact on election considerations that could be better incorporated under a review ahead of the 2028 local body elections. Also under the Labour led-government there were indications that legislation would be enacted to enable 16 and 17 year old persons to be eligible to vote in the 2025 local body elections, however with the change to a National led government this legislation did not progress through parliament.

Implications for Community Wellbeing

There are implications on community wellbeing by the issues and options that are the subject matter of this report.

5. COMMUNITY VIEWS

5.1. Mana whenua

Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri hapū are not likely to be affected by, or have an interest in the subject matter of this report. However regular discussions have confirmed that they are satisfied with the current representation arrangements and there being no Māori ward.

5.2. Groups and Organisations

There are not groups and organisations likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

5.3. Wider Community

The wider community is not likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

6. OTHER IMPLICATIONS AND RISK MANAGEMENT

6.1. Financial Implications

There are financial implications of the decisions sought by this report.

There is no budget included in the 2023/24 Annual Plan to undertake such a review in 2024. A modest value budget provision is included in the 2026/27 year for a Review (\$100,000), which is required to be undertaken. However district circumstances with population growth and legislative reforms has changed the landscape and a comprehensive Representation Review will be required involving two phases of consultation, increased mapping and statistical work and increased fees with Statistics NZ. A potential for a consultant to be employed to peer review key strategic aspects of the review would also be required in 2026/27.

6.2. Sustainability and Climate Change Impacts

The recommendations in this report do not have sustainability and/or climate change impacts.

6.3 Risk Management

There are financial and resourcing risks arising from decisions differing from the recommendations in this report. It is not practical to undertake the work, using old data (2018 Census information) and significant consultation required within the timeframes to complete by end December 2024 ahead of consideration of the LGC. It is not the Council that determines the final outcome arrangements for the local body elections, but the role of the Local Government Commission (LGC). Both the Council and the Commission determination may also be subject to judicial review in relation to process followed. A Commission determination can be appealed to the High Court on a point of law.

6.3 Health and Safety

There are not health and safety risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report.

7. CONTEXT

7.1. Consistency with Policy

This matter is a matter of significance in terms of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

7.2. Authorising Legislation

Local Government Act 2022.

7.3. Consistency with Community Outcomes

The Council's community outcomes are relevant to the actions arising from recommendations in this report.

7.4. Authorising Delegations

Council has authority to undertake a Representation Review in the intervening three year period outside of the legislative six year time frame.




Representation Review Overview

Rep. Review Group

5 June 2024



Purpose of Discussion

- Provide an overview of what a Representation Review is and the key requirements
 - Background
 - Potential options
 - Consideration of report
 - Next Steps
- 
- A solid teal horizontal bar spanning the width of the slide, located at the bottom.

When do Representation Reviews occur

- In order to achieve fair and effective representation at triennial local body elections a Council is required, under the Local Electoral Act, to review the representation arrangements every six years.
- WDC undertook a Representation Review in 2020-21 ahead of the 2022 local body elections.
 - The outcomes of the Review are valid for two electoral cycles (being the 2022 and 2025 elections).
- **The next review must occur in 2026-27 ahead of the 2028 local body elections.**
- It is *optional* if a council undertakes a review between the six year cycle and has good reason. (eg realigns its Review cycle to coincide to use the most current Census data).

What is a Representation Review

- A Review addresses :
 - whether councillors should be elected by ward or 'at large' (district wide);
 - the total number of councillors;
 - what the boundaries (ward areas) are for councillors and the names of the wards
 - whether there should be community boards; how many;
 - where in the district,
 - the boundaries and/or subdivisions or constituencies
 - the number of members per board,
 - the names of the boards.

What is key

- Census data must be used for calculation of fair representation requirements (known as the +/- 10% rule) designed to achieve approximate equality of population representation by each member of a council or board.
- The **Local Government Commission** (LGC) reviews all methodology, minutes, consultation, submissions, council proposals etc ahead of making the final determination.

What is required

- Census data must be used for calculation of fair representation requirements (known as the +/- 10% rule) designed to achieve approximate equality of population representation by each member of a council or board.
- Community consultation must occur with one formal district wide Special Consultative Procedure on the Councils proposal, preceded by at least one preliminary (informal) community consultation with various options.
- Knowledgeable staff for statistical analysis, electoral aspects, data analysis, consultation, peer reviews, in conjunction with appropriate budget and time.
- Good record keeping as the LGC reviews all methodology, minutes, consultation, submissions, council proposals etc.
- The Surveyor-General, Government Statistician and Remuneration Authority are also kept informed of the process at key stages, including initial and final proposals.

What is involved conducting a Representation Review

Assess Census data against mesh blocks, natural boundaries (ie rivers/hills, key roads such as State Highways) and population balances against the +/- 10% rule

Formulate various options for boundaries and membership that is compliant with the +/- 10% population rule and consider community interests scenarios

Undertake informal consultation with community, seeking feedback on various options and scenarios

Assess community feedback, peer review data and formulate recommended options before proposing viable option(s) to the Council

The Council chooses one preferred option to formally consult and approves consultation documentation

Undertake formal Special Consultative Procedure (SCP) – minimum 4 weeks

Hearing and consideration of all submissions – full Council considers final proposal

Public notice and potential appeals (heard by LGC)


Send all documentation to LGC for assessment December prior to year of election

LGC hears any appeals, considers submitters and all documentation before making final Determination Feb/March in year of election.


Who decides the outcome

- **The Local Government Commission (LGC) determines the final outcome of representation arrangements.**
 - Following formal district wide consultation the Council makes a recommendation on the final proposal and advertises that proposal.
 - The public can object/appeal on the final proposal and that is heard by the LGC.
 - The LGC reviews all methodology, minutes, consultation, submissions, council proposals etc.
- *The LGC has previously overturned the Council recommendation of representation arrangements based on public appeals.*

Background to today

- The previous Council recommended that the 2022-25 Council *consider* a *potential* Representation Review ahead of the 2025 elections, based at the time, on knowledge a National Census was occurring in March 2023 which would capture increased district growth, particularly in the north/east.
 - May 2023 the Council created a Representation Review Working Party.
 - At the time of the working party establishment indications were from DIA/Statistics NZ that 2023 Census data would be available to use for any Representation Reviews ahead of the 2025 elections.
- 

Background to today

- Subsequently it has been confirmed by the LGC/DIA that the 2023 Census data is NOT available to be used for any Representation Review undertaken in 2024, ahead of the 2025 local body elections.
 - Therefore the Council must use the old data of Census 2018 again, which would result in the same outcomes of representation levels and boundaries.
 - You cannot undertake a partial review – all aspects must be assessed and consulted on district wide.
- 

Indicative Budget costs for 2024 Review

Consultation district wide	\$15,000 (informal 1st round)
	\$15,000+ (formal SCP round)
Consultant Resource / Peer Review	\$15,000+ various stages
Dept. Statistics	\$30,000+ certification of mapping
Staff	Operational budgets
Public Notifications	\$3,000

Options to recommend to the Council

A Dissolve the working group for the current term – recommended.

OR

B Undertake informal consultation, district wide before moving to the formal consultation phase.


OR

C Skip informal consultation and seek Council to go to formal consultation, based on current representation ratios

Option A - Do not proceed with Review

- **Not required by legislation to undertake Review in 2024**
- **Old 2018 Census data must be used**
- **There is no budget allocated in 2024/25 for a Representation Review**
- **Saves unallocated funds and rate impact**
- **Government reforms may impact on 2028 elections**
- **Same data base will result in same representation outcomes
ie number of elected members and boundaries remaining unchanged**


Option B – Commence the process

- **The Council make the decision to undertake a Review or not at July meeting**
 - **There is no budget allocation for the 2024/25 financial year – approx. cost \$78,000+**
 - **2018 Census data must be used – therefore same outcomes with current representation.**
 - **Changes the cycle of census data and when reviews are undertaken. ie the six year cycle begins anew with future reviews out of sync by 3 years for valid data going forward**
 - **Work would need to be complete by early December with various teams that link into the Review not having current capacity in their work programme and a consultant would be required for various stages.**
- 

Option C – Commence with no informal community consultation

- **Refer to Option B comments**
- **2018 Census data must be used – therefore same outcomes with current representation.**
- **There is no budget allocation for the 2024/25 financial year – approx. cost \$63,000+**

Next Steps

- **Today** - The Working Group make a recommendation to the Council regarding conducting a Representation Review in 2024 or dissolving the Working Group.
 - A report is submitted to 2 July Council meeting for consideration.
 - The Council determine the next steps.
- 

Other Info

- **The LTP Budgets have \$100,000 allocated for a Representation Review to occur in the 2026/27 financial year.**
- **The 2023 Census data will be available to use for the 2026/27 review.**
- When the 2023 Census data can be used indications are that the Review will result in major changes ultimately required involving:
 - ward boundary changes
 - fresh thinking on areas of communities of interest
 - potential representation (membership) change
 - various and multiple preliminary informal consultation, district wide to formulate potential options
 - proposals peer-reviewed by neutral consultant
- Staff have the Review in their 2026/27 work programme.
- LGC Website: Guidelines document: <https://www.lgc.govt.nz/assets/Resources-Representation-Review/Representation-Review-Guidelines-2023-v2.pdf>

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL**MINUTES OF THE MEETING OF THE REPRESENTATION REVIEW WORKING PARTY HELD IN THE RAKAHURI COMMITTEE ROOM, RANGORA SERVICE CENTRE, 215 HIGH STREET, RANGIORA ON TUESDAY, 5 JUNE 2024, COMMENCING AT 1.30PM.****Present:**

Mayor Gordon (Chair), Councillors: J Goldsworthy, N Mealings, P Redmond, Community Board Members: T Bartle, P Merrifield, S Powell and S Wilkinson.

Staff in attendance:

J Millward (Chief Executive), S Nichols (Governance Manager) and E Stubbs (Governance Support).

1. APOLOGIES

There were no apologies.

2. CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

There were no conflicts of interest reported.

3. TERMS OF REFERENCE

Purpose: Investigate the viability of undertaking a Review prior to the 2025 elections or wait to undertake a Review after the 2025 elections and report back to the Council.

4. DISCUSSION**4.1 Overview**

S Nichols spoke to a PowerPoint referencing background and potential options available to the Working Party (Trim 240526084565).

There was a discussion on the availability of Census data and what information was available to be used. Recent StatsNZ estimates were able to be used however these estimates were still based on projections from 2018 Census data.

It was noted that appeals on a Representation Review were heard by the Local Government Commission (LGC). In the past the Commission had overturned aspects of a Review by the Waimakariri District Council (resulting in the formation of the Woodend-Sefton Community Board). All Reviews went to the LGC for final confirmation, and it was necessary to provide detailed and accurate documentation of the process to accompany the final decision to the LGC.

S Nichols provided an update on the approach of other Local Authorities and noted that there were only 14 Councils undertaking a Representation Review this cycle. These were Councils that were legally required to undertake their Reviews this year. Several Councils had decided against a Review, following confirmation that 2023 Census was not available. S Nichols noted that at the time this Council had appointed the Working Party it had been with the understanding that 2023 Census data would be available. Had the 2023 Census data been available on the original timeframe, then the Council would have commenced a Review.

In terms of budget consideration, there was no budget included for 2023/24 for a Review. Budget sat in the Long-Term Plan in the 2026/27 years.

4.2 Discussion of Options

S Nichols advised that the potential options to consider were whether the Council should conduct a Review, and how to carry out a Review if that was the preferred option. A recommendation would then go to the Council in July for consideration and approval.

Mayor Gordon asked if progressive funding could be considered for the Review for 2026/27. It was reiterated that funding was already approved in the Long Term Plan budgets for 2021/22.

S Wilkinson asked for further clarification on funding requirements. S Nichols advised that the first part of the process would mainly be carried out in-house in conjunction with the Working Party. Work in the first phase would normally include two rounds of consultation and population data analysis. Greater expenditure was required later in the process with a peer Review and StatsNZ expenses.

T Bartle asked if the Working Party wished to go ahead with the Review this cycle without having budget allocation, how would that be able to proceed. J Millward advised that if the Working Party had a compelling reason, then budget could be brought forward to complete the Review, noting it was still a decision of the Council.

T Bartle asked the reasoning behind bringing the Review forward initially. Councillor Mealings explained that the previous Review had recognised the growth in North Woodend but had not been able to reflect that in representation arrangements as it was based on 2018 Census data. At that time, it had been expected that the 2023 Census data would be available for this cycle and so changes could be made to better incorporate the growth of North Woodend and the eastern part of Rangiora, along with other areas of key growth.

S Powell commented on the frustration of the lack of up-to-date data. She noted that Sefton and Ashley were covered by one meshblock, and asked if staff could investigate with StatsNZ whether this meshblock could be split so that Sefton and Ashley villages could be considered as separate localities in the next Review. S Nichols advised that splitting mesh blocks added cost over and above the normal fee, however it was worth noting to investigate during the Review as the two areas could be considered different communities of interest.

4.3 Consideration of Report

S Nichols noted the report and advised she would take it as read.

Councillor Redmond referred to the reasoning behind holding an early Review and commented that if the information around availability of statistical data was correct, then it was an easy decision to defer the Review.

The timing of availability of data was referred to and was asked if Census data and Representation Review would ever align. S Nichols noted that the Council legally was required to complete a Review in 2026/27. The Census information would still be out of date but would be better than if the Review was carried out this cycle.

Mayor Gordon asked what action Selwyn District Council was undertaking and S Nichols advised that they were carrying out their Review this cycle. Selwyn were about to go to the community with their final proposal which was a reduction to eight Councillors and no Community Boards (noting that Selwyn currently has one community board and 10 councillors).

P Merrifield asked why 2023 Census data could not be used. S Nichols commented that not all the Census data had been released, and more information would be released over the next few months. LGC and StatsNZ were the two organisations who had final control over local authority representation arrangements, and they had both provided explicit advice that 2023 Census results would not be available in time for this Representation Review cycle.

Moved: S Wilkinson

Seconded: T Bartle

THAT the Working Party

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240508073206.
- (b) **Note** a Representation Review is not legislatively required to occur until 2026/27 ahead of the 2028 local body elections.
- (c) **Note** budget and resource for 2026 and 2027 to enable a comprehensive Representation Review to be undertaken ahead of the 2028 local body elections, has been included in the Long Term Plan for the 2026/27 financial year.

Recommend to the Council:

- (d) **Approve** that the Representation Review Working Party be disbanded and a Representation Review does not occur during 2024, ahead of the 2025 Local Body Elections.
- (e) **Approve** a Representation Review be undertaken during 2026/27.
- (f) **Note** the new Council will appoint a Representation Review Working Party in early 2026.
- (g) **Note** a copy of the Council report to be circulated to all Community Boards for information.

CARRIED
(Unanimous)

S Wilkinson believed it was a logical motion and noted it may be a different environment in 12 months' time.

T Bartle believed that without the necessary data it was a pointless exercise.

Mayor Gordon commented on the frustration of not having the 2023 Census data available and believed the motion was logical.

Councillor Redmond agreed with the motion, in the absence of data there was no option. He suggested that the issue needed to be raised with LGNZ as in high growth areas such as Waimakariri, information that was seven years out of date was not sufficient.

Councillor Mealings believed that it was the logical conclusion. If the growth of North Woodend could not be captured in the data, then it would be the same Review as previously carried out. She noted the importance of the changeable landscape the Council was currently operating in.

4.4 Next Steps – Recommendation to the Council

D Gordon confirmed the next step would be a report to Council in July. This report would also be circulated to the Community Boards for their information.

There being no further business the meeting concluded at 2.10pm.

Reading Material Supplied

- PowerPoint introducing the matters to consider (240526084565)
- Report to Working Party to recommend to Council (240508073206)
- Terms of Reference (230421056350)
- Extract from Council Minutes and workshop notes 2 May 2023
- Council report 5 December 2023 (231122188011)

CONFIRMED

Signed

Mayor Dan Gordon

10 June 2024

Date

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL

REPORT FOR INFORMATION

FILE NO and TRIM NO: EXC-57 / 240618099222

REPORT TO: COUNCIL

DATE OF MEETING: 2 July 2024

AUTHOR(S): Jeff Millward – Chief Executive

SUBJECT: Health, Safety and Wellbeing Report – June 2024

ENDORSED BY:

(for Reports to Council,
Committees or Boards)

Department Manager

Chief Executive

1. SUMMARY

- 1.1. This report provides an update to the Council on Health, Safety and Wellbeing (HS&W) matters between May 2024 and June 2024. The dashboard reporting in the appendices cover trends between June 2023 and June 2024.
- 1.2. There were 7 incidents which occurred from mid-May 2024 and mid-June 2024 which resulted in no lost time to the organisation. Ongoing lost time from historic incidents is reported in Appendix A. Flamingo Scooter and Rangiora Airfield incidents are included within this report.
- 1.3. Section 4 of the report provides details on the following areas:
 - 4.1 Incidents, Accidents & Hazards
 - 4.2 Site Security Review progress and drills
 - 4.3 HSR Elections
 - 4.4 Rangiora Airfield Update

Attachments:

- i. Appendix A: Incidents, Accidents, Near-misses, Hazard reporting
- ii. Appendix B: Contractor Health and Safety Capability Pre-qualification Assessment (drawn from the Site Wise database)
- iii. Appendix C: Health, Safety and Wellbeing Dashboard Reports.

2. RECOMMENDATION

THAT the Council:

- (a) **Receives** Report No 240618099222
- (b) **Notes** that there were no notifiable incidents this month. The organisation is, so far as is reasonably practicable, compliant with the duties of a person conducting a business or undertaking (PCBU) as required by the Health and Safety at work Act 2015.
- (c) **Circulates** this report to the Community Boards for their information.

3. **BACKGROUND**

- 3.1. The Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 requires that Officers must exercise due diligence to make sure that the organisation complies with its health and safety duties.
- 3.2. An officer under the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 is a person who occupies a specified position or who occupies a position that allows them to exercise a significant influence over the management of the business or undertaking. Councillors and the Chief Executive are considered to be the Officers of the Waimakariri District Council.

4. **ISSUES AND OPTIONS**

4.1. Incidents, accidents & Hazards

- 4.1.1. Mid-April 2024 to mid-May 2024 common theme is continued from previous months - Adverse Interactions. The recent Adverse Interactions were commonly displayed in our Libraries and Aquatic Facilities. The interactions are continued abusive behavior and misuse of our facilities. The interactions include customers at facilities, youth and presence of a known homeless individual. Police are aware of all interactions and we continue to manage all situations timely.
- 4.1.2. All involved staff are continuing to utilise key learnings from Situational Safety Training and previous encounters. Support to staff from a wellbeing perspective is continuing and feedback from investigations is being shared promptly.
- 4.1.3. All incidents are either closed with mitigations or currently under investigation. Key learnings have been shared with teams. Reporting of all incident occurrences has been consistent with staff and incident information has been thorough.
- 4.1.4. The HS&W team have been working with Aquatics and Libraries on clear signage around the behavioral expectations of customers.

4.2. Site Security Review progress and drills

- 4.2.1. In September 2021 OPSEC Solutions Ltd were engaged to review and make recommendations on the Councils physical security. (various buildings) The report addressed the critical need for safeguarding staff members from aggressive behavior.
- 4.2.2. The report highlighted that there are opportunities to improve the risk and security awareness and readiness. This includes introducing an alerting system that notifies everyone of a crisis or critical event, maximising CCTV systems as well as developing and practically implementing a sequence of clear lockdown drills to be frequently practiced, to manage and mitigate various crisis situations.
- 4.2.3. While many staff are well trained in Situational Safety Training for adverse interactions, there is more to be addressed regarding a potential high-risk interaction.
- 4.2.4. The scope of this project was extended to review CCTV at Council as a whole. With the changing scope, this project has been prioritized accordingly with involved departments and has been delayed. The HS&W Team have recently started to review the recommended action plan and security reports again to

ensure progress continues given the number of adverse interactions our facilities are facing. OPSEC have agreed to provide a quote for drill implementation and training.

- 4.2.5. Further requests for information regarding training for a violent aggressor/active shooter has been sent to the Senior Prevention Advisor Crowded Places - Police National Headquarters.

4.3. HSR two yearly Elections Underway

- 4.3.1. Emails have been distributed to all Level two and three Managers to commence elections. Health and Safety Representatives have a key role to play in workplace health and safety. Representatives are responsible for their unit and will raise health and safety issues that relate to their work, supported by the HS&W Team.
- 4.3.2. Units/teams are responsible for electing their own representatives. Nominations for a representative will be called for by the Health and Safety team. Voting will take place by email. The Health, Safety and Wellbeing Team will conduct the voting and confirm the newly elected representative to staff.
- 4.3.3. Health and Safety Representatives serve a two-year term unless they agree to resign from their role and for their position to be re-elected. If no-one nominates themselves/others in a particular team, the HSR position for each workgroup will remain open until such time as a nomination is received. If no-one is nominated, then the position will remain unfilled.
- 4.3.4. The Health and Safety Team may approach people in the team to consider the role if no one is nominated.

4.4. Rangiora Airfield Update

- 4.4.1. Aeronautical Study – Council has yet to be advised by the Director of Civil Aviation regarding his determination relating to the outcome and recommendations of the Study. While waiting for the Directors response, work is being progressed with regard to some of the items raised in the report, such as, condition of some of the fences (quotes received for fence replacement east of the airfield main gate).
- 4.4.2. Taxiway remediation – as the airfield is classified as a contaminated site under the Listed Land Use Register, the taxiway remediation requires a Resource Consent and any works must satisfy the requirements of the National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health (NES-CS). Council Planning and ECan require a report by an accredited environmental organisation to support the Outline Plan Application already submitted by the Airfield Manager, which is to detail the actions and controls that are to be put in place to manage the taxiway excavation and any other activities that may be undertaken in the longer term at the airfield. A contractor has been engaged to provide such a plan with the goal of having a Method of Work Plan and Consent in place to allow the taxiway remediation to take place in late Autumn/early Spring.
- 4.4.3. Airfield Landing Charges – Currently working with the RAAG to develop recommendation to Council regarding the efficacy of the current charging system and proposal to increase revenue from this aspect of user pays.
- 4.4.4. Runway Inspection – completed three times per week by vehicle and on foot as required. A number of foreign objects from aircraft (fuel caps, fuel dipsticks, parts and other debris have been found and removed from the surface. Photo's showing

the debris and discussion around pilot preflight inspection have been put into the Airfield Newsletter, which were well received by airfield users (emailed comments received).

- 4.4.5. Rabbit and hare control - has been undertaken on three occasions over the last five months, with nearly 140 animals removed (steadily reducing numbers across each shoot). Airfield users and immediate neighbours were/are advised at least one week in advance. Airfield users are asked to vacate by a specific time (determined by sunset time) and a safety check is completed to confirm this prior to any shooting activity. The activity is registered with NZ police and undertaken by very experienced and qualified practitioners using comprehensive risk management and controls and the use of night vision equipment. One shooter and one spotter utilise the sighted and target confirmed as target species, prior to any shots taken. Airfield neighbours have appreciated the communications and are supportive of the activities undertaken.
- 4.4.6. Conditions of Use document – has been drafted, which includes elements such as: Aim of the document, Code of Conduct, flying neighbourly, some of the important aircraft operating rules to remind pilots of their obligations, reminder regarding the requirements of making radio calls in the Mandatory Broadcast Zone (MBZ) around the airfield, noise abatement when taking off from the airfield and reminders about aircraft circuit requirements when taking off. The document has been sent to the Chair of the RAAG and a commercial helicopter operator for initial comment, then to the wider RAAG members.
- 4.4.7. Fuel tanks, fuel tanker trailers and fuel storage – a Tanker Trailer Specialist has visited the airfield to provide guidance to Council and the Canterbury Recreational Aircraft Club regarding their existing tanker trailer. This guidance includes tanker trailer design, modifications, location, bunding and safety/security requirements. The information is required to inform Council of its obligations as a PCBU and to determine what actions, if any, are required to ensure that Council is discharging its duty of care under the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015. A report is expected by 20th July, at which time, Council will be able to develop and action plan for the location and use of tanker trailers on the airfield.
- 4.4.8. ATC building liaison – one of the two temporary ATC buildings has been sold and has been taken off-site. The other has been moved to its final (but temporary) location adjacent to the current suite of ATC buildings at the airfield. This has been achieved through constructive dialogue with the ATC representative and the relationship continues to be effective and respectful.
- 4.4.9. RAAG Structure Review – a review has been completed, in conjunction with the current RAAG panel and a recommendation will be provided to Council Management in the coming weeks.

5. Implications for Community Wellbeing

There are implications for community wellbeing by the issues and options that are the subject matter of this report.

- 5.1. The Management Team has reviewed this report and support the recommendations.

6. **COMMUNITY VIEWS**

6.1. **Mana whenua**

Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri hapū are not likely to be affected by or have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

6.2. **Groups and Organisations**

There are no external groups and organisations likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

6.3. **Wider Community**

The wider community is likely to be affected by, or to have an interest in the subject matter of this report.

7. **OTHER IMPLICATIONS AND RISK MANAGEMENT**

7.1. **Financial Implications**

There are no financial implications of the decisions sought by this report.

7.2. **Sustainability and Climate Change Impacts**

The recommendations in this report do not have sustainability and/or climate change impacts.

6.3 **Risk Management**

The organisation has reviewed its health and safety risk and developed an action plan. Failure to address these risks could result in incidents, accidents or other physical or psychological harm to staff or the public.

The regular review of risks is an essential part of good safety leadership.

6.4 **Health and Safety**

There are health and safety risks arising from the adoption/implementation of the recommendations in this report. Continuous improvement, monitoring, and reporting of Health and Safety activities are a key focus of the health and safety management system.

8. **CONTEXT**

8.1. **Consistency with Policy**

This matter is not a matter of significance in terms of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

8.2. **Authorising Legislation**

The key legislation is the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015.

The Council has a number of Human Resources policies, including those related to Health and Safety at Work.

The Council has an obligation under the Local Government Act to be a good employer.

8.3. **Consistency with Community Outcomes**

The Council's community outcomes are relevant to the actions arising from

recommendations in this report.

- There is a safe environment for all.
- Harm to people from natural and man-made hazards is minimised.
- Our District has the capacity and resilience to quickly recover from natural disasters and adapt to the effects of climate change.

The Health, Safety and Wellbeing of the organisation, its employees and volunteers ensures that Community Outcomes are delivered in a manner which is legislatively compliant and culturally aligned to our organisational principles.

8.4. **Authorising Delegations**

An officer under the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 is a person who occupies a specified position or who occupies a position that allows them to exercise a significant influence over the management of the business or undertaking. Councillors and Chief Executive are considered to be the Officers of WDC.

Appendix A

WDC Incident Reports

Date	Person type	Occurrence	Event description	Response
02/05/2024	Employee/Volunteer	Property/Vehicle Damage	While doing a 4x4 course the vehicle that a staff member was driving became stuck intentionally - as part of the course. On recovery it was discovered that there was damage to both a diff and the axle.	Currently under investigation. The insurance has been notified. Staff and trainers involved have issued statements and training scopes. All 4x4 training has been suspended until the investigation is completed.
28/05/2024	Employee/Volunteer	Injury	A staff member was traveling under branches in the excavator, when a large branch flicked back into their face causing temporary discomfort.	No first aid required. Spotter to be present and a visual inspection operating machinery under and around trees.
31/05/2024	Employee/Volunteer	Adverse Interaction	Adverse interaction with youths at the Oxford Library when they became verbally abusive to staff and spitting on the floor.	Currently under investigation. Staff have been offered support.
04/06/2024	Employee/Volunteer	Near miss	Fire evacuation at Dudley pool during Learn to Swim lessons. The incident was a fire evacuation which was completed in record time without further incident due to what is believed to be a faulty sensor in the upstairs plant room.	A full evacuation was carried out and managed immediately by aquatics team. As there was LTS lessons being carried out at the time, young children were provided with foil blankets for the duration whilst waiting outside the facility. The sensor was replaced on Friday last week and the system has been fully reinstated.
05/06/2024	Employee/Volunteer	Adverse Interaction	Adverse interaction involving youths at Oxford Library (reoccurrence) where three youths were verbally abusive to staff.	Library Manager has contacted the school and discussed the incident with the students. They have been warned of a trespass if future

				incidents occur. We have recommended previously that the Library staff contact the school immediately to help with identification of students.
07/06/2024	Non-Employee	Near Miss	Green Space was notified that a member of the public strung a power cord across the Kaiapoi River from a privately moored boat in the middle of the Kaiapoi River, to the power pillar on the pontoon causing power to failure to the entire pontoon.	Currently under investigation. Communications with the Harbor Master are in progress. This was work being carried out by an electrical contractor on behalf of a private boat owner.
12/06/2024	Employee/Volunteer	Adverse Interaction	Following previous visits, a member of the public (known to be homeless) was involved in a lengthy conversation with two WDC staff members. The member of public returned later that day, knocking on the WDC building windows. This person was then involved in further adverse interactions outside before the Police were called and they were arrested. They returned to sit outside the Public Library the next day.	We have been in contact with staff involved to offer support and gather statements. The Police have been notified of the statements as this investigation is ongoing. We have asked for safe guidance from the Police. OPSEC Solutions have been notified for further support.

Airfield Incident Reports - Nil reported this month

Aqualand Incident Reports - Nil reported this month

Flamingo Scooter Incident Reports -

Date	Monday 13 th May
Severity	Minor
Details	A Council staff member witnessed an accident between a Flamingo rider and a vehicle. The WDC staff member noted that the rider was likely to be underage.
Root Cause	Rider error
Corrective Actions	Flamingo successfully located and contacted the rider involved. In our phone conversation, the rider recounted the events leading up to the incident. It appears that while attempting to cross the road, a sudden arrival of a car caught them off guard, leaving them unable to stop in time. Consequently, the handlebar of the scooter contacted the car, causing the scooter to fall slightly underneath the car. The rider was uninjured, they managed to dismount the scooter

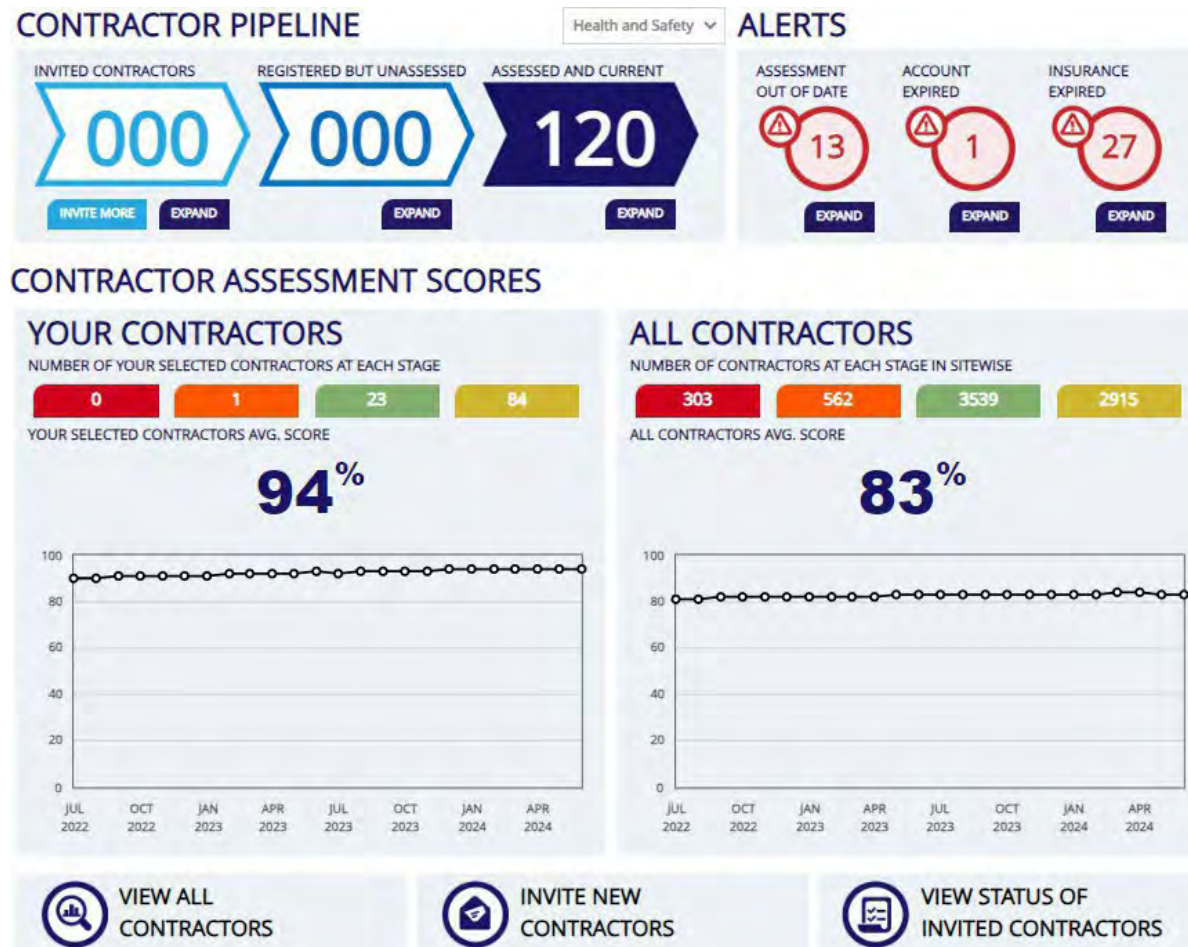
	safely before it contacted the car. The rider was 16 years old and confirmed that they were operating the scooter with parental consent, primarily for commuting to school. Their account was in very good order with no reported past issues, and good parking observed. No instances of bad riding behaviour have ever been detected during their rides. However, the account was under their own name and as per our agreement with Waimakariri District Council, the minimum riding age is set at 18. Consequently, we have taken the necessary step of deactivating their Flamingo account and advised them to contact us again after their 18 th birthday.
--	---

Lost Time Injuries - Aquatics:	Injury One Currently working a RTW plan of 3hrs x 3 days + 5hrs x 1 day (14) Date of injury 30 July 2017 Weekly contracted hours = 30 6,430 hrs lost to date
Water Unit	Injury One: Returned to work Date of injury: 28 April 2023 Weekly contracted hours = 40 811 hrs lost to date

Lead Indicators

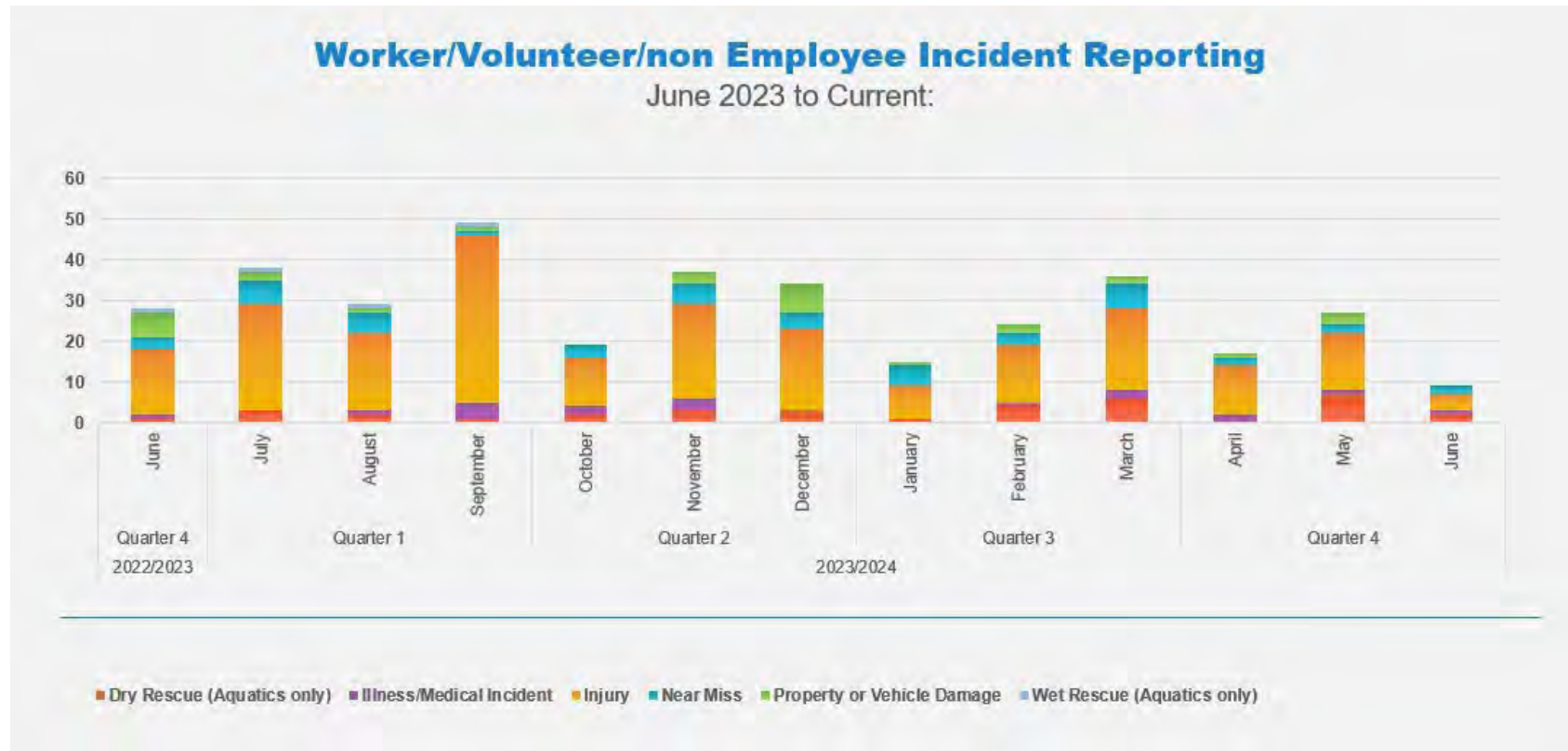
Safety Inspections Completed (Workplace Walkarounds)	Workplace Walkarounds: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Distribution occurred this month.
Training Delivered	People Trained: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4WD Training - 12 trained • Health and Safety Representative Training – 2 trained.

Appendix B



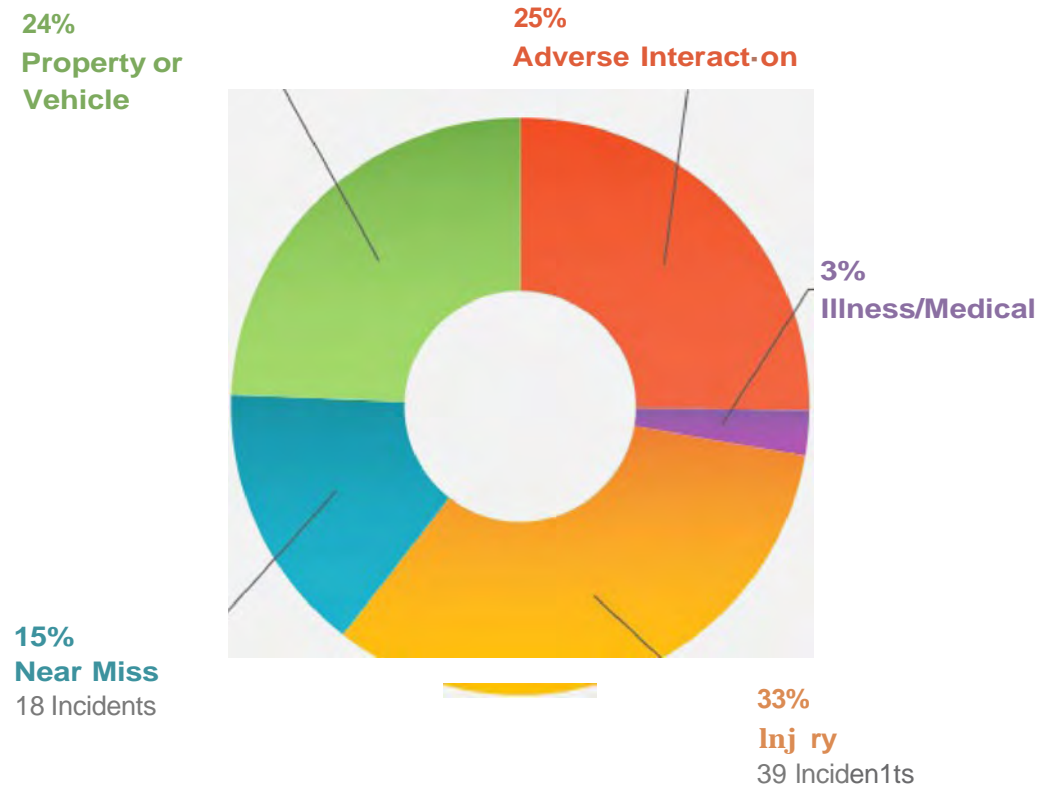
Above is the current status of our preferred contractor data base held within SiteWise.
 Alerts are the contractors currently out of assessment date, expired and their insurance has expired. We do not engage these contractors until they are reassessed by SiteWise.
 SiteWise issue reminders as well as the HS&W team once a month until they have updated them.
 "YOUR CONTRACTORS" is referring to our preferred contractor list. "ALL CONTRACTORS" is referring to the full contractor list.

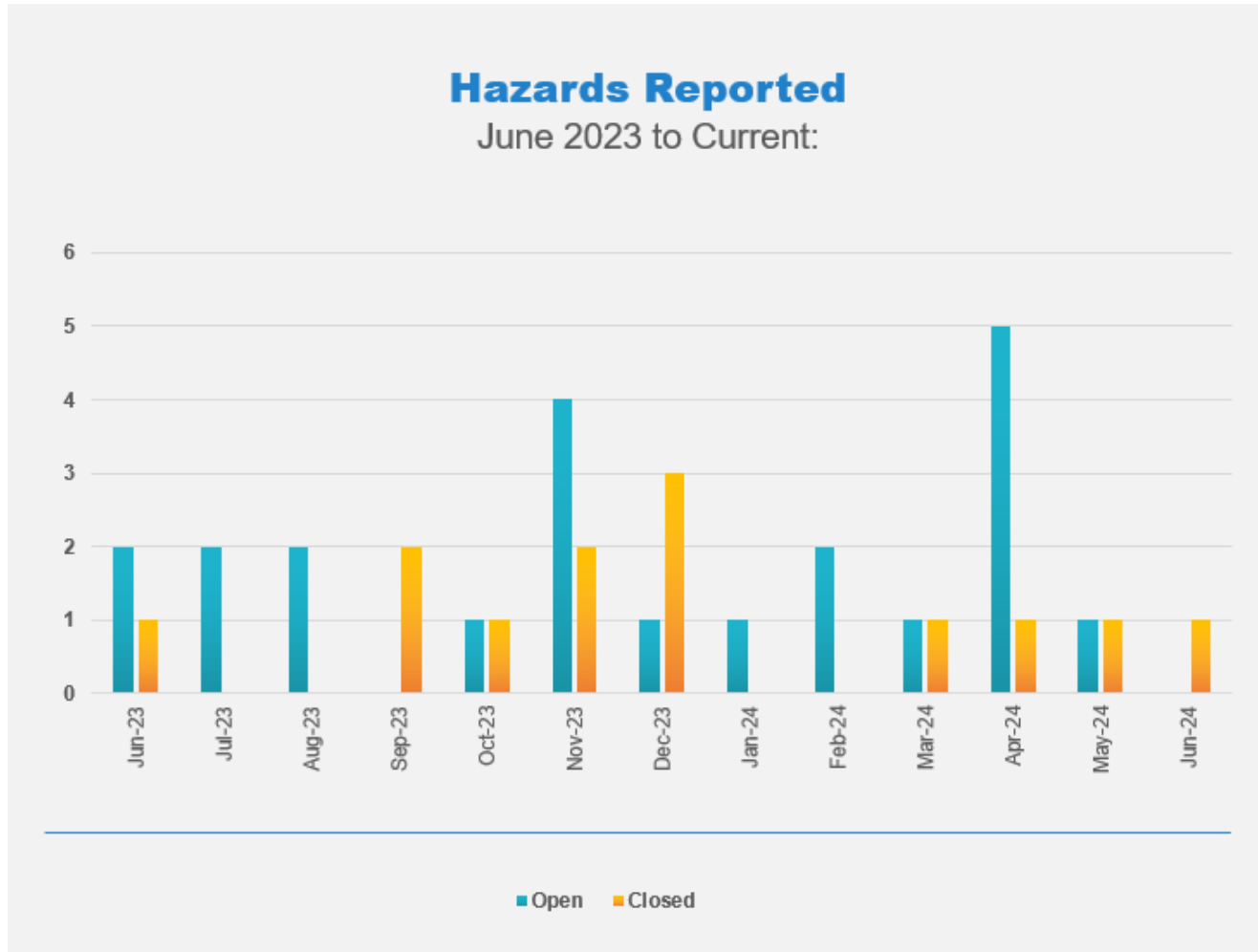
Appendix C



Worker/Volunteer Incident Reporting

June 2023, to Current:





WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL

MINUTES OF A MEETING OF THE UTILITIES AND ROADING COMMITTEE HELD IN THE COUNCIL CHAMBER, RANGIORA SERVICE CENTRE, 215 HIGH STREET, RANGIORA ON TUESDAY, 28 MAY, AT 9AM.

PRESENT

Councillors P Williams (Chairperson), R Brine, P Redmond, J Ward, and Mayor D Gordon

IN ATTENDANCE

Councillors: T Fulton and B Cairns

J Millward (Chief Executive), G Cleary (Utilities and Roading Manager), K Simpson (3 Waters Manager), J McBride (Roading and Transportation Manager), J Recker (Stormwater and Waterways Manager), C Fahey (Water and Wastewater Asset Manager), H Proffit (Water Safety and Compliance Specialist), S Allen (Water Environment Advisor), L Cardenas-Corrales (3 Waters Compliance Officer) and E Stubbs (Governance Support Officer).

There was one Community Board member present.

1 APOLOGIES

Moved: Councillor Williams

Seconded: Councillor Brine

An apology was received and sustained from Councillor Mealings for absence.

CARRIED

2 CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

There were no conflicts of interest declared.

3 CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES

3.1 Minutes of the meeting of the Utilities and Roading Committee held on Tuesday 16 April 2024.

Moved: Councillor Redmond

Seconded: Councillor Ward

THAT the Utilities and Roading Committee:

- (a) **Confirms** the circulated Minutes of the meeting of the Utilities and Roading Committee held on 16 April 2024 as a true and accurate record.

CARRIED

3.2 Matters Arising (From Minutes)

There were no matters arising from the minutes.

4 DEPUTATION/PRESENTATIONS

Nil.

5 **REPORTS**

5.1 **Zone Implementation Programme Addendum (ZIPA) Capital Works Programme - 2024/25 - S Allen (Water Environment Advisor)**

A workshop was held from 9.02am to 9.09am to discuss Council plantings.

S Allen introduced the report, which sought approval for the Capital Works Programme as developed from the Zone Implementation Programme Addendum (ZIPA). The report also provided an update on projects such as the South Brook Townsend Fields, the terrestrial riparian plantings along the Kaiapoi River and new projects such as the Waikuku Beach pond planting and signage. In addition, the report requested a top-up for the Waimakariri Water Zone Committee (WWZC) Action Fund projects.

Councillor Williams referred to a submission to the draft Long Term Plan (LTP) that raised concerns regarding existing planting projects dying due to a lack of maintenance and weeding. He asked if there should be a report to the Committee on existing maintenance before more planting was approved. S Allen explained that many of the existing plantings now had oversight and maintenance by Greenspace rangers, areas under contractors needed to have maintenance built into the contract. There were sites such as experimental Kanuka planting trials and around the Woodend Waste Water Treatment Plant that had a lower survival rate.

Responding to a question from Councillor Fulton, S Allen advised that some WWZC projects, such as willow and gorse control, had not been fully funded. The additional funding would allow the projects to be completed as scoped.

Councillor Fulton questioned the success of the Hunter Stream restoration and native planting. S Allen noted that she had sought reassurance about the continued maintenance, and there was a well-connected community of support, including the local school and Waimakariri Biodiversity Trust.

Councillor Redmond asked if the report sought confirmation of the adopted ZIPA recommendations, and S Allen confirmed that was correct. Staff would monitor progress and keep the community informed.

Councillor Redmond further inquired if the additional funding would impact the Council's draft 2024-34 LTP. S Allen noted that the budget had already been allocated for the specific projects in LTP.

Councillor Brine questioned if staff saw any value in the Council delaying more native planting while staff investigated the die-off of current native planting. S Allen explained that whenever experimental planting occurs, such as at the Kanuka trial, some losses were expected. If staff suspected a risk to planting, such as the dry conditions of the Woodend Wastewater Treatment Plant, they would convey this information to the Utilities and Roading Committee when requesting funding. G Cleary believed it would be counterproductive to halt native planting, as any delay while engaging expert planting contractors would shorten the planting window. Staff had a good understanding of what planting would be successful.

Councillor Williams enquired about funding for the plantings' maintenance. S Allen advised that while it was not detailed in the report, the Operating Budget for maintenance had been confirmed. There would be a longer follow-up than the proposed two-year period, and the service of the Greenspace Team and Rangers provided increase the oversight.

Councillor Redmond asked if the plantings at Pohio Wetland would be affected by the proposed Woodend Bypass. S Allen reported that the landowner was aware of the bypass location, and the plantings were to the east of that area.

Moved: Councillor Brine

Seconded: Councillor Ward

THAT the Utilities and Roading Committee:

- (a) **Receives** report No. 240508073256.
- (b) **Approves** the proposed 2024-25 Waimakariri District Council capital expenditure work programme, based on the Zone Implementation Programme Addendum (ZIPA) recommendations:
 - i. Biodiversity and amenity improvements in Waimakariri River tributaries – South Brook Townsend Fields project (\$10,000)
 - ii. Biodiversity and amenity improvements in Waimakariri River tributaries – South Brook Townsend Fields project (\$10,000)
 - iii. Terrestrial riparian plantings along the Kaiapoi River (\$10,000)
 - iv. Inanga (whitebait) spawning habitat improvements – willow and gorse control (\$15,000)
 - v. Northbrook Trail - installation of three culverts (\$30,000)
 - vi. Waikuku Beach pond – native planting and interpretation signage (\$5,000)
 - vii. Waimakariri Water Zone Committee Action Fund top-up -Bittern Inanga Rushland, O’Kairs Lagoon, Pohio Wetland and Hunters Stream projects (\$30,000)
- (c) **Notes** the works carried out in 2023-24 under the ZIPA capital expenditure programme.
 - i. Fish passage improvements on the North Brook tributary at Cotter Lane in Rangiora.
 - ii. Biodiversity improvements for the South Brook at Townsend Fields, Rangiora.
 - iii. Terrestrial planting along the Kaiapoi River.
 - iv. Improvements to inanga (whitebait) spawning areas located on land owned by New Zealand Transport Authority Waka Kōtahi along the Benzie’s Creek (a tributary of Saltwater Creek) with willow and blackberry removal, McIntosh Drain (WDC land) with native spawning plants planted, and Courtenay Stream true right bank (private landowner) with willow removal.
- (d) **Circulates** this report to the Council, Community Boards, WDC-Rūnanga liaison meeting and the Waimakariri Water Zone Committee for their information.

CARRIED

Councillor Brine supported the motion and commended staff for the informative report and the commentary during the questions. He noted that the consequences of delaying plantings were clear.

Councillor Ward concurred with her Councillor Brine, noting that work needed to be completed in a timely manner.

Mayor Gordon supported the work and was committed to the ZIPA. He commented that in the current economic climate, it was appropriate to reevaluate expenses. However, these commitments had been made and work needed to continue. He had spoken to the residents, who had raised concerns regarding maintenance for Council plantings during the LTP process, and suggested staff reach out to them to reassure them that the Council’s plan included adequate maintenance. He was satisfied that the Council had appropriate expertise in this space.

Councillor Redmond supported the recommendation noting that the funding would have no impact on the Council’s LTP. He was reassured that the Woodend Bypass would not impact on the Pohio Wetland plantings.

Councillor Williams supported the recommendation and noted that he had been concerned about the submissions to the Draft LTP, which raised worries about the maintenance of Council's current plantings. However, he had been reassured by staff that the Council would undertake a maintenance program to ensure plant survival.

5.2 **Decision for Unused Water Take Consents – K Simpson (3 Waters Manager), C Fahey (Water and Waste Water Asset Manager) and H Proffit (Water Safety and Compliance Specialist)**

C Fahey explained that approval was being sought to surrender four existing unused water take resource consents held by the Council. Two of the water takes consents were associated with drinking water supply, and the other two were associated with irrigation and construction/irrigation activities. These consents were considered redundant and had no planned use for the foreseeable future. The Council may wish to consider three options: to do nothing, which would place the Council at risk of compliance and enforcement attention from Environment Canterbury (ECan); to retain the consents, which would require metering and monitoring equipment to be installed at the water takes; or to surrender, which would forfeit the ability to utilise these consents in the future.

Councillor Redmond asked if, once consent had been surrendered, what was the likelihood of being granted a new consent. C Fahey replied that it depended on the groundwater allocation available; however, priority was given to community water supply.

Councillor Fulton sought confirmation that the Summerhill Water Supply's current allocation allowed for population growth, and C Fahey confirmed it did.

Councillor Fulton further enquired about contingency in private water supplies. K Simpson noted several challenges, as even if there was a supply available in the area, it was difficult to transfer rights. If the Council was not actively using a consent, it was in a position to surrender that consent.

Moved: Councillor Redmond

Seconded: Councillor Williams

THAT the Utilities and Roading Committee:

- (a) **Receives** report No. 221118201029.
- (b) **Approves** the recommendation of this report to surrender four existing unused water take consents currently held by Council, being CRC971820 (drinking water take at 93 Champions Road, Summerhill), CRC990931.1 (drinking water take at Coopers Creek, Oxford), CRC990502.1 (irrigation take at Number 7 Drain, Flaxton Road) and CRC167359 (construction and irrigation take at 120 Te Kohanga Drive, Pegasus).
- (c) **Notes** that two of the water takes consents are associated with drinking water supply and the other two are associated with irrigation and construction/irrigation activities. These consents are considered redundant and have no planned use for the foreseeable future.
- (d) **Notes** that due to a change in the Resource Management (Measuring and Reporting of Water Takes) Amendment Regulations 2020 (Regulations), these consents are considered non-compliant with the Regulations as they are unmetered even though Environment Canterbury has in the past accepted Council not metering unused water takes.
- (e) **Notes** that a decision is required as to whether to retain or surrender these unused water takes to avoid putting Council at risk of compliance and enforcement attention from Environment Canterbury.
- (f) **Notes** that the recommendation to surrender is based on consideration of the substantial cost involved with metering and the challenging process to successfully transfer an existing consent allocation to a new consent application in the unlikely scenario this would be required in the future. Power supplies that are connected to the sites will be decommissioned once the consents have been surrendered.

(g) **Notes** that staff do not believe there is any intention to remove or alter existing rules that control water take transfers as part of the Canterbury Land and Water Regional Plan change that has been signalled for 2027.

(h) **Circulates** this report to the Community Boards for information.

CARRIED

Councillor Williams supported the motion, and he commented it was a good self-explanatory report.

Councillor Redmond noted that he was unwilling to relinquish consents that may be needed in the future. However, it was clear that the Council was not using the consents, which would be costly to maintain and very expensive to transfer. He was reassured by a comment that priority was given to community water supply if a consent was needed in the future. For that reason, he did not believe there was a risk of surrendering the resource consents, and he would support the motion.

5.3 **July 2023 Flood Recovery Progress Update – K Simpson (3 Waters Manager), J McBride (Roading and Transport Manager) and P Towse (Flood Team Lead)**

K Simpson provided an update on the July 2023 Flood Recovery Work Programme, including investigations and maintenance actions. He reported that the maintenance work on the Cam River was taking longer than expected and was likely to be completed by mid-June 2024, as more vegetation had to be removed than initially anticipated. The Tuahiwi Stream project would commence next week at the Greens Road diversion drain and was expected to be completed by the end of July 2024.

K Simpson noted that approximately \$2.5 million had been spent to date, which was 60% of the forecast expenditure; the work was, however, continuing. He advised that the Flood Team was in the process of being wrapped up, and the new Infrastructure Resilience Team would assist with progressing the remaining improvement works and implementing proposed future works.

Responding to a question from Councillor Fulton, K Simpson advised that six individuals with varying hours had been on the Flood Team. Based on that, there had been justification for the establishment of the Infrastructure Resilience Team, which was two full-time in-house employees.

Councillor Fulton asked if the new Infrastructure Resilience Team would be cost-neutral, and K Simpson replied that the cost would likely be less than what had been spent on consultants for the last year.

Councillor Redmond referred to the Cones Road/ Fawcetts Road work as 100% complete and enquired if that included redirecting the primary flow to the Ashley River. K Simpson explained that 100% referred to the investigation, which resulted in the Recovery Work Programme for the 2023/24 financial year, and those works were currently underway.

Councillor Williams questioned whether the recovery work was likely to be completed within budget. K Simpson confirmed that the final forecast expenditure remained at \$4.055 million, so they were still on track to complete all work within the overall budget.

Councillor Fulton noted the concerns raised regarding the Cam River work by a submitter to the draft 2024/34 LTP and asked if the submitter and neighbours would be updated on the work being undertaken. K Simpson explained that the Revells Road work was integrated with work being undertaken by ECan. ECan was looking at improving a number of different aspects, and staff would ensure that the submitter was updated.

Moved: Councillor Williams

Seconded: Councillor Brine

THAT the Utilities and Roading Committee:

- (a) **Receives** report No. 240516078696.
- (b) **Notes** that all 88 investigations have been triaged, scoped, and investigated, 25 are being reviewed for approval, and 45 are complete.
- (c) **Notes** that all 126 maintenance actions have been processed, 16 have works programmed, and 110 are complete.
- (d) **Notes** that the Flood Team is in the process of being wrapped up, and funding is included in the draft Long Term Plan for an Infrastructure Resilience Team, who will assist with progressing the remaining improvements and implementing proposed future works.
- (e) **Notes** that the total cost estimate for the flood recovery work is \$4.055 million.
- (f) **Notes** that the expenditure to date is \$2,485,932, and the final forecast expenditure remains at \$4.055 million.
- (g) **Circulates** this report to all Community Boards for information.

CARRIED

Councillor Williams was pleased to see many projects at the completion stage and contractors on the ground.

Mayor Gordon commended staff for the flood recovery work being done, which was highly valued by the community. He commented that he had visited a property in Okuku and had seen first-hand the effort property owners were going to, at their own expense, to reduce flood risk. It was important to ensure the Council was resilient, prepared and had adequate capacity to cope with these events. Mayor Gordon raised that there was potential for Central Government funding for regional councils for work in this space that could be significant if approved.

Councillor Ward commented on the decision to form an Infrastructure Resilience Team instead of spending money on consultations, assured continuity and readiness for rain events. As Councillors, it was important to look to the future and protect the community.

5.4 **Rangiora Stormwater Annual Report 2021-2023 and Monitoring Programme Report 2022-2023 – J Recker (Stormwater and Waterways Manager) and L Cardenas-Corrales (3 Waters Compliance Officer)**

L Cardenas-Corrales explained that the report was for information and summarised the findings from the 2021-2023 Stormwater Annual Report and Stormwater Monitoring Programme 2022-2023 for Rangiora, both under Stormwater Discharge consent CRC184601. She noted that the monitoring results had been used to develop a programme of works to target areas where elevated levels of contaminants had been identified during wet weather events.

L Cardenas-Corrales provided a brief overview of the sampling program undertaken in Rangiora and an update on areas that were non-compliant during wet weather. These were encountered for the following contaminants in specific stormwater sampling points discharging onto the following streams:

- Dissolved Copper in the North Drain, North Brook, and Middle Brook.
- Dissolved Zinc in North Drain, North Brook, and Middle Brook
- Dissolved Reactive Phosphorus in all urban waterways except the Cam River
- E. coli. all urban waterways except Cam River.

For the first time, trend analysis of water quality data was undertaken using data from 2014 to 2023. Most of these analyses could not identify a significant increasing trend of contaminants through time. The only statistically significant increase trend encountered was for dissolved zinc in North Brook. Further sampling and improvement of statistical analyses would inform the monitoring report for 2023-2024.

Councillor Redmond asked what was being done to address the contractor's noncompliance. L Cardenas-Corrales explained that some work had not been completed due to contractor resource constraints during Covid, and there were also challenges with the contract and schedules not matching up. There were recommendations and learnings from the report regarding the maintenance contracts which would be implemented in the future.

In response to a question from Councillor Redmond, L Cardenas-Corrales noted that she was working with Roding staff and CORDE regarding improvements, and they were hoping to meet requirements next financial year. She explained that a dedicated person with a live recording tool audited the maintenance work. All information was captured in the RAM.

Councillor Redmond questioned if Pond C trends would be analysed in the future. L Cardenas-Corrales noted that initially, due to capacity, reporting and analysis had just focused on the essentials; however, Pond C would be incorporated in the future.

Mayor Gordon enquired if the stream health assessment could be undertaken elsewhere, for example on the Ohoka Stream. J Recker noted that S Allen had undertaken some wider sampling, which had been reported to the Drainage Advisory Groups. More modelling of the Ohoka Stream was required to ascertain where exceedances were coming from. G Cleary noted that the report presented was for the urban discharge consent for Rangiora. Ohoka Stream was a rural stream, and separate monitoring was therefore being completed in consultation with the Ohoka Drainage Advisory Group. The Council was now at the point where it had several years of audit quality monitoring data which meant that trends could be detected over time. Taking it a step further, staff could target detailed investigations and move beyond just monitoring for compliance to genuinely improve water quality.

Councillor Fulton noted that he was interested in flow paths, particularly to the Cam River, and asked if the Council's monitoring included understanding where the water originated. J Recker noted that as part of the Stormwater Management Plan for January 2025, staff were prioritising catchments within Rangiora. G Cleary further noted that flow paths were generally very complex; however, staff had a good understanding of the flow path, and water quality monitoring assisted that.

Councillor Fulton also questioned whether staff were mindful of urban growth. G Cleary advised that all urban subdivisions required treatment ponds; however, in the flood situation, rural water flowed through towns. While it was extremely complex, it was considered for design and stormwater management.

Moved: Councillor Redmond

Seconded: Mayor Gordon

THAT the Utilities and Roding Committee:

(a) **Receives** Report No. 240506071112.

- (b) **Notes** that compliant results were achieved during wet weather events for Total Suspended Solids in all urban waterways and Total Ammoniacal Nitrogen; likewise, guideline values were met during dry weather sampling as an indicator of stream health components including values for dissolved oxygen, temperature, pH, Total Ammoniacal Nitrogen, TSS and Dissolved Reactive Phosphorus in all urban waterways.
- (c) **Notes** that there were exceedances (non-compliances) during wet weather events of dissolved Copper and dissolved Zinc in some Rangiora waterways, and Dissolved Reactive Phosphorus and *E. coli* in most Rangiora waterways; and during dry weather sampling guidelines were exceeded for Dissolved Inorganic Nitrogen and *E. coli*, specifically in the North Brook, South Brook and No. 7 Drain for the former, and Middle Brook for the latter.
- (d) **Notes** that follow up investigations are recommended in this report, which will be carried out by 3 Waters staff under existing budgets in 2023-24 and 2024-25.
- (e) **Notes** that a Rangiora Stormwater Management Plan 2025-2040 is currently being drafted as required by CRC184601 for 1 January 2025, which will address exceedances and improvements presented in these reports.
- (f) **Circulates** these reports to the Waimakariri Water Zone Committee and the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board.

CARRIED

Councillor Redmond thanked staff for a comprehensive report. He appreciated that it dealt with urban Rangiora; however, it could be a snapshot of elsewhere in the Waimakariri District. He was reassured that most historical data trends did not identify a significant increasing trend of contaminants through time. He commented on the presence of copper and zinc in brake pads as a source of contamination following their introduction after the phase-out of asbestos brake pads.

Mayor Gordon supported the report recommendations and commented on the quality of work prepared. Stream health and water quality were matters very important to the community and he suggested staff consider a report demonstrating the concern the Council had about these items and their plans to address. Sometimes stream health could be confused with drinking water quality. However, the community could be assured that the Council supplied drinking water was safe and secure. He would like to see the methodology applied in the analysis extended, for example, to Ohoka Stream and to ensure partnership with ECan in this space. Waterway health was important to mana whenua, and water quality and stream health were often raised in the Council's regular meetings with Te Ngāi Tūāhuriri Rūnanga.

6 CORRESPONDENCE

Nil.

7 PORTFOLIO UPDATES

7.1 Roading – Councillor Philip Redmond

- Focus areas for staff:
 - Staff were continuing with the last of the pre-winter maintenance repairs. This mainly involved removing heaves and shoves with asphalt reinstatement to get through the winter, when wider area repairs could then be undertaken.
 - Remetalling was underway on unsealed roads, and maintenance grading was continuing.

- Ice gritting had started, particularly around the Ashley Gorge area. With more cold weather expected over the next few days, it was expected to increase.
- Capital:
 - The Waimakariri Gorge Bridge deck replacement work was progressing. The deck replacement was now complete, and the chip seal surfacing had been laid. Guardrail works were continuing on the approaches at the tie-ins to the bridge during the daytime.
 - The Island / Ohoka Roads traffic signals project was progressing well. The traffic signals were planned to be commissioned on Thursday, 30 May 2024.
 - Kerb and Channel Renewal work was continuing in Geddis Street and was 85% complete. All kerb and channels were in place, with the final sealing of shoulders and the remaining footpath on the south side of the road to be completed over the next two weeks.
 - Installation of pedestrian refuges was underway. One refuge had been installed on Ivory Street and one on West Belt. The last island was to be installed on Ivory Street this week.
 - Palmer Street Upgrade work was continuing. The kerb and channel, water main, and drainage work were now complete, with the footpath construction underway. The road shoulder reinstatement would follow, and all works were due to be completed in early June 2024.
 - On Ashley Street, the new kerb and channel had been installed, and the shoulder was being reinstated. Footpath works were to follow. The water main trenching was complete, and the new main had been connected to the existing reticulation at the northern end. The southern water main connection was still to be completed.
- Other works:
 - Doubledays Footbridge remained closed. Repairs to the pier cap had been detailed, and work was currently being programmed.
 - South Belt pavement repairs had been sealed adjacent to the new development, and the road was due to be reopened this week.
 - Work had begun on undergrounding the trunk water main on Townsend Road at the culvert.
 - Work was coming up to install water, stormwater, and sewer mains through the Blackett / King Streets roundabout. This was a continuation of the Rangiora Sewer Upgrade project. The roundabout would need to be closed to accommodate those works. Once the tender was awarded, further information on timing and closures would be communicated.
- Events:
 - The Kaiapoi Matariki Event would be hosted in late June 2024.
 - The Rangiora Fire Brigade was holding a 150th Anniversary event in Percival Street on Sunday, 2 June 2024. Percival Street would, therefore, be closed between Queen Street and the Rangiora Service Centre car park entry from 8 a.m. to 4:30 p.m.
- Road Safety:

Road Safety Week was from 20 to 26 May 2024. During the week, several road safety messages were shared on social media. The Council teamed up with Beca, CORDE, the New Zealand Transport Agency Waka Kotahi, and Brake New Zealand to teach students at Ashgrove School about staying safe on the roads. Students got hands-on experience with traffic management equipment, learned about roadworks, and listened to a road safety story.

Councillor Williams asked about an overflowing drainage sump on River Road, and J McBride undertook to investigate and report back to the committee.

Councillor Fulton enquired if there was a further update on the Waimakariri Gorge Bridge. J McBride noted that the deck replacement work was behind schedule; however, all the weather-dependent work had been completed. More work was required on the ground rail, as there had been issues with locating underground services. She had an upcoming meeting with Fulton Hogan and would provide an update after that.

7.2 **Drainage, Stockwater and Three Waters (Drinking Water, Sewer and Stormwater) – Councillor Paul Williams**

- Water
 - The UV treatment installation project was progressing relatively well. However, it was behind the schedule and would not be completed until the next financial year. The work at the Pegasus Water Treatment Plant would be completed by the end of June 2024; however, the work at Darnley, Peraki, South Belt and Domain would not be completed until September 2024.
 - Nitrates in water supplies had been a topical issue, following the Greenpeace nitrate testing in the Waimakariri District last month. All Council water supplies were tested regularly in accordance with the Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules, and all were less than 50% of the MAV for nitrate as set out in the Drinking Water Standards. Council staff intended to hold a workshop on nitrates at the next Oxford-Ohoka Community Board and Utilities and Roding Committee meetings to provide more information to Elected Members on this matter.
- Wastewater

Taumata Arowai recently introduced new Network Environmental Performance Measures that would need to be reported on from July 2024.
- Drainage

The Cones Road Drain Upgrade was progressing well. The driveway culverts were being installed, and the weir modifications at the upper end were about to commence. This work was on track to be completed by the end of June.

7.3 **Solid Waste– Councillor Robbie Brine**

- Transwaste had just confirmed its charges for the disposal and transport of rubbish:
 - Disposal charges at Kate Valley would be rising from \$169.49 to \$185.15/tonne, which was slightly lower than they had forecast (price excludes GST, includes \$10/t landfill levy increase).
 - Transport charges would increase by 8%, as indicated. This was lower than the 11.9% CPI increase experienced in the last year.
 - That means the gate charges in the fees and charges schedule had been set to the right level in the LTP.
- The Communications and Solid Waste Teams had signed off on a video called “*A Day in the Life*” about the challenges and highlights of being a collection truck driver, fronted by Leanne Winter, who was one of the longest-serving drivers. The Communications Team was working on the release of snippets from this video to be posted on social media, with stories to accompany the snippets.
- The Oxford transfer station access road and gate improvements project had been completed, which meant that exiting vehicles no longer clashed with incoming vehicles, improving customer flow.
- The kerbside bin auditors had begun looking at organics bins, as well as recycling bins, because Waste Management collection drivers had reported that there seemed to be a similar level of unwanted stuff in the organics as there was in the recycling – including soft plastics, bags of rubbish, coffee cups and so on. These were being managed in the same way as ‘contaminated’ recycling bins.

- The kerbside audits would be paused in June and July 2024. However, the audit staff planned to visit retail properties in Rangiora, Kaiapoi, Woodend, Pegasus, and Oxford, where it was difficult for the auditors to know which bins belonged to specific businesses. They would talk to shop managers and staff about what was taken in recycling bins and hand out the new brochures and stickers.

Councillor Fulton asked if increasing Kate Valley charges would encourage other landfill developers. G Cleary noted that most of the increase was a \$10 Central Government levy that would be applied to all landfills. It was beyond Council control.

7.4 **Transport – Mayor Dan Gordon**

- There had been confirmation that while the Woodend Bypass was not on the 'Regional Roads' list, it was a priority project for the Central Government. It was being pushed at pace, with the remaining land being secured. He believed it was disappointing and a mistake that walking and cycling was not included. He intended to lobby strongly alongside the Woodend-Sefton Community Board that it be included.
- Now that the Rangiora Eastern Link Road project had been confirmed through the 2024-34 LTP process. A document that provided an overview with a narrative, stories, and images clearly laid out and explained the project should be created. This document should be used as a resource for Ministers and officials as well as the wider community.
- Attended the Local Government New Zealand Transport Forum. Traffic Management and lack of certainty around emergency funding following natural disasters were discussed. Senior staff from the New Zealand Transport Agency Waka Kotahi attended. He had suggested an EQC type model as a national fund to access after a major event as a solution, as ratepayers could not afford to shoulder themselves.

Councillor Williams sought an update on the Rangiora Western Link Road. J McBride advised that most of the required land had been secured aside from a portion owned by ECan. The project had been included in the 2024-34 LTP, and she would provide an update on the timing.

Councillor Fulton questioned the prioritisation of the Selwyn District's public transport. Mayor Gordon advised that Selwyn currently did not have the same level of public transport as the Waimakariri District, and it was, therefore, not a matter of the Waimakariri District being left behind but rather of Selwyn catching up.

Councillor Fulton asked about public transport for Oxford, which the community routinely raised. J McBride advised that it had been raised in the past, and the cost had been off-putting to residents. It was raised in the Council submission to ECan. Selwyn was currently oversubscribed in terms of patronage. She was uncertain of the funding model for Darfield, and the Council may be funding a higher proportion.

8 **MATTERS FOR INFORMATION**

- 8.1 **23/21 Oxford Rural No.1 Water Main Renewals 2023/24 – Tender Approval Report – Separable Portion s B and C – C Freeman (Acting Water and Wastewater Asset Manager) and S Fauth (Utilities Projects Team Leader)**
(Report No. 240507072248 to Management Team Meeting 13 May 2024)

Councillor Redmond questioned the \$25,000 increase due to traffic management costs. G Cleary could not confirm the exact traffic management costs for the project; however, in the last few years, there had been a step change in traffic management requirements and costs, and they were an increasingly large proportion.

Moved: Councillor Redmond

Seconded: Mayor Gordon

THAT the Utilities and Roading Committee:

(a) **Receives** the information in Item 8.1.

CARRIED

9 QUESTIONS UNDER STANDING ORDERS

Nil

10 URGENT GENERAL BUSINESS

Nil

11 MATTERS TO BE CONSIDERED WITH THE PUBLIC EXCLUDED

Moved: Councillor Brine

Seconded: Councillor Williams

THAT the Utilities and Roading Committee:

Moves in accordance with section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 and the particular interest or interests protected by section 6 or section 7 of that Act (or sections 6, 7 or 9 of the Official Information Act 1982, as the case may be):

That the public be excluded from the following parts of the proceedings of this meeting:

- 11.1 Report from Management Team Operations 15 April 2024.
- 11.2 Report from Management Team Operations 29 April 2024.
- 11.3 Report from Management Team Operations 6 May 2024.

The general subject of each matter to be considered while the public was excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution were as follows:

Item No.	Subject	Reason for excluding the public	Grounds for excluding the public.
11.1	Report from Management Team Operations 15 April 2024.	Good reason to withhold exists under Section 7	As per Section 7(2)(h) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987, to "enable any local authority holding the information to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage commercial activities"
11.2	Report from Management Team Operations 29 April 2024.	Report from Management Team Operations 29 April 2024.	For reasons of protecting the privacy of natural persons and enabling the local authority to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial) negotiations and maintain legal professional privilege as per LGOIMA Section 7 (2)(a), (g) and (i).

Item No.	Subject	Reason for excluding the public	Grounds for excluding the public.
11.3	Report from Management Team Operations 6 May 2024.	Report from Management Team Operations 29 April 2024.	As per Section 7(2)(h) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987, to "enable any local authority holding the information to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage commercial activities"

CARRIED**CLOSED MEETING***See Public Excluded Minutes***OPEN MEETING***The public excluded portion of the meeting occurred between 10.38am and 10.40am.*

Moved: Mayor Gordon

Seconded: Councillor: Williams

THAT open meeting resumes and the business discussed with the public excluded remains public excluded unless otherwise resolved in the individual resolutions.

CARRIED**NEXT MEETING**

The next meeting of the Utilities and Roading Committee would be held on Tuesday 18 June 2024 at 9am.

THERE BEING NO FURTHER BUSINESS, THE MEETING CONCLUDED AT 10.41AM.

S

CONFIRMED



Chairperson
Councillor Paul Williams

18 June 2024
Date

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL

**MINUTES OF THE MEETING OF THE DISTRICT PLANNING AND REGULATION COMMITTEE
HELD IN THE COUNCIL CHAMBER, RANGIORA SERVICE CENTRE, 215 HIGH STREET,
RANGIORA, ON TUESDAY, 28 MAY 2024, AT 1PM.**

PRESENT:

Councillor T Fulton (Chairperson), Mayor Gordon, Councillors A Blackie, and B Cairns,

IN ATTENDANCE

Councillors Brine, Redmond, and Williams.

J Millward (Chief Executive), K LaValley (General Manager Planning, Regulation and Environment), J McBride (Roading and Transport Manager), P Daly (Road Safety Coordinator/Journey Planner), and T Kunkel (Governance Team Leader).

1 APOLOGIES

Moved: Councillor Blackie

Seconded: Councillor Cairns

THAT apologies for absence be received and sustained from Deputy Mayor N Atkinson and Councillor J Goldsworthy.

CARRIED

2 CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

There were no conflicts of interest declared.

3 CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES

3.1 Minutes of the meeting of the District Planning and Regulation Committee held on Tuesday, 16 April 2024

Moved: Councillor Blackie

Seconded: Councillor Cairns

THAT the District Planning and Regulation Committee:

- (a) **Confirms** the circulated Minutes of the District Planning and Regulation Committee meeting, held on 16 April 2024, as a true and accurate record.

CARRIED

3.2 Matters Arising (From Minutes)

There were no matters arising from the Minutes.

4 DEPUTATIONS

Nil.

5 REPORTS

Nil

6 **CORRESPONDENCE**

Nil.

7 **PORTFOLIO UPDATES**

7.1 **District Planning – Councillor Tim Fulton**

- The District Planning process seemed to be progressing well, and the Council received regular staff updates.
- The number of Resource Consent applications received was steady. However, there had been a slight decline from the usual numbers the Council received.
- The Council was awaiting the additional information requested in December 2023 about the Resource Consent application for a solar farm opposite the Daiken factory.
- The Resource Consent application for a 7.5-hectare solar farm at 513 Thongcaster Road has been granted. It was in quite a remote location, and all of the surrounding neighbours had given their written consent to the proposal, so it was unlikely to be contentious or high-profile. It was suggested that the Council may need more information on the solar farm market in light of the number of Resource Consent applications received for solar farms.
- The Resource Consent application submitted by Protranz International Limited to undertake quarrying activities and construct and operate a landfill on Quarry Road, Loburn, was currently being evaluated by the Planning Officer. However, further information was expected to be requested.
- The Oxford Landfill application closed on 29 April 2024, and the commissioners had until 25 June 2024 to make a decision.

Councillor Redmond questioned the designation of solar farms in the Council's District Plan. K LaValley confirmed that a solar farm was a discretionary activity under the Council's Operational District Plan; however, she would report back to the Committee on solar farms' designation in terms of the Council's proposed District Plan.

Councillor Fulton requested that the District Planning and Regulation Committee also be briefed on the criteria considered when evaluating a property's suitability for developing a solar farm, such as soil quality, etc.

7.2 **Civil Defence and Regulation – Councillor Jason Goldsworthy**

Councillor Goldsworthy was not present to provide an update.

7.3 **Business, Promotion and Town Centres – Councillor Brent Cairns**

- Mandy Palmer's art exhibition at Art on the Quay, Kaiapoi and Paul Smith's "Just Imagine" exhibition at Chamber Gallery, Rangiora, had been well received.
- SkateJam events were hosted in Kaiapoi, Oxford, and the next event would be held in Rangiora on 8 June 2024. The Council's Community Team had been requested to extend youth events to the Pegasus/Woodend area as it was the fastest-growing part of the Waimakariri District.
- Attended a well-supported Clarkville School White Elephant event.
- Attended Belinda Topp's Ideal event in Victoria Park, Rangiora, a Council-funded event. He wanted to see how well the event was organised and the number of attendees.
- Attended a local event to view the My Kitchen Rules TV show featuring Lee and Luke Barrington from Out The Gate Café in Kaiapoi. The TV Show showed Kaiapoi and the Waimakariri District in a positive light.

- Attended Ronel's Cuppa, where Mayor Gordan discussed the 2024-34 Long Term Plan and requested people to make submissions. The event was well-supported.
- Attended a Road Safety Working Party meeting, where it was advised that there had been no fatalities on local roads; however, there were five serious accidents. Twice as many speeding tickets were issued, and there had been a significant increase in drivers over the alcohol limit during the day. Also, work was being done on pedestrian crossings at Kaiapoi High and Kaiapoi North schools, and the New Zealand Police were attending some road work sites across the district to monitor driver behaviour. It was also reported that it was challenging to find qualified truck drivers.
- Met with Nigel Cook, who runs music events in and around Kaiapoi each month, which was mostly sold out, to discuss fundraising opportunities.
- Met with Blue Sky Events, which had taken over the All Together Kaiapoi events, such as Matariki, Waitangi Day, and the Spring Festival, as well as a new event, RiverSong, which was well attended. Staff resolved some trip hazards at the Kaiapoi Wharf before the RiverSong event. Blue Sky Events had a wealth of event experience and would build iconic events for Kaiapoi. Matariki would be celebrated from 26 to 28 June 2024, with a light walk on Corcoran Reserve.
- A review of the mobility parks on the Kaiapoi Wharf was being undertaken. A potentially additional mobility park would support the popular River Queen cruises and the very popular Paris for the Weekend.
- Two Kaiapoi restaurants were broken into, and one till and a tip jar were stolen. Despite the few items taken, the damage and cost to the businesses were considerable. The offenders were later apprehended in Christchurch.
- Armadillos Restaurant in Kaiapoi closed, and Suburban 412 Restaurant opened this week. The new restaurant was owned by Kostas Marks and Sheree Roberts, who also operated Tasteful Affairs at the Kaiapoi Golf Club and several other locations throughout the South Island.
- At its Annual General Meeting in July 2024, Rangiora Promotions would host a relaunch event after conducting brainstorming workshops and committee meetings to review its future focus.
- Attended Kaiapoi Promotions' monthly meeting. The group planned to host some new smaller events in Kaiapoi, some involving businesses. Kaiapoi Promotions was, also considering alternate locations for the Christmas Carnival due to issues with the land.
- The Oxford Promotions Action Committee (OPAC) was planning its Winter event, and it was anticipated that they may wish the tree at Pearson Park lit up. However, OPAC cancelled its recent monthly meeting, so no update was available.
- The Council was reviewing the town centre flags, which would be replaced in a year. This may be an opportunity to work with local designers on new designs that represent the various towns. The Council also investigated extending the town flags to the Woodend, Ravenswood, and Pegasus areas. Staff also looked at the prospect of having flags for special occasions such as Anzac and Matariki.
- The Council received positive feedback from the local public regarding the excellent service from its Compliance Team regarding changes to renewing licences.
- The Council provided mulch and edging for the Woodend/Pegasus Food Forest, which would tidy up the edges and nourish the trees.
- The New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA) was approximately 60% through acquiring the properties for the proposed Woodend bypass.

Councillor Fulton asked if young people at events such as SkateJam could provide information on the possible location of youth facilities, such as skateparks in other areas. Councillor Cains agreed to discuss the matter with the Council's Youth Development Facilitator, Emily Belton.

8 **MATTERS REFERRED FROM RANGIORA-ASHLEY COMMUNITY BOARD**

8.1 **Proposed School Bus Stop facility at Te Kura o Tuahiwi, Tuahiwi School – P Daly (Road Safety Coordinator/Journey Planner) and J McBride (Roading and Transport Manager)**

(Report No. 240321044984 on the Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board Agenda for the meeting of 20 May 2024).

J McBride noted that approval was sought to establish a bus stop for the school bus service at Te Kura o Tuahiwi, Tuahiwi School. The new bus service would involve two buses servicing the school each morning and afternoon. The service commenced on 29 April 2024, and approximately 65 students were witnessed using it.

There were no questions from elected members.

Moved: Councillor Blackie

Seconded: Councillor Cairns

THAT the District Planning and Regulation Committee:

- (a) **Approves** the establishment of a school bus stop and associated parking restrictions as proposed by the Te Kura o Tuahiwi, Tuahiwi School, as noted in the schedule below.

Item	Town	Street	Location	Side of Street	Restriction	Qualifying Remarks	Comments for consideration
One	Tuahiwi	Tuahiwi Road	Outside Tuahiwi School	East	Bus Stop	8-9am, 2:30-3:30pm School Days	Requested by the school staff.

CARRIED

8.2 **Williams Street Bus Stop Safety Improvements – P Daly (Road Safety Coordinator/Journey Planner) and J McBride (Roading and Transport Manager)**

(Report No. 240322045655 on the Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board Agenda for the meeting of 20 May 2024).

J McBride highlighted the safety challenges experienced with the current Williams Street bus stop. She explained that providing a 7.8-metre entry taper for the bus stop would allow for better bus manoeuvring. However, it would necessitate the loss of one carpark. The carparking space on the approach to the bus stop was a P120 controlled parking area, which was currently 30 metres long. Providing an entry taper for the bus stop would reduce the length of that controlled parking area to 22.2 metres, accommodating four carparks.

There were no questions from elected members.

Moved: Councillor Cairns

Seconded: Councillor Blackie

THAT the District Planning and Regulation Committee:

- (a) **Approves** the reduction of the P120 parking area adjacent to the Williams Street bus stop by 7.8 metres outside no. 190 Williams Street.
- (b) **Approves** the installation of 7.8-meter no-stop lines prior to the bus stop, in compliance with the proposal in the report (Trim: 240322045655).

- (c) **Notes** that the Schedule of Parking Restrictions will be updated if the subject of this report is approved.

CARRIED

9 QUESTIONS UNDER STANDING ORDERS

Nil.

10 URGENT GENERAL BUSINESS

Nil

NEXT MEETING

The next District Planning and Regulation Committee meeting would be held on 16 July 2024.

THERE BEING NO FURTHER BUSINESS, THE MEETING CONCLUDED AT 1.19PM.

CONFIRMED

Councillor T Fulton

16 July 2024
Date

MINUTES OF A MEETING OF THE COMMUNITY AND RECREATION COMMITTEE HELD IN THE COUNCIL CHAMBER, 215 HIGH STREET, RANGIORA ON TUESDAY, 28 MAY 2024, AT 3:30PM.

PRESENT

Councillors R Brine (Chairperson), A Blackie, B Cairns, P Redmond, and Mayor D Gordon (arrived at 3:38pm and left 4:05pm).

IN ATTENDANCE

Councillors T Fulton and P Williams.

J Millward (Chief Executive), C Brown (General Manager Community and Recreation), G MacLeod (Community Greenspace Manager), T Sturley (Community Team Manager), M Greenwood (Aquatics Manager), L Sole (Acting District Libraries Manager), I Clark (Project Manager – Community and Recreation), B Dollery (Ecologist - Biodiversity) and C Fowler-Jenkins (Governance Support Officer).

1 APOLOGIES

Moved: Councillor Blackie

Seconded: Councillor Cairns

THAT an apology for absence be received and sustained from Councillor Mealings.

CARRIED

2 CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

There were no conflicts declared.

3 CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES

3.1 Minutes of the meeting of the Community and Recreation Committee held on 19 March 2024

Moved: Councillor Redmond

Seconded: Councillor Cairns

THAT the Community and Recreation Committee:

- (a) **Confirms** the circulated Minutes of the meeting of the Community and Recreation Committee, held on 19 March 2024, as a true and accurate record.

CARRIED

3.2 Matters Arising (From Minutes)

There were no matters arising.

4 DEPUTATIONS

Nil.

5 **REPORTS**

5.1 **Kaiapoi Community Hub – Reallocation of Budget – I Clark (Project Manager – Community and Recreation)**

I Clark spoke to the report, noting that approval was being sought for the reallocation of funds from the Land Purchase Ravenswood Community Centre Budget to the Kaiapoi Hub Budget to allow completion of services and electrical at the Kaiapoi Community Hub. The installation of services and electrical was not included in the initial tender or budget allocation, as the lessees were deemed responsible for their installation. The Kaiapoi Community Hub Trust was established in 2022 to improve fundraising opportunities, own and manage buildings, and install services. However, the trust model was reviewed and placed on hold due to the trust's dissolution.

I Clark noted that the provision of services to the street boundary would not be adequate and would become a barrier to the site's development in the immediate and long-term future. In addition to the need for additional services through the resource consent process, it was also determined that the site would require carpark lighting, which was also not included in the original budget.

Councillor Redmond noted that the Kaiapoi Croquet Club (the Club) was exchanging its current property for two new greens being built by the Council. He questioned the purchase price of the Club's property. C Brown explained that the Council was not purchasing the land. The agreement was the Club would transfer the property with the understanding that the Council would develop two greens at its new site.

Councillor Cairns enquired if the reallocation of funds would jeopardise the purchase of the land for the Ravenswood Community Centre. C Brown noted that the valuation of the preferred property was far less than the allocated budget. Thus, there was no risk of not having sufficient funding.

Responding to Councillor Blackie, I Clarke advised that the Council was currently working on the establishment of the two lawns, which were not yet ready for handover. The Club had been granted \$10,000 to move soils for establishing their other lawns. It had been gifted a clubhouse and was currently investigating the structural engineering of the clubhouse. The Club was also fundraising for a maintenance shed.

Councillor Blackie enquired as to what would happen to the Club's current clubrooms. I Clarke noted that clubrooms would be included in the Murphey Park Project that staff were currently working on. Staff were developing a Master Plan for the area, which would include the demolishing of the clubrooms, which had been included in the budget.

Moved: Councillor Blackie

Seconded: Councillor Cairns

THAT the Community and Recreation Committee:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240426066065.
- (b) **Notes** that the main contract for the construction of the car park and Croquet Lawns at the Kaiapoi Community Hub has been tendered, awarded, and is near completion. This has created more certainty around the allocated budget for this project.
- (c) **Notes** the progress that has been made over the last year through staff working with the key Kaiapoi Community Hub user groups, including completion of the carpark, croquet lawns and infrastructure design along with lease negotiations and commitments from these community groups to the Hub.

- (d) **Approves** Option 1 to reallocate \$327,000 from the Land Purchase Ravenswood Community Centre budget to allow completion of services and electrical at the Kaiapoi Community Hub site. This will leave a budget which is considered adequate of \$3,973,000.00 in the Land Purchase Community Centre Ravenswood for the purchase of land in the North Woodend area.
- (e) **Notes** that the Council will own and maintain the services installed in the design attached (Trim: 240430067899), the lessee will be responsible for their services beyond this.
- (f) **Notes** that the Lessees will be responsible for connecting services from their building to the central systems.
- (g) **Notes** that the Kaiapoi Croquet Club are currently working with Council Staff to finalise a Sale and Purchase agreement for the Council to receive their current site located at 8c and 10c Revell Street in exchange for the building of two new greens at the Kaiapoi Community Hub Site. At the settlement of the Sale and Purchase Agreement the Croquet Club will own the lawns constructed by the Council, the club is responsible for the construction of the storage shed and club rooms and will own these assets.
- (h) **Circulates** this report to the Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board for information.

CARRIED

Councillor Blackie thanked staff for the report. He noted that the reallocation of funds would not jeopardise the purchase of the land for the Ravenswood Community Centre. If the Council did not install services and electrical, it would halt the project. Councillor Blackie, therefore supported the motion.

Councillor Cairns concurred with Councillor Blackie. He commented that the Men's Shed, Satisfy Food Rescue and the other groups relocating to the Kaiapoi Community Hub would be extremely grateful for the Council for providing the additional level of service.

5.2 Changes to Criteria for the Biodiversity Contestable Fund – B Dollery (Ecologist - Biodiversity)

B Dollery spoke to the report, noting that the Biodiversity Contestable Fund was open as a continuous fund allocation available to Waimakariri District landowners of significant natural areas (SNAs) listed in the District Plan. The Fund had a current balance of \$98,370 and an annual budget of \$15,000, with an increase of \$10,000 each year after that.

However, currently, the Council has received many requests for funding from landowners who did not have mapped SNAs on their land and also requests for the funding of ecological plans. Requests were also received for funding to create SNAs; however, no funds were available. It was therefore suggested that the fund be opened to include landowners who did not have SNAs listed in the District Plan with stringent criteria assessing representativeness, rarity, connectivity, protection, size, and collaborations. It was recommended to have two funding rounds to allow for projects to be considered against other similar applications and ensure the fund was being used to the best potential. There was also some funding available to landowners from the Zone Implementation Programme Addendum (ZIPA) budget, which had allocated \$20,000 per annum for community groups.

Council Blackie sought clarity on the definition of a 'legal obligation' as contained in the Information Sheet for Biodiversity Contestable Fund Application. B Dollery explained that landowners who were obligated to plant an area as a condition of an approved Resource Consent, could not apply to the funding of the planting.

Councillor Williams asked if the Council conducted site inspections to ensure the plantings' success. B Dollery explained that staff liaised with the applicants throughout the project, and applicants had to show work done at the end. Also, staff would normally visit the sites throughout the projects.

Councillor Fulton questioned the process when an SNA was owned by multiple landowners. G MacLeod noted that the Council had previously received an application where for a wetland area owned by three landowners. Although the proposed work would have benefitted the entire wetland, the landowners could only apply for funding for their own properties. However, such matters would be addressed as part of the evaluation process.

Moved: Councillor Blackie

Seconded: Mayor Gordon

THAT the Community and Recreation Committee:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 230529078453.
- (b) **Notes** the amount available in the Biodiversity Contestable Fund totals \$98,370 (with \$8,459 allocated to a Significant Natural Area (SNA) landowner in December 2023, Report No. 231124189477).
- (c) **Approves** extending the criteria to include landowners who do not have SNAs listed in the District Plan, with improved criteria assessing six areas: Representativeness, Rarity/Distinctness, Connectivity, Protection, Size, and Partnerships and Collaborations.
- (d) **Approves** the recommendation to have two funding rounds per annum for the fund to allow for projects to be considered against other similar applications and ensure the fund is being used to the best potential.
- (e) **Approves** the administration under the Biodiversity Contestable Fund of the Zone Implementation Programme Addendum (ZIPA) budget of \$20,000 per annum for organisational support (Recommendation 2.8) with separate criteria.
- (f) **Note** that the adoption of the changes will mean that the Council only considers the fund twice a year and has specific measures against which to judge merit.

CARRIED

Councillor Blackie supported the motion and commented that he believed that having two funding rounds to allow for projects to be considered would be beneficial to the community.

Mayor Gordon acknowledged the work being done by staff and noted that the Council could make a real difference in this area in ensuring the protection of the natural environment.

5.3 **Aquatics May Report – M Greenwood (Aquatics Manager)**

M Greenwood took the report as read; however, he highlighted the request received from Westpac Rescue Helicopters Service to subsidise swim training for its medics at the Council's Aquatic facilities. He also noted that it was recommended that the Council continue to offer a 25% discount off the standard entry price for a parent and preschooler following a successful trial six-month period.

Councillor Redmond enquired if Selwyn District Council was subsidising swim training for Westpac Rescue Helicopters medics. M Greenwood had no information on Selwyn District Council's position on this matter. However, to his knowledge, the majority of Westpac

Rescue Helicopters Service staff lived in Christchurch, where they were offered a free swim membership.

Councillor Cairns asked if it was a legal requirement that the medics swim to retain their accreditation to serve on rescue helicopters. M Greenwood noted that the medics were required to swim 16 lengths in nine minutes and be confident in the water to remain flight ready.

Councillor Redmond noted that the Council offered discounts to various groups, including Rangiora High School staff. He asked what the rationale was for the discount. M Greenwood explained that the 30% discount was offered to various groups, including schools. However, Rangiora High School was the only school that had taken the Council up on the offer.

Moved: Mayor Gordon

Seconded: Councillor Cairns

THAT the Community and Recreation Committee:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240430067634.
- (b) **Notes** strong attendance at the Aquatic Facilities with April up 1400 visits against last year.
- (c) **Notes** a financial result of \$133,000 better than budget.
- (d) **Approves** the request for seven free annual memberships for staff of the Rescue Helicopter service to ensure they are able to continue to meet physical health and swim test requirements.
- (e) **Approves** facilities continuing to offer a 25% discount off the standard entry price for a parent and preschooler entry in line with its wider pricing structure following a successful trial period which saw 612 parents with a preschooler who hold a community services card.
- (f) **Circulates** this report to the Community Boards for their information.

CARRIED

Mayor Gordon thanked the staff for the report. He commented that there had been many challenges for Aquatic facility staff over the last few months. Despite the challenges faced, it was satisfying to see high overall customer satisfaction. Therefore, Mayor Gordon supported the motion.

Councillor Cairns concurred with Mayor Gordon's comments. He believed that the Westpac Rescue Helicopters Service medics would be pleased with the free annual membership. He also supported the continued 25% discount off the standard entry price for a parent and preschooler.

Councillor Redmond supported the motion. He noted that it was hard to compare the various groups that currently receive discounted fees because they were all doing different but equally good work in the community. He suggested that the Council's sponsorship of the Westpac Rescue Helicopters Service should be made public, and that the Council should take their offer to promote its Aquatic facilities.

5.4 **Libraries May Update – L Sole (Acting District Libraries Manager)**

L Sole reported that the Waimakariri Libraries were working towards becoming an accredited dementia-friendly network as part of the Alzheimer's New Zealand Dementia Friendly Recognition Programme. The Waimakariri Libraries were the first in the region to complete the training programme, which would enable staff to support members of the community with diverse needs. Staff had also invited people with dementia to the Kaiapoi Library and engaged with them via the Council's local heritage collection and artefacts at the Kaiapoi Museum.

L Sole advised that the Council had launched Code Club in the final three weeks of Term One, which was already at capacity. It involved groups of 10 to 12 young people coming to the Rangiora Library and engaging with the coding platform. It was an informal opportunity to build social skills, which staff were looking to extend to the Kaiapoi and Oxford Libraries.

In response to a question form, Councillor Redmond, L Sole could not provide information on the number of people with dementia visiting the libraries. However, as the Waimakariri District's population aged, the number of people with dementia was growing.

Councillor Cairns questioned whether the Council was considering providing library services to rest homes for people who could not visit the libraries. L Sole acknowledged that it was a service that staff would like to offer.

Councillor Cairns enquired whether the number of people who visited Waimakariri Libraries during the April 2024 school holidays increased by approximately 16,500. L Sole clarified that the total number of people who visited Waimakariri Libraries during the April 2024 school holidays was approximately 16,500, which was an increase from the April 2023 school holidays.

Councillor Cairns also asked if the Code Club was being taught by Council staff or if there was an external trainer. L Sole explained that the Code Club was a social enterprise that relied on volunteers, and the person running the project was a high school teacher.

Councillor Fulton asked whether there would be costs associated with extending Code Club to the Kaiapoi and Oxford Libraries. L Sole noted that the programme was run as a non-profit by volunteers. In other parts of the country, partnerships with local tech firms were established.

Moved: Councillor Cairns

Seconded: Councillor Redmond

THAT the Community and Recreation Committee:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240516078963.
- (b) **Notes** the establishment of the Rangiora Library Code Club.
- (c) **Notes** that operational expenses are currently tracking under budget due to vacancies being carried throughout this financial year. This has put pressure on the team, and recruitment is underway. However, this will likely result in a year-end saving.
- (d) **Circulates** the report to the Community Boards for their information.

CARRIED

Councillor Cairns thanked L Sole for stepping up as acting Libraries Manager. He praised the work the staff did in the libraries and supported the opportunities that the Code Club would be opening up.

Councillor Redmond congratulated the staff on a good budget. He commended staff on the work being done to create a dementia-friendly network.

6 CORRESPONDENCE

Nil.

7 PORTFOLIO UPDATES

7.1 Greenspace (Parks, Reserves and Sports Grounds) – Councillor Al Blackie.

- Huria Mahinga Kai was progressing well.
- Te Kohaka o Tuhaitara Trust had a new General Manager, Nick Moody. One of the Trusts funding sources had withdrawn.
- The Menz Shed was making seats for Council reserves.
- Sourced some free reels of wire from a company in Christchurch that would be used in the dog parks and reserves.

7.2 Community Facilities (including Aquatic Centres, Multi-use Sports Stadium, Libraries/Service Centres, Town Halls and Museums) – Councillor Robbie Brine.

- The Southbrook Sports Club - Meetings were held to discuss the funding as proposed in the 2024-34 Long-Term Plan. It was agreed that the \$1.3 million for the clubhouse upgrade would be pushed out to year four of the Long-Term Plan to allow the Club time to raise its share of the funding.
- MainPower Stadium—The stadium received a Solar Panel proposal from MainPower. They were considering the possibility of covering part of the building with solar panels to offset operations expenditures.
- Dudley Aquatic Facility – A mobile adult hoist had been ordered.
- Rangiora Library—The shelving design had been finalised before going out to tender. The new shelving layout could affect the castle, which was in the middle of the library. Staff were working through what that may mean.

7.3 Community Development and Wellbeing – Councillor Brent Cairns.

- A Virtual Work and Income New Zealand (WINZ) trial had been set up in Hurunui, allowing clients from Culverden and Cheviot to meet with WINZ via Teams. This trial could be extended and could be valuable to clients who are unable to visit the Rangiora office.
 - Some immigrant families faced challenges with the lack of support for those looking after a family at home, additional costs they have to pay, e.g., for education, and substandard rentals. Hence, some people were crowded into one rental and had language issues.
- Citizens Advice assisted 314 visitors in March 2024 and 319 in April 2024, there were more complex issues they were having to deal with.
 - Their recent Op Shop fashion show raised \$4,600 for the group.
 - Their English language classes were in demand, with many people attending with nil English.
- The Kaiapoi High School Leadership Program (Cactus) had started up again after a number of years in hiatus.
- Met with Lions group keen to provide a considerable amount of land in Woodend to grow food for the community. Connected with Food Secure North Canterbury, which, in turn, was looking at raising funds for seed, etc.

- Met with the Council's Civil Defence Team to discuss their presentation to the June 2024 All Boards session regarding North Canterbury Neighbourhood Support (NCNS).
- A few complaints were received regarding the community-funded cameras, which may require the Council's Communications Team to send out a consistent message as to the camera's purpose and who can view the footage. Pegasus had donations totalling over \$11,000 for community-funded cameras. Sovereign Palms have completed and winding up their activity.
- The Woodend School Cultural event had a really good turnout for hangi; student performances from Woodend and Kaiapoi High were impressive.
- Attended Waimakariri Access Group meeting; issues raised included Mobility Parking time limits, Dudley pool fees, Bocca Court, and markings at MainPower stadium. Almost all issues have been resolved by the Council.
- Attended Police Constable Tony Maws' farewell function. For many years, T Maws supported and helped NCNS. His departure left a large gap in the service and information that NCNS provided to their supporters/followers.
- Attended the Food Secure North Canterbury meeting. The group was looking at funding for edible trees and plants to help communities create pocket food forests.
- There were a number of interested groups willing to help with creating food forests, especially in Rangiora and Oxford.
- Attended the Back to Basics day in Rangiora. There were slightly fewer numbers than in 2023. However, those who did attend stayed longer to learn more.
- Kaiapoi Farmers Market, after many years of operation, had decided to share some of its surplus funds for two building projects: the Kaiapoi Food Forest education building and the Menzshed building at the Community Hub.
- The New Zealand Motor Caravan Association (NZMCA) Kaiapoi Park was still doing well, with strong visitor numbers. Campers loved the location and its close proximity to the town and shops.
 - Selwyn District Council took advantage of the recent NZMCA show at Wolfbrook Arena and in Christchurch by giving away carry bags along with promotion material.
- Attended and was one of the speakers at the Grow Your Garden for Birds event in Woodend. This was well attended, and there was lots of great interaction regarding plantings on public land of food forests.
- Attended Youth Futures event at MainPower stadium – Brad Olsen from Infometrics spoke.
- Visited Christchurch Community housing developments. Learnt about the designs, the numbers of units and the mix for things to work best. Viewed lease-to-own units. three bedroom, max income of the couple \$150,000 per year, lease the land when wanting to sell back the owner gets purchase price plus CPI increases. \$450,000, which was the build price.
- Chaired North Canterbury Neighbourhood Support meeting, updated Vision, Values and Strategy, applied for funding, and made a submission to the Council's 2024-34 Long Term Plan. Now have Council representation from Hurunui on the committee.
- Multiple school and group visits to the Kaiapoi Food Forest. A large group came from Loburn School to learn and volunteer. Kaiapoi Food Forest Last held its Annual General Meeting last week and had the educational shed priced so it could start applying for funding.
- Attended both Kaiapoi and Rangiora Museum' Annual General Meetings, both well attended, showing the wide community support for museums. The Kaiapoi Museum had a challenge with storage as it struggled to access the mezzanine. The Rangiora Museum had issues with the roof on the Cob cottage and was advocating for some presence in the Rangiora Library once it had been redeveloped. Both showed positive financial results for the year and strong visitor numbers.

- Caught up with the Community Wellbeing Team in Kaiapoi – they had indicated there were 33 people living in their cars in Kaiapoi alone. One of those people was over 65, and the Team got them housed within a week.

7.4 **Waimakariri Arts and Culture – Councillor Al Blackie.**

- The Art Strategy Launch function had been held. The audience was fairly small but very passionate. T Sturley was currently collating a job description for the position.
- Arts Collection Trust was having a meeting to discuss four of five paintings that it may put back on the market.

8 **QUESTIONS**

Nil

9 **URGENT GENERAL BUSINESS**

Nil

NEXT MEETING

The next meeting of the Community and Recreation Committee would be held on Tuesday 23 July 2024 at 3.30pm.

THERE BEING NO FURTHER BUSINESS THE MEETING CLOSED AT 4.14pm.

CONFIRMED

Chairperson

Date

WAIMAKARIRI DISTRICT COUNCIL

MINUTES OF THE MEETING OF THE AUDIT AND RISK COMMITTEE HELD IN THE COUNCIL CHAMBERS, RANGORA SERVICE CENTRE, 215 HIGH STREET, RANGIORA ON TUESDAY, 11 JUNE 2024, WHICH COMMENCED AT 9AM.

PRESENT

Councillor J Goldsworthy (Chairperson), Councillors T Fulton, J Ward, P Williams and Mayor D Gordon (left at 10am).

IN ATTENDANCE

Councillors B Cairns and P Redmond.

J Millward (Chief Executive) G Bell (Acting General Manager Finance and Business Support) S Hart (General Manager, Strategy, Engagement and Economic Development), S Nation (Senior Quality and Risk Advisor), O Payne (Cyber Security Analyst), P Christensen (Finance Manager), S Nichols (Governance Manager), T Kunkel (Governance Team Leader) and K Rabe (Governance Advisor).

H Warwick Enterprise North Canterbury and Y Yang (Audit New Zealand).

APOLOGIES

Moved: Councillor Williams

Seconded: Councillor Ward

That an apology for absence be received and sustained from Deputy Mayor Atkinson and an apology for early departure for Mayor Gordon who left the meeting at 10am.

CARRIED

1 CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES

1.1 Minutes of a meeting of the Audit and Risk Committee held on Tuesday 15 May 2024

Moved: Councillor Williams

Seconded: Mayor Gordon

THAT the Audit and Risk Committee:

- (a) **Confirms**, as a true and accurate record, the circulated Minutes of a meeting of the Audit and Risk Committee, held on 15 May 2024.

CARRIED

1.2 Matters Arising

Councillor Williams queried if Audit New Zealand had made the adjustment to their statement on page 8 of their Management Report as request in item 5.2 of the minutes. G Bell confirmed that that the adjustment had been made on the same day the request was made.

Due to availability of the Bancorp staff item 5.5 was dealt with at this time, however the minutes have remained in the order of the agenda for convenience.

2 **PRESENTATION/DEPUTATION**

2.1 **Bancorp – David Walker**

D Walker spoke to a presentation which provided the Treasury New Zealand update to the Committee. Points covered included the following:

- What happened to the United States economy impacted the New Zealand economy.
- Only Dairy and Tourism were currently showing positive returns.
- 2024 was expected to be grim with 2025 showing improved economy.
- Consumer confidence, especially in retail, was weak.
- Historically when the Reserve Bank cut rates it did so by a reasonably substantial cut in the range of 1.75 – 2%.

Councillor Fulton noted that the figures for Business and Employment showed that revenue was on the upturn at 8.6%. D Walker replied that he had not been aware of this report, however businesses paying more tax would mean more money for the Government to provide either more tax cuts or provide increased services. He noted that Westpac had announced their GDP was showing at -0.2% while the Reserve Bank was showing 0.2%. There was also a slight increase in retail sales shown, however if inflation and population growth were factored in the figure would show a negative increase. There were, however, positive signs of recovery.

Councillor Ward queried if it would be prudent for the Council to plan the larger projects in the Capital Works programme for the 2027/28 financial year. D Walker replied that there was the opportunity to start major works earlier as construction costs were down as developers and firms were happy with lower margins in order to retain staff. Therefore, the savings on the price could offset the increased interest rate.

The Chair thanked D Walker for his presentation and the information given.

3 **REPORTS**

3.1 **Enterprise North Canterbury Approved Statement of Intent (SOI) beginning 1 July 2024, and associated 2024/25 Enterprise North Canterbury Annual Business Plan – S Hart (General Manager, Strategy, Engagement and Economic Development)**

H Warwick was in attendance to present this report which sought the approval of Enterprise North Canterbury's (ENC) Statement of Intent. S Hart gave a brief overview of the report.

Councillor T Fulton thanked H Warwick for the summary of ENC's activities and enquired on the status of the Dark Skies project. H Warwick replied that unfortunately they had not managed to secure funding for an administrator to assist with this project however a Trust had been established to progress this initiative and to raise funds. The Trust was leading on the possibility of establishing a national tourist dark sky trail which would include Hamner Springs and Kaikoura. Councillor Fulton questioned the method of estimating the proposed economic benefit to the district and H Warwick agreed that this was a difficult exercise, however the figures were a best estimate using financial modelling.

In response to Councillor William's query on the impact of Christchurch's I-site on the Kaiapoi site, H Warwick noted that there had been a positive impact for Kaiapoi.

Councillor Cairns noted that the I-site was offering reduced fees for Sudima Hotels and queried if this would have a negative impact on the district given it encouraged people to stay in Christchurch. H Warwick replied that the reductions were implemented country wide by the National I-site body and noted that the district currently had no hotel accommodation therefore there was no competition.

Councillor Redmund noted that the report indicated that the Waimakariri District seemed to be in a better position than the rest of Canterbury and queried how that was. H Warwick noted that the district had increased hospitality and business growth as well as increased population. This meant that there were increased employment opportunities which was all positives for the district. Councillor Redmund also queried the lack of data on resident's income and was told at the time the data was gathered that information was not available.

Councillor Fulton queried the progress of establishing "sub brands" in the district i.e branding specifically for the towns in the district. H Warwick replied that this work was being carried out by the Promotions Associations and not ENC.

Moved: Councillor Ward

Seconded: Councillor Williams

THAT the Audit and Risk Committee:

- (a) **Receives** Report No 240521081361.
- (b) **Approves** Enterprise North Canterbury's Statement of Intent 2024/25 (240521081364), and the Enterprise North Canterbury's Annual Business Plan 2024/25 (240521081370).
- (c) **Circulates** the report to the Community Boards for information.
- (d) **Thanks** Enterprise North Canterbury Trustees and staff for their efforts.

CARRIED

Councillor Ward thanked H Warwick and her team for the work done during the year acknowledging the difficult economic situation which the team were managing well.

Councillor Williams concurred.

3.2 Risk Management Work Programme and Corporate Risks Update – S Nation (Senior Quality and Risk Advisor)

S Nation was in attendance to present the report which provided a summary of the current Corporate Risks register and an update of the Risk Management Work Programme.

Councillor Fulton noted the table in the report on policy risks and asked what the risks were. S Nation replied that this was a three year work programme and that risks were identified by the Management Team. The identified risks were subsequently sent to the appropriate departments to analyse and raise any other red flags on what may have been overlooked. J Millward noted that at the start of this programme there were 600 risks identified and the process for monitoring them was inefficient and clumsy. Halfway through the programme, risks had been clarified, categorised and the number reduced with an improved and more efficient process of monitoring and managing the identified risks while being vigilant in identifying new risks.

In response to Councillor Williams query regarding earthquakes being categorised as critical risks J Millward replied that although strategies, procedures and resilience had been built into managing earthquake risks, earthquakes would always be in the critical category due to the scale, complexity and cost associated with such an event.

Councillor Goldsworthy queried if there had been a change in the risk culture at the Council regarding risks and was told that there had definitely been a change just by initiating conversations and holding workshops on the topic. Staff were far more aware of risks and felt more confident and competent in dealing with risks or raising concerns.

Moved: Councillor Fulton

Seconded: Councillor Ward

THAT the Audit and Risk Committee:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240513075804.
- (b) **Notes** the progress of the Risk Management Work Programme
- (c) **Notes** the current Corporate Risks rated 'Critical' and 'High'.

CARRIED

Councillor Fulton stated that the change in risk culture was noticeable and that it was encouraging to see the impact of initiating conversations was having.

Councillor Ward thanked staff for their enthusiasm and for achieving such a great outcome.

Councillor Redmund noted that most people dealt with risk analysis on a daily basis and also wondered if risks could be mitigated by our response and resilience to them which eventually could lower its classification in the long term.

3.3 Outcomes of the Waimakariri District Council Health and Safety Risk Register Review February 2024 – K Blake (Health, Safety and Wellbeing Manager)

Moved:

Seconded:

THAT the Audit and Risk Committee:

- (a) **Table** Report No 240515077941 until the August 2024 meeting.

CARRIED

3.4 Report to Audit and Risk Committee May 2024 Cyber Security Status Report – O Payne (Cyber Security Analyst)

O Payne was in attendance to present the report which updated the Committee on the cyber security work programme.

Councillor Fulton noted there was mention made of the risk in using unsupported software and queried why the Council was still using unsupported software. O Payne noted that he was unsure why this was included in the report, however in this case it had been decided that the data in the software was not worth transferring to another package and there were controls in place to protect against any risk involved.

In response to a query by Councillor Redmund regarding internal and external penetration exercises, O Payne replied that the Council used an independent firm Lateral Security to interrogate Council systems to identify any weaknesses or risk to the system.

Councillor Williams noted that WDC's compliance was high in comparison to other authorities and enquired if this made WDC less open to cyber attack. O Payne replied that this was difficult to determine as it was unlikely that an attack would only be targeted at only one entity.

Moved: Councillor Williams

Seconded: Councillor Ward

THAT the Audit and Risk Committee:

- (a) **Receives** Report No 240604089192.
- (a) **Notes** that our overall Framework compliance score sits at 83.69% against a New Zealand Wide benchmark of other council of 56.63%.

CARRIED

The Councillors thanked the team for their vigilance on the Council's behalf.

G Bell noted that the WDC was in a good position as not all local authorities employed cyber security staff to mitigate risks to data held their organisations.

3.5 Audit New Zealand Audit Plan for the year ended 30 June 2024 – P Christensen (Finance Manager)

Y Yang, Director Audit New Zealand, was in attendance to present her report on the Audit Plan provided by Audit New Zealand for the year ended 30 June 2024. She thanked the Management Team and staff for the professional way they handled and managed the audit process and the assistance offered to the audit team.

Mayor Gordon acknowledged Y Yang's work and the good working relationship established between the Council and herself. Mayor Gordon queried if Y Yang was aware of Section 16 paragraph 4 of the Land Transport Act 1998 which required local authorities to include projects requiring NZTA funding in its Long Term Plan and therefore should Skewbridge Road and the Eastern Link project be included in her report. Y Yang agreed that she was aware of this stipulation however as the projects were at risk due to the uncertainty of funding they were included in her report.

Councillor Williams noted his concern that Audit New Zealand had not picked up an error in staffing numbers and the subsequent impact on budgets. Y Yang replied that Audit New Zealand had to rely on the information supplied to them in relation to staff numbers.

Councillor Fulton mentioned the discussion held regarding benchmarks for three water assets which reflected badly on the Council and queried if consideration had been given to acknowledge this discrepancy. Y Yang responded that this would be included in the 2024 audit.

Councillor Redmund noted that there was comment made on incomplete valuations and a history of errors and queried why this was so. Y Yang noted that since 2021 there had been misstatements regarding valuations which Management had subsequently rectified, and this was why this area was focused on by the audit team. J Millward explained that timelines differed for developers and contractors to the Council's financial year and tax deadlines, and this often-meant estimated values and/or costs were given which later needed to be amended to show the completed asset value. Another issue

was when completed projects was invoiced in the following financial year which skewed the figures. This was a complex issue, however, the Council was working on mitigating the problems for future audits.

Councillor Redmund also queried where Audit New Zealand got its information on matters such as water supply measures, road surfaces and 'quality of the ride'. Y Yang replied that there were mandatory levels that were taken into account and that Audit New Zealand contracted independent experts to assess these factors.

Moved: Mayor Gordon

Seconded: Councillor Fulton

THAT the Audit and Risk Committee:

- (b) **Receives** Report No. 240502070174.
- (c) **Agrees** to the audit plan for the year ended 30 June 2024, as provided by Audit New Zealand.

CARRIED

Mayor Gordon reiterated his thanks to Y Yang and for the professional relationship between Audit New Zealand and the Council. He stated the Council's audit was a complex undertaking and acknowledged that things could be missed or errors made which, in his opinion, was the reason for audits in the first place. Mayor Gordon stated he was proud of the work done by Management and staff in compiling the audit and hoped that funding assistance would be forthcoming from NZTA for the Skewbridge and Eastern Link projects which would mitigate congestion and improve road safety.

Councillor Fulton concurred and stated that the Council should not be afraid of scrutiny or questions being asked and that it should be acknowledged when mistakes had been made.

Councillor Ward thanked the Management and Financial teams and stated she was proud of the work done to date.

Councillor Redmund noted that this was not just an audit of numbers but also took into account other aspects of the Council's work and that he would be discussing some of the questions raised with the roading team in coming months.

3.6 Reporting on LGOIMA Requests for the period 1 March 2024 to 31 May 2024 – T Kunkel (Governance Team Leader)

T Kunkel was in attendance to present the report which updated the Committee on the requests for information made under the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 (LGOIMA).

Councillor Williams noted that there were two requests for information regarding the Solar Farm in Upper Sefton Road. Both queries took 13 days to respond to and he queried why this was. T Kunkel replied that the queries covered different areas of interest and therefore time had been taken to gather the required information. Councillor Williams also queried why all the information was not supplied with the first request for information which would mitigate repeated requests for the same information. T Kunkel replied that sometimes the public believed there was more information when there was not and sometimes they assumed that the information supplied was not correct, therefore they continued to request the same information. She also noted that information was supplied in response to the question asked as staff could not assume what it was that the public was actually asking about.

Councillor Redmund acknowledged that this could be an arduous and frustrating job however he believed if the responses to questions were published it would mitigate the duplication of requests thereby reducing the number of requests for information. T Kunkel replied that the Ombudsman specified that only information of value and/or interest to the wider community could be published. If this was adopted it would require Management to review all the requests to determine which fit the criteria for publication. Councillor Redmund queried why the information was not distributed to Councillors for information which could assist them in answering questions. T Kunkel replied that only information pertinent to Councillors roles could be circulated.

In response to a question from Councillor Fulton regarding charging for large complex queries, T Kunkel replied that some requests were changed to clarify the information being sought while others withdrew their requests. To her knowledge once a request had been withdrawn the query had not been resubmitted at a later date by the same member of the public.

Councillor Williams noted that some requests were exempt from charges namely members of the press, media outlets, students and researchers. He queried the definition of researcher saying that the requests signified that the public was researching the Council's ability to be open and transparent and therefore should not be discriminated against.

Councillor Goldsworthy asked why Waahi Tapu locations could not be disclosed and S Nichols replied that this was considered culturally sensitive and locations were withheld to mitigate possible vandalism or damage.

Moved: Councillor Ward

Seconded: Councillor Williams

THAT the Audit and Risk Committee:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240521081875 for information.
- (b) **Notes** that the Council received 71 requests and responded to 81 official requests of information from 1 March 2023 to 31 May 2024, which was 30 more than the 51 official requests responded to in the same period in 2022/23.

CARRIED

Councillor Ward thanked staff for the work done on these requests and noted that staff could only do their best to reply to the questions posed.

Councillor Williams believed that Councillors should be allowed access to the responses sent as it could add to their knowledge base when answering questions from the public especially in their portfolios.

Councillor Fulton acknowledged that vexatious questions marginalised genuine queries from the public.

4 PORTFOLIO UPDATES

4.1 Audit, Risk, Annual / Long Term Plans – Councillor Joan Ward

LTP

Following the deliberations on 21 May 2024, staff had been busy updating both the financial model and the LTP documents to reflect the decisions made. Audit New Zealand started its audit of the final LTP on 27 May 2024 and were on site during the previous week. The focus was on checking that the financial impact of the decisions made by the Council had been fairly reflected in the financial forecasts and were also checking that the assumptions that underpinned the LTP remained sound and that the Council had met all the legislative requirements in relation to the content of the final document.

Annual report

Once the LTP was finalised, finance staff would turn their attention to the annual report 2023/24. Work was already underway in relation to the revaluation of infrastructure and building assets to ensure they were held on the balance sheet at a fair value. Higher inflation in recent years had meant that valuations had been required more regularly than in the past. As had been indicated in the Audit Plan, the Council was expected to prepare a draft financial statement for audit by 19 August 2024. This was a tight deadline and would require a significant effort by the finance team, however would make the Council well placed to complete the annual report in good time to meet its statutory deadline.

Treasury management

Staff had met with Bancorp recently and discussed the approach to the borrowing that matures in August and October 2024, as well as to plan risk management hedging cover for new borrowing anticipated over the coming year to fund capital projects. This was to make sure the Council complied with its Treasury Policy and reduced the risks associated with changes in interest rates.

4.2 Communications and Customer Services – Councillor Joan Ward

Customer Services

- Dog registration notices were sent to email recipients a couple of weeks ago and posted last week. This was the second year of the multi-year tag and so far, very few replacement tags had been issued.
- The fourth instalment of rates was due on 20th May. As at 31 May, rates collection was at 94.11%, compared with 94.22% at the same time last year. With a month to go in the financial year, this figure would increase by 30th June.
- The Government rates rebate was going up from \$750 to \$790 for the 2024/25 financial year. Letters would be sent to recipients of this year's rates rebate, to invite them to make a rates rebate appointments for the new financial year.
- LIM numbers had remained steady with over 200 more LIMs being issued than the same time last year.
- The contact teams had training on the new Datascape Service Request System which was planned to go live on 1 July 2024. Time was being allocated over the next few weeks for practice and further training sessions.

Councillor Williams queried if there had been any feedback on the new multi-year dog tags as there had been a lot of negative comments on social media in relation to the printing rubbing off. Councillor Ward stated as far as she was aware there had been no feedback received and very few replacements had been ordered. Councillor Goldsworthy undertook to follow up on this matter.

Communication Report

The Team had a strong start to the year with stats for work in line with the previous year despite being one staff member down for most of the quarter.

One of the big changes to the team's out-puts had been the re-scoping of the e-news as detailed in the email below.

Maria Cullen, a Comms and Engagement Advisor with a wealth of experience in communications after working at Environment Canterbury and Careerforce was welcomed to the team. Maria's portfolios were Libraries, Internal Comms, Solid Waste, Civil Defence, Community Team, and ESU. She had been with the team for about six weeks and had hit the ground running.

- **Northern Pegasus Bylaw Review**

One final project to note would be the engagement programme for the Northern Pegasus Bylaw Review. A report would be presented at the Council meeting seeking approval to engage further with the changes that had been made as a result of the previous engagement. Engagement took place from 20 December to 1 March in the form of a Beach Users Survey as well as topic specific engagement on the bylaw itself. Feedback was sought online, promoted the engagement at beach entrances, undertook on-beach interviews and worked with a dedicated group of stakeholders which had resulted in feedback from 428 residents being received.

- **Long Term Plan (LTP)**

The team put together the narrative for the plan, the marketing communications campaign, produced video and photo assets, and arrange a series of drop-ins for residents to access more information. Throughout the LTP engagement period hundreds of locals were spoken to during the drop-in sessions. Ads were displayed throughout the district about the key issues which drove over 3,400 visits to the engagement page and resulted in over 330 submissions – all from local people. The process had integrity and was measured and robust.

- **Rates newsletter**

An insert was developed to be included into the rates newsletter which told the story of the LTP including other significant changes that were affecting rate payers this year.

The quarterly Communications and Engagement report and the insert for the rates were separately circulated to members for their information.

Concern was raised that the LTP documentation at drop-in sessions was too generic with members of the public wanting to identify their areas issues for discussion. G Bell noted that the LTP covered the whole district however investigation could be done on the possibility of including a Ward specific page with projects that impacted that Board/ward area.

Councillor Redmund enquired if the Council was reimbursed on rate rebates and J Millward confirmed that authorities managed the administration however the rebates were reimbursed.

5 QUESTIONS

Nil.

6 URGENT GENERAL BUSINESS

Nil.

7 **MATTERS TO BE CONSIDERED WITH THE PUBLIC EXCLUDED**

In accordance with section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 and the particular interest or interests protected by section 6 or section 7 of that Act (or sections 6, 7 or 9 of the Official Information Act 1982, as the case may be), it is moved:

Moved: Councillor Goldsworthy

Seconded: Councillor Ward

1. That the public be excluded from the following parts of the proceedings of this meeting:

Item 9.1 Confirmation of Public Excluded Minutes of Council meeting of 7 May 2024.

The general subject of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution are as follows:

Meeting Item No. and subject	Reason for excluding the public	Grounds for excluding the public-
9.1 Confirmation of Public Excluded Minutes of Council meeting of 7 May 2024	Good reason to withhold exists under section 7	To enable any local authority holding the information to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities (s 7(2)(h)).

CARRIED

CLOSED MEETING

The public excluded portion of the meeting commenced at 11.18am and concluded at 11.20am.

OPEN MEETING

Resolution to resume in Open Meeting

Moved: Councillor Goldsworthy

Seconded: Deputy Mayor Atkinson

THAT open meeting be resumed and the business discussed with the public excluded remained public excluded.

CARRIED

NEXT MEETING

The next meeting of the Audit and Risk Committee will be held on Tuesday 13 August 2024 at 9am.

THERE BEING NO FURTHER BUSINESS, THE MEETING CONCLUDED AT 11.20AM.

CONFIRMED

Chairperson
Councillor Goldsworthy

Date

MINUTES FOR THE MEETING OF THE OXFORD-OHOKA COMMUNITY BOARD HELD AT THE OXFORD TOWN HALL, MAIN STREET, OXFORD ON WEDNESDAY 5 JUNE 2024 AT 7PM.

PRESENT

S Barkle (Chairperson), T Robson (Deputy Chairperson), M Brown, T Fulton, R Harpur, N Mealings (left 9:20pm) and P Merrifield.

IN ATTENDANCE

G Cleary (General Manager Utilities and Roding), K Simpson (3 Waters Manager), C Fahey (Water and Wastewater Asset Manager), E Bucks (Project Manager), T Kunkel (Governance Team Leader) and C Fowler-Jenkins (Governance Support Officer).

There were five members of the public present.

1. APOLOGIES

Moved: S Barkle

Seconded: N Mealings

THAT an apology for absence be received and sustained from M Wilson.

CARRIED

2. PUBLIC FORUM

Nil.

3. CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

Item 7.2 – T Fulton and T Robson declared a conflict as they were financial members of the Oxford Promotions Action Committee.

4. CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES

4.1. Minutes of the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board Meeting– 8 May 2024

Moved: N Mealings

Seconded: P Merrifield

THAT the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board:

- (a) **Confirms** the circulated Minutes of the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board meeting, held on 8 May 2024, as a true and accurate record.

CARRIED

4.2. Matters Arising (From Minutes)

There were no matters arising.

5. DEPUTATIONS AND PRESENTATIONS

5.1. Nitrate Levels in Drinking Water – Luis Arevalo

L Arevalo reported that he was part of a growing group of Waimakariri residents concerned with the current levels of nitrate in the district's drinking water. They wanted clean, safe drinking water and all water authorities to be open to the public about local and international research about nitrate.

L Arevalo noted that they believed health issues were caused by lower levels of nitrates than the current maximum acceptable value (MAV) of nitrates in drinking water. Therefore, they wanted all relevant authorities to lower the MAV levels of nitrates in New Zealand drinking water in line with updated international research. He acknowledged that the national MAV level for nitrate in drinking water was currently 11.3 mg/l and that nitrate levels in the Waimakariri District's drinking water supplies did not exceed the MAV. However, technology and research have debunked much of the data used to determine the MAV level in the 1950s.

L Arevalo advised that numerous local and international studies suggest a correlation between nitrate levels below the current MAV and major health implications. They were aware various entities had different roles and responsibilities pertaining to nitrates in drinking water. They understood that the Ministry of Health set the MAV, and the Council was only responsible for ensuring that nitrates in the Waimakariri's water supply remained below MAV. However, they wish to request the Board and the Council to advocate for the lowering of the MAV level for nitrate in drinking water.

P Merrifield sought clarification on whether the MAV level only applied to Council water supplies or if it also included private wells. L Arevalo understood that private wells were the responsibility of the well owners. However, he noted that the water from Council water supplies and private wells came from the same groundwater source.

T Fulton enquired if L Arevalo had their water supply tested. L Arevalo noted he had been actively worried about the state of the water for a number of years. They had their water tested through the Greenpeace testing which came out as just under half the MAV.

It was agreed that the Board meeting should be adjourned at 7:12 pm to enable the Board to have a workshop on Nitrates.

Moved: S Barkle

Seconded: T Robson

THAT the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board:

- (a) **Agrees** to adjourn the Board meeting to enable the Board to hold a workshop regarding nitrates in the Council's water supplies.

CARRIED

Moved: S Barkle

Seconded: T Robson

THAT the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board:

- (a) **Agrees** that the Board meeting be reconvened at 8:08pm.

CARRIED

The Board meeting reconvened at 8:08pm.

6. **ADJOURNED BUSINESS**

Nil.

7. REPORTS

7.1. West Eyreton Water Supply Upgrades – C Fahey (Water and Wastewater Asset Manager) and E Brucks (Project Manager)

C Fahey updated the Board on the Ultraviolet (UV) upgrades planned for the West Eyreton headworks site at 1467 North Eyre Road, which was to be constructed in the 2024/25 financial year. She noted that the water source at West Eyreton was of high quality, and the additional treatment was not because the water had changed; it was purely a response to the new Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules (DWQAR). C Fahey advised that the work would be funded on a district-wide basis under the District UV rate

Responding to a question from S Barkle, C Fahey confirmed that the district-wide UV rate only applied to users of the Council's water supplies.

M Brown asked if this project was yet to go out to tender and C Fahey noted that it did.

Moved: T Ronson

Seconded P Merrifield

THAT the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240520080573.
- (b) **Notes** that UV treatment equipment will be installed in the 2024/25 financial year at the West Eyreton water supply headworks within a new treatment building to achieve compliance with the new Drinking Water Quality Assurance Rules.
- (c) **Notes** that this project will be funded on a district-wide basis from the District UV Account.
- (d) **Circulates** this report for information to the Water Supply Advisory Group members.

CARRIED

7.2. Application to the Oxford-Ohoka Community Boards 2023/24 Discretionary Grant Fund - Kay Rabe (Governance Advisor)

T Fulton and T Robson, having declared a conflict of interest, sat back from the table during this report's consideration.

T Kunkel took the report as read, and there were no questions from elected members.

Moved: S Barkle

Seconded: N Mealings

THAT the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board:

- (a) **Receives** report No. 240506071358.
- (b) **Approves** a grant of \$750 to the Oxford Promotions Action Committee towards lighting the tree near the Library for the Matariki Winter Lights Festival.

CARRIED

8. CORRESPONDENCE

Nil.

9. CHAIRPERSON'S REPORT

9.1. Chairperson's Report for May 2024

- Noted that the Council recommended in its 2024-34 Long Term Plan (LTP) that the Mandeville Resurgence Project be put off for another financial year so that more public consultation could take place. She understood that more consultation was needed; however, she hoped that this could still occur this coming financial year. The residents who were impacted by flooding in the area have been waiting a long time for some action, and it seemed the Council was very close to finding a solution.
- The LTP recommendation was to approve the \$1.3 million for the upgrade of the Southbrook Sports Club for the next financial year, so that the club should be given more time to fundraise. She questioned what precedence this would set for other sports clubs' refurbishments. However, she noted that the Council would consider every case on its merits.

G Cleary noted that the Southbrook decision involved pushing money out to year four of the LTP. It was a placeholder for one-third of that cost, and it was reliant on the Southbrook Club fundraising the remainder of that money.

- Requested further information about the proposed intersection upgrades that have been postponed in the LTP, such as the Tram /Two Chain Roads upgrades and the Tram /Oxford Roads upgrades. More information was required on what the proposed upgrades would entail. Also, information was required about what other future intersection upgrades were proposed for Tram Road, in particular, at the No10/Tram and McHughs/Tram/Bradleys intersection.

G Cleary noted that the Tram /Oxford Road intersection and the Two Chain Road intersection both proposed minor improvements at the intersection, including the rural intersection ahead warning signage, with a slow speed through the intersection. The projects had been moved out because they relied on the approval of those variable speed limits. That was included in the Council's Speed Management Plan, which would, however, not be progressing further until there was further clarification from the Central Government about speed limits. The McHughs/Tram/Bradleys Roads roundabout was currently being designed, and construction would likely take place in 2024/25. However, this was dependent on co-funding from the New Zealand Transport Agency (Waka Kotahi). The design of the Tram /No 10 Roads intersection would be undertaken in 2025/26, and construction was planned for 2026/27, which was subject to co-funding.

- The Woodstock Quarry consent application had now closed. The commissioners had until 25 June 2024 to decide. They were issued a two-week extension because one of the commissioners was unavailable for two weeks, and they felt they needed all of their input to be able to process all of the information.
- The Mandeville Village Partnership had asked to enter a late submission to the District Plan in response to the RIDL submission for their proposed land zoning change in Ohoka. It was expected that their submission would be essentially the same as their submission to Plan Change 31. The essence of that was that they were not opposed to the subdivision but wanted to be the main commercial hub for the area.

Moved: P Merrifield

Seconded: T Fulton

THAT the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board:

- (a) **Receives** the verbal update from the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board Chairperson.

CARRIED

10. **MATTERS FOR INFORMATION**

- 10.1. Rangiora-Ashley Community Board Meeting Minutes 8 May 2024.
- 10.2. Oxford-Ohoka Community Board Meeting Minutes 8 May 2024.
- 10.3. Woodend-Sefton Community Board Meeting Minutes 13 May 2024.
- 10.4. Kaiapoi-Tuahiw Community Board Meeting Minutes 20 May 2024.
- 10.5. Northern Pegasus Bay Bylaw 2024 – Draft for Consultation – Report to Council Meeting 7 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.6. Health, Safety and Wellbeing Report April 2024 – Report to Council Meeting 7 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.7. Roading Staff Submission May 2024 – Request for Changes to the Rooding Capital Works Budget – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.8. Roading Staff Submission May 2024 – Proposed Adjustments to Walking and Cycling Budgets – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.9. Solid Waste – Utilities and Rooding Department Staff Submission to the Draft 2024-34 Long Term Plan – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.10. Water Supply – Utilities and Rooding Department Staff Submission to the Draft 2024-34 Long Term Plan – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.11. Mandeville Resurgence and Channel Diversion Upgrade Project Stage 1 Staff Submission for 2024-34 Long Term Plan – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board.
- 10.12. Drainage Staff Submission to Long Term Plan 2024-2034 – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.13. Wastewater – Utilities and Rooding Department Staff Submission to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.14. Housing for the Elderly – Proposed new Housing Development – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.15. Zone Implementation Programme Addendum (ZIPA) Capital Works Programme 2024/25 – Report to Utilities and Rooding Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.16. Decision for Unused Water Take Consents – Report to Utilities and Rooding Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.17. July 2023 Flood Recovery Progress Update – Report to Utilities and Rooding Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.18. Kaiapoi Community Hub – Reallocation of Budget – Report to Community and Recreation Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.19. Aquatics May Report – Report to Community and Recreation Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.20. Libraries Update to 16 May 2024 – Report to Community and Recreation Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.

Public Excluded

- 10.21. Land Purchase for Ohoka Water Treatment Plant Upgrade – Report to Council Meeting 7 May 2024 – Circulates to the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board.

Moved: S Barkle

Seconded: M Brown

THAT the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board:

- (a) **Receives** the information in Items.10.1 to 10.20.
- (b) **Receives** the separately circulated public excluded information in item 10.21, which is to remain public excluded.

CARRIED

11. **MEMBERS' INFORMATION EXCHANGE**

T Robson

- The Ashley Gorge Advisory Group had a working bee to clear the track and was looking at other things that would need to be done for the walking track in terms of signage, timber retaining walls and how much it was going to cost. The group would be holding another working bee with the Air Cadets to go through and mulch the material that had been pulled out and finish the last of the clearance; whereafter they would be able to start the construction of the track. The group was advertising in the Oxford Observer as well as talking to the Rangiora Tramping Club, Lions and other groups regarding help with the trapping programme. They had just brought a new selection of traps. They discussed the vegetation clearance that had been raised with Council staff which had now been completed.

T Fulton

- Waimakariri Water Zone Committee.
 - Action Plan Projects funded:
 - Bittern Inanga Rushland, Lees Road, Kaiapoi - \$15,000
 - Hunters Stream, Cust \$5,285
 - Ketchum Cottage, Fernside \$7,210
 - O'Kair Lagoon, Lees Rd, Kaiapoi \$15,000
 - Pohio Wetland, Kaiapoi \$11,700
 - Riparian Enhancement Project, Whiterock Mains \$6,000
 - Sefton Saltwater Catchment Group \$2,805
 - Waimakariri Biodiversity Working Group \$3,000
 - Total Spend \$66,000
 - Ashley Rakahuri Rivercare Group – Estuary Shorebird Monitoring (approved July 2023 for ongoing work) – Spend \$9,000.
 - Action Plan funds were now fully allocated in the 2023/24 financial year.
 - The other projects considered were – Aerial Mapping, Black Maps Ltd, Oxford Dary Sky Project – Oxford Dark Sky Group, Tuhaitara Wetland to Sea Corridor.
 - Suggested that the Board have a discussion on the possibility of establishing a “Water Committee” for the Waimakariri District, as the Waimakariri Water Zone Committee may be dissolving.
- Attended:
 - Audit and Risk Committee meeting.
 - Council Workshop Session.
 - Long Term Plan Deliberations.
 - Oxford Health and Fitness Centre Trust.
 - Utilities and Roading Committee meeting.
 - District Planning and Regulation Committee meeting.
 - Council Briefing.
 - Community and Recreation Committee meeting.
- Met Calen Layendecker from the North Canterbury Equestrian Group, who was interested in expanding trail access and improving road safety.
- Email query about the possible use of the Oxford Club for a Civil Defence fundraiser.
- Email from a Mulcocks Road, Flaxton resident with concerns about a resource consent process and changes to Lineside Road access.

M Brown

- The repairs on Tram Road (300m from turning left into Earlys Road) were sinking.
- Two years ago, there was a splitter island being considered at the Earlys Road/Tram Road intersection. He requested that the Board be updated on this project.
- Requested an update on the consultation regarding the West Eyreton Tennis Club building.

R Harpur

- Questioned how long it took to get plans done for a roundabout. G Cleary noted that it was subject to funding.
- He asked what was being planned for the No 10 Road/Tram Road intersection. G Cleary noted that was one of the considerations the Council had postponed in the LTP budget.

P Merrifield

- North Canterbury Pony Club – Tried to connect the Club with North Canterbury Enterprise to access funding for their forthcoming event.
- Oxford Museum Monthly meeting – Suggested approaching the Board for funding for a new roadside flag.
- Ashley Gorge Reserve— Talked to Jean Pierre about Greenspace funding and what happened at the end of the financial year. Money had been set aside, but it had been tangled up with the wheelchair track.
- Attended Utilities and Roading Committee meeting – good staff presentations.
- Grey Power North Canterbury – Lots of concerns for older people. Money, rates, transport, digital understanding, cashless banking. Provided an update on what the Board was doing.
- Representation Review Working Party Meeting—The working party had been terminated. It had to be based on the 2018 census because the 2023 data was not yet available.

N Mealings

- 2024/34 Long Term Plan Hearings—50 of the 344 individuals and organisations that submitted to the LTP presented their submissions to the Council in person over three days in Kaiapoi, Oxford, and Rangiora.
- Attended
 - Council Briefing.
 - Mandeville Sports Club Board meeting – Working on Incorporated Societies Act required changes and security.
 - Long Term Plan Deliberations.
 - Proposed District Plan Hearings – Stream 12A, rezoning commercial, Oxford and Settlement zones and Pegasus resort zone.
- Meeting with M Christensen - Met with the Chair of Toward Pest Free Waitaha, an emerging initiative of Pest Free New Zealand that was seeking to effect 'landscape-scale' eradication of pests. I wanted to expand to cover the Banks Peninsula through Selwyn and Waimakariri.
- Mandeville Sports Club Board catch-up with staff - Monthly meeting with Greenspace Team. Security issues, planting plan going out for club feedback, facilities, and progress on projects.
- Attended WasteMINZ Conference – Four days bringing Territorial Authorities, individuals and organisations across the Waste Sector together to share and learn about new technologies, initiatives, challenges and opportunities for waste reduction. Lots of inspiration from social enterprises, Councils, products and services and some excellent speakers. The Council was looking forward to putting some of our learnings into action in Waimakariri.
- Representation Review Working Party meeting – The group resolved to dissolve for this triennium and be reconvened by the next the Council in 2026/27. Due to unavailability of 2023 census data, we would have to rely on outdated 2018 Census Data, which would produce similar results to the previous review done in 2022. As we are not legislatively required to undertake a review until 2026/27, it was considered prudent to wait rather than spend time and funds without up-to-date data.

12. **CONSULTATION PROJECTS**

12.1. **Northern Pegasus Bay Bylaw**

<https://letstalk.waimakariri.govt.nz/northern-pegasus-bay-bylaw-2024>

Consultation closed on Friday 14 June 2024.

The Board noted the consultation projects.

13. **BOARD FUNDING UPDATE**

13.1. **Board Discretionary Grant**

Balance as at 31 May 2024 was \$1,247.16.

13.2. **General Landscaping Fund**

Balance as at 31 May 2024 was \$13,680.

The Board noted the funding update.

14. **MEDIA ITEMS**

- The completion of the Waimakariri Gorge Bridge.
- S Barkel requested that the Board be provided updated information on the Discretionary grants to publish on the Board's webpage.
- Update of the Woodstock Quarry.

15. **QUESTIONS UNDER STANDING ORDERS**

Nil.

16. **URGENT GENERAL BUSINESS UNDER STANDING ORDERS**

Nil.

NEXT MEETING

The next meeting of the Oxford-Ohoka Community Board was scheduled for 7pm, Wednesday 3 July 2024 at the Oxford Town Hall.

THERE BEING NO FURTHER BUSINESS THE MEETING CLOSED AT 9:16PM.

CONFIRMED

Chairperson

Date

**MINUTES FOR THE MEETING OF THE WOODEND-SEFTON COMMUNITY BOARD
HELD AT THE WOODEND COMMUNITY CENTRE, SCHOOL ROAD, WOODEND ON
MONDAY 10 JUNE 2024 AT 5.30PM.**

PRESENT

S Powell (Chairperson), M Paterson (Deputy Chair), B Cairns, I Fong, R Mather, P Redmond and A Thompspon.

IN ATTENDANCE

K LaValley (General Manager Planning, Regulation and Environment), J Recker (Stormwater and Waterways Manager) and K Rabe (Governance Advisor).

There were four members of the public present.

1 APOLOGIES

There were no apologies.

2 CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

A Thompson and I Fong declared an interest in item 6.1 Waikuku Beach Drainage Investigations Update, as they are both residents within the Waikuku Beach community.

3 CONFIRMATION MINUTES

**3.1 Minutes of the Woodend-Sefton Community Board Meeting –
13 May 2024**

R Mather noted that in item 6.5 of the minutes it is unclear who was required to repay \$500 funding. The wording in the minutes would be amended to read “\$500 which was allocated for shelving to the Waikuku Beach Indoor Market was to be returned given that the allocated funds were spent on tables and chairs instead of shelving as requested”.

Moved: R Mather

Seconded: P Redmond

THAT the Woodend-Sefton Community Board:

- (a) **Confirms** the Minutes of the Woodend-Sefton Community Board meeting held on 13 May 2024, subject to the amended sentence as shown above.

CARRIED

3.2 Matters Arising

Nil.

4 DEPUTATIONS AND PRESENTATIONS FROM THE COMMUNITY

4.1 D Wethey and A Scott – Woodend Beach Playground and Toilets

Mr D Wethey and Ms A Scott were in attendance to speak to the Board regarding the proposed replacement of the Woodend Beach toilets. D Wethey tabled his submission to the Council's 2021-2031 Long Term Plan (Trim Ref: 240611093903) on the same topic. He had received a positive response from the Mayor and yet two and a half years later there had been no action. Mr Wethey appealed to the Board for its support in moving this project forward with some urgency.

Mr Wethey noted that in the time that residents were waiting for the toilets to be replaced Saltwater Creek had its carpark maintained and new toilets installed, Waikuku Beach and Pegasus Beach had received viewing platforms and Pegasus Beach had new toilets installed. P Redmond noted that the Saltwater Creek toilets and car park maintenance were carried out by New Zealand Transport Authority and not the Council.

S Powell thanked Mr Wethey and Ms Scott for their presentation and assured them that the replacement of the Woodend Beach toilets and playground were a priority for the Board and it was expecting a report on this matter in July 2024. She explained that there had been delays due to winter weather events and in finding the best location for the replacement toilets. S Powell agreed to pass on any information that the Board received regarding these projects.

5 ADJOURNED BUSINESS

Nil.

6 REPORTS

6.1 Waikuku Beach Drainage Investigations Update – K Simpson (3 Waters Manager) and J Recker (Stormwater and Waterways Manager)

J Recker gave a brief update on drainage investigations at Waikuku Beach detailed in the report.

I Fong requested clarification regarding the Swindells/Park Street pump stations and was told that a permanent pumpstation was budgeted for the 2028/29 financial year which would service the Swindells/Park Terrace/Rotten Row area with the option to potentially include the campground. There would also be budget in the 2035/36 financial year for a Taranaki Stream pumpstation which would pump from the Taranaki Stream when the Ashley River was high.

S Powell noted that during the last flooding event, a pump had been used to mitigate flooding on Beach Road and queried if the pump would be available for every flooding event in the future. J Recker noted that checking the availability of the pump was included on the checklist for Waikuku Beach flood preparedness.

A Thompson thanked J Recker for a positive report and clarified that the projects listed in table 2 of the report were separate projects and were not included in the projects specified in the recommendations and specifically asked about Rotton Row. J Recker confirmed that the remedial work for Rotton Row would be substantial with funding allocated for the 2028/29 financial year. He also noted that McIntosh Drain capacity upgrade had been moved forward to mitigate flooding in Woodend.

In response to a question from I Fong, J Recker replied that the assessment was scheduled to be completed in September 2024 and that he would be updating the Board once it had been completed.

A Thompson asked if there was any indication of what options would be considered and was told that a range of options would be assessed and would cover affordability, disruption and efficiency.

S Powell queried if the swales in Stalkers Road had been completed and J Recker replied that they had been.

Concern was raised regarding budgets that had been set years previously would not be sufficient for the work now required.

Moved: A Thompson

Seconded: R Mather

THAT the Woodend-Sefton Community Board:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240527085488
- (b) **Notes** the following progress on several areas identified for further investigation in Waikuku Beach:
 - **July 2023 Immediate Works** –
 - 31 Broadway Avenue – Install of two non-return valves was completed in August 2023.
 - 10 Beach Crescent and Rotton Row – Design being finalised and coordinated with campground works.
 - **Swindells Road** – Temporary pump procured. Drainage upgrade to commence construction in August 2024.
 - **Waikuku Beach Domain** – An options assessment was completed (TRIM 240528085817) with short to long term options to improve the drainage at this location.
 - **Reserve Road** – Works to upgrade culverts crossing Bridge Road will be implemented as part of the Coastal Urban minor drainage improvements budget in 2024/25 financial year.
 - **39 Kings Avenue** – Construction is underway for wastewater, roading and stormwater improvements at Kings Ave, Waikuku Beach.
 - **Northside Drive** - Works have been programmed for this financial year to install back-flow prevention on the existing DN375 culvert.
 - **Kings Avenue Culvert Upgrade** - Culvert upgrade works to commence construction in 2024/25 financial year.
 - **Waikuku Assessment** - A detailed modelling assessment to determine the cause of flooding during the July 2023 event is underway and is expected to be completed by August 2024.
- (c) **Notes** that a report will be brought to the Woodend-Sefton Community Board for feedback on the proposed upgrading works in the Swindells Road.
- (d) **Circulates** this report to the Utilities and Roading Committee for their information.

CARRIED

S Powell stated that it was reassuring to know that a plan was in place going forward to mitigate flooding at Waikuku Beach.

B Cairns noted that this was a good report with substantial information detailing practical solutions.

7 **CORRESPONDENCE**

Nil.

8 **CHAIRPERSON'S REPORT**

8.1 **Chairperson's Report for May 2024**

Moved: S Powell

Seconded: I Fong

THAT the Woodend-Sefton Community Board:

- (a) **Receives** the report from the Woodend-Sefton Community Board Chairperson (TRIM: 240604089455).

CARRIED

9 **MATTERS FOR INFORMATION**

- 9.1. **Rangiora-Ashley Community Board Meeting Minutes 8 May 2024.**
- 9.2. **Oxford-Ohoka Community Board Meeting Minutes 8 May 2024.**
- 9.3. **Kaipoi-Tuahiwi Community Board Meeting Minutes 20 May 2024.**
- 9.4. **Northern Pegasus Bay Bylaw 2024 – Draft for Consultation – Report to Council Meeting 7 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.5. **Health, Safety and Wellbeing Report April 2024 – Report to Council Meeting 7 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.6. **Roading Staff Submission Mau 2024 – Request for Changes to the Rooding Capital Works Budget – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.7. **Roading Staff Submission May 2024 – Proposed Adjustments to Walking and Cycling Budgets – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.8. **Solid Waste – Utilities and Rooding Department Staff Submission to the Draft 2024-34 Long Term Plan – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.9. **Water Supply – Utilities and Rooding Department Staff Submission to the Draft 2024-34 Long Term Plan – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.10. **Drainage Staff Submission to Long Term Plan 2024-2034 – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.11. **Wastewater – Utilities and Rooding Department Staff Submission to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.12. **Housing for the Elderly – Proposed new Housing Development – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.13. **Zone Implementation Programme Addendum (ZIPA) Capital Works Programme 2024/25 – Report to Utilities and Rooding Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.14. **Decision for Unused Water Take Consents – Report to Utilities and Rooding Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.15. **July 2023 Flood Recovery Progress Update – Report to Utilities and Rooding Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 9.16. **Kaipoi Community Hub – Reallocation of Budget – Report to Community and Recreation Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**

9.17. **Aquatics May Report – Report to Community and Recreation Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**

9.18. **Libraries Update to 16 May 2024 – Report to Community and Recreation Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**

Moved: R Mather

Seconded: B Cairns

THAT the Woodend-Sefton Community Board:

(a) **Receives** the information in Items 9.1 to 9.18.

CARRIED

10 MEMBERS' INFORMATION EXCHANGE

10.1 Brent Cairns

- SkateJam events, Kaiapoi during the weekend, then Oxford and on the 8th June in Rangiora. Have asked the community team if Pegasus/Woodend/Ravenswood can be included into an events calendar as its the fastest growing part of our district. Report is coming back to Community and Recreation Committee.
- Review is being done re mobility parks on Kaiapoi wharf. A potentially additional mobility park will support the popular river queen cruises and the very popular Paris for the weekend.
- Reviewing town centre flags, which would need replacing in around a years' time. Took the opportunity to review locations ie including the likes of Woodend, Pegasus, Ravenswood along with how local designers were being involved in the designs and whether we had some flags for the likes of Anzac and Matariki holidays.
- Greenspace to provide mulch and edging for the Woodend/Pegasus food forest. This would tidy up the edges and nourish the trees.
- NZTA were around 60% through the process of purchasing properties for the Woodend bypass.
- Virtual Work and Income New Zealand (WINZ) trial had been set up in Hurunui, allowing clients from Culverden and Cheviot to have meetings with WINZ via Teams... this trial could be extended and could be of value to those clients that are unable to visit the Rangiora office.
 - WINZ staff had been told to be tougher with sanctioning clients - ie for sabotaging interviews etc... which could result in 50% reduction in benefits and on third strike could result in 13 week cancellation of benefit. When children were involved, that was taken into account.
 - WINZ had been told that when fixed contracts come to an end, they would not be renewed and people leaving would not be replaced.
 - Government had told WINZ to get people out of emergency housing in Canterbury. Currently there were 266 people/families in emergency housing.
- Met with Lions group that were keen to provide considerable amount of land in Woodend to grow food for the community. Connected with Food Secure North Canterbury and they in turn were looking at raising funds for seed etc.

- Attended Waimakariri Access Group meeting, things raised were Mobility Parking time limits, issues for some at Dudley pool re changing, Bocca court markings at Mainpower stadium. Almost all issues have been dealt with by staff.
- Attended Food Secure North Canterbury meeting. The group are looking at funding for edible trees and plants so we could help communities create pocket food forests.
- There were a number of interested groups willing to help with creating food forests, Rangiora and Oxford especially.
- Working with Kaiapoi Community wellbeing re an idea to provide families with food in buckets to take away and grow.
- Noted that a resident had given a donation towards a shelter for the Gladstone Dog Park and staff would be progressing this project.

10.2 **Rhonda Mather**

- Attended GreyPower meeting at Rangiora RSA.
- LTP Hearing – supported the Board's Chair in presenting to the Hearing Panel in Kaiapoi.
- LTP Hearing – presented personal submission which focused mainly on community facilities and hire fees.
- Board Meeting.
- Site meeting re street seating on Bob Robertson Drive with Greenspace staff and the Chair.
- Attended three of the free NZ Music month concerts at the libraries. This was an excellent initiative providing a free opportunity for a variety of entertainment to members of the community who might not normally attend such events for cost or other reasons. My personal favourite of the 3 concerts I saw was the WDC Waiata group.
- Made contact with Ravenswood Developments Ltd head office in Wanaka to ask if they would consider supplying an additional seat or two along Bob Robertson Drive or elsewhere in Ravenswood. The response was positive, but will depend on a final cost. At time of writing this, I am waiting to receive a cost update from Julie.
- Liaised with Ken from the Greenspace team about tree trimming required along the southern end of Infinity Drive. This has now been done with the effect being increased light for residents and a safer passage for trucks, cyclists and pedestrians (unobstructed by tree branches).
- Contacted Roding regarding a street sweeper truck working in Pegasus at 6.15am one morning. Had a call back from Corde saying that a new driver was unaware he was not supposed to do the residential area so early and it will not happen again.
- A reminder that Ronel's Community Cuppa is on at the Pegasus Community Centre at 10am on Wednesday 12th June and all Community Board members are welcome to attend. The guest speakers will be Dean from Civil Defense, plus Mike and Sylvia with an update regarding the Northern Pegasus Bay Bylaw.
- Update on the decision for two seats to be installed on Bob Robertson Drive and after working with the developers had received commitment on the developers committing to supplying a further two benches. A plaque to commemorate Bob Robertson would be included in this project.

10.3 **Philip Redmond**

- Property Portfolio Working Group visit to Otautahi Community Housing Trust - Registered housing provider for elderly and social housing.
- Art on the Quay – Ruataniwha – exhibition opening.
- LTP Hearings at Kaiapoi, Oxford and Rangiora via Teams due to Covid.
- Coastguard North Canterbury - Dedication Blackwell fast water rescue boat and four-wheel drive command unit. First in New Zealand.
- LTP Deliberations – minor changes to reflect submissions, theme affordability.
- Waimakariri Health Advisory Group – advertising for independent Chair.
- Representation Review Working Group – census data unavailable therefore recommendation not to proceed.

10.4 **Ian Fong**

- Pegasus Residents Group – AGM was on 24 July 2024 at 7pm. All members were invited to attend.
- Sefton Hall Committee - Car parking area and heating discussed. Also had two separate meetings regarding fund raising with a quiz night planned. Applied for extra funding from the WDC LTP.
Paul Williams was dealing with the sewage problem at the domain.
- Pegasus Residents Group – Open Day for the Community Emergency Hub to be held on Sunday 20 October 2024. Would be good if WDC Civil Defence Team attended. Pegasus Welcome signage discussed.

10.5 **A Thompson**

Nothing to report.

10.6 **Mark Paterson**

Busy couple of months and pleased with the success of the Hangi held last month.

11 **CONSULTATION PROJECTS**

11.1 **Northern Pegasus Bay Bylaw**

<https://letstalk.waimakariri.govt.nz/northern-pegasus-bay-bylaw-2024>

Consultation Closes on Sunday 16 June 2024.

12 **BOARD FUNDING UPDATE**

12.1 **Board Discretionary Grant**

Balance as at 31 May 2024: \$726.73

12.2 **General Landscaping Fund**

Balance as at 31 May 2024: \$13,680.

13 MEDIA ITEMS

Viewing platforms and benches on Bob Robertson Drive.

14 QUESTIONS UNDER STANDING ORDERS

Nil.

15 URGENT GENERAL BUSINESS UNDER STANDING ORDERS

Nil.

NEXT MEETING

The next meeting of the Woodend-Sefton Community Board is scheduled for 5.30pm, Monday 8 July 2024 at the Woodend Community Centre, School Road, Woodend.

THERE BEING NO FURTHER BUSINESS THE MEETING CONCLUDED AT 6.17PM

CONFIRMED

Chairperson

Date

Workshop
(6.17 – 6.45pm)

- *Community Service Awards Nominations discussion*
- *Members Forum*
 - *Significant feedback on the Beach Volleyball Court.*
 - *200 responses from local youth regarding a youth space in Pegasus*
 - *Agreed that a letter be sent to the Associate Minister of Transport who is also the local Member of Parliament regarding the Board's concern at the review for school bus services given that existing public transport is not a feasible alternative. It was also agreed that School Boards be encouraged to advocate for school bus services.*
 - *Agreed that a draft submission on the Northern Pegasus Bay Bylaw be circulated for comment.*

MINUTES OF THE MEETING OF THE RANGIORA-ASHLEY COMMUNITY BOARD HELD IN THE COUNCIL CHAMBER, 215 HIGH STREET, RANGIORA, ON WEDNESDAY, 12 JUNE MAY 2024, AT 7 PM.

PRESENT

J Gerard (Chairperson), R Brine, I Campbell, L McClure, B McLaren, M Fleming, J Goldsworthy, J Ward, S Wilkinson, and P Williams.

IN ATTENDANCE

S Hart (General Manager Strategy, Engagement and Economic Development), G Stephens (Design and Planning Team Leader), S Binder (Senior Transportation Engineer), H Downie (Senior Advisor Strategy and Program), T Kunkel (Governance Team Leader) and E Stubbs (Governance Support Officer).

There were three members of the public present.

1. ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The Chairperson congratulated Bernie Power on being recognised in the King's Birthday Honours and receiving the King's Service Medal for service to the community. B Power had made a significant contribution to the Waimakariri District for over 60 years.

The Chairperson also congratulated the Rangiora Volunteer Fire Brigade on its 150th anniversary of community service on 2 June 2024. The brigade was established in 1874, when Rangiora was still a small sawmilling town, and fires were put out by bucket brigades. Now they respond to over 400 incidents annually.

2. APOLOGIES

Moved: J Gerard

Seconded: J Goldsworthy

Apologies were received and sustained from K Barnett and M Clarke for their absence.

CARRIED

3. CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

Item 7.2 - B McLaren as a current member of the Rangiora Community Patrol.

4. CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES

4.1. Minutes of the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board – 8 May 2024

Moved: J Goldsworthy

Seconded: P Williams

THAT the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board:

- (a) **Confirms**, as a true and accurate record, the circulated Minutes of the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board meeting held on 8 May 2024.

CARRIED

4.2. **Matters Arising (From Minutes)**

- **Quarry and landfill in Loburn** – T Kunkel advised that the consent application submitted by Protranz International Limited to undertake quarrying activities and construct and operate a landfill on Quarry Road, Loburn, was still on hold, awaiting further information from the applicant. However, staff would keep the Board updated. She noted that the Council's Planning Team had confirmed that the applicant had requested for the consent application to be publicly notified.

5. **DEPUTATIONS AND PRESENTATIONS**

Nil.

6. **ADJOURNED BUSINESS**

Nil.

7. **REPORTS**

7.1. **Environment Canterbury Air Quality Monitoring Station – C Taylor-Claude (Parks Officer)**

G Stephens presented the report on behalf of C Taylor-Claude and noted that approval was sought to select a backup location to install an air quality monitoring station following a request from Environment Canterbury (ECan). ECan's current site for air quality monitoring at St Joseph's School may soon be unavailable, and staff had been working with ECan to identify potential alternative locations if required. ECan would require 30-40m² for the monitoring station in an area away from houses (chimneys), large trees, and industrial and commercial areas. Hence the recommended site option was 151 Northbrook Road (Rangiora East Stormwater Reserve). The monitoring station would be funded by ECan and was cost-neutral to the Council. ECan would be required to pay a Licence to Occupy and would pay an annual fee of \$1,000 to the Council for the use of the land.

I Campbell questioned the consultation with the neighbouring property owners. G Stephens commented that once a site had been identified, ECan would consult the neighbouring property owners, and the Council would request to view the results.

I Campbell further asked if it would not be prudent to consult with the neighbouring property owners before a decision is made on the location of the air quality monitoring station. G Stephens commented that the visual impact of an air quality monitoring station at the recommended location would be minimal.

P Williams noted that there had been negative public feedback about air quality monitoring. He enquired if the Council had a Communications Plan to inform the public of the station's relocation. S Hart advised that if the Board wished, it could include a recommendation regarding appropriate public consultation.

L McClure sought clarity on where the air quality monitoring station would be located on the Rangiora East Stormwater Reserve. G Stephens noted that an exact location was yet to be determined; however, it was envisaged that it would be near Northbrook Road to ensure reasonable access to services.

L McClure commented that the recommended location was in a high-foot-traffic area, especially with children and dog walkers. She suggested that a more appropriate location may be Koura Reserve, where there is more vegetation and, therefore, fewer walkers. G Stephens explained that the site had been considered; however, five houses would look directly out onto an air quality monitoring station at this location.

J Ward noted that the Rangiora East Stormwater Reserve would be affected by the development of the proposed Rangiora Eastern Link Road and questioned whether this had been considered. G Stephens noted that the proposed air quality monitoring station would be a temporary structure without foundations that could be easily relocated. Also, the proposed lease was only for five 5 years with the option to terminate with one month's notice.

Responding to a question from J Goldsworthy, G Stephens confirmed that ECan had not advised when the air quality monitoring station would need to be relocated.

P Williams enquired if the air quality monitoring station would need access to a power connection. G Stephens explained that once a location was determined, ECan would set up a small solar-powered device that required no power connection. This setup would be on the site for approximately one year to determine whether the site was appropriate in the long term. Once this initial monitoring had been completed and the site was found satisfactory, a larger structure would be installed, which would need a power connection.

S Wilkinson questioned if the Council had a legal or moral obligation to provide a location for an air quality monitoring station. S Hart noted that although the Council did not have an obligation to provide a site for the station, it was obligated to ensure the best quality of life for its residents.

S Wilkinson asked what the Council's position would be if the neighbours opposed the insulation of an air quality monitoring station in a Council reserve. G Stephens commented that the Board had delegated authority in this space and a report could be brought to the Board following public consultation.

M Fleming suggested that public consultation should be carried out on the possibility of locating an air quality monitoring station in the Rangiora East Stormwater or the Koura Reserve to ascertain the location the public preferred.

Moved: P Williams

Seconded: R Brine

THAT the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board:

- (a) **Receives** Report No. 240531088386.
- (b) **Approves** 151 Northbrook Road or Koura Reserve, Rangiora, as the location, subject to satisfactory community feedback upon public consultation.
- (c) **Notes** that this proposal will be cost-neutral to the Council, as Environment Canterbury would be paying any establishment and maintenance costs of the air quality monitoring station and any fees associated with the License to Occupy, including an establishment fee of \$250+ GST for the License to Occupy and an annual rental fee of \$1,000+ GST.
- (d) **Notes** that the installation of the air quality monitoring station will not change the use of the stormwater reserve or impede public access.
- (e) **Notes** there may be an impact on amenity values for neighbouring properties and low vegetation will be planted around the structure, which will be paid for by Environment Canterbury.

- (f) **Notes** that 151 Northbrook Road, Rangiora is the preferred location for Environment Canterbury.
- (g) **Notes** that 151 Northbrook Road, Rangiora, is a stormwater asset; the Greenspace Team will, therefore, work with 3 Waters on the installation of the air quality monitoring station if this location is approved.
- (h) **Delegates** to the Property Manager authority to complete and execute any documentation required in conjunction with implementing a Licence to Occupy with Environment Canterbury over the preferred location in line with the Board's approval.
- (i) **Requests** that the Council's Communications and Engagement Team to work with Environment Canterbury on the development of an appropriate Communications Plan to inform the public of the air quality monitoring station's relocation.

CARRIED

P Williams noted the negative public feedback about air quality monitoring and believed that would be prudent to consult with the neighbouring property owners before a decision was made on the location of the air quality monitoring station.

R Brine acknowledged the view that it may be more appropriate to locate the air quality monitoring station in the Koura Reserve. He, therefore, supported public consultation on the possibility of locating the station in the Rangiora East Stormwater or the Koura Reserve.

J Ward supported the motion; however, believed that the Koura Reserve would be a better location for an air quality monitoring station.

L McClure concurred with J Ward and felt that the air quality monitoring station should not be located at 151 Northbrook Road because of the high number of pedestrians using the area.

7.2. Application to the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board's 2023/24 Discretionary Grant Fund – T Kunkel (Governance Team Leader)

B McLaren, having declared a conflict of interest, sat back from the table during this report's consideration.

T Kunkel noted that the work done by the Rangiora Community Patrol was well known. The Patrol's vehicle required its brakes replaced to ensure the health and safety of its members patrolling the Rangiora area and that the vehicle passes its Warrant of Fitness (WOF) to stay operational.

J Gerard advised that following feedback, he requested T Kunkel to source a second quote from Rangiora Toyota for the replacement of the brakes for a 2015 Toyota RAV4. The quote received was approximately \$662 for the replacement of the front and back brake pads.

There were no questions from elected members.

Moved: R Brine

Seconded: I Campbell

THAT the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board:

- (a) **Receives** report No. 240430068173.

- (b) **Approves** a grant of \$662 to Rangiora Community Patrol towards the cost of new brake pads for its patrol vehicle.

CARRIED

(B McLaren abstain)

T Kunkel noted that the North Canterbury Classics Leisure Marchers provided seniors in the community the opportunity to enjoy the sport, which helped keep members both physically and mentally agile. The Board previously granted the group funding assistance with its registration costs for the National Leisure Marching event held in Invercargill in March 2024. The Group was now requesting funding to register 16 team members to attend the National Leisure Marching event in Palmerston North on 28 February 2025.

There were no questions from elected members.

Moved: M Fleming

Seconded: L McClure

- (c) **Approves** a grant of \$400 to North Canterbury Classics Leisure Marches Inc. towards registration costs to attend the Marching Nationals to be held at Palmerston North in February 2025.

CARRIED

8. **CORRESPONDENCE**

Nil.

9. **CHAIRPERSON'S REPORT**

9.1. **Chair's Diary for May 2024**

Moved: J Gerard

Seconded: J Goldsworthy

THAT the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board:

- (a) **Receives** report No. 240604089517.

CARRIED

10. **MATTERS FOR INFORMATION**

- 10.1. **Oxford-Ohoka Community Board Meeting Minutes 8 May 2024.**
- 10.2. **Woodend-Sefton Community Board Meeting Minutes 13 May 2024.**
- 10.3. **Kaiapoi-Tuahiwi Community Board Meeting Minutes 20 May 2024.**
- 10.4. **Northern Pegasus Bay Bylaw 2024 – Draft for Consultation – Report to Council Meeting 7 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 10.5. **Health, Safety and Wellbeing Report April 2024 – Report to Council Meeting 7 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 10.6. **Roading Staff Submission May 2024 – Request for Changes to the Roothing Capital Works Budget – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 10.7. **Roothing Staff Submission May 2024 – Proposed Adjustments to Walking and Cycling Budgets – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 10.8. **Solid Waste – Utilities and Roothing Department Staff Submission to the Draft 2024-34 Long Term Plan – Circulates to all Boards.**
- 10.9. **Water Supply – Utilities and Roothing Department Staff Submission to the Draft 2024-34 Long Term Plan – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.**

- 10.10. Drainage Staff Submission to Long Term Plan 2024-2034 – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.11. Wastewater – Utilities and Roothing Department Staff Submission to the Draft 2024/34 Long Term Plan – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.12. Housing for the Elderly – Proposed new Housing Development – Report to Council Meeting 21 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.13. Zone Implementation Programme Addendum (ZIPA) Capital Works Programme 2024/25 – Report to Utilities and Roothing Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.14. Decision for Unused Water Take Consents – Report to Utilities and Roothing Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.15. July 2023 Flood Recovery Progress Update – Report to Utilities and Roothing Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.16. Rangiora Stormwater Annual Report 2021-2023 and Monitoring Programme Report 2022-2023 – Report to Utilities and Roothing Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board.
- 10.17. Kaiapoi Community Hub – Reallocation of Budget – Report to Community and Recreation Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.18. Aquatics May Report – Report to Community and Recreation Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.
- 10.19. Libraries Update to 16 May 2024 – Report to Community and Recreation Committee 28 May 2024 – Circulates to all Boards.

Moved: J Goldsworthy

Seconded: B McLaren

THAT the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board:

- (a) Receives the information in Items.9.1 to 9.19.

CARRIED

11. MEMBERS' INFORMATION EXCHANGE

S Wilkinson

- Not for Profit Networking Forum.
- LGNZ Sovereign Citizens Zoom meeting and commented on the importance of not labelling people.
- Representation Review Working Group meeting – this group had been disbanded as it was not necessary to do a review this cycle. The census 2023 figures were not available as yet, and any review would, therefore, be based on old information.
- Attended the Rangiora Volunteer Fire Brigade's 150-year anniversary event.

J Goldsworthy

- Thanked the community for their support of the Rangiora Volunteer Fire Brigade's 150-year anniversary event.
- Audit and Risk meeting.
- Advised the next Civil Defence Community Hub would be established at Loburn School. A session for the local community was to be held on 29 June 2024.
- All Boards - A presentation from Civil Defence and North Canterbury Neighbourhood Support would explain the Community Hub and how they were to be rolled out across the district.
- Potential for parking enforcement on weekends based on feedback.

P Williams

- Attended the Hurunui Water Liaison Group meeting.
- Attended a number of drainage meetings.
- Had been contacted regarding solar panels at Sefton.
- Rangiora Airfield meeting – concerns regarding wording for Pegasus Bay Bylaw Review consultation document. Airfield members were advocating for the ability to land on the beach.

B McLaren

- North Canterbury Musical Society had a successful production of 42nd Street.
- Re-appointed Rangiora Community Patrol Health and Safety Officer.
- The St John Church fair was well supported.
- Attended the Rangiora Volunteer Fire Brigade's 150-year anniversary event.
- Fundraiser quiz night.
- LGNZ Sovereign Citizens – commented vexatious matters experienced by the Council were also being experienced by Justices of the Peace. Agreed with the comments regarding not putting people in boxes and the importance of the rights of all marginalised members of the community, including neurodiverse and LGBTQ.

R Brine

- Provided some comments on the Board submission to the 2024-35 Long Term Plan (LTP).
 - The Lineside Road was a wetland rather than a Cam River flood path.
 - Dudley Park used to be a first-class cricket pitch; however, it had lost its certification. The question had been asked at the time whether the district wanted first-class cricket, and the answer had been yes. On that basis, negotiations had been entered, resulting in the development of the MainPower Cricket Oval. A number of years ago, a complaint had been made regarding the pitch at MainPower Cricket Oval, and \$100,000 had been required to make improvements. To have another first-class pitch at Dudley would require another set of specialist equipment.
 - With regard to Southbrook Sports Club, he was concerned that the Board did not support funding and that they had expressed doubt about the commitment of the club to raise funds. As the Council appointee to the club, he had seen firsthand the work and commitment of volunteers. He asked, aside from the \$138,000, which had been forgiven, what had the club reneged on?

There was some discussion around support of sports clubs in the district.

I Campbell

- Not for Profit Networking Forum.
- Sefton Solar Farm presentation – concern from the community regarding adverse impacts and request for notified activity.
- Loburn Domain – there was a slight change to the name board.
- Hurunui Water Liaison meeting – 90% of their pump stations were compliant.
- LGNZ Sovereign Citizens presentation, this was not a new phenomenon. They did not want to cause problems, but they did want to make representation. They had not carried out assaults or caused injury and had a right to speak. Unnecessary fear should not be created.

L McLure

- Congratulated the Fire Brigade on their 150-year celebrations.
- Health Advisory Group – preliminary data on alcohol harm was available, but the data did not show the true figures for harm due to how data was collected. There were important links back to domestic violence and family harm. The impact of AI, when used in an unhealthy way, particularly on mental health, was raised.
- Honda Tree Planting.
- Sovereign Citizens Zoom meeting.
- Noted concern regarding the location of the solar farm.
- Assisted neighbours with weekly bin collection safety concerns, resulting in satisfactory outcomes.

J Ward

- Attended
 - 9 May and 10 May - Hearings of submissions to the LTP.
 - 10 May -Waimakariri Arts Strategy launch
 - 14 May -Audit and Risk meeting, Council workshop.
 - 15 May - LTP Committee meeting
 - 21 May - LTP deliberations and sign-off. The Board Chairperson, J Gerard, made a good presentation on the Board's submission to the draft LTP. The Council responses were due out in early July 2024. The deliberations had gone well. It was a long process with much consultation and working with staff through a difficult year. It was important not to drop service to the community while the district had the second-highest growth rate.
 - 28 May - Utilities and Roothing meeting.
 - 28 May - Visit from LGNZ president, Sam Broughton, and CEO Susan Green.
 - 29 May - Rangiora Airfield Advisory Group meeting. Advised that she would be submitting to the Pegasus Bay Bylaw that was currently under review, requesting that light aircraft be able to land below the water line north of the Ashley River mouth as permitted in the past. These movements had no impact on birdlife and less impact than the horse-training below the water line to the south.
 - 4 June - Council meeting
 - 6 June - Visit from Andy Foster – New Zealand First list MP. Chairman of Transport and Infrastructure Select Committee. Mayor Gordon went through the Council's thoughts and wishes for the Central Government to be aware of flooding resilience, 3 Waters, the Council's relationships with the neighbouring councils and the Council's requirement for more financial assistance and support to maintain and improve our roading structure, i.e. Eastern Link Road, Skew Bridge, Tram Road and connecting and transiting our roads. Mayor Gordon mentioned that the South Island has had very little funding for roading recently. Staff has also applied to the Fasttrack programme for the Eastern Link Road to be considered. This year's rates increase had not been affected by these roading projects. It was important to recognise that \$8 million in development contributions would be lost without the eastern link road.
 - 11 June - Audit and Risk meeting.
 - 11 June – Council Briefing
- Advised that LIM numbers were remaining steady, with over 200 more issued in 2024 than at the same time last year.
- Commented on Southbrook Sports Centre, noting that 40,000 people from across the district relied on that ground for wellbeing and sporting grounds. The committee had been given four years to raise the necessary funds. Support was provided to all sporting groups.
- The LTP rates increase had been kept to 9.39%, including an unbudgeted increase of \$1.6 million for insurance.

Clarification was requested for the \$8 million in development contributions for the Rangiora Eastern Link Road, which also included sewer, drainage, and greenspace. Clarification was also requested on how these contributions were accounted for in the LTP.

M Fleming

- Waimakariri Accessibility Group - Feedback on the Draft Landscape Plan for Kaiapoi had been requested. On behalf of members, I presented to Draft LTP regarding access to Dudley for those in wheelchairs.
- Lions completed potato harvest for Satisfy Food Rescue.
- Keep Rangiora Beautiful.

12. CONSULTATION PROJECTS

12.1. Northern Pegasus Bay Bylaw

<https://letstalk.waimakariri.govt.nz/northern-pegasus-bay-bylaw-2024>

The consultation closed on Friday, 14 June 2024.

The Board noted the consultation projects.

13. BOARD FUNDING UPDATE

13.1. Board Discretionary Grant

Balance as at 31 May 2024: \$3,408.15

13.2. General Landscaping Fund

Balance as at 31 May 2024: \$17,191.

The Board noted the Board Funding updates.

14. MEDIA ITEMS

Nil.

15. QUESTIONS UNDER STANDING ORDERS

Nil.

16. URGENT GENERAL BUSINESS UNDER STANDING ORDERS

Nil.

NEXT MEETING

The next meeting of the Rangiora-Ashley Community Board is scheduled for 7pm, Wednesday 10 July 2024.

THERE BEING NO FURTHER BUSINESS, THE MEETING CLOSED AT 8.15PM.

CONFIRMED

Chairperson

Date